The principles and practice of dental surgery / by Chapin A. Harris.

Contributors

Harris, Chapin A. 1806-1860.
National Library of Medicine (U.S.)

Publication/Creation

Philadelphia : Lindsay & Blakiston, 1853.

Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/qdpse56f

License and attribution

This material has been provided by This material has been provided by the National Library of Medicine (U.S.), through the Medical Heritage Library. The original may be consulted at the National Library of Medicine (U.S.) where the originals may be consulted.
This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

wellcome collection

Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
https://wellcomecollection.org

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE

OF

DENTAL SURGERY.

HARRIS'S DICTIONARY OF DENTAL SURGERY.

LINDSAY & BLAKISTON, PHILADELPHIA,

HAVE JUST PUBLISHED

A DICTIONARY OF DENTAL SCIENCE,

BIOGRAPHY, BIBLIOGRAPHY, AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY,

BY CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D., D.D.S.,

Author of "The Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery," &c. &c

IN ONE VOLUME, ROYAL OCTAVO.

The work before us fills a void that has long existed to those engaged in the practice of dental surgery, and the task could not have devolved upon one better calculated to perform it. This branch of surgery is extending so rapidly, and rising to such importance in the community, that a cyclopædia, embracing satisfactory definitions of its technicalities, and a compendium of necessary, important, and curious collateral information, seemed indispensable. The large and valuable medical and surgical dictionaries of the present day, although invaluable to the student and practitioner of general medical science, contain little that is useful to the practical dentist. To supply this want, therefore, the work before us was undertaken. In it are contained accurate, though necessarily condensed, accounts of the physiological and various pathological conditions of the teeth, and the operations necessary for their cure, together with full descriptions of the instruments and materials needed in them. The work is an enduring monument to the patience and industry of its author, and one that we should consider indispensable to the practitioner of dental surgery, and would gladly see in the library of every physician and surgeon.—*Medical Examiner.*

This is the only work of the kind in the world, it is presumed; and one is almost tempted to believe there will never be another, since whatever belongs to the subject is here brought into an elaborate alphabetical arrangement, as convenient as could be desired for reference. Dr. Harris, the laborious author, must be a man of intense industry and activity, to bring out so many excellent volumes as now bear his name, and which are unhesitatingly received by the dental fraternity, as the latest and best authority. This dictionary is a valuable reference for the medical profession also; and may be resorted to with profit in regard to a variety of diseases for which they are consulted. It is creditable to this country that such advances have been here made in operative dentistry, and that the best books extant, explanatory of the intricacies of the art, and perhaps, also, the best operators, belong to the United States.—*Boston Med. and Surg. Journal.*

A dictionary of dental science, a want which has been long and much felt in the dental profession, is now met in the fullest manner. Not only are all medical and surgical terms explained with concise clearness, but we have also a collection of valuable knowledge in all that relates to dental science which we can find in no single work elsewhere. This dictionary will, among physicians and surgeons, successfully rival our best standard medical dictionaries; whilst, among dentists, it cannot fail to command a most unquestionable and decided preference, embodying, as it does, all that others can teach, and much more on which they are silent.—*Journal of Dental Surgery.*

This work was much needed. Before its publication, dentists knew not where to seek information upon medical subjects incidentally connected with their own department of surgery. The several medical dictionaries were very deficient in information upon dental science; in general, surgical encyclopedists had almost entirely overlooked operations upon the teeth. Dr. Harris has done his work faithfully. Thoroughly acquainted, by former experience, with the wants of the profession, he has set himself to supply them, with the honest earnestness and untiring industry characteristic of all his labours. Not satisfied with preparing a dictionary of dental science, he has produced one of the best medical dictionaries of the day; and the work is not only adapted to the wants of dentists, but will be a valuable addition to the library of the general surgeon and physician.—*Baltimore Patriot.*

BOND'S DENTAL MEDICINE, SECOND EDITION.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DENTAL MEDICINE,

BEING

A COMPENDIUM OF MEDICAL SCIENCE.

AS CONNECTED WITH

THE STUDY OF DENTAL SURGERY.

By THOMAS E. BOND, M. D.

Professor of Special Pathology and Therapeutics in the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery.

IN ONE VOLUME, OCTAVO.

"The etiology, symptoms, diagnosis, and nature of disease are treated in as many chapters, upon the received principles of medical science and medical practice, in reference to the special topics of his work, with great clearness and ability. Particularly, there are about fifty pages occupied with the morbid effects of dental disease upon the general system, which makes the work of the highest value to the practitioner, and shows how large a service the dental surgeons have already rendered to general medicine both in diagnosis and remedial practice. Indeed the work so well performs its double duty to dentist and physician, that we are at a loss to say which is the most indebted to the author for its publication; nor need we, for both need it, and to both we recommend it." "We have spoken, or intended to speak, heartily in praise of Dr. Bond's work. It has unmistakeable excellence of thorough medical science in its subject matter, and of a capital authorship in its style and treatment, and the suggestions which we take leave to offer to our author, in no respect abate our admiration for him or his performance."—*American Medical Journal.*

The work of Professor Bond opens a new era in the history of dental surgery, pointing out, as it does, the pathological relationship between diseased teeth and other parts of the body; it demonstrates, in the fullest and most conclusive manner, the importance and absolute necessity of a thorough knowledge of *Anatomy*, *Physiology*, *Pathology* and *Therapeutics*, to the dentist. Indeed, we regard the book as indispensable, both to the student and practitioner of dental surgery; and it may be read with equal profit by the physician. It embodies, and within narrow limits, a large amount of valuable information, embracing etiology, symptoms of disease, diagnosis, treatment of disease, nature of disease, ulcers, tumors, &c.

As a literary production, the work is highly creditable to the accomplished author, and as a contribution to the science of dental surgery, it is certainly invaluable.—*American Journal of Dental Science.*

Dr. Bond has conferred a signal service by the preparation of this volume, in which he regards Dentistry as a scientific pursuit, and aims to render its practice a worthy and useful profession. With elaborate skill and ability, he has here magnified his department as important alike to the dentist and physician, but not without demonstrating its just claims to be thus esteemed. All who candidly examine this work will discover what ought to be sufficiently evident without it, that no man is adequately qualified to practice dentistry who has not received a medical education. . .

We cordially commend this volume, in view of the importance of the relations of the teeth and their appendages with other, and even with vital organs; a subject too often overlooked and undervalued by our profession. To the students of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, it must prove an invaluable text book and practical manual, which they will know how to prize.—*N. Y. Medical Gazette.*

A TREATISE

ON THE DISEASES AND SURGICAL OPERATIONS OF THE MOUTH AND PARTS ADJACENT.

WITH NOTES OF INTERESTING CASES, ANCIENT AND MODERN.

BY M. JOURDAIN.

Dentist, and Member of the College of Surgery.

TRANSLATED FROM THE LAST FRENCH EDITION. Price $2 50.

THE

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE

OF

DENTAL SURGERY:

BY

CHAPIN A. HARRIS, M.D.—D.D.S.,

PROFESSOR OF THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF DENTAL SURGERY IN THE BALTIMORE COLLEGE; MEMBER OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION; AUTHOR OF DICTIONARY OF DENTAL SCIENCE AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY, ETC., ETC.

FIFTH EDITION:

REVISED, MODIFIED, AND GREATLY IMPROVED.



LIBRARY
SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE
JUN. - 7. - 1904
186871.

WITH

TWO HUNDRED AND THIRTY-SIX ILLUSTRATIONS.

PHILADELPHIA:

LINDSAY & BLAKISTON.

1853.

Annex
WU
H313p
1853
film no. 10637, item 1

Entered, according to the act of Congress, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-two, by LINDSAY & BLAKISTON, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

JOHN W. WOODS, PRINTER,

BALTIMORE

TO

THOMAS E. BOND, M. D.

PROFESSOR OF SPECIAL PATHOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS IN THE BALTIMORE COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY,

AS A TOKEN OF GRATITUDE FOR MUCH KINDNESS AND A TESTIMONY OF RESPECT AND ESTEEM FOR GREAT PROFESSIONAL AND PRIVATE WORTH,

THIS VOLUME

IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED

BY HIS FRIEND

AND OBEDIENT SERVANT,

THE AUTHOR.

PREFACE

TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

THE Fourth Edition of this work having been disposed of, a Fifth is called for. In this, the author has endeavored, as he did in each of the preceding editions, to present a faithful expose of the state of the Science and Art of Dental Surgery up to the time of its publication. The improvements introduced into it, will, he believes, be found fully if not more than equal to those of any of the preceding editions. The whole work has been revised, and numerous additions made to almost every chapter. In the part devoted to Mechanical Dentistry three new chapters have been added. The first, treats on the composition, manufacture and methods of mounting block teeth; the second, on single teeth with a continuous artificial gum, uniting the teeth to each other and to the plate on which they are mounted; and the third, on the use of tin as a base for dental substitutes for the lower jaw. Thirty-five new engravings have also been added.

The author indulges the hope that his efforts to keep pace with the progress of the art will be found satisfactory to his readers, and that, independently of the advantages they may find from the added matter, they will be gratified to perceive in the necessity for it, the evidence of a progress in Dentistry, most cheering to all who desire to see this branch of Surgery rescued from the domain of ignorant empiricism.

The great improvement made within the few years past gives good reason to expect that this department of Medicine will soon receive the public and professional consideration it deserves. To be instrumental in bringing about a result so desirable is the sincere and long cherished hope of the author.

CHAPIN A. HARRIS.

N. E. Corner of Charles and Lexington sts.
BALTIMORE, *October 29th*, 1852.

PREFACE

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

In submitting to the profession a Second Edition of his Dental Practice, the author is happy to avail himself of the opportunity to express his grateful appreciation of the approbation which the First has received. He trusts that the additions which he has made to the primary work, will make the one now presented still more acceptable. The alteration in the plan, which has resulted from the effort at improvement, has, however, rendered a slight change of title necessary, in order to express the character of the present book.

In the first edition, the Anatomy of the Mouth was omitted, because a thorough knowledge of it can be obtained from works on General Anatomy. But it has been suggested that such works may not be at hand when wanted by the dental student, and the author has thought it better to furnish a description of the several structures which enter into

the formation of this cavity. He has, however, confined himself to brief expositions of the parts; not wishing to encumber the work, or distract the student with the consideration of matters foreign to the purpose for which it was written, and for which, he trusts, it will be read. He is indebted to Bourgery's Anatomy, Quain and Wilson's Anatomical Plates, Wilson's Anatomy, and Smith and Horner's Anatomical Atlas, for a number of the illustrations used in this part of the work.

The second and fifth parts embody the substance of two papers, by the author, which were written subsequently to the publication of the first edition. The subjects of them came properly within the plan of the present work.

The object of the author in the preparation of this edition has been to provide a thorough elementary treatise on Dental Medicine and Surgery, which might be a text book for the student and a guide to the more inexperienced practitioner, and he hopes that the modifications he has introduced, and the additions he has made, will entitle it to be so considered, at least, until an abler hand shall prepare a better.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

PAGE.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE MOUTH, ... 27
Elements of the Mouth, ... 27

CHAPTER FIRST.

ORGANS OF PREHENSION, ... 28
Origin and Insertion of these Muscles or their Attachments, . 29
1. Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi, . . . 29
2. Levator Anguli Oris, ... 29
3. Depressor Labii Inferioris, ... 29
4. Depressor Anguli Oris, ... 29
5. Zygomaticus Major, ... 29
6. Zygomaticus Minor, ... 29
7. Buccinator, ... 30
8. Orbicularis Oris, ... 30
9. Depressor Labii Superioris, ... 30
10. Levator Labii Inferioris, ... 30

CHAPTER SECOND.

ORGANS OF MASTICATION, ... 31
Passive Organs of Mastication, ... 31
The Superior Maxillary Bones, ... 31
The Inferior Maxillary Bone, ... 35
The Palate Bones, ... 38
The Teeth, ... 39
The Temporary Teeth, ... 40
The Permanent Teeth, ... 41
The Pulp, ... 41
Microscopic Appearance of the Pulp, . . . 42
The Bone, Ivory, or Dentine, ... 44
Microscopic Appearance of Dentine, ... 47
Chemical Constituents of Dentine, ... 47
The Enamel, ... 48
Microscopic Appearance of the Enamel, . . . 48
Chemical Constituents of the Enamel, . . . 49
The Crusta Petrosa or Cementum, ... 50
Description of Teeth belonging to each Class, . . . 50

PAGE.

The Incisors, ... 50
The Cuspidati, ... 52
The Bicuspids, ... 53
The Molars, ... 54
Articulation of the Teeth, ... 56
Difference between the Temporary and Permanent Teeth, . 56
Relations of the Teeth of the Upper to those of the Lower Jaw, when the Mouth is Closed, ... 57
Active Organs of Mastication, ... 58
1. The Temporal Muscle, ... 58
2. The Masseter Muscle, ... 60
3. Pterygoideus Externus, ... 60
4. Pterygoideus Internus, ... 61

CHAPTER THIRD.

Organs of Insalivation, ... 62
1. The Parotid Gland, ... 62
2. The Submaxillary, ... 63
3. The Sublingual Glands, ... 64
4. The Mucous Glands, ... 64

CHAPTER FOURTH.

Organs of Deglutition, ... 66
The Pharynx, ... 66
The Soft Palate, ... 68
The Tongue, ... 71
The Mucous Membrane Lining the Mouth, . . . 74
The Gums, ... 75
The Alveolo-Dental Periosteum, ... 76

CHAPTER FIFTH.

Blood-Vessels of the Mouth, ... 78
The Arteries of Prehension, ... 79
The Arteries of Mastication, ... 80
The Arteries of Insalivation, ... 81
The Arteries of Deglutition, ... 82
The Veins, ... 83
Branches of the External Carotid Artery as they arise in Numerical Order, ... 83

CHAPTER SIXTH.

The Nerves of the Mouth, ... 85
The Superior Maxillary Nerve, ... 87
The Inferior Maxillary Nerve, ... 90
The Facial Nerve, ... 92
Anatomical Relations of the Mouth, ... 94
Physiological Relations, ... 95

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

PAGE.
ORIGIN AND FORMATION OF THE TEETH, ... 97
Formation of the Enamel of the Teeth, ... 107
Formation of the Crusta Petrosa, or Cementum, . . . 110

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

FIRST DENTITION, ... 111
Eruption of the Temporary Teeth, ... 111
Effects which sometimes result from First Dentition, . . 115

CHAPTER NINTH.

IMPORTANCE OF THE PRESERVATION OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH, . 119

CHAPTER TENTH.

SECOND DENTITION, ... 124
Shedding of the Temporary Teeth, ... 126
Eruption of the Permanent Teeth, ... 130
Accretion of the Jaws, ... 132
Method of Directing Second Dentition, ... 136

CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

IRREGULARITY OF THE TEETH, ... 142
Treatment, ... 145

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

DEFORMITY RESULTING FROM EXCESSIVE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH AND ALVEOLAR RIDGE OF THE LOWER JAW, . . 157
Treatment, ... 157

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

PROTRUSION OF THE JAW, ... 160
Treatment, ... 160

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

PECULIARITIES IN THE FORMATION AND GROWTH OF THE TEETH, . 163

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

OSSEOUS UNION OF THE TEETH, ... 167

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

SUPERNUMERARY TEETH, ... 169

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

THIRD DENTITION, ... 171

PART SECOND.

PAGE.

Physical Characteristics of the Human Teeth, Gums, Salivary Calculus, &c. 179

CHAPTER FIRST.

General Considerations, ... 181

CHAPTER SECOND.

Physical Characteristics of the Teeth, ... 196

CHAPTER THIRD.

Physical Characteristics of the Gums, ... 200

CHAPTER FOURTH.

Physical Characteristics of Salivary Calculus, ... 222

CHAPTER FIFTH.

Physical Characteristics of the Fluids of the Mouth, . 225

CHAPTER SIXTH.

Physical Characteristics of the Lips, ... 228

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

Physical Characteristics of the Tongue, ... 231

PART THIRD.

Diseases of the Teeth and their Treatment—Dislocation of the Lower Jaw, ... 237

Diseases of the Teeth, ... 239

CHAPTER FIRST.

Caries of the Teeth, ... 240

Differences in the Liability of Different Teeth to Decay, . 243

Causes of Caries, ... 248

Prevention of Caries, ... 258

Treatment of Caries, ... 259

CHAPTER SECOND.

Filing Teeth, ... 261

CHAPTER THIRD.

Filling Teeth, ... 271

Materials Employed for Filling Teeth, ... 273

Instruments for Forming the Cavity, ... 276

PAGE.

Manner of Forming the Cavity, ... 280
Instruments for Introducing the Gold, ... 284
Manner of Introducing and Consolidating the Gold, and Finishing the Surface of the Filling, ... 285

CHAPTER FOURTH.

Filling Individual Cavities in Teeth, ... 290
Filling the Superior Incisors and Cuspidati, ... 290
Filling the Superior Molars and Bicuspids, ... 300
Filling the Inferior Incisors and Cuspidati, ... 306
Filling the Inferior Molars and Bicuspids, ... 308

CHAPTER FIFTH.

Filling Teeth when the Lining Membrane is Exposed, . . 314

CHAPTER SIXTH.

Filling the Pulp-Cavities and Roots of Teeth, . . . 322

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

Tooth-Ache, ... 334
Causes, ... 334
Treatment, ... 340

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

Extraction of Teeth, ... 344
Indications for the Extraction of Teeth, ... 346
Instruments Employed in the Operation, ... 348
Key Instrument, ... 348
Forceps, ... 350
Manner of Using the Key Instrument, ... 358
Manner of Using the Forceps, ... 360
Manner of Extracting Roots of Teeth, ... 364
Extraction of the Temporary Teeth, ... 369
Hemorrhage after Extraction, ... 369

CHAPTER NINTH.

Atrophy of the Teeth, ... 372
Causes, ... 377
Treatment, ... 384

CHAPTER TENTH.

Necrosis of the Teeth, ... 385
Causes, ... 386
Treatment, ... 386

CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

Exostosis of the Roots of Teeth, ... 388
Causes, ... 390
Treatment, ... 390

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

PAGE.

Spina Ventosa of the Teeth, ... 392
Causes, ... 393
Treatment, ... 393

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

Denuding of the Teeth, ... 394
Causes, ... 395
Treatment, ... 397

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

Spontaneous Abrasion of the Cutting Edges of the Front Teeth, 398
Causes, ... 400
Treatment, ... 401

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

Mechanical Abrasion of the Teeth, ... 402

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

Fractures and other Injuries of the Teeth from Mechanical Violence, ... 404

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

Diseases of the Dental Pulp and Periosteum, . . . 408
Inflammation of the Dental Pulp, ... 408
Spontaneous Disorganization of the Dental Pulp, . . . 410
Fungous Growth of the Dental Pulp, ... 411
Ossification of the Dental Pulp, ... 412
Inflammation of the Dental Periosteum, . . . 413

CHAPTER EIGHTEENTH.

Dislocation of the Lower Jaw, ... 415

PART FOURTH.

Salivary Calculus—Diseases of the Gums and Alveolar Processes, and their Treatment, ... 419

CHAPTER FIRST.

Salivary Calculus, ... 421
Chemical Constituents of Salivary Calculus, ... 422
Origin and Formation of Salivary Calculus, . . . 423
Effects of Salivary Calculus upon the Teeth, Gums, and Alveolar Processes, ... 428
Manner of Removing Salivary Calculus, ... 429

CHAPTER SECOND.

PAGE.

DISEASES OF THE GUMS, ... 431
Acute Inflammation of the Gums, ... 433
Chronic Inflammation and Tumefaction of the Gums, attended by Recession of their Margins from the Necks of the Teeth, . 434
Causes, ... 436
Treatment, ... 438
Morbid Growth of the Gums, ... 443
Causes, ... 444
Treatment, ... 445
Mercurial Inflammation of the Gums, ... 446
Treatment, ... 447
Ulceration of the Gums of Children, attended by Exfoliation of the Alveolar Processes, ... 447
Causes, ... 449
Treatment, ... 450
Adhesion of the Gums to the Cheeks, ... 450

CHAPTER FIFTH.

TUMORS AND EXCRESCENCES OF THE GUMS AND ALVEOLAR PROCESSES, . 152
Causes, ... 152
Treatment, ... 154

CHAPTER SIXTH.

ALVEOLAR ABSCESS, ... 460
Causes, ... 462
Treatment, ... 462

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

NECROSIS AND EXFOLIATION OF THE ALVEOLAR PROCESSES, . . 467
Causes, ... 470
Treatment, ... 471

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

GRADUAL DESTRUCTION OF THE ALVEOLAR PROCESSES, . . 472
Causes, ... 473
Treatment, ... 474

CHAPTER NINTH.

DISPLACEMENT OF THE TEETH BY A DEPOSIT OF BONE IN THEIR SOCKETS, 475
Causes, ... 475
Treatment, ... 476

PART FIFTH.

PAGE.

DISEASES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, AND THEIR TREATMEMT, . 477

CHAPTER FIRST.

PRELIMILARY REMARKS, ... 479

CHAPTER SECOND.

INFLAMMATION OF THE LINING MEMBRANE OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, 487
Symptoms, ... 488
Causes, ... 489
Treatment, ... 490

CHAPTER THIRD.

PURULENT CONDITION OF THE SECRETIONS AND ENGORGEMENT OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, ... 492
Symptoms, ... 496
Causes, ... 498
Treatment, ... 498
Case 1st, ... 504
Case 2d, ... 506
Case 3d, ... 507
Case 4th, ... 507
Case 5th, ... 508
Case 6th, ... 509
Case 7th, ... 510
Case 8th, ... 511
Case 9th, ... 514
Case 10th, ... 514
Case 11th, ... 515

CHAPTER FOURTH.

ABSCESS OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, ... 516
Symptoms, ... 518
Causes, ... 520
Treatment, ... 520
Case 12th, ... 521
Case 13th, ... 523

CHAPTER FIFTH.

ULCERATION OF THE LINING MEMBRANE OF THE MAXILLRY SINUS, . 527
Symptoms, ... 528
Causes, ... 529
Treatment, ... 530
Case 14th, ... 530
Case 15th, ... 534

CHAPTER SIXTH.

PAGE.

CARIES, NECROSIS AND SOFTENING OF THE BONY PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, ... 536
Symptoms, ... 537
Causes, ... 538
Treatment, ... 539
Case 16th, ... 541
Case 17th, ... 543

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

TUMORS OF THE LINING MEMBRANE AND PERIOSTEUM OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, ... 545
Symptoms, ... 548
Causes, ... 549
Treatment, ... 550
Case 18th, ... 553
Case 19th, ... 553
Case 20th, ... 555
Case 21st, ... 556
Case 22d, ... 558

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

EXOSTOSIS OF OSSEOUS PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, . 563
Symptoms, ... 566
Causes, ... 567
Treatment, ... 567
Case 24th, ... 568
Case 25th, ... 570

CHAPTER NINTH.

WOUNDS OF THE OSSEOUS PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS, . 572
Treatment, ... 573
Case 26th, ... 573

CHAPTER TENTH.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE MAXILLARY SINUS, . . . 576

PART SIXTH.

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY, ... 579
Mechanical Dentistry, ... 581

CHAPTER FIRST.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH, ... 582

CHAPTER SECOND.

PAGE.

SUBSTANCES EMPLOYED FOR ARTIFICIAL TEETH, ... 586
Human Teeth, ... 586
Teeth of Cattle, ... 587
Ivory of the Tusks of the Elephant and Hippopotamus, . . 588
Porcelain Teeth, ... 589

CHAPTER THIRD.

DIFFERENT METHODS OF APPLYING ARTIFICIAL TEETH, . . 592
Artificial Teeth Placed on Natural Roots, ... 592
Artificial Teeth Attached to a Plate with Clasps, . . . 594
Artificial Teeth with Spiral Springs, ... 595
Atmospheric Pressure, or Suction Method of Applying Artificial Teeth, 596

CHAPTER FOURTH.

SURGICAL TREATMENT OF THE MOUTH PREPARATORY TO THE APPLICATION OF ARTIFICIAL TEETH, ... 600

CHAPTER FIFTH.

MANNER OF PREPARING A NATURAL ROOT AND INSERTING A PIVOT TOOTH, 603

CHAPTER SIXTH.

MANNER OF REFINING AND ALLOYING GOLD—MAKING PLATE, CLASPS, SPRINGS, ETC., FOR ARTIFICIAL TEETH, AND SOLDER SUITABLE FOR UNITING THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF A PIECE OF DENTAL MECHANISM, ... 615
Manner of Refining Gold, ... 617
Alloying Gold, ... 621
Fineness, and Value per Pennyweight, of the Gold Coins of different Nations, ... 623
Manner of Making Springs for the Support of Artificial Teeth, . 626
Manner of Making Gold Plate, ... 628
Manner of Making Gold Solder, ... 631
Recipe No. 1—Fine Flowing Gold Solder, ... 631
Recipe No. 2 " " " " 631
Recipe No. 3 " " " " 632

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

MANNER OF OBTAINING WAX AND PLASTER OF PARIS IMPRESSIONS OF THE MOUTH, PLASTER MODELS—ALSO, METALLIC MODELS AND COUNTER-MODELS, ... 633
Manner of Procuring Wax Impressions, ... 633
Manner of Taking Plaster of Paris Impressions, ... 637
Manner of Procuring a Plaster Model, ... 639
Manner of Procuring a Metallic Model and Counter-Model, . 642

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

PAGE.

SWAGING A PLATE AND SOLDERING CLASPS TO IT, ... 647
Fitting the Clasps, ... 648
Soldering Clasps to a Plate, ... 652

CHAPTER NINTH.

MANNER OF OBTAINING AN ANTAGONIZING MODEL, . . . 660

CHAPTER TENTH.

ARRANGING, FITTING, ANTAGONIZING, AND ATTACHING PORCELAIN TEETH TO A PLATE—FINISHING AND APPLYING THE PIECE, . 666
Finishing and Applying a Plate Mounted with Porcelain Teeth, . 671

CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

MOUNTING NATURAL TEETH UPON A PLATE, OR METALLIC BASE, . 675

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

DENTAL SUBSTITUTES FOR SPECIAL CASES, ... 677
An Artificial Central Incisor for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with one Clasp, ... 677
An Artificial Central Incisor Mounted on a Plate with two Clasps, 678
Two Artificial Central Incisors for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with Clasps, ... 678
Artificial Incisors and Cuspidati for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate, with Clasps, ... 679
Two Artificial Bicuspids for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with one Clasp, ... 680
Artificial Bicuspids and First Molars, for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with Clasps, ... 680
Artificial Incisors, Cuspidati and Bicuspids for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with Clasps, ... 681
Artificial Incisors, Cuspidati, Bicuspids, First Right, and First and Second Left Molars for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with one Clasp, ... 681
Artificial Lateral Incisors, and Left Bicuspids for the Upper Jaw, Mounted on Plate with two Clasps on one side, . . . 682

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

THE TEETH TO WHICH IT IS MOST PROPER TO APPLY CLASPS, AND THE MEANS NECESSARY TO PREVENT THE INJURY LIABLE TO RESULT FROM THEIR USE, ... 684

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

DOUBLE SET OF ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH SPIRAL SPRINGS, ... 688

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

PAGE.
ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON SUCTION OR ATMOSPHERIC BASES, . 691

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH

ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON CAVITY PLATES, ... 697

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

PORCELAIN BLOCK TEETH, ... 703
Materials Used in Making Porcelain Block Teeth, . . 703
Coloring Materials, ... 705
Composition and Preparation of Body, ... 709
Composition and Preparation of Enamel, ... 710
Antagonizing Model for an Upper Set of Block Teeth, . . 715
Manner of Making a Matrix for Moulding the Body Preparatory to Carving the Teeth, ... 716
Moulding and Carving, ... 718
Crucing, or Biscuiting, ... 719
Insertion of the Platina Pins, ... 720
Enameling, ... 720
Firing and Baking, ... 721
Fitting and Attaching the Blocks to the Plate, ... 723

CHAPTER EIGHTEENTH.

SINGLE PORCELAIN TEETH MOUNTED ON A METALLIC BASE, WITH CONTINUOUS ARTIFICIAL GUMS, ... 726

CHAPTER NINETEENTH.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH SECURED IN A BASE OF TIN, ... 736

PART SEVENTH.

DISEASES AND DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS, ... 743

CHAPTER FIRST.

DISEASES OF THE PALATE, ... 745
Tumors of the Palate, ... 745
Causes, ... 746
Treatment, ... 748
Caries and Necrosis of the Bones of the Palate, and Ulceration of the Mucous Membrane, ... 751
Causes, ... 752
Treatment, ... 753
Inflammation and Ulceration of the Velum and Uvula, . . 755
Causes, ... 757
Treatment, ... 758

CHAPTER SECOND.

PAGE.

DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS, ... 760
Accidental Defects, ... 760
Congenital Defects, ... 761
Functional Disturbances, Resulting from Defects of the Palatine Organs, ... 762

CHAPTER THIRD.

MANNER OF REMEDYING DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS, . 769
Staphyloraphy, ... 769
Artificial Obturators and Palates, ... 777
A Simple Palate Plate, or Palatine Obturator, ... 780
A Palate Plate, or Obturator, with a Drum upon its Upper or Convex Surface, ... 781
An Artificial Palate with a Velum and Uvula, . . . 781
Artificial Palates and Obturators, Complicated with Artificial Teeth, 788

PART FIRST.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE MOUTH.

DENTITION, FIRST AND SECOND.

IRREGULARITY OF THE TEETH—ITS TREATMENT.

DEFORMITY AND PARTIAL LUXATION OF THE LOWER JAW.

PECULIARITIES IN THE FORMATION AND GROWTH OF THE TEETH.

OSSEOUS UNION OF THE TEETH. THIRD DENTITION.

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE

OF

DENTAL SURGERY.

PART FIRST.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE MOUTH.

THE MOUTH, containing the Dental Apparatus, is a very complicated piece of mechanism—forms an essential part of the human frame—has the widest possible range of sympathy—contains a great variety of organs—and performs an equally great variety of functions.

ELEMENTS OF THE MOUTH.

The anatomical elements composing the mouth, consist of Bone, Ligament, Muscle, Gland, Vessel, Nerve, Cellular and Adipose Tissue, Mucous Membrane, &c. &c.

These different elements combine together and form the various organs which constitute the mouth.

These organs I shall consider in their physiological order—thus combining their anatomy and physiology—or studying at the same time both their healthy structure and function—a plan practically taught by Professor W. R. Handy, in the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, and which commends itself by being the most natural, interesting and instructive.

The mouth is bounded above by the palatine processes of the superior maxillary and palatine bones—below by the tongue and mylo-hyoid muscles—laterally by the cheeks—anteriorly by the lips—and posteriorly by the soft palate and fauces.

The mouth contains the organs of taste, and is concerned in the four primary stages of Digestion, namely:

Prehension, Mastication, Insalivation and Deglutition—besides being engaged in the intellectual acts of speech and expression.

CHAPTER FIRST.

ORGANS OF PREHENSION.

Fig. 1.



This class of organs may be said to commence digestion, and comprise those which seize the food, introduce and partly retain it in the mouth.

They consist of the Elevators, Depressors, and Sphinctor Muscles of the mouth, which are as follows:

1. Levator labii superioris alæque nasi.
2. Levator anguli oris.

These two elevate the upper lip and angle of the mouth.

3. Depressor labii inferioris—or quadratus menti.
4. Depressor anguli oris—or triangular oris.

These two antagonize the first and depress the lower lip and angles of the mouth.

5. Zygomaticus major.
6. Zygomaticus minor.
7. Buccinator.

Fig. 1. A front view of the muscles of the face: *a a* Anterior bellies of occipito-frontalis: *b b* Orbicularis palpebrarum; *c* Pyramidalis nasi; *d* Compressor nasi; *e e* and *f f* Levator labii superioris alæque nasi; *g g* Zygomaticus minor; *h h* Zygomaticus major; *i i* Masseter muscle; *j j* Buccinator, or trumpeter's muscle; *k k* Orbicularis oris; *l l* Depressor labii inferioris; *m* Levator menti; *n n* Depressor anguli oris; *o o* Levator anguli oris.

These are situated to the outside of the angles of the mouth—in the direction from the angles to the prominence of the cheek.

Their use is to draw the angles of the mouth upwards and outwards towards the ear.

8. Obicularis oris.

This is the sphinctor muscle which surrounds and closes the mouth.

9. Depressor labii superioris.

10. Levator labii inferioris.

The one depresses the upper lip against the teeth—the other raises the lower lip.

ORIGIN AND INSERTION OF THESE MUSCLES OR THEIR ATTACHMENTS.

1. *Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi*, arises by two heads—first from the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone—second, from the edge of the orbit above the infra-orbitar foramen. It is inserted into the ala nasi or wing of the nose and upper lip.

2. *Levator Anguli Oris*, arises from the canine fossa of the superior maxillary bone, immediately below the infra-orbitar hole. It is inserted narrow into the angle of the mouth.

3. *Depressor Labii Inferioris*, arises from the side and front of the inferior maxilla at its base, and is inserted into the greater part of the lower lip.

4. *Depressor Anguli Oris*, arises broad and fleshy from the base of the lower jaw at the side of the chin. It is inserted into the angle of the mouth.

5. *Zygomaticus Major*, arises long and narrow from the malar bone, near the zygomatic suture. It is inserted into the angle of the mouth.

6. *Zygomaticus Minor*, arises from the front part of the malar

bone, and is inserted into the upper lip, above the angle of the mouth.

This muscle is sometimes wanting—and is sometimes a simple slip from other muscles.

7. *Buccinator*, arises from the upper and lower jaws as far back as the coronoid and pterygoid processes, and from the alveolar ridge as far forwards as the bicuspid teeth. It is inserted into the angle of the mouth.

8. *Orbicularis Oris.* This muscle has no bony attachments—it is circular, surrounds the mouth—and consists of two planes of fibres, one for the upper—the other for the lower lip, which meet at the angle of the mouth.

9. *Depressor Labii Superioris*, arises from the alveolar processes of the incisor and canine teeth; and is inserted into the upper lip and side of the ala nasi.

10. *Levator Labii Inferioris*, arises from the alveolar processes of the incisor teeth of the lower jaw. It is inserted into the lower lip and chin.

See Organs of Mastication for descriptions of bones concerned with these muscles.

CHAPTER SECOND.

ORGANS OF MASTICATION.

MASTICATION, as the term implies, is a process of chewing or reducing the food when introduced into the mouth, into minute portions, and the organs under this head are the agents or instruments which effect this operation.

The organs of mastication are divided into, 1st. The passive 2d. The active.

PASSIVE ORGANS OF MASTICATION.

The passive organs include the bones, ligaments and teeth.

The principal bones are,

1. The superior maxillary or upper jaw bones.
2. The inferior maxillary or lower jaw bone.
3. The palate bones.

THE SUPERIOR MAXILLARY BONES.

FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 2. *a* The body of the left superior maxillary ; *b* Canine fossa ; *c* Infra-orbitar foramen ; *d* Incisive fossa ; *e* Harmonial suture of the two bones ; *f* Nasal spine ; *g* Semilunar notch of anterior nares ; *h* Nasal process ; *i* Articulation of lachrymal bone ; *j* Malar process ; *k* Tuberosity of superior maxillary ; *l* Cavity of the antrum ; *m* Lachrymal tubercle ; *n* Orbitar process.

The *Superior Maxillary Bones*, being two in number, are in pairs and united on the median line of the face. They occupy the anterior upper part of the face, are of very irregular *form*, and consist of a body, processes and foramina.

The body is the central part of the bone and has four surfaces, namely, the anterior or facial surface, the posterior or pterygoid, the superior or orbitar, and the inferior or palatine surface.

The *Anterior Surface* is irregularly convex, and has a depression about its centre just above the canine and first bicuspid teeth, called the canine fossa—immediately above which is the infra-orbitar foramen for transmitting an artery and nerve of same name—its upper and inner edge forms part of the lower margin of the orbit—from the inner extremity of which proceeds upwards towards the nasal and frontal bones a long and rather flat process, the nasal process of the superior maxilla—it is of a pyramidal form; its posterior edge forming the internal margin of the orbit and helping to make the lachrymal groove—its anterior edge receives the cartilages of the nose—its upper corresponds to the nasal bones, and its summit to the frontal, while its outer surface gives attachment to muscles, and its inner enters into the formation of the nose.

FIG. 4.



From the lower edge of its *anterior surface*, the alveolar processes and cavities are formed—these consist in depressions of a more or less conical form and correspond to the number of teeth, or roots of teeth, they are intended to receive. (See Fig.

FIG. 3. *a* Nasal surface of left superior maxillary; *b* Opening of antrum; *c* Inferior turbinated bone; *d* Inferior meatus of nose into which the nasal duct opens; *e* Nasal process; *f* Semilunar notch of lachrymal bone, *g* Nasal spine; *h h* Palate process, *i i* Alveolar process; *j* Palate process of palate bone; *k* Palate spine; *l* Tuberosity of palate bone; *m* Hamular process.

4.) The bottom of each of these cavities is perforated by a small foramen, for the passage of nerves and blood vessels which go to the teeth. The alveolar border externally presents a fluted appearance—the projections and depressions correspond with the alveolar cavities and the septa which separate them from each other.

The *Posterior Surface* has a bulging called tuberosity, which is connected to the palate bones, and bounds behind the antrum —is perforated by three or four small holes—the posterior dental canals which go to the alveoli of the molar teeth.

The *Lower Surface* extends from the alveolar processes in front to the horizontal plate of the palate bones behind, called the palatine processes, which are rough below, forming the roof of the mouth, and smooth above, making the floor of the nostrils. They are united along the median line, at the anterior part of which is the foramen incisivum, having two openings in the nares above, while there is but one in the mouth below.

The *Upper or Orbitar Surface* is triangular in shape, with its base in front forming the anterior, lower and internal edge of the orbit—while its apex extends back to the bottom, it forms the floor of the orbit and roof of the antrum—its internal edge is united to the lachrymal, ethmoid, and palate bones—its external edge assists in forming the spheno-maxillary fissure, and along its central surface is seen a canal running from behind, forwards and inwards, the infra-orbitar canal. This canal divides into two, the smaller is the *anterior dental*, which descends to the anterior alveoli along the front wall of the antrum—the other is the proper continuation of the canal and ends at the infra-orbitar hole—along the upper part of the line uniting the palatine processes there is a ridge, the *nasal crest*, for receiving the vomer, and at the anterior part of this crest there is a projection forwards, the *nasal spine*—at the external and upper part of the body is a *malar process*, which articulates with the malar bone. This is opposite the summit of the maxillary sinus.

The body of the superior maxilla is occupied by a large and

very important cavity called the *Antrum Highmorianum*, or Maxillary Sinus. This cavity is somewhat triangular in shape, with its base generally looking to the nose, and its apex to the malar process. Its upper wall is formed by the floor of the orbit, its lower by the alveoli of the molar teeth, which sometimes perforate this cavity. The canine fossa bounds it in front, while the tuberosity closes it behind. But the shape of this cavity is exceedingly variable. In examining a collection of nearly one hundred belonging to Dr. Maynard of Washington City, no two were found to be shaped alike, and this difference is as marked between the right and the left in the same, as in different subjects. The floor of some is nearly flat, but in the majority of cases it is very uneven, sometimes crossed by a single septum, varying from one-eighth to half an inch in height, at other times there are found three or four septa, dividing the lower part of the cavity into as many separate compartments, with the bottom or floor of no two on a level with each other. Some are perforated by the roots of one or more teeth; at other times the roots of several teeth extend considerably above the level of the floor of this cavity, and are covered by laminæ of bone not thicker than bank note paper. In other cases, the floor of the antrum is half an inch above the extremities of the roots of the teeth. This cavity also differs as much in size as it does in shape.

The opening of the antrum is on its nasal portion or base into the middle meatus of the nose, and in the skeleton is large, while in the natural state it is much contracted by the ethmoid bone above, the inferior spongy bone below, the palate bone behind and by the mucous membrane which passes through this opening and lines its interior.

This cavity communicates with the anterior ethmoidal cells and frontal sinus.

The structure of the upper jaw is thick and cellular in its alveolar and other processes.

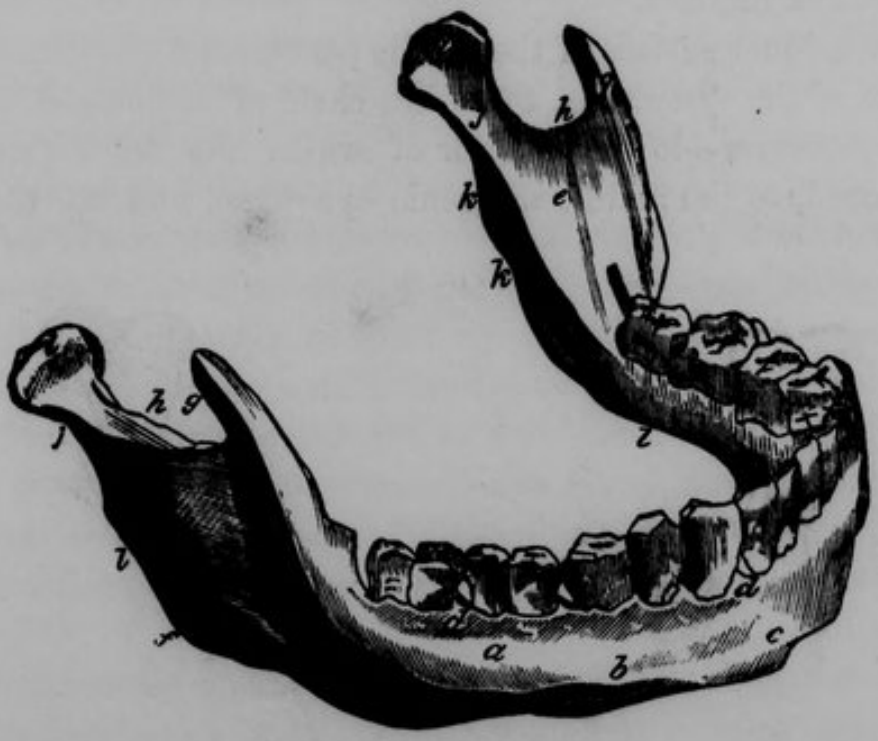
It is articulated with two bones of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and seven of the face, namely: the nasal, malar, lachrymal, palate, inferior spongy, vomer, to its fellow and also to the teeth.

Its development is very complicated, and is stated to be by as

many osseous points as that of the body and its various processes. Ossification commences at a very early period of intra-uterine existence.* It may be seen as early as the thirtieth or thirty-fifth day after conception; and although at birth it has acquired but little height, it has increased considerably in breadth. But, at this period, the alveolar border, which constitutes the largest portion of the bone, is almost in contact with the orbit. The antrum, at this time, is scarcely perceptible, but as the vertical dimensions of the bone are increased, it gradually develops itself. With the loss of the teeth the alveolar border nearly disappears, so that the vault of the palate loses its arched appearance, and becomes almost flat.

INFERIOR MAXILLARY BONE.

Fig. 5.



The *Lower Jaw*, Fig. 5, is the largest bone of the face—and

Fig. 5. The inferior maxillary: *a* Body of the bone; *b* Mental foramen; *c* The symphysis; *d d* Alveolar processes; *e* Ramus of the lower jaw; *f* Its angles; *g g* Coronoid processes; *h h* Sigmoid notch; *i i* Condyloid processes; *j j* Neck of the condyles; *k* Inferior dental foramen. *l* Mylo-hyoidean ridge.

*Some anatomists say, that it is at first divided into three parts.

though but one bone in the adult, consists of two symmetrical pieces in the fetus.

It occupies the lower part of the face—has a cemicircular form, and extends back to the base of the skull.

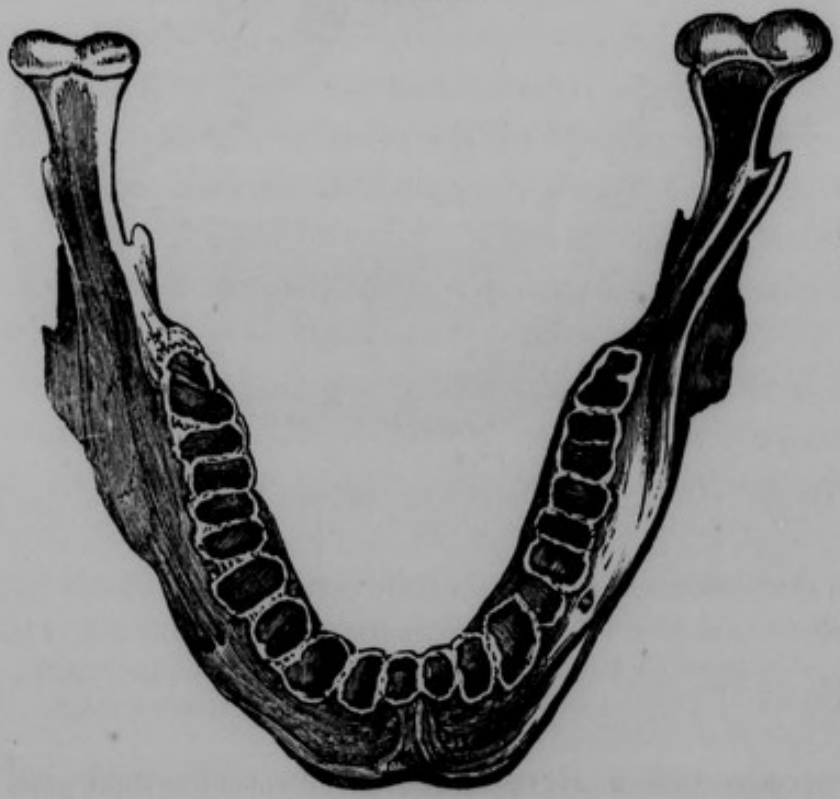
It is divided into the body and extremities.

The body is the middle and horizontal portion—this is divided along its centre by a ridge called the *symphysis*—which is the place of separation in the infant state—the middle portion projects at its inferior part into an eminence called the *mental process* or chin—on each side of which is a depression for the muscles of the lower lip, and, externally, to these depressions are two foramina, called *anterior mental*, for transmitting an artery and nerve of the same name.

The horizontal portion or sides extends backwards and outwards—and on the outer surface has an oblique line for the attachment of muscles.

On the inner surface of the middle part behind the chin, along the line of the symphysis, there is a chain of eminences called *genial processes*—to the superior of which the frenum linguæ is attached, to the middle the genio-hyo-glossi, and to the in-

Fig. 6.



ferior the genio-hyoid muscles—on each side of these eminences are depressions for the sublingual glands—and on each side of these depressions there runs an oblique ridge upwards and outwards, to the anterior part of which is attached the mylo-hyoid muscle, and to the posterior part, the superior constrictor of the pharynx—this latter muscle is consequently involved more or less in the extraction of the last molar tooth. Below this line there is a groove for the mylo-hyoid nerve.

The upper edge of the body is surmounted by the *alveolar processes* and cavities—corresponding in number and size to the roots of the teeth. (See Fig. 6.) The alveolar border, in the fetus, constitutes nearly the whole of the body of the bone. After the loss of the teeth, this part of the inferior maxillary is gradually wasted. The alveolar border, in the lower jaw, describes a rather smaller arch than it does in the upper, and in both it is thinner anteriorly than posteriorly.

The lower edge, called the base, is rounded, obtuse, and receives the superficial fascia and platysma muscle.

The extremities of the body have two large processes rising up at an obtuse angle, named the *rami* of the lower jaw. These processes are flat and broad on their surfaces, the outer is covered by the masseter muscle—the inner has a deep groove which leads to a large hole, the *posterior dental* or maxillary foramen, for transmitting the inferior dental nerves and vessels to the dental canal running along the roots of the teeth. This foramen is protected by a spine to which the internal lateral ligament is attached.

The ramus has a projection at its lower part which is the angle of the lower jaw—its upper ridge is curved, having a process at each end—the anterior one is the *coronoid process;* this is triangular, and has the temporal muscle inserted into it—the posterior is the *condyloid*, and articulates with the temporal bone. This process has a neck for the insertion of the external pterygoid muscle.

The structure of the inferior maxilla is compact externally, cellular within and traversed in the greater part of its extent by the inferior dental canal.

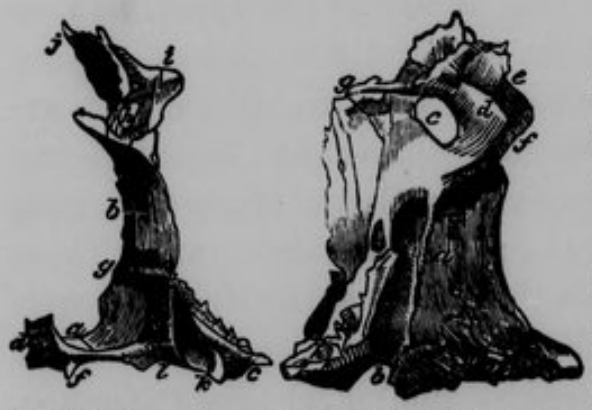
The lower jaw is developed by two centres of ossification,

which meet at the symphysis. It is articulated to the temporal bones by the condyles, and several ligaments, to wit: external and internal lateral, the capsular, intermaxillary, stylo-maxillary, and two synovial membranes—the external, one of which is seen in Fig. 27. It is also articulated with the teeth.

THE PALATE BONES.

The palate bones, two in number, and in pairs, are situated at the back part of the superior maxillary bone, between its tuberosities and the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid bone. They are shaped precisely alike.

Fig. 7. Fig. 8



The palate bone is divided into three plates—the horizontal or palate, the vertical or nasal, and the orbital.

The palate plate is broad and on the same line with the palate processes of the superior maxillary bone—its upper surface is smooth, and forms the posterior floor of the nostrils—the lower surface is rough, aud forms the posterior part of the roof of the mouth—its anterior edge is connected to the palate process of the upper jaw, and its posterior is thin and crescentic,

Fig. 7. Posterior view of palate bone in its natural position, except that it is turned a little to one side so as to show the internal surface of its perpendicular plate: *a* Nasal surface of horizontal plate; *b* Nasal surface of perpendicular plate; *c k l* Pterygoid process or tuberosity; *d* Broad internal border of horizontal plate, which articulates with same border of opposite bone; *f* Process with which same one of opposite bone of the other side forms the nasal spine; *g* Aorizontal ridge which gives attachment to inferior turbinated bone; *h* Spheno-palatine foramen; *i* Orbital portion; *j* Pterygoid apophysis.

Fig. 8. Spheno-maxillary surface of perpendicular plate of palate bone: *a* Its rough surface, or the one which articulates with superior maxillary bone; *b* Part of the posterior palatine canal; *c* Spheno-palatine foramen; *d* Spheno-maxillary facet; *e* Orbital facet; *f* maxillary facet; *g* Sphenoidal portion of perpendicular plate; *h* Tuberosity of the base or pterygoid process.

to which is attached the velum-pendulum palati or soft palate—at the posterior point of the suture, uniting the two palate bones, there projects backwards a process called the *posterior nasal spine*, which gives origin to the azygos-uvulæ muscle. The *vertical plate* ascends, helps to form the nose, diminishes the opening into the antrum by projecting forward, and by its external posterior part, in conjunction with the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid bone, forms the *posterior palatine canal*—the lower orifice of which is seen on the margin of the palate plate, and called the *posterior palatine foramen*, which transmits the palatine nerve and artery to the soft palate; behind this foramen is often seen a smaller one passing through the base of the pterygoid process of this bone, and sending a filament of the same nerve to the palate.

The upper end of the vertical or nasal plate has two processes—the one is seen at the back of the orbit and called the *orbital* process, the other is posterior and fits to the under surface of the body of the sphenoid bone. Between these two processes there is a foramen, the *spheno-palatine*, which transmits to the nose a nerve and artery of the same name.

The palate bone articulates with six others, namely: the superior maxillary, inferior turbinated, vomer, sphenoid and ethmoid.

The structure of this bone is very thin, and consists almost entirely of compact tissue. Its development, it is said, takes place by a single point of ossification at the place of the union of the vertical, horizontal and pyramidal portions.

These bones are all more or less related with the bones of the head—of which eight compose the cranium and fourteen the face. Those of the cranium are one frontal, two parietal, two temporal, one occipital, one sphenoid and one ethmoid. Those of the face are six pairs and two single bones—the pairs are, to wit: the two malar, two superior maxillary, two lachrymal, two nasal, two palatine and two inferior spongy. The vomer and inferior maxillary are the two single bones.

THE TEETH.

The teeth are the prime organs of mastication—are the hard-

est portions of the body, and occupy the alveolar cavities of both the upper and lower jaw.

They have two grand divisions, to wit:

1. The milk, temporary or deciduous teeth.
2. The permanent or adult teeth.

THE TEMPORARY TEETH.

Each division consists of three classes:

1. Incisors; 2. Cuspidati; 3. Molars, which are replaced by the Bicuspids.

The deciduous teeth are twenty in number, ten in each jaw, to wit: four incisors, two cuspidati, and four molars.

FIG. 9.



FIG. 10.



FIG. 11.

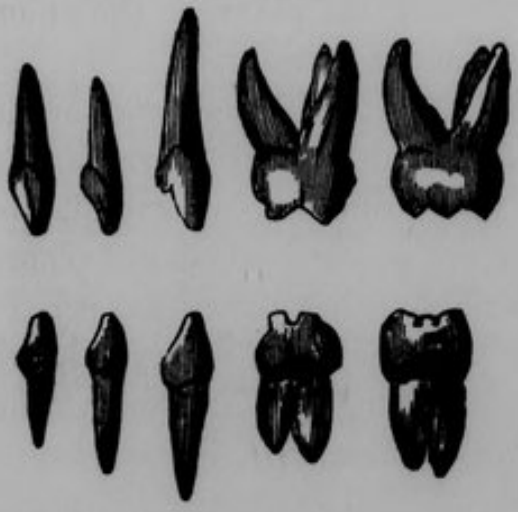


FIG. 12.

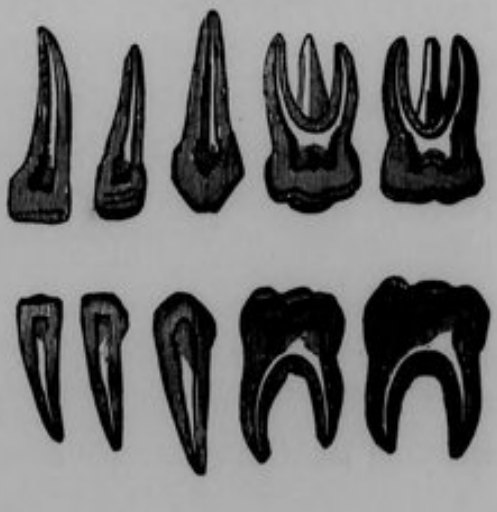


FIG. 9. Front view of the temporary teeth.
FIG. 10. Back and inner view of temporary teeth.
FIG. 11. Lateral or side view of the temporary teeth.
FIG. 12. Temporary teeth split so as to expose their pulp cavities.

The pulp cavities of the temporary teeth are larger in proportion to their size than are those of the permanent teeth.

THE PERMANENT TEETH.

The permanent set have thirty-two teeth, sixteen to each jaw—having an increase of twelve in the adult mouth, and designated as follows: incisors, four; cuspidati, two; bicuspids, four; molars, six to each jaw. The third or last molaris is sometimes designated by the name of dens sapientiæ or wisdom tooth.

A tooth consists of a body or crown, a root or fang, and a middle portion or neck—the body is the exposed part above the gum; the root occupies the alveolar cavity or socket; while the neck is the contracted portion between the body and root.

A tooth is composed of four distinct parts: 1. The pulp; 2. The bone, ivory or dentine, as Professor Owen designates it; 3. The enamel, and 4. The crusta petrosa, or cementum. (See Fig. 13.)

THE PULP.

The *pulp* forms the rudiment or germ of the future tooth, which Mr. Thos. Bell describes as "very soft, gelatinous, and semi-transparent;" its surface is covered by "an extremely delicate, thin, vascular membrane, closely attached to it by vessels."

Fig. 13.



This membrane he calls "the proper membrane of the pulp." The pulp of the crown of a tooth, and the crown itself, previously to its extrusion through the gums, is enclosed in a sac, which consists of two lamina, an outer and inner—the outer is described by Mr. Hunter as soft and spongy, and without vessels, while the inner is extremely vascular and firm. Mr. Bell, on the other hand, contends that the outer is full of vessels, and the inner is destitute and more tender and delicate.

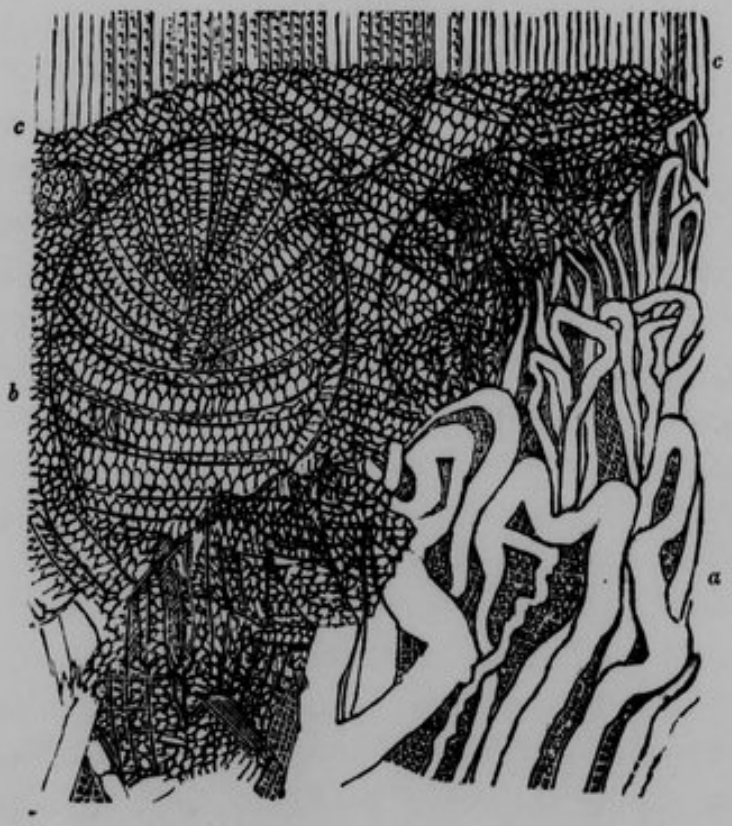
The truth seems to be that both membranes are vascular, as

Fig. 13. *a* The pulp; *b* The bone, or dentine; *c* The enamel; *d* The cementum, or crusta petrosa.

the injections of Mr. Fox, and the preparations of Mr. Bell demonstrate.

MICROSCOPIC APPEARANCE OF THE PULP.

FIG. 14.



The *microscopic observations* of Mr. Nasmyth, whose long and patient attention to this subject commands and deserves the highest regard, says: "On examining the internal structure of the pulp, generally, the number of minute cells presenting themselves in a vesicular form is very remarkable, they seem to constitute, indeed, the principal portion of its bulk. These vesicles vary in size from the smallest perceptible microscopic appearance, probably the ten-thousandth part of an inch in diameter

FIG. 14. A diagram copied from Mr. Nasmyth's work on the Development, Structure and Diseases of the Teeth, showing the vascular and cellular structure of the pulp of a tooth, and the conversion of the cells into bone. *a* "The blood-vessels and capillaries of the pulp, between which the cellular structure is seen." *b* "The cells in process of conversion into ivory," or bone, or dentine, "and occupying the peripheral portion of the pulp." "In the line between *c c*, the transition of these cells into the structure of ivory," or dentine, is more clearly exhibited.

to one-eighth of an inch, and are evidently disposed in different layers throughout the body of the pulp. When these layers of macerated pulp are examined, they present an irregular reticular appearance, and are found to be interspersed with granules. The parenchyma is traversed by vessels of which the direction is generally vertical."

The diagrams furnished by Mr. N. of the microscopic appearance of the pulp, demonstrates, we think, very conclusively, its cellular structure, but, "respecting the connection of the pulp with the osseous part of the tooth," and, as to whether 'the latter be simply a product of the pulp, or a transformation, of its substance," "much diversity of opinion," as is observed by Mr. N., "has always existed." He is of opinion, however, that his diagrams demonstrate that the interfibrous substance of the osseous or dentinal part, "is formed by the deposition of osseous matter in the cells of the reticular surface of the pulp." But he confesses himself unable to explain the modus operandi of this interesting process. "Do the reticular cells," he asks, "form a system containing circulating fluids, from which the osseous material of the tooth is disseminated?" Although from any positive evidence which we possess upon this subject, it may be difficult to answer the question affirmatively, yet that the walls of these reticular cells are traversed by vessels, and which, during the transition process, circulate red blood, there can be no doubt.

With regard to the manner of the transition of the pulp into bone, Mr. Nasmyth says, "On the surface of the pulp are found innumerable detached cells, with central points. Generally, these cells form a regular and complete coating, studded with points, which are placed at intervals, corresponding, in extent, to those between the fibres.

"These points are rendered visible, from the greater opacity of the intermediate material, and will be seen to reflect or absorb the light," when examined under a microscope, "according to difference in the focal distance. A comparison between the superincumbent perfect ivory, and the formative surface of the pulp beneath, is always easy, because portions of the former, at an early stage, at any rate, remain adherent to the

latter, and fragments of the dental bone are found strewn over it, more especially in the human teeth," as is seen in drawings furnished by Mr. Nasmyth.

But it would be out of place here to enter upon an elaborate discussion of this most curious and interesting operation of the economy, or to quote, in detail, the description which Mr. N. has given of his microscopic researches in this department of developmental and structural anatomy; the author must, therefore, content himself by simply observing, that the ingenious writer, from whom he has just quoted, after the most patient and laborious investigation of the subject, arrives at the conclusion, that the development of dental bone is the result of the ossification of the pulp. In a word, the fibres which compose the frame work of the reticulations, and consisting of granular animal matter, are, by the deposition of bony matter within the cells of these reticulations, converted into the dentinal fibres of the tooth.

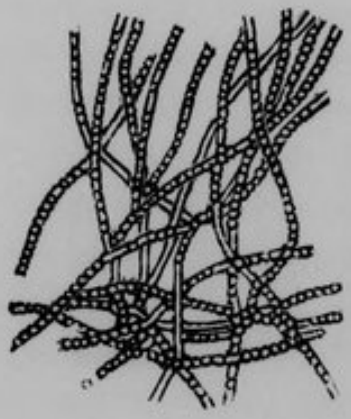
THE BONE, IVORY, OR DENTINE.

The *bone*, *ivory*, or *dentine*, (*b* Fig. 13) is a very hard and dense structure, forming the greater part of the tooth, and constituting the whole of the root and centre of the crown and body. It consists of an earthy and an animal portion—the former may be removed by the application of an acid, leaving the animal part entirely separate—and applying heat destroys the animal, showing the earthy.

The bone is seen to consist of concentric layers, arranged parallel to the surface of the tooth, and contains the cavity for lodging the pulp. But in addition to this peculiar structural arrangement, it would seem, according to the microscopical researches of Professor Retzius, to be composed of minute tubes, radiating from the cavity of the pulp to the periphery of the tooth, giving off in their course numerous branches, sometimes terminating in small cells or corpuscules, and an amorphous and structureless intertubular substance. Mr. Nasmyth, however, has demonstrated, by a series of beautiful and highly interesting experiments, that these supposed tubes are solid fibres, "composed of a series of little masses succeeding each

other in a linear direction, like so many beads collected on a string.

Fig. 15



The experiments of Mr. Nasmyth not only disprove the supposed tubularity of the fibres, but establish, very conclusively, that, not only they, but the interfibrous substance, also, is cellular. The appearance of tooth-bone, after being deprived of its earthy matter, is exhibited in Fig. 15, copied from Mr. Nasmyth's late work on the Development, Structure and Diseases of the Teeth. The interfibrous substance, as the reader may perceive, is entirely removed and nothing remains but the baccated fibres.

Mr. Nasmyth says, "In reviewing the formation of a tooth, and the relation which its component parts bear to each other, both in their arrangement and composition, we cannot repress a sentiment of admiration at the beauty and perfection of its structure. We see for example, the more highly organized tissue of the ivory protected from the influence of external agents by a dense and impermeable covering, the enamel, while the ivory itself is so constructed as to present a denser conformation at the periphery than at the central part of the tooth. In the former situation, the fibres are minute and interlace with each other; in the latter, they are longer and arranged in a parallel direction. The interfibrous substance, upon which, as I have already shown, the great strength of the ivory depends, is, consequently, more abundant at the surface than near the centre. Again, in the construction of the latter substance, we have evidence of admirable adaptation: it is not solid throughout, but composed of small masses, packed together in cells, and constituting a series of arches from the neighborhood of the pulp to the periphery of the tooth, the little masses being accurately adjusted to each other, and having an imbricated arrangement."

Fig. 15. The nuclei of the fibres of tooth-bone, or dentine, arranged in a linear series, constituting the baccated fibres as described by Dr. Nasmyth.

The laminated decomposition which occurs in caries of the teeth, is, as Mr. N. justly remarks, owing to the concentric arrangement of the cells.

Fig. 16.



Fig. 17.

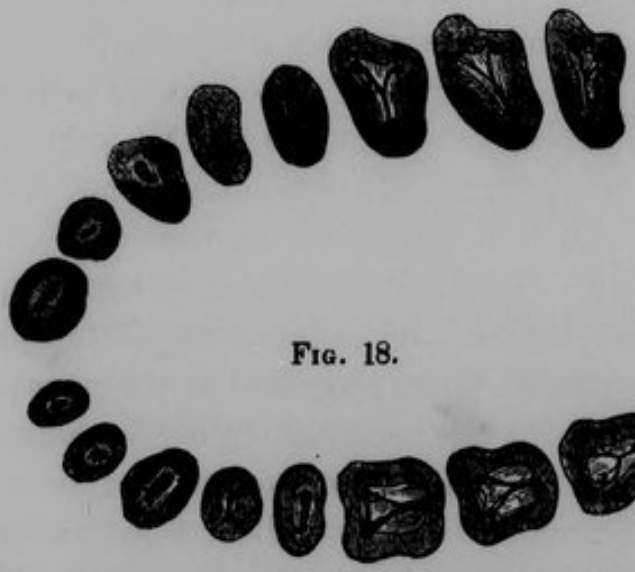


Fig. 18.

The bone of the tooth is also vascular, as has been clearly demonstrated by specimens in possession of the author, in

Fig. 16. Vertical section of the permanent teeth, showing their pulp cavities and canals through their roots.

Figs. 17 and 18. View of the pulp cavities of the permanent teeth of both jaws, as presented with their crowns cut off at the necks.

which vessels in the substance of the bone, charged with red blood, are distinctly traced. A microscopic view of one of these, is contained in No. 3, vol. 2, of the American Journal of Dental Science, and in this, a number of vessels charged with red blood may be distinctly seen. Dr. Goddard supposes that all appearances of vascularity of dental bone are deceptive, but in the specimens just alluded to, the fact is too clear to admit of doubt. Similar specimens are in possession of Dr. Maynard, of Washington City, and Dr. C. O. Cone has several in which, when examined through a microscope, blood vessels may be distinctly traced. These he exhibited to the class of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, during the session of 1846–7. Mr. Tomes, Surgeon Dentist to the Middlesex Hospital School, England, in alluding to the vascularity of the teeth says, he has seen one or two specimens in which the dentine is traversed by vascular canals. He has furnished a drawing of one of these. We may therefore regard the question of the vascularity of the teeth as settled.

MICROSCOPIC APPEARANCE OF DENTINE.

The microscope of Mr. Nasmyth demonstrates the bone of the tooth to be essentially *cellular* in its structure.

The fibres of the tooth are found to be interspersed and made up of different compartments, the shape and size of which vary in different animals; in the human tooth they are oval, and these compartments or cells have their long axis corresponding with the course of the fibre, and the extremity of each in opposition to the one adjoining. These fibres send off branches which anastomose with others. (See Fig. 15.)

The cells constitute the frame-work, in which the ossific matter is deposited, and thus become the fibres of the dentinal part of the tooth.

CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF DENTINE.

The chemical analysis of dentine by BERZELIUS, furnishes the following constituents in every 100 parts, to wit:

Phosphate of lime, ...	62.
Fluate of lime, ...	2.
Carbonate of lime, ...	5.5
Phosphate of magnesia, ...	1.
Soda and muriate of soda, . . .	1.5
Gelatine and water, . . .	28.
	100

The relative proportions of earthy and animal matter are not always the same.

THE ENAMEL.

The *Enamel* (*c* Fig. 13) covers the crown, and extends to the neck of the tooth. It is considered the hardest of all animal substances, is generally of a pearly white or yellowish color, and extremely smooth and polished on its surface. Like the bone of the tooth, it varies in density, being much harder on some teeth than others; it is thickest on those parts of the teeth most exposed to friction, as on the eminences of the molars, the cutting edges of the incisors, and the points of the bicuspids and cuspidati—and is thinnest towards the alveoli. The structure of the enamel is *fibro-cellular*, having its fibres radiating from the centre to the surface of the tooth—by which arrangement, immense strength and the power of sustaining great pressure is secured.

MICROSCOPIC APPEARANCE OF THE ENAMEL.

The enamel fibres are of an hexagonal form, but besides this peculiar structural arrangement of the enamel, Mr. Nasmyth has demonstrated, with a microscope, that this substance, as well as the bone, is cellular. Each cell, as may be seen by the accompanying cut, copied from a diagram given by Mr. N., "is of a semicircular form and the convexity of the semicircle looks upwards towards the free external portion of the tooth." Thus, by this most beautiful and peculiar structural arrangement, a capability of resisting mechanical force is given to the enamel, which its simple fibrous structure would wholly fail to supply.

Fig. 19.

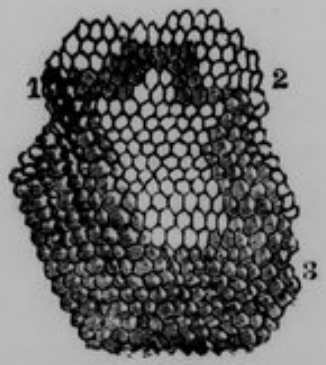


Fig. 21.

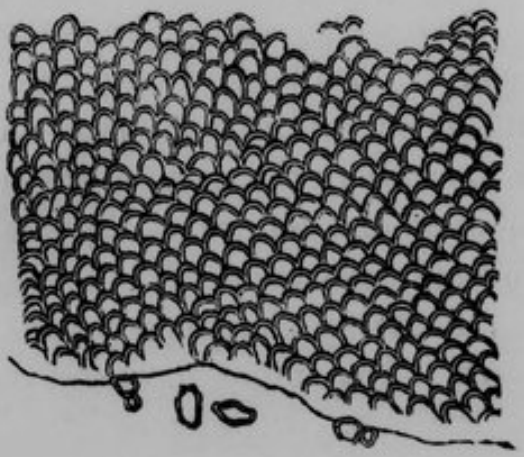
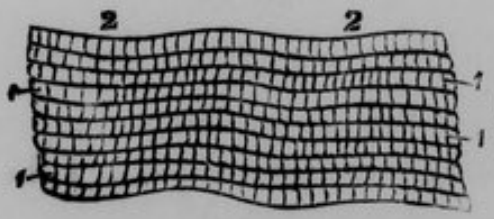


Fig. 20.



The shape and structure of the enamel fibres are represented in Figs. 19, 20 and 21.

CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF THE ENAMEL.

The enamel, like the dentine, consists of animal and earthy matter—the former being less than the latter. Its chemical composition, according to the analysis of Berzelius, is in every 100 parts:

Phosphate of lime,	85.3
Fluate of lime,	3.2
Carbonate of lime,	8.
Phosphate of magnesia,	1.5
Soda and muriate of soda,	1.
Animal matter and water,	1.
	100

These proportions, however, are not always the same. They vary in enamel of the teeth of different individuals.

Fig. 19. The hexagonal terminations of the fibres of a portion of the surface of the enamel, highly magnified. At 1, 2, 3, the crooked crevices, between the hexagonal fibres, are more strongly marked.

Fig. 20. A side view of the enamel fibres magnified 350 times; 1, 1 The enamel fibres; 2 Transverse stripes upon them.

Fig. 21. The enamel seen on the face of a vertical section showing its cellular structure.

THE CRUSTA PETROSA OR CEMENTUM.

Crusta Petrosa or Cementum (*d* Fig. 13) covers the fang or root, and has been traced over the enamel. It is the thickest at the extremity of the root, and becomes gradually thinner as it approaches the neck of the tooth. PURKINJE and FRANKEL mention one case which came under their observation, where it covered the enamel of the teeth of an old man, and Mr. Nasmyth is of the opinion that it always envelops the crowns of the teeth. The author, however, has never been able to detect it, except upon the roots. This substance is, also, of a cellular structure, and is more vascular than dentine.

DESCRIPTION OF TEETH BELONGING TO EACH CLASS.

Each tooth, as has already been remarked, has a body or crown, neck and root. In describing these several parts, I shall begin with

THE INCISORS.

The *Incisors* (four to each jaw, Fig. 22, *a a*, *a a*) occupy the anterior central part of each maxillary arch. The body of

FIG. 22.

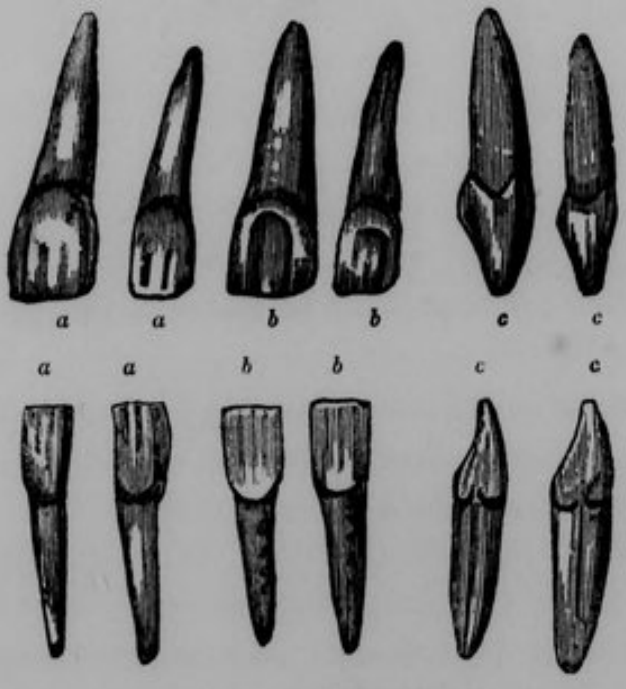


FIG. 22. *a a*, *a a* Front view of the incisors ; *b b*, *b b* Back view ; *c c*, *c c* Side or lateral view.

each is wedge shape—the anterior or labial surface is convex and smooth—the posterior or palatine is concave, and presents a tubercle near the neck; the palatine and labial surface come together, and form a cutting edge. In a front view the edge is, generally, the widest part; it diminishes towards the neck, and continues narrowing to the extremity of the root.

The crown of an incisor has four surfaces, to wit: two *approximal*, one *labial*, and one *palatine* or *lingual surface*, the former being applied to an upper and the latter to a lower incisor. It also has four angles, namely, a *right* and a *left labio-approximal*, and a *right* and a *left palato-approximal* or *lingua-approximal*.

The two large incisors which are situated one on each side of the median line, are termed the central; the other two the lateral incisors, or laterals. The crowns of the upper central incisors are about four lines in breadth, and the laterals three. In the lower jaw, the crowns of the central incisors are only about two lines and a half in width, while the laterals are usually a little wider. But the width of the crowns of all the incisors varies in different individuals.

The length of a superior central incisor is usually about one inch, and that of a lateral eleven lines and a half. In the lower jaw the central incisors are only about ten lines in length; the laterals are about one line and a half longer.

The length of the crown of an incisor is exceedingly variable. That of an upper central varies from four and a half to six lines, and there is the same want of uniformity in this respect with all the rest.

The roots are all single, of a conical form, flattened laterally, and slightly furrowed longitudinally. The enamel is thicker before than behind, and behind than at the sides.

The function of this class of teeth, as their name imports, is to cut the food, and for the performance of this office they are admirably fitted by their shape. As age advances, their edges often become blunted, but the rapidity with which they are

worn away, depends altogether upon the manner in which those of the upper and lower jaw come together.

THE CUSPIDATI.

The *Cuspidati or Canini* (Fig. 23) are situated next to the incisors, and are two to each jaw—one on either side. They somewhat resemble the upper central incisors with their angles rounded. Their crowns are conical, very convex externally, and their palatine surface more uneven, and having a larger tubercle than the incisors. Their roots are also larger, and the longest of all the teeth—and like the incisors, are also single, but have a groove extending from the neck to the extremity, showing a step at forming two roots. A cuspidatus, like an incisor, has four surfaces, and four angles, designated by the names already given.

Fig. 23.



The breadth of the crown of an upper cuspidatus is about four lines—that of a lower is about three and a half; but as in the case of the incisors, the width of the crowns of these teeth is variable. The length of a cuspidatus is greater than that of any other tooth in the dental series—it being about thirteen lines. The breadth of the neck of one of these teeth is about one-third greater in front than behind, and from before backwards it measures about four lines.

The upper cuspidati are called eye teeth; the lower are termed stomach teeth.

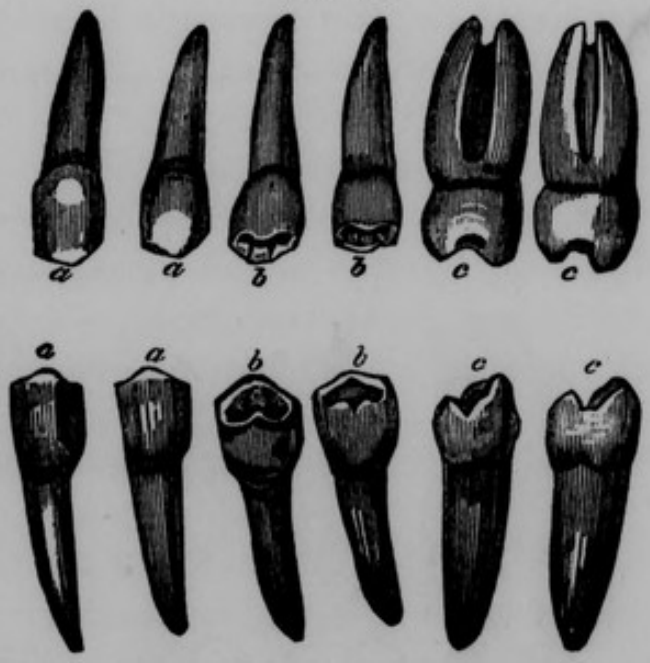
These teeth are for tearing the food, and in some of the carniverous animals where they are very large, not only rend but also hold their prey.

The incisors and cuspidati together are termed the *oral* teeth.

Fig. 23. *a a* Front view of the cuspidati; *b b* Back view; *c c* Side view.

THE BICUSPIDS.

Fig. 24.



The *Bicuspids*, (Fig. 24,) four to each jaw, and two on either side, are next in order to the cuspidati. They are so called from their having two distinct prominences, or cusps, on their friction surfaces. They are also named the small molars. They are thicker from their buccal to their palatine surface than either of the incisors, and are flatter on their sides. The grinding surface of each is surmounted by two conical tubercles, separated by a groove running in the direction of the alveolar arch; the outer is larger and more prominent than the inner. In the lower jaw these tubercles are smaller than in the upper, and on the first, the inner is sometimes wholly wanting.

A bicuspis has five surfaces, to wit: two *approximal*, one *anterior* and one *posterior*, one *buccal*, one *palatine* or *lingual* surface, as the tooth may be in the upper or lower jaw, and one *grinding* surface. It has also four angles, to wit: one *anterior* and one *posterior palato-approximal;* and one *anterior* and one *posterior bucco-approximal* angle.

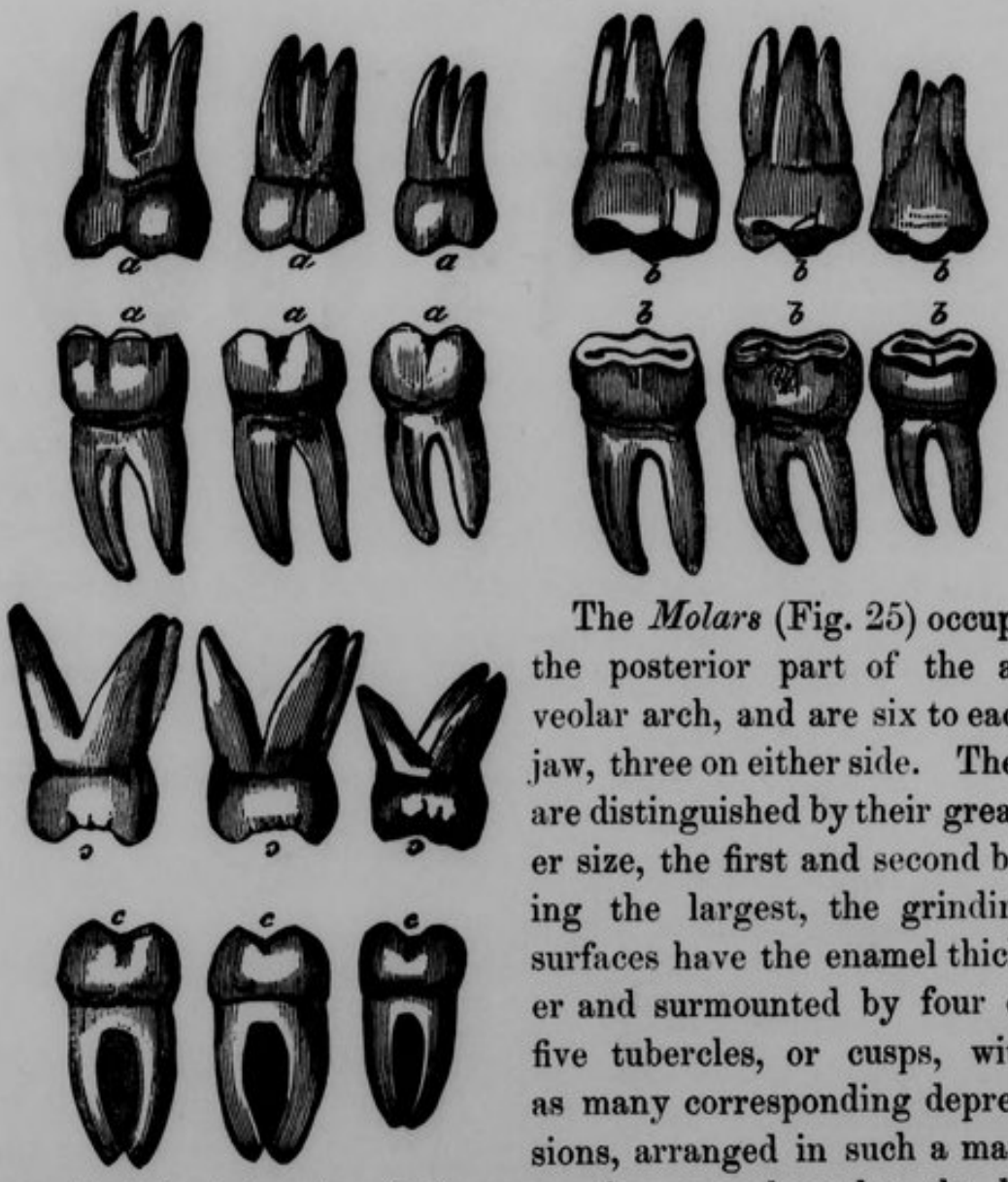
The size of these teeth, like that of the incisors and cuspidati, is variable. The buccal surface of the crown of a superior bicuspis of ordinary size at its broadest part, is about three lines in breadth, while the anterior and posterior approximal surfaces are about four lines. The palatine is not quite as wide as the buccal surface. All the diameters of the crown of a lower bicuspis are usually a little less than those of an upper. The entire length of a bicuspis is ordinarily about eleven lines.

Fig. 24. *a a*, *a a* Exterior view of the bicuspids; *b b*, *b b* Inner view; *c c*, *c c* Side view.

The roots of the bicuspids are, generally, simple, though the groove is deeper than in the cuspidati, and not, unfrequently, terminates in two roots, which have each an opening for the vessels and nerves to enter. The inner root however is always smaller than the outer.

THE MOLARS.

Fig. 25.



The *Molars* (Fig. 25) occupy the posterior part of the alveolar arch, and are six to each jaw, three on either side. They are distinguished by their greater size, the first and second being the largest, the grinding surfaces have the enamel thicker and surmounted by four or five tubercles, or cusps, with as many corresponding depressions, arranged in such a manner that the tubercles of the upper jaw are adapted to the depressions of the lower, and vice versa. A molar, like a bicuspis, has also five surfaces, and five angles, designated by the names already given.

Fig. 25. *a a a, a a a* Outer view of the molars ; *b b b, b b b* Inner view ; *c c c, c c c* Side view.

The upper molars have three roots, sometimes four, and as many as five are occasionally seen—of these roots two are situated exteriorly, almost parallel with each other, and perpendicular; the third root is an acute angle, and looks to the roof of the mouth.

The lower molars have but two roots, the one anterior, the other posterior, are nearly vertical and parallel with each other, and much flattened laterally. The roots of the two first superior molars correspond with the floor of the maxillary sinus, and sometimes protrude into this cavity—and their divergence secures them more firmly in their sockets.

The last molar, called the *dens sapientiæ* or wisdom tooth, is both shorter and smaller than the others, the roots of the upper wisdom tooth are, occasionally, united so as to form but one—while the last molar of the lower jaw is generally single and of a conical form.

The roots of the molar teeth, both of the upper and lower jaw, after diverging, sometimes approach each other, and embracing the intervening bony partition in such a manner as to constitute an obstacle to their extraction.

The bucco-palatine diameter of the crown of an upper molar is usually a little less than the anterio-posterior. In the lower jaw, the bucco-lingual and anterio-posterior diameters are generally about the same.

The crown of the first molar is generally larger than the second, and the second larger than the third or wisdom tooth, and the crown of the last named tooth is always smaller in the upper than in the lower jaw.

The length of a molar tooth varies from eight to twelve and a half to thirteen lines.

The molars and bicuspids together constitute what is termed the buccal teeth.

The use of the molars, as their term signifies, is to triturate or grind the food during mastication, and for which purpose they are admirably adapted by their mechanical arrangement.

ARTICULATION OF THE TEETH.

Fig. 26.



The manner in which the teeth are confined in their sockets, is by a union called *gomphosis*, from the resemblance of this kind of articulation to the way in which a nail is received into a board. Those teeth having but one root, and those with two perpendicular roots depend greatly on their nice adaptation to their sockets for the strength of their articulation.

Those having three or four roots rely mostly on their divergence for their firmness.

But there is another bond of union by the periosteum lining the alveolar cavities, and investing the roots of the teeth, also by the blood vessels entering the apices of the roots; and, finally, by the gums, which will be noticed in another place.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT TEETH.

The temporary and permanent teeth differ in several respects, and on this point I will give Mr. Bell's observations:

"The temporary teeth are, generally speaking, much smaller, than the permanent; of a less firm and solid texture, and their characteristic forms and prominences much less strongly marked. The incisors and cuspidati of the lower jaw are of the same general form as the adult, though much smaller, the edges are more rounded, and they are not much more than half the length of the latter. The molars of the child, on the contrary, are considerably larger than the bicuspids which succeed them, and resemble, very nearly, the permanent molars.

"The roots of these teeth, the molars of the child, are sim-

ilar in number to those of the adult molars, but they are flatter and thinner in proportion, more hollowed on their inner surfaces, and diverge from the neck at a more abrupt angle, forming a sort of arch."

RELATIONS OF THE TEETH OF THE UPPER TO THOSE OF THE LOWER JAW, WHEN THE MOUTH IS CLOSED.

The crowns of the teeth of the upper jaw, generally describe a rather larger arch than those of the lower. The upper incisors and cuspidati, usually shut over and in front of the lower, but, sometimes, they fall plumb upon them, and at other times, though rarely, they come on the inside. The external tubercles or cusps of the superior bicuspids and molars, generally strike on the outside of those of the corresponding inferior teeth. By this beautiful adaptation of the tubercles of the teeth of one jaw to the depressions of those of the other, every part of the grinding surfaces of the organs are brought in immediate contact in the act of mastication, and which operation of the teeth, in consequence, is rendered more perfect than it would be if the teeth came together in any other manner.

The incisors and cuspidati of the upper jaw are broader than the corresponding teeth in the lower; in consequence of this difference in the lateral diameter of the teeth of the two jaws, the central incisors of the upper cover the centrals and about half of the laterals in the lower, while the superior laterals cover the remaining half of the inferior and the anterior half of the adjoining cuspidati. Continuing this peculiar relationship, the upper cuspidati close over the remaining half of the lower and the anterior half of the first inferior bicuspids, while the first superior bicuspids cover the remaining half of the first inferior and the anterior half of the second. In like manner, the second bicuspids of the upper jaw, close over the posterior half of the second in the lower, and the anterior third of the first molars. The first superior molars cover the remaining two-thirds of the first inferior and the anterior third of the second, while the uncovered two-thirds of this last and anterior third of the lower dentes sapientiæ, are covered by the second upper molars. The dentes sapientiæ of the superior maxillary being

usually about one-third less in their anterio-posterior diameter, cover the remaining two-thirds of the corresponding teeth in the inferior. (See Fig. 26.)

Thus, from this arrangement of the teeth, it will be seen, that when the mouth is closed, that each tooth is opposed to two, and, hence, in biting hard substances, and, in mastication, by extending this mutual aid, a power of resistance is given to these organs which they would not otherwise possess. Moreover, as a late English writer, Mr. Tomes, very justly observes, if one, or even two, adjoining teeth should be lost, the corresponding teeth in the other jaw would, to some extent, still act against the contiguous organs, and thus, in some degree, counteract a process, first noticed by that eminent dentist, Dr. L. Koecker, which nature sometimes sets up for the expulsion of such teeth as have lost their antagonists.

The order and time in which both temporary and permanent teeth appear, will be noticed in the chapters on First snd Second Dentition.

ACTIVE ORGANS OF MASTICATION.

The active organs of mastication consist of the muscles attached, principally, to the upper and lower maxillary bones—by these, the various motions concerned in mastication are effected.

They are the temporalis, the masseter, pterygoideus externus, and the pterygoideus internus.

The *Temporal Muscle* (Fig. 27) is seen on the side of the head, and has its origin from the semicircular ridge commencing at the external angular process of the os-frontis, and extending along this and the parietal bones—also from the surfaces below this ridge formed by the frontal and squamous portion of the temporal and sphenoid bones; likewise from the under surface of the temporal aponeurosis, a strong fascia covering this muscle—and is inserted, after having its fibres to converge and passing under the zygoma, into the coronoid process of the lower jaw, surrounding it on every side by a dense strong tendon.

Fig. 27.



The office of this muscle is to bring the two jaws together, as in the cutting and rending of the food.

Fig. 28.



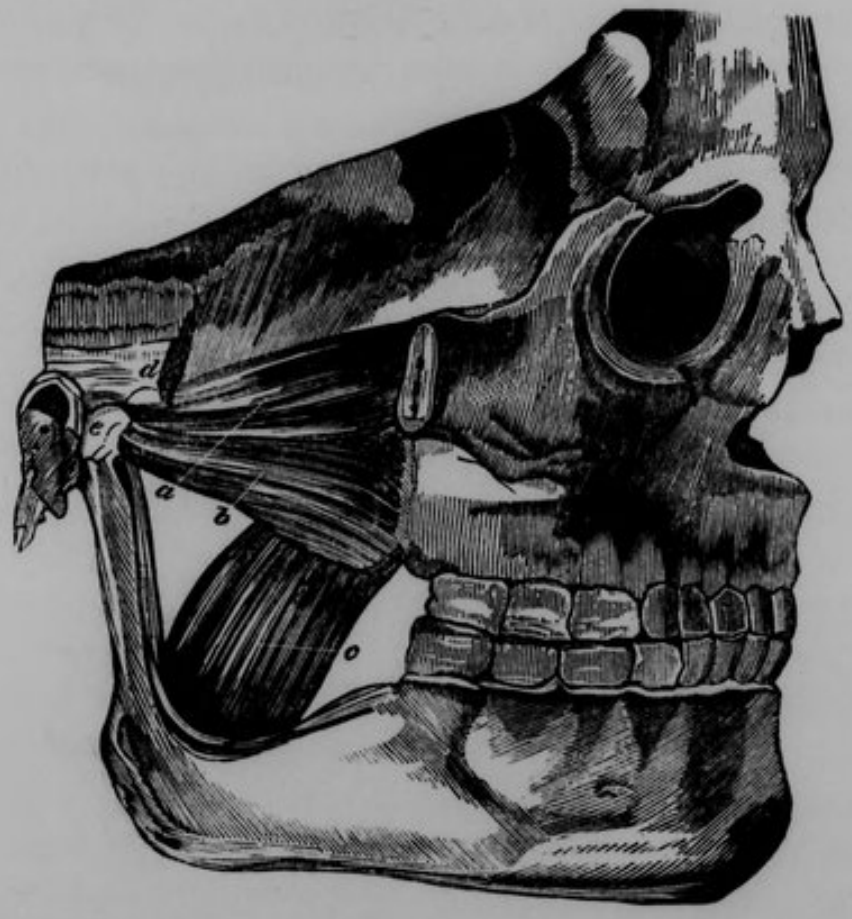
Fig. 27. *a* Side view of the temporal muscle, exposed by the removal of the temporal fascia ; *b* External lateral ligament of the lower jaw ; *c* Insertion of temporal muscle in coronoid process of lower jaw.

Fig. 28. Side view of the muscles of external ear, cranium and face : *a* occipito-frontalis ; *b* Orbicularis palpebrarum ; *c* Pyramidalis nasi ; *d* Compres-

The *Masseter Muscle* (Fig. 28) is seen at the side and back part of the face in front of the meatus externus, and superficially under the skin. It arises by two portions, the one anterior and tendinous from the superior maxilla where it joins the malar bone, the other portions, mostly fleshy, from the inferior edge of the malar bone and the zygomatic arch as far back as the glenoid cavity, and is inserted, tendinous and fleshy, into the external side of the ramus of the jaw and its angle as far up as the coronoid process.

The use of this muscle, when both portions act together, is to close the jaws, if the anterior acts alone the jaw is brought forward, if the posterior, it is drawn backward.

Fig. 29.



Pterygoideus Externus (*a* and *b* Fig. 29) arises from the outer

sor nasi ; *e* and *f* Levator labii superioris alæque nasi ; *g* Zygomaticus minor ; *h* Zygomaticus major ; *i* Masseter muscle ; *j* Buccinator muscle ; *k* Depressor anguli oris ; *l* Depressor labii inferioris ; *m* Orbicularis oris ; *n* Anterior oris ; *o* Superior oris ; *p* Posterior oris ; *q* External lateral ligament ; *r* Deep-seated portion of masseter muscle ; *s* Temporal fascia.

Fig. 29. *a* and *b* Superior and inferior portions pterygoideus externus ; *c* Pterygoideus internus ; *d* Root of zygomatic process ; *e* Condyle.

surface of the external plate of the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone, from the tuberosity of the superior maxilla, also, from the ridge on the sphenoid bone separating the zygomatic from the pterygoid fossa, and is inserted into the inner side of the neck of the lower jaw, and capsular ligament of the articulation.

Pterygoideus Internus arises, tendinous and fleshy, from the inner surface of the pterygoid plate—fills up the greater part of the pterygoid fossa, and is inserted, tendinous and fleshy, in the inner face of the angle of the inferior maxilla and rough surface above this angle.

These two muscles are the great agents in producing the grinding motion of the jaws, and this they do by acting alternately.

The external one is triangular, having its base at the pterygoid process and running outwards and backwards to the neck of the condyle. When the pair act together, the lower jaw is thrown forwards. The internal is strong and thick, placed on the inside of the ramus of the jaw, and running downwards and backwards to the angle. When it and its fellow act together, the jaw is drawn forwards and closed.

CHAPTER THIRD.

ORGANS OF INSALIVATION.

THE organs of insalivation are the salivary glands, six in number—three on each side of the face, named the *Parotid*, *Submaxillary* and *Sublingual*.

These glands are the prime organs in furnishing the salivary fluids to the mouth during the process of mastication.

FIG. 30.



The *Parotid Gland*, (*a* Fig. 30,) so called from its situation near the ear, is the largest of the salivary glands. Its form is very irregular; it fills all that space between the ramus of the inferior maxilla and mastoid process of the temporal bone, and

FIG. 30. View of the salivary glands: *a* Parotid gland; *b* Submaxillary gland; *c* Sublingual glands: *d* Duct of Steno; *e* Duct of Wharton, or submaxillary duct.

as deep back and even behind the styloid process of the same bone. Its extent of surface is from the zygoma above, to the angle of the lower jaw below, and from the mastoid process and meatus externus behind to the masseter muscle in front, overlapping its posterior portion.

This gland is one of the conglomerate order, and consists of numerous small granular bodies connected together by cellular tissue, and each of which may be considered a small gland in miniature, as each is supplied with an artery, vein and secretory duct.

The gland thus formed, presents on its external surface a pale, flat, and somewhat convex appearance.

It is covered by a dense strong fascia extending from the neck, attached to the meatus externus of the ear, and sends countless processes into every part of the gland separating its lobules, and conducting the vessels through its substance.

The use of this gland is to secrete or separate from the blood the greater part of the saliva furnished the mouth. As the parotid is, however, on the outside, and at some little distance from the mouth, it is furnished with a duct to convey its fluid into this cavity—this duct is called the duct of *Steno*, or the parotid duct.

It is formed of the excretory ducts of all the granules composing this gland, which, successively uniting together, at last form one common duct.

The duct of Steno commences at the anterior part of the gland and passes ever the masseter muscle, on a line drawn from the lobe of the ear to the middle part of the upper lip, then passes through a quantity of soft adipose matter, and, finally, enters the mouth by passing through the buccinator muscle and mucous membrane opposite the second molaris of the upper jaw.

The *Submaxillary* (*b* Fig. 30) is the next in size of the salivary glands. It is situated under and along the inferior edge of the body of the lower jaw, and separated from the parotid simply by a process of fascia between the two.

It is of an oval form, pale color, and like the parotid, consists in its structure of small granulations held together by cellular

tissue, and each having a small excretory duct which, successively uniting with one another, finally forms one common duct, to wit: the duct of Wharton, which passes above the mylo-hyoid muscle, and running forwards and inwards enters the mouth below the tip of the tongue at a papilla seen on either side of the frænum linguæ.

The use of this gland is the same as the parotid, to secrete the saliva, and its duct is the route by which it is conducted into the mouth.

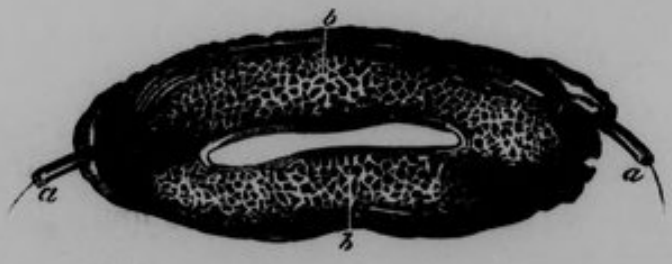
The *Sublingual Glands* (*c* Fig. 30) are the last of the salivary order, and the smallest in size.

They are situated beneath the anterior and lateral parts of the tongue, covered by the mucous membrane, and resting on the mylo-hyoid muscle.

They, like the two glands just described, consist of a granular structure with excretory ducts, which, however, do not unite into one common duct, but enter the cavity of the mouth by many ducts, whose openings are through the mucous membrane between the tongue and inferior cuspid and bicuspid teeth.

Their office is the same as the parotid and submaxillary.

Fig. 31



The *Mucous Glands*, (Fig. 31.) Besides the glands furnishing the saliva, there is another series of much smaller size, called the mucous glands. They are simply the little crypts, follicles, or depressions every where found in the mucous membrane of the mouth, and are named, according to their situation, the glan-

Fig 31. A view of inner side of the lips, with the mucous membrane removed so as to show the labial and buccal glands: *a a* Ducts of Steno; *b b* Labial glands.

dulæ labiales, glandulæ buccales, &c., &c. The lips, cheeks and palate are also furnished with glands, which present the true salivary structure.

The use of these glands is to furnish the mucus of the mouth, which they pour into this cavity, by single orifices, opening every where on its surface.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

ORGANS OF DEGLUTITION.

THE *Organs of Deglutition* succeed next in the physiological order, and are the last in the series belonging to the mouth as concerned in the primary stages of digestion.

They consist of,

1. The Pharnyx,
2. The Soft Palate, and
3. The Tongue.

This class of organs, as the term implies, is concerned in swallowing, or conveying the food, after having undergone the process of mastication, and become properly imbued with the salivary fluids, into the œsophagus, to be thence conducted into the stomach for the after stages of digestion.

The *Pharynx* (Fig. 31) is a large musculo-membranous bag, opening in front, and situated behind the mouth, the nares, and soft palate. It is connected above by strong aponeurosis to the cribriform process of the occipital bone, and extends below as far as the fourth or fifth cervical vertebra—behind, it is attached to the bodies of the vertebræ, and laterally, it is connected to the expanded cornua of the hyoid bone.

By these several attachments, it forms a constant and unoccupied cavity, in which may be seen seven openings leading from it in various directions. The two posterior nares are at the upper and nasal portion; on each side of these, and at the back part of the inferior spongy bones, are the two eustachian tubes leading to the ear. In front and below the velum is the opening into the mouth, and still lower down the openings for the glottis and the commencement of the œsophagus.

Fig. 32.



The *Muscles of the Pharynx* are four in number, namely:

1. The Superior—constrictor pharyngis superior.
2. The Middle—constrictor pharyngis medius.
3. Inferior constrictor of the pharynx.
4. Stylo pharyngis.

The constrictors are seen on the posterior part of the pharynx after removing the cervical vertebræ, and present very much the appearance of one continued sheet of muscle.

The *Superior Constrictor* (*a a* Fig. 32) arises from the cuneiform process of the occipital bone, from the lower part of the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone, from the pterygo-maxillary ligament, and from the posterior third of the mylo-

Fig. 32. Front view of the muscles of the palate, and posterior portion of pharynx; *a a* Superior constrictor of the pharynx; *b b* Middle constrictor of the pharynx; *c c* Inferior constrictor of the pharynx; *d d* Levator palati; *e* Uvula; *f f* Anterior half arch, containing the constrictor isthmi faucium muscles; *g* Tensor, or circumflexus palati.

hyoid ridge of the lower jaw, near the root of the last molar tooth. It is inserted with its fellow into the middle tendinous line on the back of the pharynx.

The *Middle Constrictor* of the pharynx (*b b* Fig. 32) arises from the appendix and cornu of the os-hyoides, and from the thyro-hyoid ligament—its fibres ascend, run transversely and descend, giving a triangular appearance—the upper ones overlap the superior constrictor, while the lower are beneath the inferior, and the whole pass back to be inserted into the middle tendinous line of the pharynx.

The *Inferior Constrictor* of the pharynx (*c c* Fig. 32) arises from the side of the thyroid cartilage and its inferior cornu, and from the side of the cricoid cartilage, and is inserted with its fellow in the middle line on the back of the pharynx.

This is the largest of the constrictor muscles, and overlaps the constrictor medius.

The action of all these muscles is, to lessen the cavity of the pharynx, and thus compel the food to take the downward direction into the œsophagus. The pharynx is lined by mucous membrane.

The *Stylo Pharyngeus* arises from the root of the styloid process, and is inserted into the side of the pharynx and corner of the os-hyoides and thyroid cartilage. It is a large and narrow muscle, and gets to the pharynx between the upper and middle constrictors. Its use is to elevate and draw forward the pharynx, to receive the food from the mouth, also to raise the larynx.

THE SOFT PALATE.

The *Soft Palate* (*e* Fig. 32) is a movable curtain, composed of mucous membrane and enclosing several muscles. It is situated at the back part of the mouth between this cavity and the pharynx, is connected above to the posterior edge of the hard palate, and laterally to the side of the tongue and pharynx.

By this arrangement, the soft palate is made a portion of a lunated or arched form between the cavity of the mouth and the pharynx.

In the centre of this arch an oblong body is suspended, called the uvula, which divides the soft palate into lateral half arches, that pass from the uvula on either side to the root of the tongue.

There is also seen passing from the uvula on each side to the pharynx, two other arches, which, from being behind the first, are called the posterior lateral half arches.

Between the anterior and posterior lateral half arches on either side there is a cavity containing the tonsil glands.

This cavity is the fauces, and the opening between the anterior lateral half arches is the isthmus of the fauces.

The muscles of the palate are four pair, and one single one, to wit:

1. The Levator Palati.
2. The Tensor or Circumflexus Palati.
3. Constrictor Isthmi-Faucium, or Palato-Glossus.
4. Palato Pharyngeus,
5. Azygos-Uvulæ is the single muscle.

FIG. 33.



The *Levator Palati* (*b b* Fig. 33) arises from the point of the petrous bone and adjoining portion of the eustachian tube, descends and is inserted into the soft palate. Its use is to raise the palate.

The *Tensor Circumflexus* or *Palati* arises from the base of the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone, from the eustachain tube, descends in contact with the internal pterygoid muscle, to the hamulus, round which it winds, and is inserted into the soft palate where it expands and joins its fellow. Its office is to spread the palate.

FIG. 33. Posterior view of the muscles of the soft palate; *a* Roof of the mouth or hard palate; *b b* Levator palati; *c* Basilar portion of sphenoid bone; *d d* Eustachian tubes; *e* Tensor or circumflexus palati; *f* Azygos-uvulæ; *g g* Palato-pharyngeus, in posterior half arch.

Constrictor Isthmi-Faucium occupies the anterior lateral half arches of the palate; it arises from the side of the tongue near its root, and is inserted in the velum near the uvula.

It draws the velum down and closes the opening into the fauces.

Palato-Pharyngeus occupies the posterior lateral half arches of the palate, and extends from the soft palate behind, near the uvula as its origin, and is inserted into the pharynx, between the middle and lower constrictors and into the thyroid cartilage.

Its use is to draw down the velum and raise the pharynx.

Azygos-Uvulæ arises from the posterior spine of the palate bones at the termination of the palate suture, runs along the central line of the soft palate, and ends in the point of the uvula. It raises and shortens the uvula.

It is thus seen that the various muscles of the soft palate are all concerned, more or less, in conducting the food into the pharyngeal cavity. The elevators raise the palate, and at the same time protect the posterior nares from regurgitation of the food, while the tensor puts it on the stretch—and after having passed the velum, the constrictor isthmi-faucium and palato-pharyngeus draw the palate down, and thus close the opening into the mouth, after which the food, as already mentioned, is grasped by the constrictor muscles of the pharynx, and conveyed into the œsophagus.

The *Tonsils* are two bodies, each about the size of an almond, seen at the root of the tongue on its side, and occupying the cavity between the anterior and posterior half arches. They consist of a congeries of mucous glands, forming somewhat of an oval body, whose enlargement is a frequent obstacle to deglutition, and by their locality near the mouths of the eustachian tubes a frequent cause of obstruction and deafness.

THE TONGUE

Fig. 34.



The Tongue is a very complicated organ, for it consists of a great variety of parts, and performs a great variety of functions, and although we have arranged it here as one of the organs of deglutition, it is, nevertheless, a glandular organ, to secrete; a sentient organ, to feel and taste; and, likewise, an intellectual organ, to assist in producing speech.

The Tongue is divided into its apex, body and root—the apex is the anterior loose and sharp portion—the root, which is thin, is attached to the os-hyoides and is posterior—while the body, which occupies the centre, is thick and broad—it is confined in its situation, by reflections of the mucous membrane, to be noticed hereafter.

The upper surface is rough from numerous eminences called the papillæ—which are distinguished into: 1. The Lenticular; 2. The Fungiform; 3. The Conical; and, 4. Filliform papillæ.

The *Lenticular* are the largest in size, situated at the root of the tongue, are nine or more in number, and arranged after the manner of the letter A, with the concavity looking forwards.

They are, generally, spherical in shape, and consist simply of mucous follicles like those of the lips, palate, &c., &c. Behind these is observed a depression called the foramen cecum.

Fig. 34. A front view of the upper surface of the tongue and palatine arch; *a a* Posterior lateral half arches, containing the palato-pharingei muscles and the tonsils; *b* Epiglottis cartilage; *c c* Ligament and mucous membrane, extending from root of tongue to base of epiglottis cartilage; *d* Foramen cecum or central one of lenticular; *e* Lenticular papillæ; *f* Filliform papillæ; *g* Conical papillæ, scattered over whole surface of the tongue; *h* Point of tongue; *i i* Fungiform papillæ seen on borders of the tongue.

The *Fungiform* are next in size, and more numerous—they are found near the borders of the tongue, and present a round head supported on a thin pedicle.

The *Conical* are still more numerous, and are seen scattered over the whole surface of the tongue, reaching from the lenticular to the apex. They are minute and tapering, and resemble small cones.

The *Filliform* papillæ are the smallest of all, and are said to occupy the intervals between the others, and are also found at the apex of the tongue.

All these papillæ, except the lenticular, from their being so freely supplied with mucus and blood vessels, and having a peculiar arrangement, belong essentially to the function of taste.

The great body of the tongue, however, is muscular in its structure, and its muscles are as follows:

1. The Stylo-Glossus.
2. Hyo-Glossus.
3. Genio-Hyo-Glossus.
4. Lingualis.

These constitute the muscles proper of the tongue. But there are some others which act more or less indirectly on the tongue and lower jaw. They are

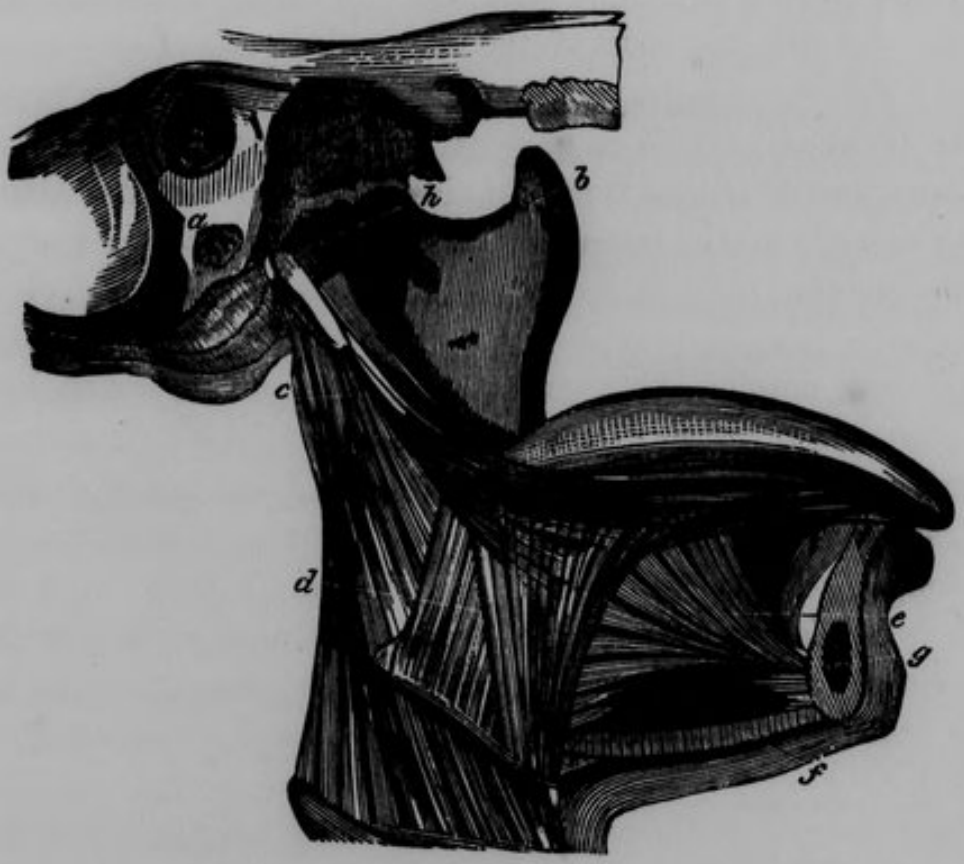
1. The Digastricus,
2. The Mylo-Hyoideus, and
3. The Geno-Hyoideus.

The *Stylo-Glossus* arises from the point of the styloid process and stylo-maxillary ligament. It is inserted into the side of the tongue near its root, its fibres running to the tip.

The *Hyo-Glossus*—a thin, broad, quadrilateral muscle, has its *origin* from the body, cornu, and appendix, of the os-hyoides, and is *inserted* into the side of the tongue, forming the greater part of its bulk.

The *Genio-Hyo-Glossus* is a triangular muscle, situated on the inside of the last, and having its *origin* from the upper tubercle on the posterior symphysis of the lower jaw, and its insertion into the body of the os-hyoides and the whole length of the tongue from its base to its apex. The fibres of this muscle radiate in various directions through the tongue.

Fig. 35.



The *Lingualis* has its *origin* on the under surface of the tongue, extending from its base to the apex, and so intermingling with the other muscles as to be considered rather a part of them than a distinct one.

The *Digastricus*, as its name implies, consists of two bellies united in the middle by a tendon which passes through the stylo-hyoid muscle, and is attached to the hyoid bone. Of the

Fig. 35. Lateral view of tongue and its principal muscles : *a* Mastoid process ; *b* Coronoid process ; *c* Stylo-glossus muscle ; *d* Hyo-glossus muscle ; *e* Genio-hyo-glossus muscle ; *f* Genio-hyoid muscle ; *g* Section of lower jaw at symphysis ; *h* Styloid process.

two bellies, the one is posterior, and occupies the fossa at the end of the mastoid process of the temporal bone—the other is anterior, and extending from the os-hyoides to the base of the lower jaw by the side of the symphysis.

The *Mylo-Hyoideus* forms the floor of the mouth and is a broad plane of muscular fibres, having its *origin* from the myloid ridge on the posterior surface of the inferior maxilla, and its *insertion* into the body of the os-hyoides.

The *Genio-Hyoideus* is a short, round muscle beneath the last, and has its *origin* from the lower tubercle on the back of the symphysis of the lower jaw, and *insertion* into the body of the os-hyoides.

All these muscles, by their separate or combined action, have the power of throwing the tongue into every possible variety of position and motion as concerned in the functions of deglutition, suction and speech. They can elevate, depress or turn the tongue to either side—they can protrude it from the mouth or draw it back to the pharynx—make its upper surface or dorsum either convex or concave, and, finally, can turn the tip, as is well known, either upwards, downwards, backwards, or laterally.

THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE LINING THE MOUTH.

The whole interior cavity of the mouth, palate, pharynx and lips, are covered by mucous membrane—and forming folds or duplicatures at different points, called fræni or bridles. Beginning at the margin of the lower lip, this membrane can be traced lining its posterior surface, and from thence is reflected on the anterior face of the lower jaw, where it forms a fold opposite the symphysis of the chin, the frænum of the lower lip; it is now traced to the alveolar ridge, covering it in front, and passing over its posterior surface, where it enters the mouth. Here it is reflected from the posterior symphysis of the lower jaw to the under surface of the tongue, where it forms a fold or bridle

called the *frænum linguæ*. It now spreads over the tongue, covering its dorsum and sides to the root, from whence it is reflected to the epiglottis, forming another fold; from this point it can be followed, entering the glottis and lining the larynx, trachea, &c., &c.

In the same way, commencing at the upper lip, it is reflected to the upper jaw, and at the upper central incisors forming a fold, the *frænum* of the upper lip—from this it passes over the alveolar ridge to the roof of the mouth, which it completely covers, and extends as far back as the posterior edge of the palate bones—from this it is reflected downwards over the soft palate, or, more strictly speaking, the soft palate is formed by the duplicature of this membrane at this point, between the folds of which are placed the muscles of the palate already described.

From the palate it is traced upwards and continuous with the membrane lining the nares, and downwards with the same lining the pharynx, œsophagus, stomach and intestinal canal.

The mucous membrane, after entering the nostrils and lining the roof, floor, septum nasi, and turbinated bones, enters the maxillary sinus between the middle and lower spongy bones, and lines the whole of this great and important cavity of the superior maxilla.

Many mucous glands or follicles, already enumerated, are scattered over the whole of this membrane, and furnish the mouth with its mucus.

As this membrane passes over the superior surface of the alveolar ridge of both jaws, its texture becomes changed, and receives the name of gums.

THE GUMS.

The gums are composed of thick, dense, mucous membrane, adhering to the periosteum of the alveolar processes, and closely surrounding the necks of the teeth, where they are reflected upon themselves, forming a free border or margin, presenting a scalloped or festooned appearance. The longest portions are situated in the interdental spaces between the teeth. The reflected portion unites with the periosteum of the roots at the

necks of the teeth, and becomes continuous with it. The texture of the gums differs materially from that of the membrane of which they are composed. Externally the texture of the gums is very similar to this membrane, but internally their structure is fibro-cartilaginous. The gums, when in a healthy state, vary in thickness from one-third to three-fourths of a line. This membrane lines the cavities of the mouth and nose, the maxillary and frontal sinuses, the whole alimentary canal, and is a continuation of the skin covering the outer surface of the body. From the change of structure, however, which it undergoes after entering the mouth, it may be regarded as an entirely different membrane.

The gums are remarkable for their insensibility and hardness in the healthy state, but exhibit great tenderness, upon the slightest injury when diseased.

In the infant state of the gums, the central line of both dental arches present a white, firm, cartilaginous ridge, which gradually becomes thinner as the teeth advance—and in old age, after the teeth drop out, the gums again resume somewhat their former infantile condition, showing, "second-childhood."

The gums being endowed with a high degree of vascularity, indicate very correctly, as the author has stated in another part of the work, the state of the constitutional health.

THE ALVEOLO-DENTAL PERIOSTEUM.

This membrane may be properly noticed here, as it is considered by some as continuous with the gums. It lines the *alveolar cavities* or sockets of the teeth, covers the roots of each—is attached to the gums at the necks, and to the blood-vessels and nerves where they enter the roots of the teeth at their apices; and, further, Mr. Thomas Bell believes it is traced into the cavities of the teeth, forming their lining membrane, and continuous with, or the same as that of, the pulp.

The original sac for the pulp has been stated in another place to consist of two membranes, an outer and an inner—these are attached to the gums, and when the teeth come through these membranes and the gums, the remaining part of the sac, espe-

cially its outer coat, is supposed by some to constitute the alveolo-dental periosteum, and to be continuous with the gums—while, on the other hand, Mr. Bell believes both membranes of the sac wholly absorbed, and that the true alveolo-dental periosteum is the same as the periosteum covering the upper and lower maxillary bones, and continues into the alveolar cavities, lining their parietes, and thence reflected on the roots of the teeth.

It matters little whether this membrane be a continuation of the gums, the remains of the pulp sac, or the extension of the periosteum of the maxillary bones into the alveolar cavities, since the great practical truth still remains the same, that there is a membrane lining the alveolar cavities and investing the roots of the teeth, and that this membrane is fibrous, and constitutes the bond of union between the alveolar cavities and the roots of the teeth.

The *Dental Ligament*, so recently discovered by a dentist, formerly of Virginia, but now of Philadelphia, as attached to the necks of the teeth, and confirmed, I am sorry to add, by Dr. Goddard, bears no more resemblance to true ligament than the nails do to bone. It consists of the fibres that unite the alveolar to the dental periosteum, and which, according to the last named gentleman, "are very numerous just at the margin of the alveolus."

CHAPTER FIFTH.

BLOOD-VESSELS OF THE MOUTH.

Fig. 36.



The arteries that supply the mouth come from the external carotid. This is a division of the common carotid which arises

Fig. 36. A view of the arteries supplying one side of the mouth and face; *a a* External carotid artery; *b* Inferior maxillary bone with the anterior plate removed so as to expose the roots of the teeth and the inferior dental artery; *c* Posterior mental foramen, through which the inferior dental artery passes; *d* Anterior mental foramen, where the same artery comes out to supply the muscles of the lower lip; *e e* Superior maxillary bone with the lower part of the anterior and outer wall removed, showing the arteries going to the roots of the teeth and the cavity of the antrum; *f* Infra-orbitar foramen, through which passes the infra-orbitar artery; *h* Nasal process of superior maxillary bone; *i* Pterygoideus internus muscle; *j* Angle of inferior maxillary bone; *k* Orbit of the eye; *l* Superior thyroid artery; *m m* Facial artery; *n* Terminating branch

on the right from the arteriora-innominata, and on the left from the subclavian—after passing up the neck on either side along the course of the sterno-cleido mastoid muscles, it divides on a level with the top of the thyroid cartilage into its two great branches, to wit, the external and internal carotid arteries.

The *Internal Carotid Artery* has a tortuous course, is first to the outside and behind the external carotid—then ascends in front of the vertebral column by the side of the pharynx and behind the digastric and styloid muscles to the foramen caroticum in the petrous portion of the temporal bone—thence it traverses the canal in this bone and enters the brain, supplying it with the most of its vessels—not giving any to the mouth.

The *External Carotid* (*a a* Fig. 36) extends from the top of the larynx to the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw; it is at first anterior and to the inside of the internal carotid, soon gets to the outside, then passes under the digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles and lingual nerve, becomes imbedded in the parotid gland, and finally terminates at the point indicated in the temporal and internal maxillary arteries.

The branches of this artery supply all the organs belonging to the four primary stages of digestion, namely, those of *Prehension*, *Mastication*, *Insalivation*, and *Deglutition*.

THE ARTERIES OF PREHENSION.

These belong, principally, to the lips, and come chiefly from the facial artery.

The *Facial Artery* is the third branch of the external carotid. It ascends to the submaxillary gland, behind which it passes on to the bone of the lower jaw—thence it goes in front of the

of the lingual artery; *o* Termination of external carotid into the temporal and internal maxillary branches: *p* Temporal artery; *q* Internal maxillary artery; *r r* Inferior dental artery; *s* Deep temporal branch; *t* Transverse artery of the face: *u u* Muscular branches; *v* Alveolar branch; *w* Posterior dental branch; *x* Terminal branch of infra-orbitar artery; *y* Nasal branch of the facial; *z* Submental branch.

masseter muscle to the angles of the mouth, and, finally, terminates at the side of the nose by anastomosing with the ophthalmic arteries.

In its course it gives off the submental, inferior labial, superior and inferior coronary arteries—which mainly supply the elevators, depressors, and circular muscles of the mouth, or those agents concerned in the first steps of digestion—the prehension of the food.

THE ARTERIES OF MASTICATION.

These come from the internal maxillary and the temporal—the two terminating branches of the external carotid.

The *Internal Maxillary Artery* commences in the substance of the parotid gland—then goes horizontally behind the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw to the pterygoid muscles, between which it passes, and then proceeds forwards to the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone—from thence it takes a vertical direction upwards between the temporal and external pterygoid muscles to the zygomatic fossa, where it again becomes horizontal, and, finally, ends in the spheno-maxillary fossa by dividing into several branches.

Those branches of the internal maxillary supplying the passive organs of mastication, or the superior and inferior maxillary bones, with the teeth, are

1. Inferior Maxillary or Dental Artery,
2. The Alveolar or Superior Dental,
3. The Infra-Orbital,
4. The Superior Palatine, and
5. The Spheno-Palatine.

The *Inferior Dental Artery* enters the posterior mental foramen of the lower jaw, passes along the dental canal beneath the roots of the teeth—sending up a twig through the aperture of each to the pulps of the teeth as it passes along, and, finally, escapes at the anterior mental foramen on the face—a branch of it, however, continues forwards to supply the incisors.

The *Superior Dental Artery* winds around the maxillary tuberosity from behind forwards, sending off twigs through the posterior dental canals which supply the molars, and go to the maxillary sinus—while the main branch is continued forward, furnishing the gums.

The *Infra-Orbitar Artery* enters the infra-orbitar canal, traverses its whole extent, and comes out at the foramen of the same name, upon the face; just before it emerges it sends down the anterior dental canal a twig for the incisors and cuspidati.

The *Superior Palatine* descends behind the superior maxillary bone, passes through the posterior palatine canal to the roof of the mouth, and supplies the palate, gums and velum pendulum palati. It also sends off a small branch through the foramen incisivum to the nose.

The *Spheno-Palatine* entering the back part of the nose through the spheno-palatine foramen, is distributed upon the pituitary membrane.

The arteries supplying the *active organs of mastication*, to wit: the temporal, masseter, and pterygoid muscles, are,

The temporal, anterior and posterior deep—the pterygoid and masseteric branches of the internal maxillary artery—while the *temporal artery*, which is the other terminating branch of the external carotid, gives off the middle temporal artery, to the temporal muscle, and a branch, the transverse artery, to the masseter.

The *Temporal Artery* begins in the substance of the parotid gland at the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw, mounts over the zygoma in front of the meatus, and ascends about an inch or more when it divides into its anterior and posterior branches.

THE ARTERIES OF INSALIVATION.

These belong to the salivary glands. The parotid is supplied by the posterior auricular, a branch of the external carotid,

and by the transverse artery of the temporal. The submaxillary is supplied by the facial and the sublingual by a branch of the lingual artery.

THE ARTERIES OF DEGLUTITION.

The pharynx, soft palate and tongue are the organs supplied by these arteries.

The *Arteries of the Pharynx* are the superior and inferior pharyngeal and inferior palatine.

The superior is a branch of the internal maxillary, and is spent upon the upper part of the pharynx, and sends a branch through the pterygo-palatine foramen to supply the arch of the palate and contiguous parts. The inferior is a branch of the external carotid, and in its course upwards towards the basis of the cranium, it sends several branches to the pharynx and contiguous deep-seated parts. The inferior palatine is given off by the facial.

The *Arteries of the Soft-palate* are,

The superior palatine, inferior palatine, and inferior pharyngeal branches.

The *Superior Palatine* comes off from the internal maxillary behind the orbit in the pterygo-maxillary fossa, descends in the posterior palatine canal, comes out on the back part of the roof of the palate through a foramen of the same name, and proceeds inwards and forwards, supplying the soft palate and mucous membrane.

The *Inferior Palatine* is a branch of the facial, and passes up between the stylo-glossus and stylo-pharyngeus muscles to the tonsil and soft palate. It also anastomoses with the superior palatine branch of the internal maxillary artery. The inferior pharyngeal is a branch of the external carotid.

The *Arteries of the Tongue* are the *Lingual.* These arteries, are on either side, arise from the external carotid, runs forwards

above and parallel with the os-hyoides—then ascend to the under surface of the tongue as far as the tip, under the name of the *ranine* arteries. They give off numerous branches in their course, supplying every part of the tongue.

The mucous membrane of the mouth is principally supplied by the anterior and posterior palatine, and facial arteries. The gums by the alveolar and submental branches.

THE VEINS.

The veins correspond so nearly, both in name and course with the arteries, that a description of them would be only a repetition of what has been said—suffice it therefore to observe, that there are two veins to every artery, and that they are mostly collected into a common trunk at the angle of the jaw, called the external jugular vein, which passes down the neck in the course of the fibres of the platysma muscle, and terminate in the subclavian vein at the posterior edge of the sterno-mastoid muscle.

The office of the veins is to return the blood back to the heart.

The *Branches* of the *External* carotid artery as they arise in numerical order, are as follows:

1. The Superior Thyroid.
2. The Lingual.
3. The Facial.
4. The Inferior Pharyngeal.
5. Occipital.
6. Posterior Auricular.
7. Temporal.
8. Internal Maxillary.

The internal maxillary, being the great artery of the mouth, gives off branches in the following order:

Origin behind the neck of the Condyle.
1. A Tympanic Branch,
2. Inferior Dental,
3. The Greater Meningeal,
4. Lesser Meningeal.

Origin between Pterygoid Muscles.	5. Posterior Deep Temporal Artery, 6. Masseteric, 7. Pterygoid Arteries.
Origin Sygomatic fossa.	8. Buccal Artery, 9. Anterior Deep Temporal, 10. Alveolar or Superior Dental, 11. Inferior Orbitar.
Origin Spheno-Maxillary fossa.	12. Pterygoid or Vidian, 13. Superior Pharyngeal, 14. Superior Palatine, 15. Spheno-Palatine Artery.

CHAPTER SIXTH.

THE NERVES OF THE MOUTH.

Fig. 37.



The nerves supplying the mouth belong to the fifth pair, and the portio-dura of the seventh or facial nerve.

Fig. 37. The fifth nerve with its branches: *a* The inferior maxillary bone; *b* Posterior dental foramen where the inferior dental nerve enters to supply the teeth; *c* Inferior dental nerve; *d* Gustatory branch of fifth nerve; *e* Muscular branch of inferior maxillary nerve; *f* Ophthalmic nerve; *g* Infra-orbitar foramen where infra-orbitar nerve comes out; *h* Terminating branches of inferior dental nerve; *i* Casserian ganglion; *j* Internal view of maxillary sinus; *k* Superior maxillary nerve, just where it is given off from the ganglion; *l* Posterior dental branch of superior maxillary nerve; *m* Anterior dental branch of inferior dental nerve; *n* Terminating branches of infra-orbitar nerve; *o* Nasal branch of ophthalmic nerve; *p* Frontal branch of ophthalmic nerve.

The *Fifth* (Trigemini) are the largest of the cranial nerves, and give sensibility to all the organs concerned in the primary stages of digestion.

And further, this nerve will be found to be a compound nerve, having also motor filaments, and thereby giving motion as well as sensation.

It is first seen at the side of the pons varolii near its junction with the crura-cerebelli—but its origin is much deeper and further back.

It arises by two fasciculi which can be traced down to the spinal chord, and coming from its anterior and posterior ends. It is hence considered a spinal nerve, and as such called the cranial spinal nerve.

These two fasciculi, the one anterior and the other posterior, constitute the fifth nerve, which consists of eighty or one hundred filaments that pass forwards and outwards in a canal formed of dura mater to a depression on the anterior surface of the petrous bone.

At this point it spreads into a ganglion, called the Casserian ganglion, on the under surface of which is seen the anterior root, but having no connection with the ganglion, and can be traced on, as will be presently shown, to the inferior maxillary nerve.

From the ganglion of Casser proceed three primary branches, to wit:

1. The Ophthalmic.
2. Superior Maxillary.
3. Inferior Maxillary Nerves.

The *Ophthalmic Nerve* is a short trunk that goes into the orbit through the foramen lacerum superius, and divides into three principal branches, namely:

1. The Frontal,
2. The Lachrymal, and
3. The Nasal.

The *Frontal* passes along the roof of the orbit to the supra-orbitar foramen, through which it passes, and is then called the

supra-orbitar nerve, and is spent on the muscles and integuments of the forehead. It gives off several branches in its course.

The *Lachrymal*, as the term implies, goes to the lachrymal gland, taking the outward direction, and sending branches in its course to the upper eye-lid, conjunctiva and other parts.

The *Nasal* takes its direction along the inner side of the orbit to the anterior ethmoidal foramen, through which it passes into the cranium, on the upper surface of the cribriform plate of the ethmoidal bone, descends by the side of the crista-galli through a slit-like opening into the nose, and there terminates by filaments, which are spent upon the septum, mucous membrane, anterior nares, &c., &c. It sends off several branches in its course, one in particular to the lenticular ganglion at the bottom of the eye, others to the caruncula lachrymalis, lachrymal sac, conjunctiva, &c., &c., but as these do not belong to the mouth and dental apparatus, we will pass to the second great division of the fifth, to wit:

THE SUPERIOR MAXILLARY NERVE.

This nerve proceeds from the middle of the Casserian ganglion, passes through the foramen rotundum of the sphenoid bone, into the pterygo-maxillary fossa—here it enters the canal of the floor of the orbit, the infra-orbitar canal, traverses its whole extent, and emerges on the face at the infra-orbitar foramen, where it terminates in numerous filaments in the muscles and integuments of the upper lip and cheek.

The superior maxillary nerve supplies the upper jaw, and gives off many important branches, which are as follows:

In the pterygo-maxillary fossa two branches descend to a small reddish body called the ganglion of Meckel, or the spheno-palatine ganglion, which is situated on the outer side of the nasal or vertical plate of the palate bone.

From this ganglion proceed three branches:

1. An Inferior, Descending, or Palatine Nerve.
2. An Internal, Lateral Nasal, or Spheno-palatine.
3. A Posterior, Pterygoid, or Vidian.

The *Palatine Nerve* descends through the posterior palatine canal, and comes out at the posterior palatine foramen, along with an artery of the same name, and supplies with filaments the soft palate, uvula, tonsils, the roof of the mouth, and the inner alveoli and gums.

The *Lateral Nasal* enters the nose through the spheno-palatine foramen, and divides into several filaments, which enters the mucous membrane covering the upper and lower turbinated bones, and one long branch can be traced along the septum nasi as far as the foramen incisivum, where it meets the anterior palatine branches in a ganglion called the naso-palatine.

The *Vidian*, or *Pterygoid*, passes backwards from the ganglion of Meckel through the pterygoid canal at the root of the pterygoid process—then enters the cranium through the foramen lacerum anterius, and divides into two branches, one of which enters the carotid canal and unites with the sympathetic branches of the superior cervical ganglion—thus connecting this ganglion with the ganglion of Meckel.

The other, the proper vidian nerve, enters the vidian foramen or hiatus fallopii on the petrous bone, joins the portio-dura nerve, accompanies this as far as the back part of the tympanum, then leaves it, enters the cavity of the tympanum, and receives here the name of *Corda Tympani.* It leaves this cavity, after supplying the several parts, by the glenoid fissure, now joins the gustatory nerve, continues with it to the submaxillary gland, where it parts and is lost in the submaxillary ganglion—which is situated at the posterior part of the submaxillary gland.

This exceedingly intricate course of the vidian nerve is interesting from the number of communications which it establishes between different and distant parts—for it unites the ganglion of Meckel with the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and both with the submaxillary ganglion—it also connects the superior and inferior maxillary nerves to one another and the portio-dura.

The *Superior Maxillary Nerve* gives off next in the spheno-maxillary fossa:

1. The Orbital.
2. The Posterior Dental Nerves.

The *Orbital* enters the orbit through the spheno-maxillary fissure, and then sends off a *malar* and *temporal* branch, which pass out through the malar bone, the first supplying the cheek, the latter accompanying the temporal artery to the integuments of the side of the head.

The *Posterior Dental Nerves*, three or four in number, descend on the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone, and enter the posterior dental canals to supply the molar teeth—one branch penetrates the antrum and courses along the outer wall, anastomosing with the anterior dental nerves—while another runs along the alveolar border supplying the gums.

The superior maxillary nerve now enters the infra-orbitar canal, and becomes the *infra-orbitar nerve*, which is its terminating branch.

The *Infra-Orbitar* nerve comes from behind forwards through the canal of the same name, and gives off no branch until it arrives at the forepart, where it sends down along the front of the maxillary sinus in the anterior dental canal the *anterior dental nerve*, which divides so as to supply the incisors, cuspidati and bicuspids, also the mucous lining membrane of the antrum.

This nerve now emerges, as before mentioned, at the infra-orbitar foramen, between the levator labii superioris alæque nasi and levator anguli muscles, dividing here into many branches, some of which ascend to the nose and eyelids, others pass downwards and outwards to the lip and cheek, anastomosing with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic and the facial branches of the portio-dura.

THE INFERIOR MAXILLARY NERVE

This nerve forms the third great division of the fifth. It is the largest branch, and passes from the ganglion of Casser through the foramen ovale of the sphenoid bone to the zygomatic fossa.

This nerve, as stated, is united to the anterior or motor root, which come together on the outside of the foramen ovale, then in the zygomatic fossa, the inferior maxillary nerve divides into two branches:

1. An External, or Superior.
2. An Internal, or Inferior.

The *External* is the motor branch, and gives off the following filaments to the several muscles:

1. *Masseteric*, crossing the Sigmoid notch to the Masseter Muscle.
2. *Temporal*, Anterior and Posterior Deep to the Temporal Muscle and Fascia, &c., &c.
3. *Buccal*, to the Buccinator, &c., &c.
4. *Pterygoid*, to the Pterygoid Muscles.

The *Internal* division of the inferior maxillary nerve consists of three branches, all of which give sensation, and are:

1. The Anterior Auricular.
2. The Gustatory.
3. The Inferior Dental.

The *Anterior Auricular* passes behind the neck of the lower jaw and in front of the meatus of the ear, and ascends through the parotid gland, over the zygoma along with the temporal artery, and divides into anterior and posterior branches.

In its course it unites with the facial nerve, and supplies the parotid gland, the articulation of the lower jaw, the meatus, and cartilages of the ear and side of the head.

The *Gustatory Nerve*, immediately after its origin, sends a branch to the inferior dental; it then descends between the ptery-

goid muscles, where the corda tympani joins it; it now passes along the ramus of the lower jaw covered by the internal pterygoid muscle, then above the submaxillary glands, and forwards above the mylo-hyoid and between it and the hyo-glossus muscles, accompanied by the duct of Wharton, and finally ascends above the sublingual gland to the lateral, inferior, and anterior parts of the tongue.

In its course, MR. HARRISON enumerates the following branches as given off by this nerve:

"First, one or two small filaments to the internal pterygoid muscle. Second, several to the tonsils, to the muscles of the palate, to the upper part of the pharynx, and to the mucous membrane of the gums. Third, the chorda tympani, and some accompanying filaments to form a plexus, which supplies the submaxillary gland. Fourth, a few branches which descend along the hyo-glossus muscle to communicate with the ninth or lingual nerve. Fifth, a fasciculus of nerves to the sublingual gland and to the surrounding mucous membrane. Lastly, at the tongue it divides into several branches, some pass deep into the tissue of this organ, others along, firm and soft, rise towards its surface, and are lost in the mucous membrane and in a small conical papillæ near its tip."

The *Inferior Dental Nerve* passes between the pterygoid muscles, then along the ramus of the lower jaw under the pterygoideus internus to the posterior mental foramen which it enters along with an artery and vein, it now traverses the inferior dental canal, sending off twigs into all the roots of the molars and bicuspids. Opposite the anterior mental foramen it divides into two branches, the smaller is continued forward in the substance of the jaw to supply the roots of the cuspidati and incisors—while the larger comes out at the mental foramen, is distributed to the muscles and integuments of the lower lip, and, finally, communicates with the facial nerve.

The inferior dental, just as it enters the posterior dental foramen, gives off the *mylo-hyoid* nerve; this passes forwards in a

groove of the lower jaw, and supplies the mylo-hyoid, genio-hyoid and digastric muscles.

THE FACIAL NERVE.

The *Portio-dura* of the seventh or facial nerve, is the last nerve to be noticed as particularly belonging to the mouth.

FIG. 38.



The *Facial Nerve* arises from the medulla oblongata between the corpus olivare and restiforme, close by the lower margin of the pons-varolii—it then passes forwards and outwards with the portio-mollis, to the foramen auditorium internus, which it enters and passes on to the base of this opening—here these two nerves separate, the mollis going to the labyrinth of the ear—while the facial enters the aqueduct of Fallopius—where it is joined by the vidian; it then goes in a curved direction outwards and backwards behind the tympanum, where it parts

FIG. 38. View of the facial nerve, or portio-dura of the seventh pair; *a* Trunk of the facial nerve; *b* Ascending branch; *c* Descending branch; *d* Posterior auricular branch; *e e* Temporal branches; *f f* Malar branches; *g g* Inferior maxillary branches; *h* Posterior or great occipital nerve; *i* Terminal branches of the inferior dental nerve; *j* Terminal branches of infra-orbitar nerve; *k k* Supra-orbitar nerve and its branches; *l* Orbicularis oris; *m* Zygomaticus major; *n* Zygomaticus minor; *o* Levator labii superioris alæque nasi; *p* Orbicularis palpebrarum; *q* Depressor anguli oris.

with the vidian, and proceeds on to the stylo-mastoid foramen, at which it emerges. At this point it sends off three small branches:

1. The Posterior Auricular.
2. The Stylo-Hyoid.
3. The Digastric.

The *Posterior Auricular* ascends behind the ear, crosses the mastoid process to the occipito-frontalis muscle.

The *Stylo-Hyoid* is distributed to the stylo-hyoid muscle.

The *Digastric* is distributed to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle.

The facial nerve being deeply imbedded in the substance of the parotid gland, divides into two branches, the one is superior, the other inferior; these two have frequent unions called the *pes anserinus* or *parotidean plexus*, and send branches to the whole of the side of the face.

The upper branch, called the temporo-facial, ascends in front of the ear upon the zygoma, accompanies the temporal artery and its branches, supplying the side of the head, ear and forehead, and anastomosing with the occipital and supra-orbital nerves—a set of branches pass transversely to the cheek, furnishing the lower eyelid, lips, side of the nose, and uniting with the infra-orbitar nerve.

The inferior or cervico-facial branch descends, supplying the lower jaw and upper part of the neck, giving off the following branches:

1. The Maxillary.
2. The Submaxillary.
3. The Cervical.

The *Maxillary* passes the ramus of the jaw and masseter muscle to the lower lip and its muscles.

The *Submaxillary* courses the base of the lower jaw, supplying the muscles which arise from this part, and both anastomosing with the mental nerve.

The *Cervical* are long and numerous, and go to the platysma and superficial muscles of the neck—uniting with branches from the cervical plexus.

The facial is the great motor nerve of the face. Mr. Bell calls it a respiratory, and thinks it chiefly concerned in expressing the passions.

In consequence of the numerous communications which this nerve has with other nerves, the name of *Sympatheticus Minor* has been given to it by some anatomists.

Having now very briefly described the anatomical elements of the several organs of the mouth, it may be well to notice, in conclusion, the anatomical and physiological relations of this cavity.

ANATOMICAL RELATIONS OF THE MOUTH.

The mouth has many interesting anatomical relations with the rest of the body, a few of which it may be well to mention.

By means of its lining mucous membrane it is connected through similar continuity of structure with the stomach and the whole of the intestinal canal, &c., &c.

Disease still further establishes this structural relation. Inflammation, ulceration, or any other anatomical change in the stomach or intestines is felt and reported on the tongue, gums and other parts of the mouth, showing the sympathy and the close anatomical relationship of these several parts.

The mouth is also connected by the same mucous membrane with the organs of respiration by being continued down into the larynx, trachea and bronchia.

By the fifth pair of nerves, the mouth, and especially the dental apparatus, has a most important relation with the brain, nervous system, and all the parts dependent on them.

Simple irritation from teething has frequently thrown children into convulsions—and in adults tooth-ache often creates

extreme irritability of the whole nervous system. But it is not necessary to dwell here on the morbid sympathies of the mouth with other parts of the body, as the author will have occasion to do this in other parts of the work. It will be well, however, to mention in this place that there is a general anatomical relation of the mouth, with the rest of the body, by means of the blood-vessels and cellular tissue.

These latter are the most pervading general elements of the body; they are found every where connecting, and binding together all the organs in one great and common family, and in this manner the mouth is related to and forms an essential link in this natural chain.

PHYSIOLOGICAL RELATIONS.

The mouth has been shown to consist, not only of a great variety of parts, but, also, that it has an equally great variety of functions.

The functions of the mouth have been stated to be those of prehension, mastication, insalivation and deglutition.

These functions, it has been seen, are all closely related the one with the other, and mutually dependent—and how beautiful is the harmony of action as well as its regular and orderly succession. We see in the first place the prehensile instruments laying hold of and introducing the food into the mouth—then the organs of mastication, the teeth and upper and lower jaw bones, put into operation by the temporal, masseter and pterygoid muscles, grind it down into minute portions, which at the same time is formed into a bolus by being mixed with the salivary fluids—furnished by the parotid, submaxillary and sublingual glands; then it is taken by the organs of deglutition, to wit: the tongue, palate and pharynx, and passed by these into the œsophagus, to be thence conducted into the stomach—thus demonstrating the harmony of relation among the several functions belonging to the mouth.

But the functional relation of the mouth is no more confined to itself than its structural relation—the one is equally commensurate with the other; and as the structure of the mouth has

been shown to be continuous with, and to extend to the most extreme parts of the body, so we find that the functions of the mouth equally involve all the great, general and leading functions of the body.

For example, if the primary stages of digestion be impaired or improperly performed in the mouth—the whole process of digestion must also be, necessarily, imperfect—the stomach will form bad chyme, the intestines bad chyle, and this impure fluid will go to the heart and lungs where bad blood will be formed, and as a necessary consequence, the functions of circulation, respiration, and inervation, also implicated, and in this way we see, that by disturbing only one link, and at once the brotherhood of the great functional chain becomes broken.

Again, the mouth is intimately related with the intellectual functions—as for instance, that of speech. Who does not know that when any of the teeth are wanting, the palate cleft, or there is a hare-lip, how much the speech is impaired? And so with all the other functions of the body, the relation between them and the mouth, and the mutual dependence of each on the other, is equally demonstrable.

If these remarks be true, the conclusion is irresistible, that the two sciences of Dentistry and Medicine are essentially and inseparably connected, and that, as a necessary consequence, the dental student, to become properly acquainted with his profession, must also combine a general knowledge of medicine, anatomy and physiology. Without a knowledge of these several branches, it will be impossible for him to attain a very high degree of skill as a practitioner of Dental Surgery.

The *Formation* and *Progress* of the teeth, might seem to come most naturally under consideration in this place, but we defer their description for the next chapter, to which the reader is referred.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

ORIGIN AND FORMATION OF THE TEETH.

Of all the operations of the animal economy, none are more curious or interesting than that which is concerned in the production of the teeth. In obedience to certain developmental laws, established by an all-wise Creator, it is carried on from about the sixth or seventh week of intra-uterine existence, with the nicest and most wonderful regularity, until the completion of the organs; and although so secretly conducted as to prevent the closest scrutiny from detecting the manner by which it is effected, enough is ascertained from its progressive results to excite in the mind of the physiologist the highest admiration.

From small mucous papillæ, observable at a very early period of fetal life, situated in a groove, lined with mucous membrane of the mouth, and running along the alveolar border of each jaw, the teeth are gradually developed. As the papillæ increase in size, they assume the shape of the crowns of the several classes of teeth they are respectively destined to produce. Having arrived at this stage of their formation, they now begin to ossify, first upon the cutting edges of the incisors, the apices of the cuspidati and eminences of the molars; from thence over the whole surface of their crowns, until they become invested in a complete layer of bone; and so on, layer after layer, one within the other, is formed, until the process of solidification is completed. But before this process has progressed very far, the enamel and roots of the teeth begin to form, and these, including dentition, are gone through with previously to the completion of the ossification of the pulps.

In the mean time, and in anticipation of the loss of the first denture, a second set is forming, and as the teeth of the one are removed, they are promptly replaced by those of the other.

Thus, by this beautiful and most admirable provision of nature, the first set of teeth intended to subserve the wants only of childhood, while the jaws are too small for the reception of such as are required for an adult, are removed, and replaced by a larger, stronger and more numerous set.

The elder writers, regarding a knowledge of the early stages of the development of the teeth as not of much importance, paid but little attention to the subject, and hence, this most curious and interesting department of developmental anatomy has remained, until recently, measurably uncultivated. EUSTACHIUS, I believe, was the first to notice the position and arrangement of the teeth in the jaws previously to their eruption. But his researches were confined to the examination of the jaws after birth, at which period he speaks of having discovered, by dissection, the incisors, cupidati and three molars on each side in each jaw, partly in a gelatinous and partly in an ossified condition. He also discovered the incisors and cuspidati of the permanent set behind the first.

Eustachius wrote in 1563, and nineteen years later, URBIAN HEMARD, a French anatomist and surgeon, although unacquainted with the work of the former, gave a very similar description of the disposition of the crowns of the incisors and cuspidati of both sets in the jaws of an infant at birth. He represents them as partly bony and partly mucilaginous. He also discovered some of the molars, but he says he was unable to find the great ones at so early a period as birth.

The researches of ALBINUS threw no additional light upon the manner of the formation of the teeth, and little was known concerning the earlier stages of the development of these organs until the time of John Hunter, who informs us that in the alveoli of a fetus of three or four months, "four or five pulpy substances, not very distinct, are seen." But he says, "about the fifth month the alveolar cavities are more perfect and the pulps of the teeth more distinct," and that the anterior are more advanced than those further back in the jaws. And it is at about this age that he dates the commencement of ossification on the edges of the temporary incisors. The situation and arrangement of the crowns of the teeth in the jaws at this period he

describes very accurately. At the expiration of the sixth or seventh month, he represents the first permanent molaris as having begun to be formed in the tubercle of the upper jaw, and "under and on the inside of the coronoid process in the lower," and he states, that the pulps of the permanent central incisors begin to appear in a fetus of "seven or eight months," and to ossify "five or six months after birth." The pulps of the permanent lateral incisors and cuspidati he says begin to be formed soon after birth, the first bicuspids about the fifth or sixth year, the second bicuspids and molars the sixth or seventh, and the third molars or dentes sapientæ about the twelfth year.

Although Mr. Hunter gives a more minute and accurate description of the progress of the formation and arrangement of the teeth in the jaws previously to their eruption than any previous writer, yet with regard to their origin and appearance during the earlier stages of their formation, it is unsatisfactory. Nor do the researches of Jourdain, Blake, Fox, Cuvier, Serres, Delabarre and other writers upon the teeth, whose names we might mention, throw much additional light upon the subject. In fact, they could not, as their researches do not seem to have been commenced at periods sufficiently early in fetal subjects; and even from the time when they were first instituted, the progress of the organs do not appear to have been traced through the subsequent stages of their formation with the requisite degree of care and accuracy. It is not, therefore, necessary to notice the description given by these authors of the progress of the formation of the teeth, although it may not be amiss to state here, that Dr. Blake describes the rudiments of the permanent as originating from the sacs of the temporary, and that this supposed discovery has been confirmed by almost every subsequent writer upon the subject.* Indeed, until quite recently, this has been the prevailing opinion, and their progress, step by step, from the time when the rudiments of these teeth are apparently given off as small bud-like processes from the sacs of the temporary, is traced with a degree of

*It is said, but with how much truth I am unable to say, that this supposed discovery was made about twenty years before the publication of Dr. Blake's Inaugural Dissertation, by a French dentist by the name of Herbert.

minuteness by Mr. Thomas Bell, that would seem to preclude the possibility of deception. This last named gentleman describes the process as commencing at a very early period of the formation of the temporary teeth, and as first perceivable "in a small thickening on one side of the parent sac," which, "gradually increasing," becomes "more and more circumscribed, until it at length assumes a distinct form, though still connected with it by a peduncle, which," he says, "is nothing more than a process of the investing sac." "For a time," continues Mr. Bell, "the new rudiment is contained within the same alveolus with its parent, which, excavated by the absorbents for its reception, by a process almost unparalleled in the phenomena of physiology. It is not produced by the pressure of the new rudiment, as is erroneously believed, but commences in the cancelli of the new bone immediately within its smooth surface, thus constituting what may be termed a process of anticipation. The new cell after being sufficiently excavated, and as the rudiment continues to increase, is gradually separated from the former one, by being more and more deeply excavated in the substance of the bone, and also by the deposition of a bony partition between them; and at length the new rudiment is shut up in its proper socket, though still connected with the temporary tooth by a chord or process of the capsule already described, which has in the meantime been gradually attenuated and elongated."*

Now it would hardly seem possible for a man of Mr. Bell's accuracy of observation, after having investigated the subject as closely and thoroughly as he must have done, to have enabled him to describe so minutely the various stages of the progress of the development of the permanent teeth, to have mistaken their origin, and that he has, would appear, by subsequent researches, to be rendered almost certain. I allude to those of ARNOLD and GOODSIR.

* This chord has been noticed and minutely described by several other writers. Delabarre calls it the appendage of the dental matrix, and traces it through what is usually denominated the alveolo-dental canal, which he designates by the name of iter dentis, to the surface of the gum behind the temporary tooth. He also states that it is hollow and when he first described it in his thesis of reception in 1806, it had not been noticed by any other writer.

The last named author has traced the progress of the teeth, almost from the moment of the appearance of the germs of the first set, as simple mucous papillæ, until the completion of the second, and so minutely and accurately, that little remains to be done by future anatomists, for the perfection of this branch of odontology.

Relying upon the accuracy of his researches, which are described, at length, in the Edinburg Medical and Surgical Journal, for January 1st, 1839, we shall proceed to give a brief summary of their result, as the length of the paper is such as to preclude its insertion entire.

They were commenced in an "embryo at the sixth week," at which period a deep groove, formed by two semi-circular folds, extending around each jaw, is perceived, lined with the mucous membrane of the mouth, and as this gradually widens "from behind forwards," a ridge, commencing posteriorly and running in the same direction, rises from its floor, and "divides the original groove into two others;" the outer one forming the duplicature of mucous membrane form the inside of the lip to the outside of the alveolar process, the inner one constituting what may be very properly denominated the "*primitive dental groove*," as the germs of the teeth appear in it.

The inner lip of the inner groove is formed by the outer edge of a "semi-circular lobe" which is to constitute the future palate. By the seventh week after conception, the germ of the first temporary molaris in the upper jaw may be seen in the *primitive dental groove*, rising up from the mucous membrane lining its floor, in the form of a "*simple free granular papilla*," of an "ovoidal" shape—"the long diameter of which is anterio-posterior." By the eighth week, another papilla, of a "rounded and granular form" is observable, between the "middle and anterior" curve of the ridge, on the floor of the same groove, which is the rudiment of the temporary cuspidatus. "During the ninth week," the germs of the incisors—the central first, and soon after the lateral—make their appearance in the form also of mucous papillæ. During the tenth week "the sides of the groove before and behind the anterior molar papilla have been gradually approaching each other," and processes from its

sides are sent off, from before and behind this germ, which meet and enclose it in a follicle. In the meantime a "similar follicle is gradually" forming around the cuspidatus germ. Towards the end of the tenth week, the papilla of the second or posterior temporary molaris shows itself.

The papillæ of the incisor teeth, which, up to this time, have advanced very slowly, now begin to increase more rapidly, and during the eleventh and twelfth weeks, processes are sent off from the outer and inner walls of the groove, forming for each a distinct follicle, and while the papillæ of the cuspidatus and first molaris are now undergoing little change, that of the second molaris is gradually increasing. During the thirteenth week a follicle is formed for it, and a gradual change takes place in the different papillæ; each begins now to assume a "particular shape,"—the incisors, that of the "future teeth,"—the cuspidati "become simple cones,"—the molars "become flattened transversely." The papillæ now "grow faster than the follicles, so that the former protrude from the mouths of the latter, while the depth of the latter varies directly as the length of the fangs of their future corresponding teeth." The mouths of the follicles, in the meantime, are becoming more developed, "so as to form opercula, which correspond in some measure with the shape of the crowns of the future teeth." Of these the incisor follicles have two—one anterior and one posterior—the first larger than the latter; the cuspidati follicles have three—one external and two internal; the molar follicles, as many as there are eminences or tubercles upon the grinding surfaces of these teeth.

The outer and inner lips of the primitive dental groove have increased so much, that at the fourteenth week, they meet or apply themselves together in a "valvular manner," so as to give the papillæ the appearance of receding back into their follicles, and to be almost wholly hid by their opercula. The appearance and progress of the germs of the lower teeth and their follicles are almost precisely similar to those of the upper, though they do not appear at quite so early a period.

At the period last mentioned, the primitive dental groove "is situated on a higher level than at first," contains the germs and

follicles of the ten temporary teeth, and "may now," says Mr. Goodsir, "be more properly denominated the *secondary dental groove*," for it is about this time, that provision is made for the production of the ten anterior permanent teeth. It consists in the appearance of a depression of a crescent shape "immediately behind the inner opercula" of the follicles, first, of the central incisors, next of the laterals, then of the cuspidati, afterwards of the first bicuspids. The opercula, in the meantime, close the mouths of the follicles, but without adhering; beginning with the central, then with the lateral, the cuspidati, and ending with the second molars. The secondary groove is now soon closed by the approach and adhesion of its lips and walls, commencing from behind and proceeding forwards—forming the follicles into sacs—the papillæ into the pulps of the temporary teeth, "and the crescent-formed depressions" into "*cavities of reserve*" from which the pulps and sacs of the teeth of replacement are produced. The *primitive dental groove*, which, by this time, has extended itself back of the second temporary molaris, still "retains its original appearance;" it has a "grayish yellow color," and its edges continue "smooth for a fortnight or three weeks longer" for the "development of the papilla and follicle" of the first permanent molaris.

The papillæ of the temporary teeth are now gradually moulded into the shape of the teeth they are destined to form: the pulps of the upper molars are perforated by three canals, and the lower by two, which penetrate to their centre. The primary base is divided into an equal number of secondary bases, from which the fangs of the future teeth are gradually developed. An intervening space is now formed between the pulps and the matrices or sacs, by the more rapid growth of the latter than the former, "in which is deposited a gelatinous granular substance, at first small in quantity, and adherent only to the proximal surfaces of the sacs, but ultimately, about the fifth month, closely and intimately attached to the whole interior of these organs, except for a small space of equal breadth, all round the base of the pulps, which space retains the original gray color of the inner membrane of the follicle, and as the primary base of the pulp becomes perforated by the canals formerly mentioned, the gran-

ular matter sends processes into them, which adhering to the sac, reserve the narrow space described above, between themselves and the secondary bases. These processes of granular matter do not meet across the canals, but disappear near their point of junction. The granular matter," although not adhering to the pulp, is exactly moulded to all its eminences and depressions.

The outward membrane of the sac, according to Mr. Goodsir, is supplied with blood from small twigs sent off by "each branch of the dental artery" at the fundus of its destined sac, and from the arteries of the gums, which inosculate with each other, and then ramify the "true" (inner) membrane.

The follicle of the first permanent molaris closes about this time, and has "granular matter deposited in its sac," and by the non-adhesion of the walls of the secondary groove, a cavity appears below the sac of this tooth, and from the lining mucous membrane the second and third molar teeth derive their origin.

But previously to this period, the apices and eminences of the temporary teeth have become vascular and begin to ossify. And simultaneously with this process, the inner surface of the granular matter is absorbed, and after a while becomes so thin as to render the subjacent vascularity apparent. This goes on, and by the time an ossific layer has formed over the whole surface of the pulp and reached its base, no remains of it are left.

The cavities of reserve have been gradually receding and assuming a position behind the temporary teeth, the distal extremities of the anterior ones begin to distend about the fifth month, and it is here that the germs of the teeth of replacement first appear, and are indicated by a bulging up or folding of this portion of these cavities. They soon acquire the appearance of dental pulps, and the mouths of these cavities gradually become obliterated.

By the sixth month, bony septa have formed across the alveolar groove, and niches are now formed on the "posterior walls of the alveoli" for the sacs of the permanent teeth. The sac of the first permanent molaris remains up to the eighth, and even the ninth month, imbedded in the maxillary tuberosity. The roots of the temporary incisors, at or a little before birth, begin to be formed, and "in the accomplishment of which,"

says Mr. Goodsir, "three cotemporaneous actions are employed, viz. the lengthening of the pulp; the deposition of tooth substance upon it; and the adhesion of the latter of that portion of the inner sac which is opposite to it." About the time the central incisors begin to appear through the gum, "the jaw has lengthened so much, that the" first permanent molaris begins to assume its proper "position in the posterior part of the alveolar arch." The sacs of the permanent teeth continue to recede during the advance of the temporary teeth and "their sockets to their perfect state," and to "insinuate themselves" "between the sacs of the former" until "they are only connected by their proximal extremities," through the alveolo-dental foramina or *itinera dentium* of Delabarre.

The vessels which go to the sacs of the permanent teeth are derived, first, from the gums, but they ultimately, receive vessels from the temporary sacs, which, uniting with the others, eventually retire into permanent dental canals.

The following diagram, taken from Goodsir, exhibits at one view the origin and progress of the formation of a temporary and its corresponding permanent tooth.

FIG. 39.

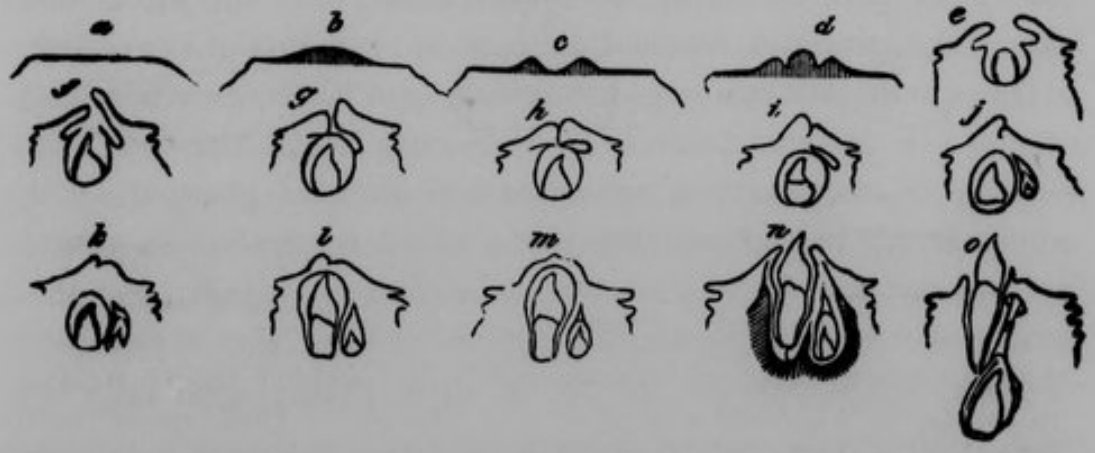
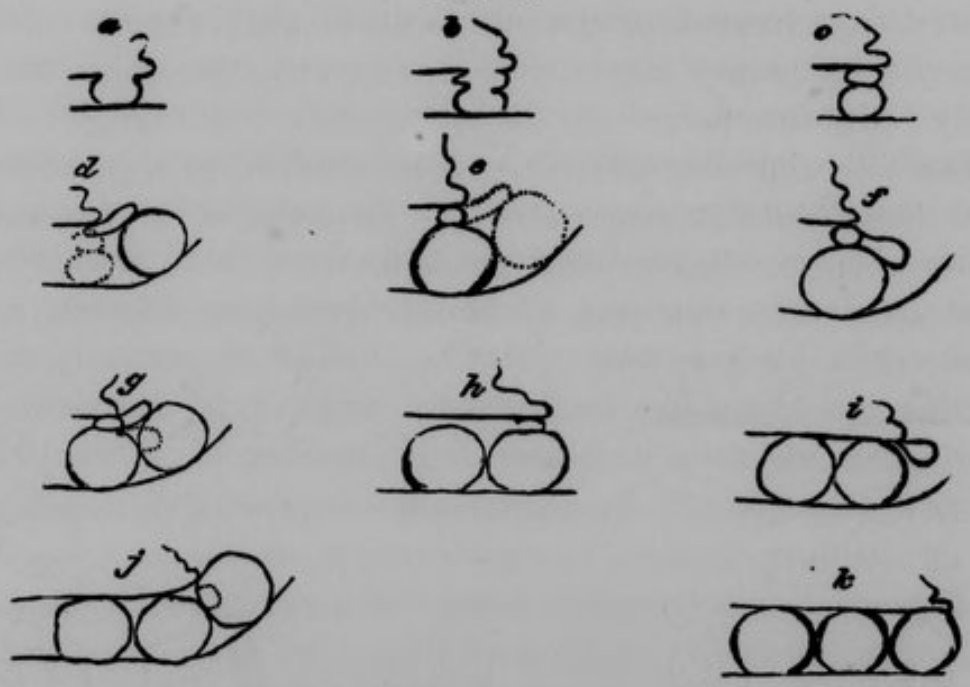


FIG. 39. *a* Mucous membrane; *b* Mucous membrane with a granular mass deposited in it; *c* The primitive dental groove; *d* A papilla on the floor of the groove; *e* The papilla enclosed in a follicle, and the secondary dental groove forming; *f* The papilla assuming the shape of a pulp, the opercula forming, and a depression for a reserve cavity behind the inner operculum; *g* The papilla becomes a pulp, the follicle a sac by the adhesion of the lips of the opercula and the secondary dental groove in the act of closing; *h* The secondary groove adherent, except behind the inner operculum, where it has left a shut cavity of reserve for the formation of the pulp and sac of the permanent tooth; *i* The last change more complete by the deposition of the granular body, de-

The cavity of reserve, behind the first permanent molaris, begins to lengthen about the seventh or eighth month, a papilla soon appears in its fundus, it then contracts and separates from the remainder of the cavity, by which means a new sac is formed, that of the second permanent molaris. As the jaw increases in length, it falls downwards and forwards. The papillæ of the wisdom teeth (dentes sapientiæ) form in the remaining portion of the cavities of reserve, which, in the upper jaw, occupies the maxillary tuberosities, and in the lower, the base of the coronoid processes, which places, says Goodsir, they do not leave until the nineteenth or twentieth year.

The progress of the formation of the three molar teeth, will be seen by the following diagram, copied from Mr. Goodsir.

Fig. 40.



position of tooth substance commencing; *j* The cavity of reserve receding; its bottom, in which the pulp is forming, dilating; *k* The cavity of reserve becoming a sac with a pulp at its bottom, and further removed from the surface of the gums. The temporary tooth covered with a layer of bone, and the granular substance absorbed; *l* The temporary tooth acquiring its fang and approaching the surface of the gums; *m* Root of the temporary tooth longer, and its sac touching the surface of the gum; *n* Eruption of temporary tooth, its sac again a follicle, and the permanent receding further from the surface of the gum; *o* Completion of temporary tooth, free portion of sac become the vascular margin of the gum, and the permanent sac connected by a chord passing through the alveolo-dental canal or foramen.

Fig. 40. *a* The non-adherent portion of the primitive dental groove; *b* The papilla and follicle of the first molaris on the floor of the non-adherent portion,

Having now presented a brief outline of the observations of Mr. Goodsir, on the origin and early stages of the formation of the teeth, we shall conclude this part of our subject by simply stating, that the ossification of a tooth proceeds from the exterior surface inwardly, that layer after layer of bone, one within the other, is formed, until nothing remains but a small residuum of the pulp, situated within the proper dental cavity, whose parietes are lined with a delicate membrane, upon which the vessels and nerves ramify before entering the osseous structure of the organ.

As yet, the origin and formation of the pulps and sacs of the teeth only, have been considered; we shall now proceed to offer a few remarks on the formation of the enamel.

FORMATION OF THE ENAMEL OF THE TEETH.

The opinion of most writers upon this subject is, that the enamel is a deposition from the inner membrane of the dental sac; that this, after the surface of the pulp of the tooth has ossified, pours out or discharges upon it a thick fluid, which soon condenses, assuming at first a chalky appearance, and, afterwards, by a process somewhat similar to crystallization, attains the glossy-like hardness by which it is characterized. The author was for a long time of this opinion, but recent observations, strengthened by a perusal of the thesis of RASCHKOW on this subject, have led him to believe it erroneous.

The gelatinous granular substance mentioned by Goodsir,

now become a portion of the secondary groove; *c* The papilla a pulp, and the follicle a sac, and the lips of the secondary groove adhering, so that the latter has become the posterior or great cavity of reserve; *d* The sac of the first molar increased in size, advancing into the coronoid process or maxillary tuberosity, and the cavity of reserve lengthened; *e* The sac of the first molar returned by the same path to its former position, and the cavity of reserve shortened; *f* The cavity of reserve sending backwards the sac of the second molaris; *g* The sac of the second molaris advanced into the coronoid process or the maxillary tuberosity; *h* The second molar sac returned, and the cavity of reserve shortened; *i* The cavity of reserve sending off the sac and pulp of the wisdom tooth; *j* The sac of the wisdom tooth advanced into the coronoid process or maxillary tuberosity; *k* The sac of the wisdom tooth returned to the extremity of the dental range.

and called by Raschkow the adamantine organ, situated between the follicle and tooth germ, the latter of which it invests, at first loosely, but afterwards more closely, moulding itself to the pulp, there is good reason to believe, is destined for the formation of the enamel. It is represented by the last named author as forming a "globular nucleus" between the follicle and dental germ at a very early period of the growth of the latter, with a bulging externally, and presenting a parenchymatous appearance internally; but it gradually exhibits angular granulations, held together by "filaments of cellular tissue," resembling "a kind of actinenchyma, such as may be seen in plants." It was the discovery of this granular substance, first in dissecting the jaws of a pig, and, afterwards, a human fetus of about the fourth month, that first induced us to suppose the generally received doctrine of the formation of the enamel to be incorrect. It is at first, as represented by Raschkow and Goodsir, disconnected from the dental germ, surrounded by fluid, bearing a striking resemblance to the liquor amnii, but is gradually transformed into a membrane, and as ossification commences in the pulp, attaches itself to it, and adheres with considerable tenacity.

It was no doubt the discovery of this that led Delabarre to suppose the enamel an integral part of the tooth and "proceeding from the dental embryo," for he speaks of the formation of this outer coating of the teeth as being produced by an immense number of small exhalent vessels which formed "a sort of imperceptible velvet." Into these he supposed the phosphate of lime was deposited, and in such a way as not to destroy their organic sensibility.

Raschkow says, "The dental germ, in advancing further and further into the dental follicle, makes first only a slight impression on the globular mass of the enamel organ, but this impress is rendered gradually deeper as the growth of the germ proceeds. When the germ has penetrated further into the hollow thus made, it appears narrower towards the base, and thicker under the apex, and is enclosed around on every side by the parenchyma of the enamel-organ, which thus assumes the appearance of a hood, covering the dental germ when advanced in its development, and capable of being separated from it

without difficulty, and without injury, either by the compressor, or in any other manner, by being placed under water." He also represents it as being disconnected from the dental capsule, except at the coronal portion, where it seemed to be united by some loose vessels; it is thus that he accounts for the numerous capillaries which pervade the parenchyma of the organ; and from this, he assumes that while the dental germ has its origin from the extremity of the sac next the root, the enamel-organ originates from the opposite or coronal extremity, and that "arising at opposite points," they "approach each other, are adapted together, and both contribute to the production of the tooth."

After the enamel-organ has adapted itself to the dental pulp, a peculiar organ is seen on its inner surface, which Raschkow describes as "consisting of short uniform fibres placed perpendicularly" "to the cavity, and forming, as it were, a silky lining" to it, which, in a transverse section of the enamel-organ, may be "clearly seen, and can be accurately distinguished from the other stellated parenchyma of the substance" which he designates the enamel-pulp.

According to this author, "this stratum of fibres" originates in "the transformation of the pulp of the enamel," with which it is for a time connected, but afterwards it separates from it, so as only to adhere by "a few filaments of cellular tissue; and becomes a genuine membrane;" and which, on account of the function it performs, he styles the enamel-membrane. "Its inner surface," he says, "consists of hexangular, nearly uniform corpuscules, visible only through a magnifying glass; towards the centre of each of which is a round eminence. These corpuscules are nothing more than the ends of short fibres, of which the whole membrane is composed; and which, being pressed together, assume freely the hexangular form." These corpuscules he describes as being disposed in regular series, and, corresponding with the arrangement of the enamel fibres.

He regards each of these fibres as an excretory duct or gland, whose peculiar function it is to secrete the "enamel fibre corresponding to it." Immediately after the commencement of the ossification of the dental pulp, each one of these fibres, with

its inner extremity placed upon the now forming subjacent bone, begins to secrete the earthy salts of which this substance is chiefly composed. And while this is going on, an organic lymph, says Raschkow, seems to be secreted from the parenchyma of the enamel-membrane which penetrates between the individual fibres, and renders their whole substance soft. This, he thinks, by means of a "chemico-organic process," afterwards combines with the earthy substances, and forms the animal base of the enamel.

It has been shown by Raschkow, that the dental pulp is invested by a very delicate membrane, which he denominates the præformative membrane, and there is every reason to believe, that this constitutes the bond of union which exists between the enamel fibres and the bone of the tooth.

Admitting this theory of the formation of the enamel to be correct, and that it is, scarcely a doubt now remains, the "frame-work of animal tissue," spoken of by Dr. Nasmyth, in his memoir presented to the Geological Section of the British Association, August, 1839, as entering into the composition of this substance, is readily accounted for. In no other way, except the theory of Delabarre be correct, and this is by far the most plausible, can its presence be satisfactorily explained.

FORMATION OF THE CRUSTA PETROSA, OR CEMENTUM.

Of the manner of the formation of the cementum, which is the last to appear of the dental constituents, nothing positive is known. Raschkow conjectures that it is probably produced by the remains of the enamel-pulp, but as it cannot be detected on the crowns of the human teeth, except in very young subjects, it is most likely secreted by the dental periosteum.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

FIRST DENTITION.

THE exterior of the pulps of the temporary teeth, as has been shown, are ossified and coated with enamel at birth, and although at about this period the roots of the incisors begin to be formed, yet they all still occupy their bony cells in the alveolar ridge. But, as the time approaches when the system requires a diet better suited to the support of its increased energies than milk, the one on which the child has hitherto subsisted, nature, as if conscious of the change about to take place, calls into action certain agents, by which the openings in the alveolar cells and gums are enlarged, and through which, in obedience to an established law, the little gems, sparkling with whiteness, gradually and slowly emerge, pair after pair, until the pearly arches are completed, to answer the demands of increasing wants, and to assist in the articulation of those lisping accents, by which the child's early wishes are made known.

Dentition is divided, by Mr. Goodsir, into three stages, to wit: the *Follicular*, the *Sacular*, and the *Eruptive*. The two first have already been considered, and it now only remains to treat the last.

ERUPTION OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH.

Various opinions have been advanced with regard to the manner in which the passage of a tooth from its alveolar cell through the gum is effected. Some suppose it is the result of the prolongation of the pulp for the formation of the root; others, that it is a consequence of the moulding of the alveolus around the latter, as it is formed. Some believe that the opening through the gum is made by the pressure or mechanical action of the coronal extremity of the advancing tooth; others,

and with by far more plausibility of reason, that it is the result of the action of absorbent vessels.

That the able physiologist and learned dentist, Delabarre, has advanced a most ingenious theory upon the subject. He believes that the passage of a tooth through the gum, or rather its escape from its matrix, is effected in precisely the same manner as is the birth of a child. He regards the sac, which is attached both to the gums and the neck of the tooth, as the chief agent, and believes that it is by the contraction of this that the latter is raised from the bottom of the alveolus, and ultimately forced through the dilated orifice of the former and gums.

This is the most rational theory that has been advanced; it explains, upon principles of sound physiology, this most wonderful and curious operation of the economy. It is difficult to imagine how the elongation of the pulp or the moulding of the alveolar walls to it can have any agency in raising or depressing the tooth through the gums. If the elongation of the pulp commenced before the crown of the tooth had made any advance toward the gums, it would at once come in contact with the floor of the alveolus, and in its soft and yielding condition, be caused to assume a configuration different from that presented by the root of a naturally developed tooth. The crown of the tooth, therefore, must make some progress toward the gums, before the elongation of its pulp can commence, and it is difficult to conceive how this can be effected, if it is not by the contraction of the sac.

This theory is objected to by some, on the ground that the two membranes of which the dental matrix or sac is composed, are of a fibrous structure, and, consequently, not endowed with contractile properties; but the microscope of Mr. Nasmyth has shown that the inner lamina "is composed of layers of cells, loosely arranged, and separated by interspaces equal to half the diameter of the cell." In another place, the same writer observes, that the inner lamina seems to partake more of the nature of a serous than of a mucous membrane. That the sac does contract, is proven by the fact, that it shortens as the tooth progresses, so that, ultimately, after the complete extrusion of the crown, it constitutes the free edge of the gum.

The ossification of the exterior of the root of the tooth proceeds nearly as fast as the elongation of its pulp for its formation. Commencing at the neck, it proceeds inwards and downwards, forming concentric layers, one within and beneath the other, until it reaches the extremity, and nothing remains but a small canal running through the centre, from its apex to the cavity in the crown, through which the dental vessels and nerves pass. The alveolus, in the meantime, deepens; its walls approach each other, and closely embrace the root of the tooth.

As soon as the edge or the coronal extremity of the tooth comes through the gum, the sac assumes its primitive follicular condition, but still connected with the neck of the tooth, it continues to contract until the whole of the crown has passed through the gums.

The periods of the eruption of the temporary teeth is variable, depending probably upon the state of the constitutional health. The following, however, may be regarded as a very near approximation to them, namely:

The central incisors	from	5 to	8	months	after birth.
" lateral incisors	"	7 to 10	"	"	"
" first molars	"	12 to 16	"	"	"
" cuspidati	"	14 to 20	"	"	"
" second molars	"	20 to 36	"	"	"

No general rule, however, can be laid down from which there will not be frequent variations. The following is the most remarkable case of deviation, not only from the most usual period, but also from the natural order of the eruption of the teeth which the author has ever met with. In November, 1846, he was sent for to lance the gums of an infant only four months old. On examining the mouth, the gums on each side, both in the lower and upper jaws, about where the first temporary molars should appear, were found much swollen and inflamed. As these teeth were evidently forcing their way through the gums, and as the child was threatened with convulsions, it become necessary to lance them immediately. This was accordingly done, which gave immediate relief to the little sufferer. In a few days after, the teeth made their appearance, but the

eruption of the central incisors did not take place until about three months after.

There is sometimes an extraordinary tardiness of action in the eruption of the temporary teeth. There is a case of a child, somewhere on record, that did not get any of its teeth until it was ten years old; and Lefoulon states that he saw a young girl of seven years of age, whose inferior incisors had not appeared. Several cases have come under the observation of the author in which dentition did not commence until the fifteenth, and one not until the twentieth month. On the other hand, there are cases of precocity of action in the eruption of the teeth equally remarkable, as for example, when the two lower incisors are erupted at birth. Louis XIV was born with four teeth, and Polydorus Virgilius mentions a child that was born with six. Haller, in his Elements of Physiology, enumerates the cases of ninteen children who were born with teeth. Similar examples are on record, and there are few physicians or dentists who have been in practice ten or fifteen years, who have not met with like cases.

In speaking of these early productions, Mr. Fox says, "As they only have a weak attachment to the gums, they soon get loose, producing a considerable inflammation in the mouth of the child, as well as occasioning considerable inconvenience to the mother. It is, therefore, advisable to extract them immediately, for they can never come to perfection." The author is compelled to differ with Mr. Fox, for their attachment is not always, as he supposes, confined to the gums; their roots are sometimes securely fixed in sockets in the jaw. When this is the case, they do not occasion any inconvenience, and their extraction would be highly improper. It is always better, therefore, to wait until there is some positive indication that such operation is necessary, before performing it.

In the eruption of the teeth, nearly the same order is followed that is observed in their ossification. The central incisors appear first, then the lateral, next the first molars, afterwards the cuspidati, and, lastly, the second and third molars.

The lower teeth, in their eruption, are said, usually, to precede the upper about two or three months, but the upper appear first nearly as often as the lower.

EFFECTS WHICH SOMETIMES RESULT FROM FIRST DENTITION.

When we consider the early age at which first dentition commences, and the fragile and irritable state of the system, it will not appear at all wonderful that it should so frequently suffer from the efforts that are made by it for the liberation of these organs from the bony cells and superincumbent gums, in which they are confined. The constitution, at this tender period of life, often receives a shock from which it never recovers; and the seeds of many chronic diseases are caused to germinate, which, otherwise, in all probability, would have forever remained dormant.

This is generally regarded as the most critical period of life, and it has often proved one of bereavement and sorrow. The whole process is sometimes completed without inconvenience, but, at other times, it is attended with so much pain and irritation that the most alarming and complicated forms of disease result from it.

The irritation accompanying first dentition is supposed to be caused by the pressure which the teeth make upon the gums in forcing their way out, and varies in extent, according to the health and temperament of the child. When the absorption of the gums keeps pace with the growth of the teeth, the pressure is scarcely, or not all, perceptible; but when this is not the case, it becomes more or less great, in proportion as the growth of the one outstrips the absorption of the other. It may be, and we do not think it altogether improbable, that a portion of the irritation is produced by the pressure of the tooth upon the pulp, for, when its progress is retarded by the resistance of the gums, the elongation of this, for the formation of the root, would, of necessity, cause the ossified part to press upon it, which, as a matter of course, would give rise to great pain and irritation.

Dr. Good is of opinion that the pressure of the teeth against the gums "is not uniformly exerted through the course of teething, but is divided into distinct periods or stages as though the vital or instinctive principle, which is what we mean by nature,

becomes exhausted by a certain extent of action, and requires rest and a state of intermission.

"The first or active stage of teething is usually about the third or fourth month of infancy, and constitutes what is called breeding the teeth, or the conversion of the pulpy rudiment buried in the gums, and formed during fetal life, into a solid material, which, at the same time, shoots downward, and gives to every tooth a neck or fang."

The period of dentition here referred to by Dr. Good, is the time when the sac begins to contract. The coronal extremity of the tooth is then brought into contact with the sac, and when the formation of the root of the former proceeds more rapidly than the contraction of the latter, the root comes in contact with the bottom of the alveolus, and doubtless much of the irritation, as we have before intimated, resulting from dentition is attributable to this circumstance. But Dr. G. is mistaken in supposing that the pulpy rudiment begins to be converted into a solid material, at the third or fourth month of infancy, when, what he terms the first or active stage of teething commences. Several layers of bone are perfectly formed over most of the pulps of the temporary teeth at birth, though the enamel is not quite completed at so early a period. The doctor has evidently confounded the commencement of the elongation of the pulp with that of its ossification.

During the period of teething, the child is restless and fretful, but its paroxysms of suffering are periodical, and seldom last more than two or three hours at a time; whereas, were the pressure of the teeth upon the gums uniform and constant, there would be no intermissions. The repose thus afforded, enables the system to recover in some degree from the exhaustation occasioned by each preceding paroxysm. If it were not for this, its excited energies would soon be worn out, and the child fall a victim to the continued intensity of its sufferings.

When the irritation is merely local, it is usually of short duration, and consists in a slight tenderness and tumefaction of the gums, accompanied by increased secretion of saliva. But when the irritation is so severe as to affect the functional operations of other parts of the system, febrile symptoms of a general and

more or less aggravated character, supervene, attended with drowsiness, diarrhea, and not unfrequently, with various cutaneous eruptions on different parts of the body, called the red gum; at other times, of pustules, which are at first filled with a limpid fluid, but which, afterwards, become purulent. The former appear on the neck and face: the latter are not confined to any particular part of the body, but are either thinly scattered over its whole surface, or appear in small patches. There is also another kind of eruption which breaks out about the mouth, cheeks and forehead, sometimes extending to the scalp, which, in a short time dries up and becomes covered with disagreeable scabs. These soon drop off to be succeded by others.

These eruptions are generally regarded as indications of the substitution of a milder for a more aggravated form of disease, and should not, therefore, be too hastily suppressed.

To these symptoms, we may add, cough, spasms of the muscles of the face, particularly of those about the mouth, and, when the diarrhea is so copious as to occasion great emaciation, convulsions, and death sometimes supervene.

Thus far, we have merely glanced at a few of the effects of first dentition. To attempt a description of all, would involve the enumeration of the whole catalogue of diseases peculiar to infancy, and which, as they more properly belong to another branch of medicine, we shall neither stop to detail, nor point out minutely, their curative indications.

It may be well, however, to state, that the local treatment consists in making a free incision with a lancet through the tumefied gum, down to the advancing tooth. This, in very many cases, affords immediate relief and supersedes the necessity of other treatment. This operation is objected to by some, on the ground, though it may afford temporary relief, that the cicatrix, formed by the healing of the wound, constitutes a greater obstacle to the exit of the tooth, than the parts ever do when left to themselves. Now, any one who is at all conversant with the subject, knows that in four cases out of five, where the operation is necessary, the teeth are so far advanced, that on the collapsing of the edges of the wound, their crowns immediately protrude: and even when the wound does unite, the soft and

spongy cicatrix yields much more readily to the action of the absorbents, than the gums do in their natural state.

Another objection is founded upon the supposition that the enamel, at this early period, is in a soft and amorphous state, and that, consequently, the teeth may be injured by the contact of the knife. But, as the parts of the enamel exposed to the instrument usually attain their greatest hardness before this operation is required, this objection is without foundation. In short, we have never known any injury to result from it, either in our own practice, or in that of others; nor can those who are opposed to it, bring facts to support their opposition.

It is true, there is sometimes considerable hemorrhage, which, in two or three instances, has terminated fatally, but it rarely happens that this is very considerable, and it almost always subsides in a minute or two after the operation.

This simple operation often succeeds after all others have failed. We have frequently known children, after having suffered the greatest agony for days and weeks, and until they had become reduced to mere skeletons, obtain immediate relief without the aid of any other remedy. This at once removes the cause, whereas, other remedies only counteract the effects of the suffering, and can only be considered as palliatives that may assist nature in her struggles with disease, but cannot always prevent her from sinking in the contest.

CHAPTER NINTH.

IMPORTANCE OF THE PRESERVATION OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH.

ALTHOUGH it may seem somewhat out of place to treat of this subject here, yet, in consequence of its close connection with the one which immediately precedes it, the author is of the opinion that it is better to do so now, than to defer its consideration for a subsequent part of the work.

Many suppose that inasmuch as the temporary teeth are intended to subserve the wants of the body, only for a short time, and are then to be succeeded by a stronger and better set, it is of little consequence whether they remain until they are removed by the operations of the economy, to give place to others, or, are lost a year or two earlier. But this is a great error; and it is one that has been productive of much mischief.

By the decay of a temporary tooth, the lining membrane is often exposed, which, in consequence, becomes inflamed, giving rise to pain, tumefaction, oftentimes to alveolar abscess, necrosis, exfoliation of the alveolar processes, and sometimes to considerable portions of the jaw bone. The crowns of the permanent teeth, as well as the cells in which they are situated, are, in this way, sometimes destroyed. But this does not often happen, though the latter always suffer from disease in the sockets of the temporary teeth, for it is impossible for a morbid action to exist here for any great length of time, without impairing the functions of the parts concerned in the production of the secondary teeth—they being situated immediately behind and beneath the roots of the primary.

Inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum of a temporary tooth may, by communicating a morbid heat to the sac of the permanent one behind or beneath it, be productive of much injury to the new tooth. It may interrupt or impair

the process of ossification, by causing the calcareous ingredients that enter into the composition of these organs, to be secreted in too small quantity; and it may, also, cause the fluid of the sac, in the midst of which the new tooth is situated, to become acrid or acidulated, and to corrode the enamel, but this last effect is produced more frequently by general than by local disease.

The decay and premature loss of the temporary teeth, is a frequent cause of irregularity in the arrangement of the permanent, and if for no other reason than the prevention of this, their preservation, if possible, should be secured until they are removed by the economy to give place to their successors.

Besides the local effects produced by disease in the temporary teeth, the functional operations of other parts, and, sometimes those of the whole system, become more or less deranged. It is well known that an unhealthy condition of the permanent teeth, often gives rise to general or constitutional disease, and the system, at this young and tender age, is more susceptible to morbid impressions than it is after all the parts of the body have have acquired the full vigor of maturity.

Most of the diseases that attack the temporary teeth are the result of inattention to their cleanliness. The particles of food and other extraneous matter that lodge in their interstices, and along the edges of the gums, if permitted to remain, soon undergo chemical decomposition, and become a source of irritation to the latter, vitiating the secretions of the mouth, and rendering them prejudicial to the health of the former.

The temporary teeth, from these causes, are often soon involved in extensive caries, subjecting the little sufferer to the most torturing pain, and depriving it of the first set, long before the time for the appearance of the second has arrived. Some teeth are more susceptible to the action of chemical agents than others, and, consequently, more liable to disease. Teeth of a hard and firm texture are not easily affected, but those that are soft and chalky are readily acted upon by the fluids of the mouth when vitiated, and the greatest care and attention are necessary to preserve them even for the short period their presence is required.

As the decay of the teeth is dependent upon the presence of vitiated, acrid and corrosive matters, the means for its prevention are obvious. It consists in frequent and thorough cleanliness, which to be effectual, should be commenced as soon as the first teeth appear. Dr. L. S. Parmly, a dentist of more than forty years experience, and a close and attentive observer, recommends rubbing the gums of the infant from birth to the appearance of all the teeth, with the finger of the mother or nurse, for the purpose of giving them a firm texture. He also recommends cleaning the first teeth as soon as they appear, with a brush and water, and with waxed floss silk, morning and evening, and after each meal. The latter he directs to be passed between the teeth, and moved up and down between them and the free edges of the gums, for the purpose of removing all accumulations of impure or vitiated matter.

If, notwithstanding the regular and thorough use of these means, stains or discolorations should appear near the gums, as they often do, Dr. Parmly recommends for their removal, the daily employment of an argillaceous tooth-polisher, so formed as to be readily applied to the surfaces of the teeth. Powders are generally employed for the accomplishment of this object, but they are, on many accounts, objectionable. They should never be used when the gums are inflamed and swollen, for when in this condition, they get between them and the necks of the teeth, increasing the irritation, and rendering the secretions of the mouth still more vitiated and viscid—thus hastening the destruction of these valuable organs. Great precaution is necessary to prevent them from doing this, even when the gums are healthy, and for this reason, the argillaceous tooth-polisher, recommended by Dr. Parmly, is preferable to powders. But when this cannot be had, and it becomes necessary to have recourse to the latter, great care should be taken to procure such as will not exert a chemical action upon the teeth.

If parents and guardians would pay more attention to this subject, the services of the dentist would be less frequently required. The importance of cleanliness and other attention to the teeth of children cannot be too strongly urged; a vast

amount of disease and suffering in after life, may be avoided by it.

The following appropriate remarks, although not applying exclusively to the teeth of first dentition, are quoted from Dr. Eleazar Parmly's Notes to Dr. Brown's Dentologia. The high reputation of the author as a dental practitioner, and his extensive experience, entitle them to more than ordinary respect.

He says, "This is a subject which demands the attention of parents, and those who are entrusted with the care of children. It should be the first object of every person so situated, to habituate children to clean their teeth at least twice a day, and when this practice has been once adopted, it will be continued as a matter of course. Besides this, from the age of six to twelve years, in particular, a dentist should be consulted from three to four times a year, and at a later period, once or twice, for the purpose of examining the teeth, and counteracting, by the timely removal of such causes as may produce disease, any mischief which is likely to take place."

Caries of a temporary tooth, if it has not penetrated to the pulp-cavity, may, in the majority of cases, be arrested by removing the diseased part and filling the cavity with gold, or Hill's stopping—a preparation of gutta percha. When it is superficial and situated in the approximal surface, it may be removed with a file.

The temporary teeth, as a general rule, are more liable to decay than the permanent, but, fortunately, the former seldom become the seat of so severe and excruciating pain as the latter; but, after the disease has penetrated to the lining membrane, pain, of a more or less aggravated character, is usually experienced. This, in most cases, may be relieved, temporarily, by the application of anodynes to the cavity of the tooth, but arsenious acid is a more certain remedy, as it destroys the vitality of the pulp. Some care, however, is necessary in using it. The fiftieth part of a grain, with an equal quantity of the sulphate of morphia, is amply sufficient, and after it has been applied, the cavity in the tooth should be carefully and securely sealed with wax or gum mastic. But the employment of this

article is objectionable, for the reason that it destroys the vitality of the tooth, and thus converts it into a morbid irritant, rendering it prejudicial to the health of the surrounding parts. The extraction of the tooth, therefore, as a general rule, is far preferable. When the pain is occasioned, as is often the case, by inflammation of the alveolo-dental membrane, leeches should be applied to the gum of the aching tooth, and if they fail to afford relief, the faulty organ should at once be extracted; for, it is better to risk the consequence of its premature loss, than the injury likely to result from its retention.

The temporary teeth, however, should, if possible, be retained, until, from the spontaneous destruction of their roots, they drop out of themselves; nor should their extraction ever be determined on, unless called for by some pressing emergency.

CHAPTER TENTH.

SECOND DENTITION.

THERE is no operation of the animal economy more singular or interesting than that which is exhibited in the gradual destruction of the roots of the temporary, and in the growth and dentition of the permanent teeth. The time of life when this occurs, constitutes an important epoch in the history of every individual.

During childhood, the alveolar arches form only about the half of a circle, but by a gradual elongation of the jaws they ultimately, at adult age, form nearly the half of an ellipsis, so that the number of teeth required to fill them at the one period, is but little more than half the number required at the other.

Moreover, the food of children is principally vegetables, requiring but little mastication to prepare them for the stomach, whereas that of adults consists of an almost equal additional portion of animal substances, which, owing to the greater cohesion of their particles, require a more numerous and substantial set of instruments for their trituration.

So admirable is the economy of second dentition, that even before the shedding of the temporary teeth commences, and as soon as the jaws are sufficiently enlarged, four of the second set, one on each side, in each of the maxillary arches, make their appearance. Consequently, the number of teeth, after the completion of the first set, is never diminished, unless by accident or disease.

The rudiments of the permanent incisors and cuspidati have attained their full size at birth, and each is situated immediately behind its corresponding temporary tooth.

The permanent teeth, with the exception of the bicuspids, are considerably larger than the temporary, and during the

time of their formation are situated in the segment of a much smaller circle. But before the shedding of the first begins, the latter, by an increase in the depth of the jaws, and the development of the alveolar processes, are brought forward, so, that at about the fifth year, they are situated immediately below in the lower and nearly above in the upper maxilla, occupying places in the alveolar border, corresponding in depth to the length of their respective roots.

By this arrangement the permanent teeth occupy the smallest possible space in the jaws. The central incisors and cuspidati nearly fill the anterior part of the arch, while the lateral incisors are thrown back behind and partly between them.

The following concise description of the relative position of the teeth, at the fifth year after birth, is given by Mr. Bell. "In the upper jaw, the central incisors are situated, immediately beneath the nose, the lateral incisors thrown back behind the points of the cuspidati; and the base of the latter scarcely a quarter of an inch below the orbit. In the lower jaw, the cuspidati are placed at the very base of the bone, with only a thin layer beneath them, but the crowding is much less considerable than in the upper jaw, from the smaller comparative size of the incisors.

"The permanent central incisor of the lower jaw, is placed immediately beneath the temporary, with its point directed a little backwards, behind the partially absorbed root of the latter. The lateral incisor, not yet so far advanced, is placed deeper in the jaw, and instead of being immediately beneath the temporary is situated with its point betwen the roots of this and the cuspidatus. The permanent cuspidatus is still very deeply imbedded in the bone, with its point resting between the roots of the temporary cuspidatus, and the first temporary molaris. The two spreading roots of the latter encompass, as it were, within their span, the first bicuspis; and those of the second temporary molaris, in like manner, the second bicuspis. Nearly a similar arrangement is found to exist in the upper jaw, except that the teeth are altogether more crowded."

In Fig. 41 is exhibited a front and side view of the superior and inferior maxillary bones, with the temporary teeth *in situ*,

and the outer wall of the alveolar border removed, so as to show the situation of the crowns of the permanent incisors, cuspidati, bicuspids and first molars.

Fig. 41.



Before proceeding further with second dentition, it may be proper to offer a few remarks on the destruction of the roots and the shedding of the temporary teeth.

SHEDDING OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH.

Some very singular notions were entertained among the ancients concerning the temporary teeth. Many thought they never had roots, inasmuch as they were observed to be wanting when they dropped out; others, that the crowns were removed, while the roots remained and afterwards grew and became the permanent teeth.

This most wonderful operation of the economy is effected in accordance with an established law, but there exists, among physiologists, some difference of opinion with regard to the precise manner in which it is brought about. To the absorbents, most writers ascribe the agency of its accomplishment. Mr. Fox supposes, that as the new teeth begin to rise from their sockets,

Fig. 41. A view of the superior and inferior maxillary bones of a child about four years old, with their exterior and outer walls removed, so as to show the crowns of the permanent teeth behind the roots of the temporary. The superior maxillary bones are separated at the median line, and about a quarter of an inch apart. Behind the second temporary, are seen the crowns of the first permanent teeth imbedded in the alveolar ridge.

they come in contact with, and press upon, first, the partition of bone intervening between them and the roots of the temporaries, and afterwards upon the roots themselves; and this pressure, he believes, induces their absorption. He afterwards, however, admits that pressure is not necessary to their absorption, as it sometimes takes place where there is none.

Mr. Hunter does not attempt to explain the manner of the destruction of the roots of the temporary teeth in any other way than by stating, that they decay off up to the gum. Fauchard and Bourdet attribute their removal to the action of a corrosive fluid, supplied for the special purpose. Bunon thinks they are worn away by the rising teeth. Lecluse is of the opinion that when the process of their removal begins, their vessels cease to supply nourishing juices, and that they are broken up by a species of maceration, while Jourdain believes it is both by abrasion and corrosion.

Mr. Bell, as do indeed almost all recent writers, adopts the theory of Mr. Fox, that the destruction of the roots of the temporary teeth is the result of absorption. Laforgue, observing a fungiform or carneous substance behind the root of the temporary tooth, which, in fact, had been noticed by Bourdet, and supposed by him to exhale a fluid possessed of solvent qualities, gave it the name of absorbing apparel, and assigned to it the office of removing the root of the primary tooth.

Delabarre, who has treated this subject at greater length, and, apparently, investigated it more closely, corroborates the views of Laforgue, and gives the following description of the manner of the formation and function of the carneous substance spoken of by this author as the absorbing apparel. "While the crown of the tooth of replacement," says Delabarre, "is only in formation, the exterior membrane of the matrix is simply crossed by some blood-vessels; but as soon as it is completed, the capillaries are then developed in a very peculiar manner, and form a tissue as fine as cobweb; from this tissue the internal membrane, instead of continuing to be very delicate, and of a pale red color, increases in thickness and assumes a redder hue. As was before said, it is at the instant in which commences the reaction of the coats of the matrix, that are

conveyed from the gum to the neck of the tooth, that the plaiting of the vessels, that enter into their tissue, compose a body of a carneous appearance, whose absorbents extend their empire over all the surrounding parts; it is, therefore, the dental matrix itself, that, after being dilated to serve as a protecting envelop to the tooth, is contracted to form not only this bud-like body which we find immediately below the milk tooth, at the instant in which it naturally falls out, and whose volume is necessarily augmented as odontocia gradually goes on; but also a carneous mass by which the whole is surrounded, and whose thickness is the more remarkable as the organ that it envelops is nearer its orifice."

After giving this description, he asks, "Is there a dissolving fluid that acts chemically on the surrounding parts, or do the absorbents, without any intermedial, destroy every thing that would obstruct the shooting up of the tooth?" In reply to this, he says, "Not possessing positive proof, suitable to guide me in the decision of this question, and finding those of others of little importance, I shall not attempt to answer them."

In pursuing the subject further, he states that the vessels of the temporary tooth often remain entire in the midst of this carneous substance, continue to convey their fluids to the central part of the tooth, whilst the calcareous ingredients and the gelatine have been removed, and that, at other times, they too are destroyed. And, the conclusion to which he arrives, after a careful examination of the whole subject, is, that whether the earthy and animal parts of the roots are removed by the absorbents of the carneous tubercle in question without any previous change, or whether they are decomposed by the chemical action of a fluid exhaled from it, they are ultimately carried back into the general circulating system.

In proof of the agency of the fleshy tubercle in the destruction of the roots of the temporary teeth, he mentions one fact that goes very far to establish it, and if his views be correct, will account for those cases which are occasionally met with, where one or more of the permanent teeth fail to appear. It is this: if this substance fails to be developed, or is destroyed by an injurious operation, the tooth often remains in its socket, and

never makes its appearance. Cases of this kind have fallen under the notice of almost every practitioner.

In as few words as possible we have given the views of this ingenious writer on the subject under consideration, and although they do not seem to have attracted much attention from English writers, and are rejected by Mr. Bell, on the ground, as he says, but which we have never known to be the case, that the destruction of the root of the temporary frequently commences on a part "the most remote from the sac of the permanent tooth," we are disposed to believe them, for the most part, correct. As to the existence of the fleshy tubercles, there can be no question, and that it is through the agency of these that the roots of the temporary teeth are destroyed, seems more than probable. But, whether it is through the agency of their absorbent vessels or a chemical fluid exhaled for the purpose, may not, as Delabarre says, be so easy to determine.

The change that takes place in the external membrane of the dental sac, as noticed by Delabarre, is observable, first, on the peduncle or chord leading from it to the gum behind the temporary tooth. It here becomes thickened, about the time the root of the new tooth begins to form, and assumes a fleshy appearance, and it is here that the destruction of the surrounding bone commences, enlarging the alveolo-dental canal, and gradually removing the intervening bony partition, and, finally, the root of the temporary tooth. The agency of this thickened and fleshy condition of the exterior membrane of the dental capsules, in the removal of the roots of the temporary teeth, is rendered more conclusive by the fact, that, in those cases where the roots of the permanent teeth have become partially destroyed, the alveolo-dental periosteum had assumed a similar appearance. In the formation, too, of alveolar abscess, the tubercle at the extremity of the root presents a like aspect. There also seems to be, in this interesting operation of the economy, an association of functions mutually dependent upon each other so that, if one be suspended, the others fail to be performed. Thus, if from any cause, the sac fails to contract, the fleshy tubercle is not developed, nor does the formation of the root take place—consequently, the crown of the tooth remains in its alve-

olus. Harmonious consent of associated actions are no where more beautifully exemplified, than in these three operations of the economy.

It often happens, that the root of a temporary tooth fails to be destroyed, and that the crown of the replacing organ comes through the gum in a wrong place. Whenever this occurs, the carneous body is developed only beneath the parts through the opening of which the new tooth has appeared, and it is not brought in contact with the bony partition between it and the root of the temporary tooth.

The manner of the destruction of the roots of the temporary teeth has been a subject of close and critical inquiry with the author for several years, and the more he has examined the subject, the more fully he has become convinced, that it is the result of the action of this fleshy tubercle upon them. And while its formation seems to be the result of the contraction of the dental sac and its appendage, for the purpose of affecting the eruption of the tooth, it is especially charged with the removal of every thing that would obstruct its passage.

In conclusion, it is only necessary to observe, that the temporary teeth are shed in the same order in which they first appear. After one pair has been shed, a sufficient time usually elapses before the shedding of another, for those of the same class of the permanent set to come forward and take their place. Thus, the jaws are never deprived, unless from some other cause than the destruction of the roots of the temporary, of more than two teeth in each jaw at any one time.

ERUPTION OF THE PERMANENT TEETH.

The irritation consequent upon the eruption of the permanent teeth, is usually very slight, and with the exception of the dentes sapientiæ, seldom occasions much inconvenience. This is owing to the fact, that when second dentition commences, the system has acquired so much vigor and strength, as not to be easily affected by slight morbid impressions, and the gums offer, comparatively, little resistance to the eruption of the teeth of

replacement, for when the temporaries drop out, the others are generally so far advanced as almost immediately to appear. Even when this is not the case, the cicatrix that forms over the permanent tooth is usually of so spongy a texture, that it readily yields to the action of the absorbents. The process, too, is more gradual, from six to eight years being required for its completion, while the eruption of the teeth of first dentition is accomplished in less than half that time.

Second dentition usually commences at about six or seven years after birth, and is generally completed, as far back as the second molars, by the twelfth or fourteenth year. The dentes sapientiæ seldom appear before the eighteenth or twentieth year. The periods for the eruption of the adult teeth are, however, so variable, that it is impossible to state them with perfect accuracy. Sometimes the first permanent molars appear at four years, and the central incisors at five, at other times, these teeth do not appear before the ninth or tenth year.

But as it is of some importance that the periods of the eruption of the several classes of the permanent teeth should be known, we will state them with as much accuracy as possible.

First molars,	from . . .	5 to 6 years.
Central incisors,	" . . .	6 to 8 "
Lateral incisors,	" . . .	7 to 9 "
First bicuspids,	" . . .	9 to 10 "
Second bicuspids,	" . . .	10 to 11½ "
Cuspidati,	" . . .	11 to 12 "
Second molars,	" . . .	12 to 14 "
Third molars, (dentes sapientiæ,)		17 to 21 "

But, as before stated, the periods for the eruption of the permanent teeth, like those of the temporary, are exceedingly variable. The cuspidati often appear before the second bicuspids, and, in some cases, the dentes sapientiæ not until the thirtieth or even fortieth year, and, sometimes, they never show themselves.

The author is acquainted with a gentleman who did not shed his left superior cuspidatus until he was twenty. A few months after the permanent cupidatus made its appearance. In fact, he has known the temporary cuspidati in several instances to remain until the fortieth year, but when shed at this late age

they are rarely replaced. In the *General Archives of Medicine* for June, 1840, the case of a woman is recorded, who, at the age of forty-three, erupted four permanent incisors, behind the temporary, which, up to this period, had not been shed. Four molars made their appearance a year later, and M. Desirabode says, he has met with similar cases.

Maury fixes the period for the eruption of the four first molars at from six to eight year, and Desirabode at from six to seven, but we have rarely known them to delay their appearance beyond the sixth year. Both of these authors, too, place the cuspidati, in the order of the eruption of the teeth, before the second bicuspids.

ACCRETION OF THE JAWS.

As the rudiments of the temporary teeth increase in size, there is a corresponding increase in the maxillary bones, but during the earlier stages of the formation of the permanent teeth, their growth is not so manifest. But at about two and a half years after birth, they begin to elongate, and generally, at the fifth year have acquired sufficient length to admit behind the second temporary, the first permanent molars. After the completion of first dentition, the part of the alveolar border within which this set of teeth is situated, augment in dimensions but very little. The increase, after this time, is chiefly confined to the back part of the jaw, between the second temporary molars and the coronoid processes in the lower, and the maxillary tuberosities in the upper. The anterior part of the jaws do, however, augment a little, although so inconsiderable in extent is the increase here, that some, and among whom are Hunter and Fox, have been induced to deny the fact. By the admeasurement of various jaws, at different ages, the writers just named have endeavored to prove, that the larger size of the permanent than the temporary incisors, is not greater than the larger dimensions of the temporary molars than the bicuspids, and that, consequently, no increase in this part of the jaw is necessary.

But a measurement of the same jaw, made after the first permanent molars have come through the gums, and after the

dentition of all the teeth of replacement, will show that their measurements are not to be relied on.

M. Delabarre, in attempting to prove the incorrectness of these gentlemen's calculations, by a similar course of experiments, appears to have fallen into an opposite error, whence, it would seem, as is justly remarked by Mr. Bell, "That no comparison, instituted between the jaws of different individuals, can be relied on as conclusive." The only way by which we can arrive at the truth of the matter is, by examining the same jaw at different ages, and comparing the several results. "This," says Mr. B., "I have repeatedly done, and have no hesitation in saying, that the ten anterior permanent teeth occupy a somewhat larger arch than the temporary ones which precede them had done."

The transverse and perpendicular dimensions of the anterior part of the jaws continue to augment until the completion of second dentition.

In alluding to the influence which the pressure of the teeth has in determining an increase of the anterior part of the jaws, Delabarre contends, that while it is impossible for there to be any immediate pressure of these organs, except at the time when they are forcing their way through the enlarged alveolo-dental canals, their contact, at this period, gives rise to a mechanical increase; and he believes that previously to this period, the enlargement has been carried on by the liquor contained in the dental sacs. He argues, therefore, that the jaws, besides the mode of accretion resulting from nutrition "have another, peculiar to themselves," coinciding with the development of the dental sacs, and the quantity of fluid which they contain, as also with the manner of the arrangement of the crowns of the permanent teeth between such as may be in the circle, whether belonging to first or second dentition.

That the dimensions of the alveolar arch may be increased by pressure upon the teeth from behind forwards, no one will deny, but to suppose the accretion of the jaws may be determined by the pressure of these organs against each other, or by the fluid contained in the dental sacs, would be to suppose that the law that determines it in other bones is inoperative here. In fact, to

do this, would be attributing it rather to accident than to a natural operation of the economy.*

The elongation of the jaws produce a corresponding change in the form of the face. Thus, the face of a child is round, that of an adult is long and prominent.

The permanent incisors generally fill the space formerly occupied by the temporaries of the same class, and about one-half of that previously filled by the primitive cuspidati. The other half of this space, together with a moiety of that before taken up by the first temporary molars, is occupied by the permanent cuspidati.

The bicuspids occupy larger spaces, by one-fifth or sixth, than those occupied by the remaining moities of the first, and the whole of the second temporary molars.

Hence, it will be perceived, that the ten anterior permanent teeth occupy a somewhat larger space than that which was taken up by the temporary ones that preceded them, and that, were there no increase in the size of this portion of the arch, the uniformity of their arrangement would be more or less disturbed. To prevent this, therefore, a slight increase is necessary, but the dimensions of that portion of the alveolar border occupied by the temporaay teeth is not increased until these teeth are shed, and then, as those of replacement come forward to take their place, they arrange themselves in a somewhat larger arch. It is by this operation of the economy that the size of the alveolar border is augmented. In fact, a new alveolar ridge is formed, and this last is slightly larger than the first.

But there is not always an increase in the anterior part of the

* The formation of the alveolar processes, and that of the teeth, take place according to different laws. The jaws grow and enlarge in conformity with the general laws which preside over the increase of the osseous system. The alveolar arches, at birth, are little more than one inch in length ; at nine years of age, they are nearly two inches, and at the period of perfect growth, at least two inches and a half long. The depth of the lower jaw in the fetus at the full time is the seventh, and in the adult the fifth of the whole height of the head. The teeth, on the contrary, uniformly appear with the breadth and thickness, only not the length, to which they will ever attain. In order that the development of these organs may take place in a regular manner, it is, therefore, necessary that a certain harmony be established between their sizes at different periods, and the alveolar edges of the jaws.—*Bourgery's Anatomy.*

jaws; on the contrary, the premature loss of one or more of the temporary teeth often occasions a contraction that frequently causes irregularity in the arrangement of the permanent set, and sometimes forces the first and second molars so far back, that the dentes sapientiæ are thrown against the coronoid processes, and thus, in many instances, such severe inflammation in the muscles of this portion of the jaw is produced, that the extraction of these latter teeth is rendered absolutely necessary.

About the third year, the jaws, are more rapidly elongated, in order that the first permanent molars, which are at this time slowly advancing, may be accommodated behind the second temporary molars. This elongation of the jaws continues until the dental arches have become sufficiently enlarged for the reception of the whole of the permanent teeth.

It sometimes happens that the jaws in their accretion are badly developed, and have a faulty configuration. This may occur with one or both jaws. The alveolar arch is sometimes too narrow, having a compressed appearance, and projecting so far forward as to prevent the upper lip from covering the front teeth, thus imparting to the individual an exceedingly disagreeable appearance. In cases of this sort, the roof of the mouth, instead of presenting an oval arch, forms an irregular triangle. At other times the alveolar arch is too wide, causing the teeth to be separated from each other, and the roof of the mouth to present a flattened aspect.

Similar defects are met with in the configuration of the lower jaw. Its sides may be too close together, causing the front teeth to project and to cross and strike on the outside of the upper incisors, or it may describe too large a circle.

These defects are regarded as hereditary, and are more peculiar to some nations than others. The tendency to them is observable in early childhood, and even in infancy. Many suppose they are determined by a rickety diathesis of the general system, but this opinion has been proven to be incorrect by the fact, that those affected with this disease generally have good palates and well developed jaws. So far, indeed, from its having any agency in their production, rickets is thought by some to be produced by dentition, assigning as a reason for this

belief, its frequent occurrence at the period of life, when this process is going on; but this opinion is doubtless as incorrect as is the other and opposite one. The cause of rickets is involved in as much obscurity as is that of the peculiarities in the formation of the jaws.

There is a species of deformity in the upper jaw, the cause of which is equally difficult of explanation, characterized by one or more divisions of the upper lip, alveolar ridge and palatine arch, and necessarily accompanied by irregularity in the arrangement of the teeth. This deformity is always congenital, and often exceedingly difficult to remedy.

Any infringement of the laws of growth, or disturbance of the functional operations of any of the organs of the face or head, may, we have no doubt, determine an improper development of the jaws and a bad arrangement of the teeth; on the other hand, a perfect, correct and healthful performance of the several functions of all the parts concerned in the formation and growth of this portion of the organism, will secure a natural development and configuration of the maxillary bones.

METHOD OF DIRECTING SECOND DENTITION.

As it regards the beauty, health and durability of the teeth, there is nothing more to be dreaded, and at the same time more easily prevented, than irregularity in their arrangement. In proportion, too, to the deviation of these organs from their proper position in the alveolar arch, are the features of the face and the expression of the countenance injured. It also increases the susceptibility of the gums and alveolo-dental membranes to morbid impressions.

It is, therefore, important that the mouth, during second dentition, should be properly cared for; and so thoroughly convinced is the author of this, that he does not hesitate to say, that if timely precautions were used, there would not be one decayed tooth where there are now a dozen.

Much harm, it is true, may be done by improper meddling with the teeth during this period, but this, so far from inducing a total neglect, should only make those having the care of

children more careful to secure the services of scientific, accomplished practitioners.

For the judicious management of second dentition, much judgment and a correct knowledge of the periods of the eruption of the several classes of teeth, are required. All unnecessary interference with these organs, at this early period of life, should certainly be avoided, as it will only tend to mar the perfection at which nature ever aims. The legitimate duty of the physician being, as Mr. Bell correctly observes, "the regulation of the natural functions when deranged;" he should never anticipate the removal by nature, of the temporary teeth, unless their extraction is called for by some pressing emergency, such as a deviation of the permanent ones from their proper place, alveolar abscess, or exfoliation of the alveolar processes.

Among the few who have treated this subject in a full and philosophical manner, we will mention Delabarre, whose work contains the most explicit directions in regard to it of any that have as yet appeared. Owing to the superficial manner in which second dentition is frequently studied, this author was led to remark, "That the laws which govern the expansion, growth and arrangement of the teeth, are properly the patrimony of the physician, who should understand them, in order to direct the dentist whenever (which unfortunately is very frequently the case) he is not furnished with sufficient information on all the duties of his profession."

The mouth should be frequently examined from the time the shedding of the deciduous teeth commences until the completion of second dentition; and when the growth of the permanent teeth so far outstrips the destruction of the roots of the temporary, that the former are caused to take an improper direction, such of the latter as have occasioned the obstruction, should be immediately removed. In the dentition of the upper front teeth, this should never be neglected: for, when they come out behind the temporaries, as they most frequently do, and are permitted to advance so far as to fall on the inside of the lower incisors, a permanent obstacle is offered to their subsequent proper adjustment.

When a wrong direction has been given to the growth of the

lower front teeth, they are rarely prevented from acquiring their proper arrangement by an obstruction of this sort. They should not, however, on this account, be permitted to occupy a wrong position too long, for the evil will be found much easier of correction while recent, than after it has continued for a considerable length of time. The irregularity should, therefore, be immediately removed.

The permanent central incisors of the upper jaw are larger than the temporaries of the same class. It might, therefore, be supposed, that the aperture formed by the removal of the one, would not be sufficient for the admission of the other, without an increase in the size of this part of the maxillary arch. It should, however, be recollected that, by the time these teeth usually emerge from the gums, the crowns of the temporary lateral incisors are so much loosened by the partial destruction of their roots, as to yield sufficiently to the pressure of the former, to permit them to take their proper position within the dental circle. When this, however, does not happen, the temporary laterals should be extracted.

Under similar circumstances, a similar course should be pursued with the permanent lateral incisors and the temporary cuspidati, and with the permanent cuspidati and the first bicuspids.

The bicuspids being situated between the fangs of the temporary molars, are seldom caused to take an improper direction in their growth. Nor are they often prevented from coming out in their proper place for want of room.

In the management of the dentition of the adult teeth, much will depend on the experience and judgment of the practitioner. If he is properly informed upon the subject, and gives to it the necessary care and attention, the mouth will, in most instances, be furnished with a healthy, well arranged and beautiful set of teeth. At this time, "an opportunity," says Mr. Fox, "presents itself for effecting this desirable object," (the prevention of irregularity,) "but every thing depends upon a correct knowledge of the time when a tooth requires to be extracted, and also of the particular tooth, for often more injury is occasioned by the removal of a tooth too early, than if it be left a little too long; because a new tooth, which has too much room long be-

fore it is required, will sometimes take a direction more difficult to alter, than a slight irregularity occasioned by an obstruction of short duration."

Mr. Bell objects to the extraction of the temporary teeth, especially in the lower jaw, to make room for the permanent ones, on the ground that the practice is harsh and unnatural—that it often gives rise to a contraction of the maxillary arch, and that, in consequence of the peduncular connection that exists between the necks of the temporary teeth and the sacs of the permanent ones, it interferes with the uniform deposition of the enamel.

These are certainly very forcible objections, and should deter every dentist from adopting the practice, except as a dernier resort—as the least of two evils. But when the temporary teeth, by remaining too long, are likely to affect the arrangement, and, consequently, the health of the permanent teeth, they should be extracted; because, in that case, their presence is a greater evil than any that would be occasioned by their removal. This last objection, however, can only apply to the extraction of the temporary teeth before the formation of the enamel of the permanent ones. As a general rule, they should be suffered to remain until their presence would be likely to injure the permanent teeth and their contiguous parts.

When the permanent teeth are crowded, the lateral pressure is frequently so great as to fracture the enamel. If this cannot be prevented in any other way, one of the permanent teeth on each side should be extracted; for it is better to sacrifice two than permanently to endanger the health of the whole.

M. Delabarre, in cases where the crowding is not very great, recommends passing a file between the teeth, as does also Mr. Bell, when only the space that is usually occupied by half of a tooth, is required.

Notwithstanding the deservedly high authority of these two gentlemen, the author's experience compels him to condemn the practice. The apertures thus formed soon close, but not so perfectly as to prevent small particles of extraneous matter from getting between the teeth, and being retained there until they become putrid, vitiating the mucous and salivary secretions of

the mouth, and thus causing the teeth to decay. In this manner, he has sometimes known the front teeth to be entirely destroyed; and he has always observed, that those teeth which had been thus filed, were invariably the first, and sometimes the only ones, to decay—thus clearly indicating the pernicious tendency of the practice.

He does not, however, wish to be understood as conveying the idea that filing the teeth necessarily causes them to decay, for, when the file is used for any other purpose than to gain room, the apertures may be made large enough to prevent the approximation of the organs, and thus the bad effects resulting from the operation will be prevented.

The file should, therefore, never be used with a view to remedy irregularity, the extraction of two teeth, one on each side of the jaw, however small the space required to be gained may be, is far preferable. The second bicuspids, *ceteris paribus*, should always be removed rather than the first, but sometimes the extraction of the first becomes necessary.

By the removal of two, ample room will be gained for the regular arrangement of all the remaining teeth, and the injury resulting from a crowded condition of the organs prevented.

On filing teeth, to prevent irregularity, Dr. Fitch judiciously remarks: "I consider the expediency of filing or not filing the teeth, ought to be a subject of serious deliberation on the part of the dental practitioner, and never, especially in young persons, perform the operation, unless obliged to do so, to cure actual disease.

"I was greatly surprised, in the late work of Mr. Bell, to see directions to file slightly irregular and crooked teeth, so as to gain about half a tooth of room."

Nature, when permitted to proceed with her works without interruption, is able to perform her operations in a perfect and harmonious manner. But the functional operations of all the parts of the body are liable to be disturbed from an almost innumerable number and variety of causes, and an impairment of one organ often gives rise to derangement of the whole organism. For the relief of which, the interposition of art not unfrequently becomes necessary, and it is fortunate for the well being of man, that it can, in so many instances, be applied with success.

In sound and healthy constitutions, the services of the dentist are seldom required to assist or direct second dentition. In remarking upon this subject, Dr. Koecker observes, "that the children, for whom the assistance of the dentist is most frequently sought, are those who are either in a delicate, or at least in imperfect constitutional health; where the state of not only the temporary teeth, but of the permanent also, is to be considered; and, where both are found diseased, the future health and regularity of the latter require the greatest consideration of the surgeon.

"Irregularity of the teeth is one of their chief predisposing causes of disease, and never fails, even in the most healthy constitutions, to destroy, sooner or later, the strongest and best set of teeth, unless properly attended to. It is thus not only a most powerful cause of destruction to the health and beauty of the teeth, but also to the regularity and pleasing symmetry of the features of the face; always producing, though slowly and gradually, some irregularity, but not unfrequently the most surprising and disgusting appearance.

"It is, however, a great pleasure to know, that dental surgery is abundantly provided with the most sure remedies, and in the most delicate subjects, if placed under proper care, at an early age, the greater portion of the teeth of the permanent set may invariably be preserved in perfect health and regularity, in common with their relative and contiguous parts."

Finally, we would remark, that though nature is most generally able to accomplish the task assigned her, yet there are times when she requires aid, and it is then, and then only, that the services of the dentist are needed. Therefore, whilst, on the one hand, we should guard against any uncalled for interference, we should, on the other, always be ready to give such assistance, as the nature of the disturbance presented to our notice, may require.

CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

IRREGULARITY OF THE TEETH.

THE temporary teeth seldom deviate from their proper place in the alveolar arch, but with the permanent teeth, irregularity of arrangement is of frequent occurrence. The incisors and cuspidati are more liable to take an improper direction in their growth than any of the other teeth. The first and second molars rarely deviate from their proper place; for, like the teeth of first dentition, they encounter no obstructions in their growth and protrusion through the gums.

The first molars being the first of the second set to come through the gums, the ten anterior teeth are limited to that part of the arch occupied by the first set, and if this is too small to admit them, irregularity must of necessity ensue.

The dentes sapientiæ are sometimes prevented from coming out in the proper place in the lower jaw, by want of room between the second molars and the coronoid processes; and in the upper jaw, by a want of space between the last named teeth and the angle of the jaw.

When a bicuspis is forced from its proper place, it turns inwards towards the tongue, or outwards towards the cheek, according as it is in the upper or lower jaw. The cuspidati when prevented from coming out in their proper place, make their appearance either before or behind the other teeth. When they come out anteriorly, and they do so more frequently than posteriorly, they often become a source of great annoyance to the upper lip, excoriating its lining membrane, and sometimes causing ulceration.

The incisors of the upper jaw present a greater variety in the manner of their arrangement than any of the other teeth. The

centrals sometimes come out before and sometimes behind the arch; at other times, their sides, next to the median line, are turned either directly or obliquely forwards towards the lip. The laterals sometimes appear half an inch behind the arch, looking towards the roof of the mouth; at other times, they come out in front of the arch, and, at other times again, they are turned obliquely or transversely across it.

When any of the upper incisors are very much inclined towards the interior of the mouth, the lower teeth, at each occlusion of the jaws, shut before them, and become an obstacle to their adjustment. This is one of the most difficult kinds of irregularity to remedy, and one that oftens interferes with the lateral motions of the jaw.

The lower incisors sometimes shut in this manner even when there is no deviation of the upper teeth to the interior. In this case, the irregularity is owing to a preternatural elongation of the lower jaw, which more frequently results from some fault of dentition, than from any congenital defect in the jaw itself.

Sometimes, the superior maxillary arch is so much contracted, and the front teeth in consequence so much projected, that the upper lip is prevented from covering them. Cases of this kind, however, are rarely met with, but when they do occur, they occasion much deformity of the face, and form a species of irregularity very difficult to remedy.

From the same cause, the lateral incisors are sometimes forced from the arch, and appear behind the centrals and cuspidati, the dental circle being filled with the other teeth.

There are many other deviations in the arrangement of these teeth. Mr. Fox mentions one that was caused by the presence of two supernumerary teeth of a conical form, that came up partly behind and partly between the central incisors, which, in consequence, were thrown forward, while the laterals were placed in a line with the supernumeraries; the central incisors, though half an inch apart, formed one row, and the laterals and supernumeraries, another. Mr. F. says he has seen three cases of this kind.

This description of irregularity is rarely met with: the author has, however, in the course of his practice, seen several cases.

M. Delabarre says, that cases of a transposition of the germs of the teeth are occasionally met with, so that a lateral incisor takes the place of a central, and a central the place of the lateral. A similar transposition of a cuspidatus and a lateral incisor also, sometimes occurs. Two cases of this sort have fallen under the observation of the author.

The incisors of the lower jaw, being smaller than those of the upper, and, in other respects, less conspicuous, do not so plainly show an irregularity in their arrangement, nor is the appearance of an individual so much affected by it. Still it should be guarded against, for any such disturbance, whether in the upper or lower jaw, is productive of injury to the health of the teeth, and to the beauty of the mouth.

The growth of the inferior permanent incisors is sometimes more rapid than the destruction of the roots of the corresponding temporaries. In this case, the former emerge from the gums behind the latter, and sometimes so far back, as very greatly to annoy the tongue, and interfere with enunciation. At other times, the permanent centrals cannot come into their proper place, because the space left for them by the moulting of the temporaries, is not sufficient for their reception. The irregularity in the former of these two cases, is greater than in the latter. The same causes, in like manner affect the laterals.

M. Delabarre mentions a defect in the natural conformation of the jaws, by which the upper temporary incisors on one side of the median line are thrown on the outside of the lower teeth, while the corresponding teeth, on the other side of the same line, fall within. The same disposition, he says, may be expected, unless the defect is previously remedied, after the dentition of the permanent teeth.* The author has never met with more than two cases of this sort, and he did not see the subjects of even these until after they had become adults.

* Enfin il y a une espèce de torsion de l'une ou de l'autre mâchoire, et quelquefois de toute les deux, qui fait que les dents temporaries supèrieures antêrieures recouvrent les infêrieures, d'apaés la meilleure disposition ; tandis qu' à commencer de la linge médiane, les semblables dents de l'autre côte, rentrent en dedans des infêrieures ; il est probable, dans ce cas, que si l'on n'y obvie, le même disposition se reproduira pour la seconde dentition.—*Traité de la Seconde Dentition*, p. 136.

TREATMENT.

The means employed in the treatment of irregularity of the teeth, should accord with the indications of nature. When the irregularity is neither great nor complicated, and its causes are removed before the nineteenth or twentieth year, the teeth without any aid from art, will soon acquire their proper position.

When, however, the exertions of the economy are unavailing, recourse should be had to the dentist, who can, in almost every case, produce symmetry and regularity from deformity.

The practicability of altering the position of a tooth, after the completion of its growth, was well known to many of the early practitioners, but as before the commencement of the present century, the more particular object of the dentist, was, the insertion of artificial teeth, this branch of dentistry met with little attention. Fauchard and Bourdet were among the first who turned their attention to orthodontia. They invented a variety of fixtures for adjusting such of the teeth as were not rightly arranged; but most of these were so awkward in their construction, and occasioned so much inconvenience to the patient, that they were seldom employed.

Mr. Fox, was among the first to give explicit directions for remedying irregularity of the teeth. These have formed the basis of the established practice for more than forty years, and this long trial has proved that they were founded upon a knowledge of the laws of the economy, and much practical experience.

In describing the treatment of irregularity, we shall notice the means by which some of its principal varieties may be removed; otherwise, the application of the principles of treatment would not be well understood, since it must be varied to suit each individual case.

As a general rule, the sooner an irregularity in the arrangement of the teeth is remedied the better, for the longer a tooth is allowed to occupy a wrong position, the more difficult will be its adjustment. The position of a tooth may, sometimes, be altered, after the eighteenth, twentieth or even the twenty-fifth year, but, generally, it is better not to delay the application of the proper means until so late a period; for a change of this

kind may be much more easily affected before the several parts of the osseous system have acquired their full size, and while the process of new formation is in vigorous operation, than at a later period of life.

The age of the subject, therefore, should always govern the practitioner in forming a prognosis of the practicability of removing an irregularity. Previously to the eighteenth year, he may almost always form a favorable one, but after this time, his efforts will be less likely to succeed.

The first thing that should claim attention in the treatment of irregularity, is the removal of its causes. Whenever, therefore, the presence of any of the temporary teeth has given a false direction to one or more of the permanent, they should be extracted, and the deviating teeth pressed several times a day with the finger, in the direction they are to be moved. This, if the irregularity has been occasioned by the presence of a deciduous tooth, will, generally, be all that is required.

But, when it is the result of narrowness of the jaw, either natural or acquired, one of the permanent teeth on each side should be removed, in order to make room for those that are improperly situated. The second bicuspids are the teeth which should, generally, be extracted, except the first permanent molars are so much decayed as to render their preservation impracticable, or, at least, very doubtful; in which case, these teeth should be removed in their stead. After the removal of the second bicuspids, the first, usually, very soon fall back into the places which they occupied, and furnish ample room for the cuspidati and incisors. But if the first fail to do this, they may be gradually forced back by inserting wedges of wood or gum elastic between them and the cuspidati, or by means of a ligature of silk, or gum elastic, fastened to the first molar on each side, and tied around them. These should be renewed, every day, until the desired result is produced.

The most frequent kind of irregularity, resulting from a narrowness of the jaw, is the projection of the cuspidati. These teeth, with the exception of the second and third molars, are the last of the teeth of second dentition that are erupted, and are, consequently, more liable to be forced out of the arch than

any of the others, especially when it is so much contracted as to be almost entirely filled before they make their appearance. The common practice, in cases of this sort, is to remove the cuspidati. But as these teeth contribute more than any of the others, except the incisors, to the beauty of the mouth, and can, in almost every case, be brought to their proper place, the practice is injudicious. Instead of removing them, a bicuspis should be extracted from each side. When the space between the lateral incisor and first bicuspis is equal to one-half the width of the crown of the cuspid, the second bicuspis should be removed, but when it is less, the first should be taken out, and for the reason, that, although the crown of the latter might be carried far enough back after the removal of the former, to admit the crown of the cuspid between it and the lateral incisor, the root of this tooth would remain in front and partly across the root of the first bicuspis, leaving a more or less prominent vertical ridge on the anterior part of the alveolar border, which, to some extent, at least, would act as an irritant to the gums and periosteum.

As the incisors of the upper jaw are more conspicuous than those of the lower, and when well arranged contribute more to the beauty of the mouth, their preservation and regularity are of greater relative importance. Hence, the removal of a lateral incisor, when it is situated behind the circle of the other teeth, as is often done, with a view of remedying the deformity produced by its false position, is a practice which cannot be too strongly deprecated, provided sufficient space can be made between the cuspidatus and central incisor for its reception, by the removal of a bicuspis from each side of the jaw.

But, in describing the treatment of irregularity, we will commence with an incisor occupying an oblique or transverse position across the alveolar ridge, so that the cutting edge of the tooth, instead of being in a line with the arch, forms an angle with it of from forty to ninety degrees. This variety of deviation is rarely met with in both centrals, but often occurs with one. Some dentists have recommended in cases of this sort, when the space between the adjoining central and lateral incisor is equal to the width of the deviating tooth, to turn the latter in its

socket with a pair of forceps, or to extract and immediately replace it with the labial face of the organ outwards. It is scarcely necessary to say, that if a tooth is extracted or turned in its socket, the vessels and nerves from which it derives its nourishment and vitality are severed, and though its connection with the alveolus may be partially re-established, it will be liable to act as a morbid irritant.

Fig. 42.



The tooth, however, may be brought to its proper position without incurring the risk of injury by accurately fitting a gold ring or band with knobs on the anterior and posterior edges; to each of which, a ligature should be attached. The ligatures, thus fastened to the ring, should be carried back, one on either side, in front and behind the arch, and secured to the bicuspids in the manner as represented in Fig. 42, so as to act constantly upon the irregular tooth. These should be renewed from day to day, until the tooth is turned in its socket.

But before attempting to turn the deviating tooth, it should be ascertained if the aperture between the adjoining teeth is sufficient to admit of the operation. If it is not, it should be increased by the extraction of a bicuspis from each side of the jaw, and moving the teeth in front of them backwards until sufficient room is obtained. The time required to do this, will vary from three to eight or ten weeks, depending upon the number of teeth to be moved and the age of the patient.

Narrowness of the alveolar border is sometimes a cause of irregularity of the upper incisors. In this case, the centrals usually project, though it sometimes happens that some are in front and some behind the arch, producing great deformity; to remedy which, the second bicuspids should be removed, unless the first molars are so much affected by caries as to render their

preservation doubtful. In this event, they should be extracted, in place of the second bicuspids.

The following case will serve to illustrate the means employed for remedying this description of deformity. The subject was a young lady fifteen years of age, and when placed under the author's care in the fall of 1844, her teeth presented the following arrangement:

Fig. 43.



The second molars of the upper jaw occupied their proper position in the alveolar arch, or in other words they were a little more than an inch and a quarter apart; the first molars were hardly an inch apart, and the first bicuspids were still nearer to each other. The cuspidati, except having been pushed a little too far forward, occupied, very nearly, their proper position. The right central and left lateral incisors projected full a quarter of an inch, lifting and otherwise annoying and disfiguring the upper lip: the left central was thrown back and partly between the right central and left lateral, while the right lateral occupied a position in a line with it.

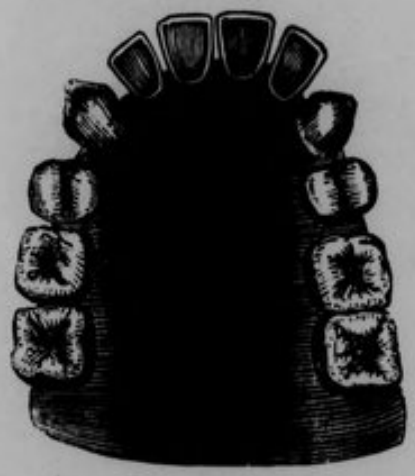
Fig. 44.



Without going into a minute detail of the method which was adopted for procuring the appliance employed, it will be sufficient to refer the reader to Fig. 44. This represents a plaster model of the teeth, alveolar border, palatine arch, and the apparatus employed for remedying the deformity. The second bicuspids were first extracted, then, by means of ligatures applied to the second molars and first bicuspids, and made fast to the band of gold passing round on the outside of the arch, which were renewed every day, these teeth were brought out to their proper position in eleven weeks. this done, there was a space of nearly an eighth of an inch be-

tween the cuspidati and first bicuspids; this was filled up, by bringing back with ligatures, properly applied, the former to the latter. A ligature was next applied to the right lateral, passed through a hole in the gold band in front, and made fast. In ten days this tooth was brought out to its proper place. A ligature was now attached to a knob soldered on the gold plate behind the teeth on the inner side of the aveolar border for the purpose, and tied tightly in front of the projecting right central incisor. In about three weeks this was brought to a position beside the lateral incisor of the same side. The left central was then, in like manner, brought forward and the left carried backward to its proper place.

Fig. 45.



After the deformity was corrected, the teeth presented the arrangement represented in Fig. 45, taken from a plaster model of the upper jaw. To correct the irregularity in this case, required, in all, twenty-one weeks. If all the teeth could have been acted upon at the same time, the operation might have been accomplished in a shorter period. It was found necessary, too, in consequence of the diseased action which the apparatus excited in the gums, to remove it every eight or ten days, and let it remain off each time twenty-four hours. It may be proper, also, to observe, that every time the ligatures were removed, it was taken from the mouth, and the teeth thoroughly cleansed.

For moving a projecting incisor or cuspidatus backwards, a gold spiral spring was formerly employed. It was found to be more efficient than a ligature of silk, inasmuch as it kept a constant traction upon the deviating tooth. But it is objectionable on account of the annoyance it causes the patient. A ligature of gum-elastic is far preferable, and this material is now very generally employed in the treatment of every description of irregularity of the teeth in which agencies of this sort are required.

There are other varieties of irregularity of the upper incisors,

but we shall only notice one, which, from its peculiar character, is sometimes exceedingly difficult to remedy. It is when one or more of these teeth are placed so far back in the jaw, that the under teeth come before them at each occlusion of the mouth.

Of this variety, Mr. Fox enumerates four kinds:—The first is, when one of the central incisors is situated so far back, that the lower teeth shut over it, while the other central remains in its proper place, as represented in Fig. 46, copied from his work, as are also those which follow.

Fig. 46.



Fig. 47.



The second is, when both of the centrals have come out behind the circle of the other teeth, and the laterals occupy their own proper position, as represented in Fig. 47.

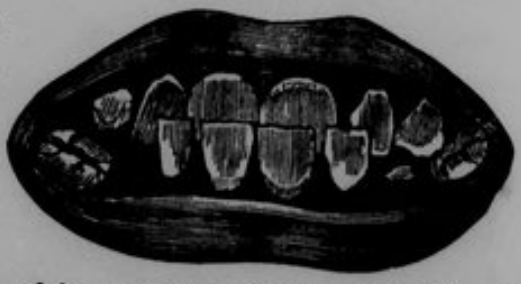
The third is, when the lateral incisors are thrown so far back, that the under teeth shut before them, while the centrals are well arranged, as exhibited in Fig. 48.

Fig. 48.



The fourth kind is, when all the incisors are placed so far behind the arch that the lower teeth shut before them, as in Fig. 49.

Fig. 49.



He might also have added to this variety of irregularity, a fifth description, for it sometimes happens that the cuspidati of the upper jaw are thrown so far back, as to fall on the inside

of the lower teeth. The author has met with several cases of this description of deviation of the cuspidati.

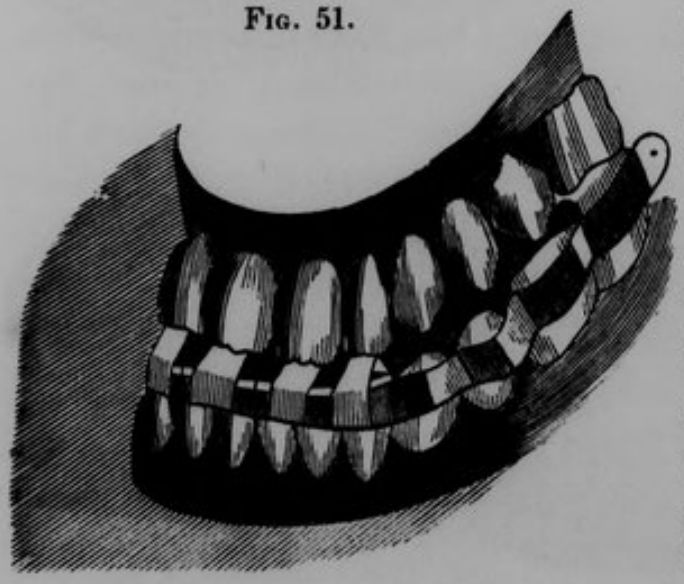
Two things are necessary in the treatment of the kinds of irregularity just described; the first is, to prevent the upper and lower teeth from coming entirely together, by placing between them some hard substance, so that the former may not be prevented by the latter from being brought forward. The second is, the application of some fixture that will exert a constant and steady pressure upon the deviating teeth, until they pass those of the lower jaw.

For the accomplishment of this, various plans have been proposed. Duval recommends the application of a grooved or guttered plate, and Catalan has invented an instrument, based, we believe, upon the same principle, but much better adapted to the purpose. The inclined plane of Catalan, although, until we had employed it, we doubted its utility, is certainly an effectual and speedy method of moving deviating front teeth in the upper jaw, from behind the dental circle to their proper places. It acts with great force, and in precisely the proper manner for the accomplishment of the object.

Fig. 50.



Fig. 51.



The accompanying cuts, copied from Catalan, exhibit the manner in which his inclined plane is constructed. The one here represented, is applied to a case where all the upper incisors fall behind the lower. Its construction should be varied to suit the peculiarity of the case. If but one tooth deviates, only one inclined plane will be required. The apparatus should also be so adapted and se-

cured to the teeth as to occasion as little inconvenience to the patient as possible. The circular bar or plate of gold, running round in front of the teeth, should reach from the first molaris on one side to the first molaris on the other, and the plate, extending up from it should cover the grinding surfaces of these teeth, and be long enough te cover their lingual surfaces also, as the whole fixture will thereby be rendered much firmer and more secure.

In the application of this principle for the correction of irregularity, the author has been in the habit of constructing the apparatus somewhat differently. With a brass model and zinc counter-model, he has a plate of gold struck up over all the teeth, when practicable, as far back as the first or second molars, so as completely to encase them and the alveolar ridge in it. An encasement of this sort, possesses greater stability than can be obtained for an appliance like the one represented in Figs. 50 and 51.

Fig. 52.



Fig. 53.

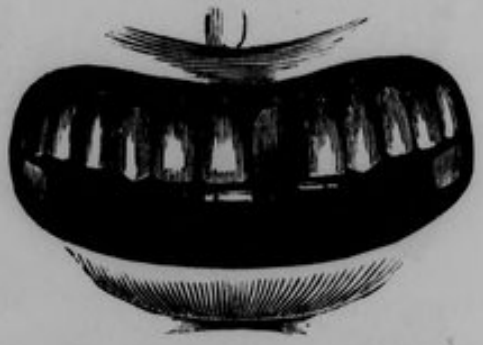
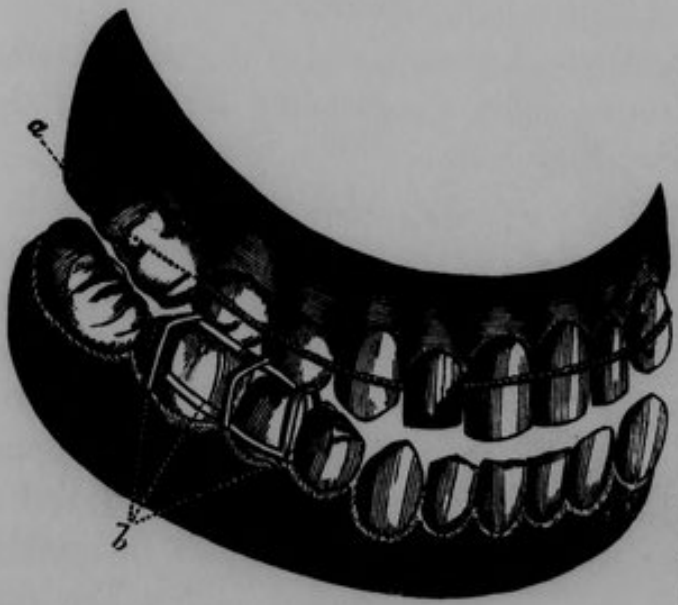


Fig. 54



In Fig. 52, is seen a representation of an inclined plane for bringing forward a central incisor which had come out about a quarter of an inch behind the circle of the other teeth. The manner of the action of this instrument upon the deviating tooth is shown in Fig. 53.

The plan proposed by Delabarre, is to pass silk ligatures round the teeth, in such a way that a properly directed and steady pressure will be exerted on such of the teeth as are situated behind the arch, and to keep the jaws from coming in contact, he recommends the application of a metallic grate, fitted to two of the inferior molars, (see Fig. 54,) taken from his treatise on second dention. *a* Represents a ligature round the teeth, and *b* A metallic grate on two of the lower teeth.

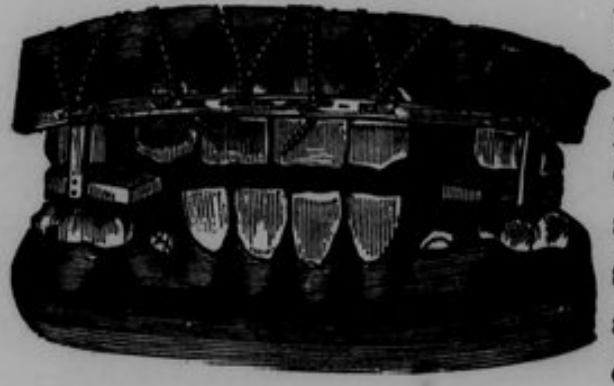
This plan possesses the merit of simplicity, and occasions but little or no inconvenience to the patient; but it will sometimes be found not only inefficient, but also to loosen the teeth adjacent to those that are to be brought forward. The force on the irregular teeth, and those against which the ligatures act, being equal, and in opposite directions, the latter will be drawn back, while the former are brought forward; and thus the means used for the correction of one evil, will sometimes be productive of another.

Fig. 55.



The means recommended by Mr. Fox, consists of a gold bar about the sixteenth part of an inch in width, and of proportionate thickness, bent to suit the curvature of the mouth, and fastened with ligatures to the temporary molars of each side. It is pierced opposite to each irregular tooth, with two holes. The teeth of the upper and lower jaw are prevented from coming entirely together by means of thin blocks of ivory, attached to each end of the bar by small pieces of gold, and resting upon the grinding surfaces of the temporary molars. (See Fig. 55.)

Fig. 56.



After the instrument has been thus fastened to the teeth, silk ligatures are passed round such as have deviated to the interior, and through the holes opposite them, and then tied in a firm knot, on the outside of the bar. (See Fig. 56.)

The ligatures must be renewed every three or four days, until the teeth shall have come forward far enough to fall plumb on those that formerly shut before them and acquired a sufficient degree of firmness to prevent them from returning to their former position. But as soon as the teeth shut perpendicularly upon each other, the blocks may be removed, and the bar alone retained.

Since 1830, many practitioners, both in England and the United States have substituted caps of gold for the blocks of ivory recommended by Mr. Fox; and, instead of simply bending the bar, they now swage it between a metallic cast and die, so that all its parts, except those immediately opposite the irregular teeth, may be perfectly adapted to the dental circle. The apparatus, with these modifications, is more comfortable, and less liable to move upon the teeth.

Mr. Fox directs, that the blocks of ivory should be placed upon the temporary molars, but the caps of gold now substituted are entirely disconnected from the bar, and are often used after the moulting of these teeth; they are, therefore, placed upon the first permanent molars.

As the caps prevent the teeth from coming together, mastication, during the time they are worn, is, necessarily, performed on them. They should, therefore, be placed upon the largest and strongest teeth; and it is for this reason that the molars should be selected.

The curved bar should be washed and the teeth cleansed every time the ligatures are renewed. If this be neglected, the particles of food that collect between it and the teeth, will soon become putrid and offensive, and a source of disease both to the gums and teeth.

But before the bar is applied, it should be ascertained whether there is sufficient space for the reception of the deviating teeth, and if there is not, room should be made in the manner as before described.

Some diversity of opinion exists as to the most suitable age for the correction of this description of irregularity. Mr. Fox, it would seem, preferred the period immediately previous to the moulting of the temporary molars—probably the tenth or eleventh year after birth.

Some think, that the fore part of the dental arch continues to expand until the second denture is completed, and that the bicuspids afford a better support for the ends of the bar than any other teeth, and are, therefore, content to wait until the fifteenth or even sixteenth year. But, though the arch does sometimes expand a little, yet even when the expansion occurs, it is generally so inconsiderable, that very little advantage can be derived from it. Moreover, the arch, instead of expanding is much more liable to contract whenever a vacancy occurs in the dental circle, either by the extraction, or from the improper growth of one or more of the teeth; hence, the difficulty is apt to be increased by delay.

The evil, it is true, may be remedied at the fifteenth, seventeenth, or even eighteenth year; but it is rarely advisable to defer it to so late a period.

The most that is required in the treatment of irregularity of the lower incisors, is to remove a tooth, and to apply frequent pressure to the teeth that are improperly situated. The lower incisors are less conspicuous than those of the upper jaw, and the loss of one, if the others are well arranged, is scarcely perceptible.

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

DEFORMITY RESULTING FROM EXCESSIVE DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH AND ALVEOLAR RIDGE OF THE LOWER JAW.

Fig. 57.



When the arch described by the teeth of the lower jaw is larger than that of the upper, the incisors and cuspids of the former shut in front of those of the latter, causing the chin to project and otherwise impairing the symmetry of the face. This description of deformity may result from two causes, namely, excessive development of the teeth and alveolar arch, and partial luxation and protrusion of the lower jaw. But we shall confine our remarks in this chapter to the treatment of that produced by the former.

TREATMENT.

The remedial indications of the deformity in question, consists in diminishing the size of the dental arch, which is always a tedious and difficult operation, requiring a vast amount of patience and perseverance on the part of the patient, and much mechanical ingenuity and skill on the part of the dentist. The appliances to be employed have, of necessity, to be more or less complicated, requiring the most perfect accuracy of adaptation and neatness of execution; they must also be worn for a long time, and, as a natural consequence, are a source of considerable annoyance.

In the treatment of a case of this sort, the first thing to be done, is to extract the first bicuspis on each side of the jaw.

By this means sufficient room will be obtained for the contraction, which it will be necessary to effect in the dental arch, for the accomplishment of the object. An accurate impression of the teeth and alveolar ridge, should now be taken, in the manner to be hereafter described, with wax, previously softened in warm water. From this impression, a plaster model should next be procured, and afterwards a metallic model and counter-model.

Fig. 58.



This done, a gold plate of the ordinary thickness should be swaged to fit the first and second molars, if the latter has made its appearance, and if not, the second bicuspis and first molar on each side of the jaw, so as completely to incase these teeth. If these caps, on applying them to the teeth in the mouth, should not be found thick enough to prevent the front teeth from coming together, a piece of gold plate should be soldered on that part of each which covers the grinding surfaces of the teeth, and having proceeded thus far, a small gold knob should be soldered on each side of each cap, and to each of which a ligature of silk or gum elastic should be attached. These ligatures should now be brought forward and tied tightly around the cuspidati. When thus adjusted, the lower jaw will present the appearance exhibited in Fig. 58. By this means the cuspidati may, in fifteen or twenty days, be taken back to the bicuspids; but, if in their progress they are not carried towards the inner part of the alveolar ridge, the outer ligatures may be left off after a few days, and the inner ones only employed, to complete the remainder of the operation.

After the positions of the cuspidati have been thus changed, the gold caps should be removed and a circular bar of gold, extending from one to the other, so constructed as to pass about a quarter of an inch behind the incisors, should now be soldered at each end to the inner side of each cap, and a hole made

through it behind each of the incisors, through which a ligature of silk should be passed, and after it is placed in the mouth, brought forward and tied tightly in front of each tooth. These ligatures should be renewed every day until the teeth are carried far enough back to strike on the inside of the corresponding teeth in the upper jaw.

Fig. 59 represents the appearance which a plaster model of the lower jaw presents with the last named apparatus on it, and an examination of this will convey a more correct idea of its construction, the manner of its application, and mode of action, than any description which can be given.

Fig. 59.



The author has never known an apparatus of this description to be employed by any one but himself; in his practice it has proved more efficient than any contrivance which he has ever used. But it is necessary that the caps be fitted with the greatest accuracy to the teeth to which they are applied, and they should be removed every day and thoroughly cleansed, as well as the teeth they cover. If this precaution is neglected, the secretions of the mouth which collect between the gold caps and the teeth, will soon become acrid and corrode the latter. This precaution, therefore, should always be most strictly observed.

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

PROTRUSION OF THE LOWER JAW.

THIS deformity, although produced by a different cause from the one last described, is precisely similar to it, and gives to the lower part of the face an exceedingly morose and disagreeable appearance. It also interferes with mastication, and often with prehension and distinct utterance. It wholly changes the relationship which the teeth should sustain to each other when the mouth is closed. The cusps or protuberances of the bicuspids and molars of the jaw, instead of fitting into the depressions of the corresponding teeth of the other, often strike their most prominent points; at other times the outer protuberances of the lower molars and bicuspids, instead of fitting into the depressions of the same class of teeth in the upper jaw, shut on the outside of these teeth. The trituration of aliments is consequently rendered more or less imperfect.

The description of deformity under consideration is characterized by the protrusion of the lower jaw, and in the opinion of Dr. J. S. Gunnell, is the result of a "natural partial luxation." It is of more frequent occurrence than the one which results from excessive development of the teeth and alveolar ridge, and requires, as before stated, an entirely different plan of treatment. It rarely occurs previously to second dentition, but, Dr. G. says, he has met with it previously to that period.

TREATMENT.

The plan of treatment which Dr. Gunnell proposes, and it is unquestionably the most successful that has ever been employed,

consists in fastening a small block of ivory on one of the lower molars, thick enough to keep the front teeth about a quarter of an inch apart when the jaws are closed. He then puts on Fox's bandage, which he buckles "as tight as the patient can bear with convenience," pressing "the chin upwards and backwards." Then, if the teeth be irregular, he takes "a piece of tough wood of the shape of a narrow spoon-handle," which he introduces between the teeth and presses on the "outside of the front lower protruding tooth or teeth, and on the inside of the upper irregular teeth, firmly, for from five to ten minutes, two or three times a day, the lower end of the stick or piece of wood and hand being below the chin, thereby pressing the lower teeth inwards and backwards, and the upper teeth outwards and forwards. In this way," says Dr. G., "I have restored the face or jaws to their proper symmetry in one week, though occasionally it will take from three to six weeks or even longer."

FIG. 60.



The description of bandage here alluded to, and the manner of its application is represented in Fig. 60. When the protusion of the lower jaw is accompanied by irregularity, Dr. G. very properly directs that means should, at the same time, be employed for remedying it. He also recommends that the operation for retracting the protruding jaw, be performed as soon as the deformity occurs; though, he says, it may be successfully remedied at any time previously to the age of puberty, and that he has done it at a much later period, but that after the sixteenth year of age, the operation becomes more difficult.

The author has never had occasion to adopt this practice but in one instance, and then he substituted a cap of gold for the block of ivory. The subject was a little girl about thirteen years of age. It proved perfectly successful in about five weeks.

But in cases where the lower front teeth shut over the upper, and thus cause a deformity of the face, it is important to discriminate correctly between those which result from malformation, and a protrusion of the jaw occasioned by partial luxation, as the remedial indications in the two are entirely different. Those which would prove successful in the one, would prove unsuccessful in the other.

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

PECULIARITIES IN THE FORMATION AND GROWTH OF THE TEETH.

In the development and growth of the various parts of the body, curious and interesting anomalies are sometimes observed; but in no portion of it, are they more frequent in their occurrence, or diversified in their character than in the teeth. But aberrations in the formation and growth of these organs, are, for the most part, confined to the teeth of second dentition.

Mr. Fox gives a drawing of a tooth very nearly resembling the letter S. The malformation was caused by an obstructing temporary tooth. The author has also met with several examples of teeth similarly deformed, and from like causes.

The molars of the upper jaw sometimes have four and even five roots, and those of the lower jaw, three and occasionally four. The crowns of the teeth, also, frequently present deviations from the natural shape equally striking and remarkable.

The next peculiarity to be noticed, is that of size, and in this respect the teeth are very variable. Even in the same mouth, the want of relative proportion between the different classes of teeth, is sometimes quite conspicuous. But examples of this kind are not very frequent, for where there is an increase or diminution in the size of the teeth of one class, there is generally a corresponding change in those of the other.

Aberrations of this character are probably dependent upon some diathesis of the general system, whereby the teeth, during the earlier stages of their formation, are supplied with an excessive or diminished quantity of nutriment.

Some very remarkable deviations have been known to take place in the growth of the teeth. The most singular case on record, is that narrated by Albinus: "Two teeth," says he, "between the nose and the orbits of the eye, one on the right side, and the other on the left, were enclosed in the roots of

those processes that extend from the maxillary bones to the eminences of the nose. They were large, remarkably thick, and so very like the canini, that they might have seemed to be these teeth themselves, which had not before appeared; but the canines themselves were also present, more than usually small and short, and placed in their proper sockets. The former, therefore, appear to have been the new canini, which had not penetrated their sockets, because they were situated where these same teeth are usually observed to be in children. But what is still more remarkable, their points were directed towards the eyes, as if they were the new eye teeth inverted. And they were also so formed, that they were, contrary to what usually happens, convex on the posterior, and concave on the anterior."* A case of a somewhat similar character is mentioned by Mr. John Hunter.

The following case is in the words of Mr. G. Wait: "While I was prosecuting my anatomical studies, I was struck with the appearance of a cuspidatus of the upper jaw; it was short and appeared as if the body of the tooth was in the jaw, and that it was the tip of the root that presented itself. Upon further examination, I found this verified; and after the cranium and lower jaw were properly macerated and cleansed, I found one of the lower bicuspids in the same manner."

The author can readily imagine that a cuspidatus of the upper jaw might, while in a rudimentary state, be so altered in its position, as to pass up, in its growth, between the nose and orbit. But that the crown, after having been thus turned round in the socket, should remain stationary, while the fang passed down and appeared outside of the gum, is a most extraordinary and remarkable anomalism. In the former instance, the tooth

* "Dentes duo inter nasum et orbes oculorum, dexter sinisterque, inclusi in radicibus processum quibus ossa maxillaria ad eminentem nasum pertinent. Longi sunt, crassitudinis insignis. Similes maximi caninis, ut videri possint illi ipsi esse, non nati. At aderant præterea canini præter consuetudinem parvi, et breves, suis infixi alveolis. Itaque videantur esse canini novi, qui non eruperint uptote ibi loci collocati, ubi sunt novi illi in infantibus. Sed quod miremur sursum divecti, tanquam si sint canini novi inversi. Et ita quoque formati sunt ut, contra quamalii, a posteriore parte gibbi, ab anteriore sinuati sint," &c.—*Academ. Anastat.* liber 1, p. 54.

might still continue to derive the nutriment necessary for its vitality from the dental vessels; but in the latter case, it could not, because the apex of the root, the place where the vessels and nerves enter, were entirely outside of the gum.

The following is one of the several cases of deviation in the growth of the teeth, that have come under the author's own observation. About nine years ago, he was requested to extract a tooth for a lady of Baltimore, under the following circumstances: she had, for a time, experienced a great deal of pain in her upper jaw, and supposed it to originate from the second molaris of the right side, but which was perfectly sound. Meanwhile, her general health became impaired, and her attending physician, thinking that the local irritation might have contributed to her debility, advised her to have the tooth removed. On its extraction, the cause of the pain at once became apparent. The dens sapientiæ, which had not hitherto appeared, was discovered with its fangs extending back to the utmost verge of the angle of the jaw; while its grinding surface had been in contact with the posterior surface of the crown and neck of the tooth just extracted. On the removal of the wisdom tooth, the pain ceased.

Five years after the foregoing was written, he was informed by the brother of the lady, that the removal of the tooth in question, was followed by a gradual restoration of her general health, and that it had since continued good.

About the middle of December, 1849, a youth, aged sixteen, applied to the author to extract a right superior bicuspis, which, he said, was ulcerated at the root. On examining his mouth, he discovered but one bicuspis, but above and between the root of this and that of the first molar, he observed a small fistulous opening. On introducing a small instrument into it, it immediately came in contact with the crown of a tooth looking towards the malar process of the superior maxillary, which, on extraction, proved to be the second bicuspis.

The author has in his possession several molar and bicuspid teeth which have small nodes upon their necks, covered with enamel; and Dr. Maynard, of Washington City, has five teeth, belonging to one jaw, presenting this anomaly.

The author has two teeth in his possession, presented to him by his brother, the late Dr. John Harris, of most singular shape. They were extracted by him, in July, 1822, from the right side of the upper jaw of a young gentleman, nineteen years of age, by the name of Crawford. They occupied the place of the first and second bicuspids, and their crowns are almost wholly imbedded in lamellated bone, that should have constituted their roots, but which are entirely wanting. Judging from their appearance, one would be inclined to suppose, that as they rose from their sockets, the latter filled up, and coming in contact with the former as they were forming, and while in a pulpy state, pressed against and caused them to bulge out and to be reflected up upon their crowns—to the enamel of which, nearly to their grinding surfaces, they are perfectly united.

For some time previously to their extraction, they had been productive of considerable irritation and pain in the gums and jaw, and it was for the relief of this, that they were removed.

Since the publication of the second edition of this work, the author has seen a still more remarkable deviation in the growth of a tooth. It is in the upper jaw of an adult skull in the museum of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery. The natural teeth are all well formed, and regularly arranged in the alveolar border, but between the extremities of the roots of the superior central incisors, in the substance of the jaw, there is a supernumerary tooth, the crown of which looks upwards towards the crest of the nasal plates of the two bones. The whole tooth is about one inch in length, and the apex of the crown is nearly on a level with the floor of the nasal cavities. There is also in the museum of this Institution a central incisor of the upper jaw, with the root bent upon, and in contact with, the labial surface of the crown. This tooth was presented to the author several years ago, by Dr. Williams, dentist, of Alexandria, Virginia.

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

OSSEOUS UNION OF THE TEETH.

INCLOSED as each tooth is, in a distinct sac, and separated on either side by a bony partition, from the adjoining teeth, until after the completion of the formation of the enamel, it is difficult to conceive how an osseous union could take place between two of these organs, and, we confess, that until we actually witnessed an example of it, which we did for the first time in 1836, we were inclined to doubt the possibility of such an occurrence.

During a visit to the city of Richmond, Va., in April, of the above mentioned year, we had an opportunity of seeing two cases. One consisted in the union of the crowns of the central incisors of the upper jaw, the palatine surface of which presented the appearance of one broad tooth, while anteriorly, they had the semblance of two teeth; the other case, consisted in the union of the right central and lateral incisors of the lower jaw. As these were the first cases of the kind the author had ever seen, he obtained permission for Dr. F. B. Chewning, a dentist of that city, to examine them.

Dr. J. D. McCabe, a dentist, formerly of Fredericksburg, Va., informed the author, in a conversation some years since, that he had met with a case of osseous union between a second bicuspis and first molaris of the lower jaw, which was so palpable, that there could have been no doubt of its existence.

Mr. Fox has given the drawings of four cases, the originals of which, as Mr. Bell tells us, are still to be seen in the museum of Guy's Hospital. Mr. B. also informs us, that he has seen four other examples.

Dr. Koecker is sceptical with regard to the existence of osseous union of the teeth, and attributes to those who assert that they have met with cases of it, "a weak credulity—a love of the marvellous—or a desire to impose upon the world."

Cases of this sort, it is true, are of very rare occurrence, and a connection of the fangs of two teeth, by an intervening portion of the alveolus, is very easily mistaken for an osseous union of the roots themselves. A few years since, in extracting a second molaris of the upper jaw, the author brought the dens sapientiæ along with it. At first, he thought there was an osseous union of the roots, but upon close examination, found a very thin portion of their alveolar paries between, to which their roots were firmly attached. Such a case as this, would, in many instances, be very apt to be set down as an example of osseous union.

It is easy to account for a *lusus naturæ* of this kind, by supposing a previous union of the pulps of the two teeth. But from the order in which the teeth are erupted, some classes appearing long before others, it would, on this supposition, seem that it could only occur between the central incisors. It is not, however, thus limited. The central and lateral incisors, the bicuspids, and the molars, are sometimes united.

An osseous union of the teeth, is, fortunately, of rare occurrence; for if it were otherwise, it would be productive of many accidents in the extraction of teeth. Apart from this consideration, it can be of but little importance, either to the practitioner, or to the physiologist.

Since the publication of the first edition of this part of this work, several cases of osseous union of the teeth have fallen under the observation of the author, and he now has several specimens in his anatomical collection. He has five examples of osseous union of the temporary teeth, one of which was presented to him by Mr. Townsend, two others by Dr. Cassell, both dentists of Baltimore, and one other by Dr. Dwinelle of Cazenovia, N. Y.

The author has more recently met with two other examples of osseous union of temporary teeth.

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

SUPERNUMERARY TEETH.

THE production of supernumerary teeth is generally confined to the anterior part of the mouth, and much more frequently to the upper than to the lower jaw. They sometimes, however, appear as far back as the dentes sapientiæ, and Hudson says, he has seen them behind these teeth. We have now in our anatomical collection, two supernumerary teeth that were extracted, one from behind, and the other at the side, of one of the upper wisdom teeth, by Dr. F. B. Chewning, surgeon dentist, of Richmond, Va.

The crowns of supernumerary teeth which appear in the anterior part of the mouth, are generally of a conical form, and for the most part, are situated between the central incisors; they usually have short, knotty roots; sometimes, however, they bear so strong a resemblance to the other teeth, that it is difficult to distinguish the one from the other. We once saw too lateral incisors in the lower jaw, both of which were so well arranged, and perfectly formed, that it was impossible to determine which of the two ought to be considered as the supernumerary. Mr. Bell mentions a case, in which there were five lower incisors, all of which were well formed and regularly arranged. The author has met with several cases in which supernumerary teeth in the lower jaw so closely resembled the natural incisors, that no difference could be discerned between them. He has also met with cases of three lateral incisors in the upper jaw, in which it was impossible to determine which was the supernumerary.

Supernumerary cuspidati rarely if ever occur, but supernumerary bicuspids are sometimes met with. Delabarre says, he has seen them; and we have met with three examples of the sort. In each of these instances the teeth were very small,

not being more than one-fourth as large as the natural bicuspids, with oval crowns, and placed partly on the outside of the circle, and partly between the bicuspids. We extracted one of them, and have it still in our possession. Its root is short, round, and nearly as thick at its extremity as it is at the neck of the tooth.

The supernumerary teeth that appear further back than the bicuspids, though much smaller, bear a strong resemblance to the dentes sapientiæ.

Supernumerary teeth, although they are generally imperfect in their formation, are less liable than other teeth to decay. This may be attributable to the fact, that they possess a lower degree of vitality, are harder, and, consequently, not so susceptible to the action of the causes of decay.

Although the occurrence of supernumerary teeth rarely disturbs the arrangement of the others, their presence is sometimes productive of the worst kind of irregularity; and even when they do not have this effect, they impair the beauty of the mouth, and, for this reason, they should be extracted as soon as their crowns have completely emerged from the gums.

To the practitioner of dental surgery, the occurrence of supernumerary teeth, is interesting only in so far as it affects the beauty of the mouth and the relationship which the teeth of the upper jaw sustain to those of the lower; but to the physiologist, it involves the question, what determines their development? But in propounding this question it is not our intention to enter upon its discussion in this place, as it forms no part of the design of the present treatise.

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

THIRD DENTITION.

THAT nature sometimes makes an effort to produce a third set of teeth, is a fact, which however much it may be disputed, is now so well established, that no room is left for cavil or doubt.

The following interesting particulars are taken from *Good's Study of Medicine.*

"We sometimes, though rarely, meet with playful attempts on the part of nature, to re-produce teeth at a very late period of life, and after the permanent teeth have been lost by accident, or by natural decay.

"This most commonly takes place between the sixty-third and eighty-first year, or the interval which fills up the two grand climacteric years of the Greek physiologist; at which period the constitution appears occasionally to make an effort to repair other defects than lost teeth. * * * * *

"For the most part, the teeth, in this case, shoot forth irregularly, few in number, and without proper fangs; and, even where fangs are produced, without a renewal of sockets. Hence, they are often loose, and frequently more injurious than useful, by interfering with the uniform line of indurated and callous gums, which, for many years perhaps, had been employed as a substitute for the teeth. A case of this kind is related by Dr. Bisset, of Knayton, in which the patient, a female in her ninety-eighth year, cut twelve molar teeth, mostly in the lower jaw, four of which were thrown out soon afterwards, while the rest, at the time of examination, were found more or less loose.

"In one instance, though never more than one, Mr. Hunter witnessed the reproduction of a complete set in both jaws apparently with a renewal of their sockets. 'From which circum-

stance,' says he, 'and another that sometimes happens to women at this age, it would appear that there is some effort in nature to renew the body at that time.'

"The author of this work once attended a lady in the country, who cut several straggling teeth at the age of seventy-four; and, at the same time, recovered such an acuteness of vision, as to throw away her spectacles, which she had made use of for more than twenty years, and to be able to read with ease the smallest print of the newspapers. In another case, that occurred to him, a lady of seventy-six, mother to the late Henry Hughes Eryn, printer of the journals of the House of Commons, cut two molars, and at the same time completely recovered her hearing, after having for some years been so deaf as to be obliged to feel the clapper of a small hand-bell, which was always kept by her, in order to determine whether it rung or not.

"The German Ephemerides contain numerous examples of the same kind; in some of which, teeth were produced at the advanced age of ninety, a hundred, and even a hundred and twenty years. One of the most singular instances on record, is that given by Dr. Slade, which occurred to his father; who, at the age of seventy-five, re-produced an incisor, lost twenty-five years before, so that, at eighty, he had hereby a perfect row of teeth in both jaws. At eighty-two, they all dropped out successively; two years afterwards, they were all successively renewed, so that at eighty-five, he had at once an entire set. His hair, at the same time, changed from a white to a dark hue; and his constitution seemed, in some degree, more healthy and vigorous. He died suddenly, at the age of ninety or a hundred.

"Sometimes these teeth are produced with wonderful rapidity; but in such cases, with very great pain, from the callosity of the gums, through which they have to force themselves. The Edinburg Medical Commentaries supply us with an instance of this kind. The individual was in his sixty-first year, and altogether toothless. At this time, his gums and jaw-bones became painful, and the pain was at length excruciating. But, within the space of twenty-one days from its commencement, both jaws were furnished with a new set of teeth, complete in number."

A physician of this city informed the author in 1838, that a

case of third dentition had come under his own observation. The subject was a female, who, at the age of sixty, erupted an entire set in each jaw.

The following extract of a letter from Dr. J. D. McCabe describes another very interesting case.

"I have just seen," says Dr. McC., "a case of third dentition. The subject of this 'playful freak of nature,' as Dr. Good styles it, is a gentleman residing in the neighborhood of Coleman's Mill, Caroline county, Virginia. He is now in his seventy-eighth year, and, as he playfully remarked, 'is just cutting his teeth.' There are eleven out, five in the upper, and six in the lower jaw. Those in the upper jaw, are two central incisors, one lateral and two bicuspids, on the right side. Those in the lower, are the four incisors, one cuspidatus and one molaris. Their appearance are that of bone, extremely rough, without any coating or enamel, and a dingy brown color."

Two cases somewhat like the foregoing have come under the author's own observation. The subject of the first was a shoemaker, Mr. M., of Baltimore, who cut a lateral incisor and cuspidatus at the age of thirty. Two years before this time, he had been badly salivated, and, in consequence, lost four upper incisors, and one cuspidatus. The alveoli of these teeth were caused to exfoliate, and, at the time he first saw him, were entirely detached from the jaw, and barely retained in the mouth by their adhesion to the gums. On removing them, he found two white bony protuberances, which, on examination, proved to be the crowns of an incisor and a cuspidatus. They were perfectly formed, and though much shorter than the other teeth, yet, up to the present time, 1845, they have remained very firm in the jaw. The teeth he lost by salivation were preserved, and are now in the author's possession. They are large, and have all the characteristics of those of second dentition.

The subject of the other case, was a lady, residing near Fredericksburg, Virginia, who erupted four right central incisors of the upper jaw successively. One of her temporary teeth, in the first instance, had been permitted to remain too long in the mouth, and a permanent central incisor, in consequence, came out before the dental arch. To remedy this deformity, the de-

ciduous incisor was, after some delay, removed; and, about two years after, the permanent tooth, not having fallen back into its proper place, was also extracted. Another two years having elapsed, another tooth came out in the same place, and in the same manner; and, for similar reasons, was also removed. To the astonishment of the lady and her friends, a fourth incisor made its appearance in the same place, two years and a half after the extraction of the first permanent tooth. When it had been out about eighteen months, the author was called in by the lady, who wished him, if possible, to adjust it. Finding that it could not be brought within the dental circle, he advised her to have it extracted, and an artificial tooth inserted in its place.

The author saw only one of the teeth which had been previously extracted; this was well developed, and he was informed that the others were equally perfect. All the circumstances, connected with these successive dentitions, were distinctly recollected, both by the lady and her friends.

In the second number of the eighth volume of the American Journal of Dental Science, Dr. W. H. Dwinelle gives the history of a case of four successive dentitions of the upper central incisors.

It would seem, that the efforts made by nature for the production of a third complete set of teeth, are usually so great, that they exhaust the remaining energies of the system; for occurrences of this kind are generally soon followed by death.

The author is not aware that any attempt has ever been made to explain the manner of the origin and formation of the teeth of third dentition. The rudiments of the teeth of first and second dentition originate from mucous membrane, while those of third dentition would seem to be the product of the periosteal tissue or bone.

In obedience to what law of developmental anatomy are the teeth of third dentition formed? Certainly not to any one primitively impressed upon the animal economy, as they have never been known to appear while the teeth of second dentition remain in the jaws. If the establishment of the law which governs the development of a part, depends upon a certain

condition of other contiguous parts, it is possible that the following may be a correct explanation of the phenomenon of third dentition. Certain parts, in certain states or conditions, and in particular locations, perform functions peculiar to the latter. In other words, the condition and location of a part, determines the function or functions it performs. For example, when the mucous membrane along the course of the alveolar border begins to assume a duplicated or grooved condition, which it does at about the sixth week of intra-uterine existence, dental papillæ shoots up from it, and when, by a similar duplication of this same tissue, behind the sacs of the temporary teeth, forming what Mr. Goodsir styles "cavities of reserve," the papillæ of the permanent teeth, one from the bottom or distal extremity of each duplication, begins to be developed. Hence, it would seem that this particular state or condition of this tissue, and in these particular locations is necessary to determine the development of teeth germs. This arrangement or condition of mucous membrane, in these particular locations, which always result from the development of the fetus, may be sometimes produced by accidental causes, after all the organs of the body have attained their full size, or at any time during life; and, when it does occur, it is not unreasonable to suppose that a new tooth papilla should be formed. Proceeding still farther, the development of a dental papilla is the signal for the production of a dental follicle, which ultimately becomes a sac, and then an organ to supply the tooth, now considerably advanced in the process of formation, with a covering of enamel. But as the maxillary bone has previously attained its full size, it rarely, if ever, happens that alveoli are formed for these accidental productions, and, consequently, they seldom have roots, or if they do, they are very short and blunt. They are usually connected to the periosteum of the alveolar border, and this union is sometimes so close and intimate, that very considerable force is necessary for their removal, or, at least, so far as our own observations go upon the subject, and we have had occasion to extract several in the course of our practice. As a general rule, however, they loosen in the course of a few years and drop out.

But it may be asked, how are such accidental duplications of the mucous membrane formed? This is a question, we admit, which it may not be easy to answer satisfactorily, but we do not think it at all improbable, that they occur during the curative process that follows the removal of one or more teeth. The granulated walls of the gums surrounding an alveolus from which a tooth has been extracted, may become covered with this tissue before the socket is filled with a deposit of new bone, or, at any rate, of the surfaces of the duplicated membrane near the bone, and whenever such arrangement or condition of this tissue takes place, upon the alveolar border, and that it may, occasionally, we think there can be no question, it is probable that a new tooth papilla is produced, which, in the progress of its development, induces the formation of the various appendages necessary to the production of a perfect tooth.

This, in our opinion, is the only way that these fortuitous productions can be accounted for in accordance with true physiological principles. It seems impossible to explain the manner of their formation in any other way. All must admit that the presence of mucous membrane is necessary to originate them, and we cannot conceive of any other way by which its presence beneath the general surface of the gums can be accounted for; but, if we admit this explanation to be correct, the question is at once solved. We believe it is also owing to the accidental occurrence of a certain arrangement or condition of the mucous membrane concerned in the production of the permanent teeth, consisting, most likely, of the formation of one or more "cavities of reserve" than is called for by the teeth of this dentition, that the development of supernumerary teeth are attributable.

The operations of nature, it is true, are so secretly carried on, that we cannot see the precise *modus operandi* by which they are effected, yet in the development of the various organs and structures of the body, we may see them in the various stages of their growth, as well as what precedes their arrival at these various stages in the progress of their formation, and upon which their accretion would seem to be dependent. The periods for the arrival of these stages of development, though

somewhat irregular, occur for the most part, in normal conditions of the body, at certain fixed epochs. Thus, the papilla of the first temporary molar may usually be seen between the sixth and seventh weeks of intra-uterine existence, but previously to this time a slight groove or depression is observable in the mucous membrane of the part from whence it has its origin. The same is true with regard to the papillæ of all the other teeth, though the time for the commencement of their formation occurs at later periods. The peculiar change which takes place in the arrangement of the mucous tissue here, as well as the periods at which they occur, is doubtless determined by certain stages in the development of other parts, and these, very likely, may determine the established number which the teeth of both dentitions have.

If the foregoing views which we have advanced be correct, these fortuitous productions are not the result of a mere freak of nature, as they are sometimes facetiously styled. They are the result of the operation of an established law of the economy; and although, after the completion of the teeth of second dentition, its course is suspended, the occurrence of a similar arrangement or condition of the mucous tissue in the parts in question, will again put it in operation.

PART SECOND.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

OF THE HUMAN TEETH AND GUMS,

THE SALIVARY CALCULUS,

THE LIPS AND TONGUE,

AND THE FLUIDS OF THE MOUTH.

PART SECOND.

CHAPTER FIRST.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.

THE susceptibility of the human body to morbid impressions differs in different individuals. In some, its functional operations are liable to be deranged from the most trifling causes, while in others, they are much less easily disturbed. Nor do the same causes always produce the same effects. These are determined by the tendency of the organism and the susceptibility of the part on which they act; and this is true, both with regard to constitutional and local diseases: with the physical structure generally, and all its parts separately considered, but with none more so than the teeth, gums, and alveolar processes. The teeth of some persons are so susceptible to the action of corrosive agents, as to become involved in general and rapid decay, as soon as they emerge from the gums; while those of others, though exposed to the same causes, remain unaffected through life. A similar difference of susceptibility also exists in the parts within which these organs are contained.

With the teeth, these differences of susceptibility to morbid impressions, are implanted in them at the time of their formation, and are the result of the different degrees of perfection in which this process is accomplished; for in proportion as these organs are perfect, is their capability of resisting the action of corrosive agents increased, and as they are otherwise, it is diminished. This is true of every part of our being; but as the teeth are formed, if not impaired by disease, so they

continue through life, except that they gradually acquire a very slight increase of density, whereby their liability to disease is correspondingly lessened.

Not so, however, with the other parts of our physical structure. They may be innately delicate, or imperfectly developed, and afterwards become firm and strong, or be at first healthy and well formed, and subsequently become impaired, and, in proportion as they undergo these changes, is their susceptibility or tendency to disease, increased or diminished. But the teeth are not governed by the same laws, neither physical nor vital, that regulate the operations of the other parts of the animal economy. Not only is the manner of their formation, but their diseases, also, are different. The other tissues of the body, not excepting those which are identical in structure with these organs, are endowed with recuperative powers, whereby an injury may be repaired by their own inherent energies, but the teeth do not possess such attributes.

Assuming these propositions to be true, and that they are, especially those with regard to the teeth, we shall endeavor to make appear, it becomes an object of no trifling importance to discover the signs, by which the susceptibility or tendency of the human organism to disease, may be determined. But to do this, except in so far as the teeth, gums and alveolar processes are concerned, is not our present object, yet, in the prosecution of the task we have undertaken, we may take occasion to advert to certain constitutional and local tendencies, indicated by the appearance and condition of the teeth and other parts of the mouth.

M. DELABARRE affirms, that by an inspection of the teeth, we can ascertain whether the innate constitution is good or bad, and our own observations go to confirm the truth of this opinion; but as this author adds, a little further on, these are not the only organs that should be interrogated. The lips, the gums, the tongue, and the fluids of the mouth should also be examined, to discover the health of the organism, and ascertain whether the original condition of the constitution has undergone any change.

Those who have not been in the constant habit of closely observing the appearances met with in the mouth, may be some-

what sceptical with regard to the information derivable from them concerning the constitutional health, but those who have studied them with care, will not hesitate to say, that they are, in very many instances, by far more certain and accurate than any which can be obtained from other signs. For example—the periods of the ossification of the different classes of both sets of teeth being known, we are enabled to discover whether the original or innate constitution was good or bad by the physical condition of these organs, for as the functions of the organism are at this time healthily or unhealthily performed, will they be perfect or imperfect; or in other words, will their texture be hard or soft.

In a treatise, entitled "*De Dentitione*," attributed to Hippocrates, but with how much truth we are unable to determine, it is said, three periods of ossification are ascribed to the teeth—the same, also, is acknowledged by M. Baumes. The first is, while the fetus is in the matrix, and has reference only to the temporary teeth, which are in part ossified at birth. The second generation or period of ossification, is confined to those which are formed during lactation, and consists, according (as M. Delabarre says) to the "father of medicine," of the incisors and cuspidati of replacement, and the first permanent molars.

The third period embraces those which are formed from solid aliment, as the second and third molars. The physical condition of the teeth will enable us to determine with an accuracy that can be relied on, the state of the constitutional health at the time they were respectively being formed.

Although, as has often been remarked by writers on odontology, the teeth of the child, like other parts of the body, are apt to resemble those of its parents, so that when those of the father or mother are bad or irregularly arranged, a similar imperfection will generally be found to exist in those of the offspring, but this does not necessarily follow, and when it does, it is the result of the transmission of some constitutional impairment, whereby the formative process of these small bones is either disturbed or prevented from being effected in a perfect and healthy manner. The teeth of the child, therefore, as Delabarre correctly observes, may be said to depend on the health of the mother, and the

aliment from which it derives its subsistence. If the mother is healthy, and the nourishment given the child be of a good quality, the teeth will be dense and compact in their texture, generally well formed and well arranged, and as a consequence less liable to be acted on by morbid impressions, than those of children deriving their being from unhealthy mothers, and subsisting upon aliment of a bad quality. Temperament, also, as we shall hereafter endeavor to show, exercises an influence upon the functional operations of the body. Upon it the constitutional health depends to a greater extent than pathologists generally admit, and hence it is, that that of the child usually partakes of that of one or other, or both, of its parents. "This," says M. Delabarre, "is particularly observable in subjects that have been suckled by a mother or nurse whose temperament was similar to theirs." To obviate the entailment of this evil, he recommends mothers, having teeth constitutionally bad, to abstain from suckling, and that this highly important office be entrusted to a nurse having good teeth—asserting, at the same time, that by this means, the transmission of so troublesome an heritage as a bad denture, may be avoided.

Depending, then, as the physical condition of the teeth, and the organization generally, confessedly do, upon the quality of the nourishment from which subsistence is derived during infancy and childhood, it is highly essential that this be good, and that that, especially, derived from the breast, be from those only who are in the enjoyment of good health, and possess good constitutions. Whenever, therefore, the employment of a wet nurse becomes necessary, the greatest care should be taken to secure one possessing these highly important and desirable prerequisites; and this cannot always be done without a knowledge of the signs indicative of the state of the constitutional health and temperament; and as Delabarre judiciously remarks, there are cases where the physician cannot be too well assured whether the present good health is innate, or whether it is acquired—stating, at the same time, as an example, that "when a strange nurse is about to be employed, he cannot be too scrupulous." He also tells us that the inspection of the breast only enables us to judge of the development of the gland, and the

quality of the milk, as it then is, which may be good to-day, and in a short time become bad.

The truth of this observation has been verified in but too many instances, and it therefore becomes a matter of much importance to find some signs upon which greater reliance can be placed, than those found in the appearance of the breast, the cheek, or the beating of the pulse. These are often deceptive.

The following are the signs enumerated by PROFESSOR BAUMES, as essential for a nurse to possess: "An excellent nurse," says he, "should be of good morals: and, indeed, of fine physical qualities. Her age ought to be between twenty and thirty, and the color of her skin natural. Her eyes should be lively and animated; her hair and her eyebrows brown or light colored, her lips red, her teeth sound and good, her gums hard, and well colored. She should have a sweet breath: the nose unobstructed and exhaling no odor—the neck sufficiently long, the chest large and well arched; her breasts ought to be loose, firm, and distended; elastic, and moderately large; with the nipples sufficiently irritable to be firm when the finger is passed under them; brown, long and thin; placed upon the middle of the declining part of the breast, in the middle of an elevated areola, of an obscure red color."* Besides these, he describes the qualities that the milk should possess, and the tests necessary to their ascertainment.

These qualities are all essential, and though they be possessed at first, they do not furnish positive assurance that there is no hereditary constitutional vice lurking in the system, that may not, by the debilitating process of lactation, become developed.

M. Delabarre, who seems to have devoted much time to the study of constitution and temperament, in remarking upon this subject, says, "Having been often consulted in the choice of a nurse, I have always paid much attention to the constitutional conditions of the mouth, and whenever a child, born of weak parents, or of those having delicate teeth, has been confided to a good nurse, she has procured for it good teeth, and a good temperament, unless some severe disease has rendered useless this precaution."

*Professor Bond's Translation.

Alluding to the fallibility of the signs usually relied upon as furnishing the requisite indications on this subject, the author, from whom we have just quoted, thus observes: "the semeiology of the mouth alone can make known to the physician whether that woman owes the beautiful carnation she possesses to her parents, or has attained it from a skillful regimen. I have collected," says he, "some valuable facts on the subject, and I have met with some women, who, for a long time, have had a great interest in keeping out of view, that they had not always enjoyed as good health as they seemed to possess at the moment when they were soliciting employment. I would not have it thought that I suppose every woman having good teeth, is, indubitably, a good nurse, for even the most perfect constitution is susceptible of being deteriorated. We see, therefore, that to judge correctly of the past and present state of health, it is requisite to collect all the signs that can lead to this knowledge, and to obtain it, it is also requisite to be for a considerable time practiced in these sorts of researches; for as a beautiful carnation may mislead the judgment, so may handsome teeth be mistaken for good ones, which is not always the case. This remark is very important in practice, inasmuch as an infant suckled by a woman having bad teeth, very often has these organs similar to hers. These truths I could establish by a multitude of proofs, but they are so apparent, that it seems unnecessary to cite them."

Before we dismiss this part of our subject, we will quote an anecdote related by Professor Baumes, which conveys a no less severe than just reproof to mothers, who, regardless of the well-being of their offspring, commit those offices that nature designed them to perform, to mercenary nurses. "They who do so," he says, "merit the humiliation endured by the mother of the natural brother of Gracchus. This young Roman, when he returned from a military expedition, brought to his nurse more magnificent presents than he did to her who had given him birth. My mother! he says, you carried me nine months in your bosom, but as soon as you saw me, you abandoned me. My nurse received me gladly; she carried me in her arms, and nourished me with her milk for three years;—all she did was

voluntarily done, You carried me in your bosom and nourished me with your blood from natural necessity. I feel more indebted to my nurse than to you, and I wished to show this by the difference of my presents."*

There exists some diversity of opinion in regard to the influence which the quality of the nourishment from which subsistence is derived during infancy and childhood, exerts upon the future health and constitutional temperament. We are told by Delabarre, that a child, though it derives its being from weakly parents, may, by proper regimen, acquire a good constitution and temperament, and the truth of this observation has been fully verified. M. MAHON, a French dentist, and author of considerable acumen and celebrity, gives it as his opinion, that a person cannot be born with a good constitution, except those from whom he derives his being, are in good health, and of that age when life is vigorous. He at the same time admits, that a child coming from parents of the most perfect health, may have its constitution deteriorated by an impure lactation: and that a child coming from weakly parents, may acquire a good constitution though it will always bear about it certain signs of that which it had inherited—and thence, he deduces that it is possible to discover, by an examination of the teeth, any tendencies that may be lurking in the system. He has certainly studied the subject very attentively, and his remarks are worthy of consideration. If all he says is not true, many of his observations, we think, are susceptible of proof.

In treating upon the physiognomical indications of the teeth, he says: "Does the child derive its life from parents that are unhealthy? The enamel of its milk teeth will be bad; the teeth, themselves, will be surcharged with a bluish vapor, and in a short time, will be corrupted by a humid and putrefying caries. When the parents are only weakly or delicate, the enamel of the primary teeth will have a bluish appearance, there will be a tendency in them to dry caries, which does not ordinarily make much progress, and seldom causes pain."

Again, he observes, "It was only by a determination to notice

*Professor Bond's Translation.

very accurately the differences which I remarked on the teeth of numerous individuals, that I obtained these first truths. In the first instance, they were little more than mere conjectures, but by being daily increased, have now become diagnostics, about the certainty of which, I flatter myself, I cannot be deceived. It affords me pleasure to give an account in this place of a part of the means which I employed to arrive at the point which was the object of my researches. When I perceived some signs, as for example, shadowy lines on the primary teeth, and those of replacement, of different children, I put all my application to work for the ascertainment of their cause, and when I believed I had found it, I interrogated their mothers, who generally confirmed the judgment I had formed. I then went on further; after calculations that seemed to me highly probable, I ventured to declare the period at which a great crisis or disease had happened, and in such a month of pregnancy; and I have had the satisfaction to find that I had conjectured correctly. My expectations, based upon the same procedure, have been crowned with success in *adults*, whose teeth, by the simple examination of them, have disclosed to me an advantage no less valuable than the first, namely, that of generally being able to tell, whether they were born of strong, weak, or aged parents; and also, if the mother has had several children, whether they were among the last," &c.

That a person experienced in these researches, may, by an examination of the deciduous teeth, tell whether the mother, during the latter periods of pregnancy, had enjoyed good or bad health, there is no question. But it is very doubtful whether much can be ascertained, by an inspection of the milk teeth, concerning the health of the mother previously to the time of the commencement of their ossification, for upon the manner in which this is effected, depends their appearance and physical condition. The density of a tooth may be told at a single glance by a practiced observer, and it is this and its color that are principally influenced by the condition of the system during their ossification. The shape of the teeth is determined by that of the jaws and pulps before the commencement of ossification.

We are of opinion, therefore, that nothing positive, concerning

the health of the mother during the first five or six months of pregnancy, can be learned from an inspection of the teeth of either dentition. From an inspection of those of the second, no information whatever in relation to it can be derived, and if Mahon was fortunate enough in some instances to tell what it had been at an earlier period, his prognosis could not have been founded upon any thing more than mere conjecture.

The teeth while in a pulpy state partake of the health of the organism generally. As that is healthy and strong, or unhealthy and weak, so will the elementary principles of which they are then composed, be deteriorated or of a good quality, but after ossification has commenced, the parts ossified cease to be influenced by, or to obey the laws of, the other parts of the body. If the general health be good at the time this process is going on, it will be evidenced in their density and color; if bad, in the looseness of their texture, &c.

This is a subject to which we have paid some attention, having for a long time been in the habit of carefully noting the differences in the appearance of the teeth of different individuals, and of both dentitions, and though we have been able to conjecture in some instances what had been the state of the mother's health during the first months of pregnancy, candor compels us to confess, that we have never been able to find any signs in the peculiarity of their shape, size, density, or arrangement, that indicated it. But from the moment that that part of the formative process of these organs commences, which is not influenced by subsequent changes in the general economy, certain peculiarities of appearance are impressed upon them that continue through life, and about the certainty of the indications of which, in regard to the general health, we think there can be no question.

In commenting upon the views which M. Mahon, advances upon this subject, Delabarre says,* "if he had thrown the light of repeated dissections upon them, he would have acknowledged, with Hunter, Blake, Maury, Fox and Bunon, that the secondary teeth do not begin to ossify until about the sixteenth month after birth, so that the good or bad health of the parents at the

*Vide *Seimeitique Buccale*, p. 225.

time of conception, cannot in any way affect the teeth of replacement, which are not formed until after the child comes into the world.

But, however vague and erroneous may be some of the opinions of Mahon, he has certainly advanced many that are correct, and from which hints have been derived, that have formed the foundation of some very valuable contributions to the science of the semeiology of the teeth.

LAVATER was laughed at and ridiculed for his enthusiastic belief in physiognomy, but the description which he gives, with a view to the illustration of his favorite science, of the physical conformation of the various parts of the face, head and other portions of the organism of man, embrace signs, which, if applied to the study of semeiology, could hardly fail to lead to important results. Had the education and pursuits of this good and extraordinary man, fitted him for the investigation of this department of medical science, and had he entered into it with the same persevering ardor and zeal that he did that of physiognomy, he would have erected for himself an equally enduring monument of fame, and would thus perhaps have contributed as much to the amelioration of the condition of his fellows, as he has done by his physiognomical researches. In fact, of the importance of this subject, he seems to have been fully aware; and, after acknowledging his ignorance, he says, the physiognomical and pathognomical semeiotica of health and disease ought to be treated on by an experienced physician, stating at the same time, that from the few observations which he had made, it was not difficult to discover the diseases to which an individual in health is most liable. He regards physiognomical semeiotics, founded upon the nature and form of the body, as of great importance to the medical practitioner, that he might be enabled to say to an individual in health, you may expect this or that disease some time in your life. Possessed of this knowledge, he would be able to prescribe the necessary preventives or precautions against such diseases as he was most liable to contract.

Among the signs which he notes as indicative of the temperament, he enumerates the shape, size and arrangement of

the teeth, but from the physical characteristics of these organs, when considered separately from other parts of the mouth, we only learn what the innate constitution was; they cannot be relied upon as indices to the state of the health subsequently to the time of their ossification. Their own liability to disease, however, may be determined by their appearance, and with the signs, therefore, indicative of this, every dentist should be familiar, to enable him, when consulted with regard to the attention necessary to the preservation of these invaluable organs, to prescribe such precautionary measures as shall secure them against the attacks of disease.

With regard, also, to the information to be derived from an inspection of the teeth, concerning the innate constitution, it has been well remarked by Delabarre, that physicians may derive much advantage in pointing out the rules of domestic hygiene for the physical education of children; for, says this eminent dentist, "can he admit of but one mode? Has he not, then, the greatest interest to be well assured of the innate constitution of each, for whom his advice is required, to enable him to recommend nutriment suited to the strength of its organs? Will he report only on a superficial examination of the face, its paleness, the color of the skin, all of which are variable? Will he not regard the repletion or leanness of the subject, the state of the pulse, &c.? Surely he will make good inductions from all these things; but the minute examination of the mouth will give him, beyond doubt, the means of confirming his judgment; for, besides what we already know of the teeth, the mucous membrane of the buccal cavity receives its color from the blood, and varies according to the state of that fluid." This latter is a fact, that the observation of the dental surgeon has an opportunity of confirming, almost every day; and which, when taken in connection with the physical characteristics of the teeth, together with those of the salivary and mucous secretions of the mouth, constitute data, from which both the innate and present state of the constitutional health may be determined with accuracy and certainty.

The symptoms of actual disease have been minutely and repeatedly described, but the physiognomical signs by which

the susceptibility of the human organization to morbid influences is determined, and the kind of malady most liable to result therefrom, do not appear to be so well understood. "Whatever," says the author last quoted, "may be the knowledge which a practitioner may acquire of the changes a disease, or even a tendency to a disease, may effect in the use of the functions of some organs, it is, at least, advantageous to be able to conjectures what has happened, in the whole of the system at another time. In fact, can a physician, when about to prescribe for a slight indisposition of a person whom he hardly knows, rely entirely upon the sabulous state of the tongue? Does not its aspect singularly vary? Is it not notorious, that in certain persons it is always red, white, yellow or blackish? I, as well as others, have had occasion to make these observations on persons with whom it was always thus, but without their being subject to any of those indispositions that are so common in the course of life." These signs are as variable in sickness as in health, and, consequently, can only be relied upon as confirmatory of the correctness of other indications which manifest themselves in other parts of the body.

The physical changes produced by, and characteristics of, disease, have been described, both by ancient and modern medical writers, but the works which have appeared upon this subject, do not comprise all that is necessary to be known. For example—if we examine the lips, tongue and gums of a dozen or more individuals who are regarded as in health, differences in their appearance and condition will be found to exist. The lips of some will be red, soft and thin; others red, thick, and of a firm texture;—some will be thin and pale; others red on the inside and pale on the edges;—some are constantly bathed with the fluids of the mouth; others are dry, and these differences of appearance and condition are as marked on the tongue and gums as they are upon the lips, and are supposed to be attributable to the preponderance or want of existence in sufficient quantity of some one or more of the elementary principles of the organization. Hence, may be said to result the differences in temperament, and susceptibility of the body to the action of morbid excitants.

We are informed by Lavater, and the same, also, is asserted by others, that the body is composed, after an established manner, "of various congruous and incongruous ingredients," and "that there is," to use the metaphor, "a particular recipe, or form of mixture, in the great dispensatory of God, for each individual, by which his quantity of life, his kind of sensation, his capacity and activity are determined;" and that, consequently, each body has its individual temperament, or peculiar degree of irritability. That the humid and the dry, the hot and the cold, "are the four principal qualities of the corporal ingredients, is as undeniable as that earth and water, fire and air, are themselves the four principal ingredients." "Hence," he argues, "that there will be four principal temperaments; the choleric, originating from the hot; the phlegmatic, from the moist; the sanguine, from air; and the melancholic, from earth; that is to say, that these are predominate in, or incorporated with, the blood, nerves and juices, and indeed in the latter, in the most subtle, and almost spiritually active form. But it is equally indubitable to me, that these four temperaments are so intermingled that innumerable others must arise, and that it is frequently difficult to discover which preponderates; especially since, from the combination and interchangeable attraction of those ingredients, a new power may originate, or be put in motion, the character of which may be entirely distinct from that of the two or three intermingling ingredients." The truth of these propositions will hardly be questioned, and their admission at once affords a satisfactory explanation of the differences in the susceptibility of different organisms to the attacks of disease.

Assenting to these truths, and they are so self-evident that none can doubt them, we think it may be safely assumed, that as the quality and respective proportions of the materials furnished for the growth, reparation and maintenance of the several organs of the body, so they will be. If, as we have before remarked, these be good, and in proper proportion, they will be endowed with health and vigor, and, as a consequence, capable of performing their respective functions in a healthy manner. But if their elementary ingredients, to use an expression of the

author from whom we have just quoted, be bad, their functions will be more or less feebly performed,

These materials are furnished by the blood.* From this fluid, each organ receives such as are necessary to its own particular organization. The blood, therefore, exercises a most important influence upon the whole of the mechanism of the body —determining, as it most undoubtedly does, the state of the health of all its parts, which, as Delabarre observes, is relative to its quality, and "that the general health results from that of all the system." In order to this, harmony must exist between all the organs, but in consequence of the great variety and intermingling of temperaments, it rarely does, except, perhaps, in those people in whom the sanguine greatly predominates, and who have not become enervated by irregular and luxurious modes of living. And, even when it does exist, we are by no means certain that it will continue to do so; for exposed as the body is to a thousand causes of disease, its functional operations may, at almost any moment, become disturbed. Among the civilized nations of the earth, the peasantry of Great Britain, probably, possesses as good constitutional temperaments as are any where to be found; and yet, even with these people, we are told, that although the sanguinous greatly predominates, in a large majority of the subjects, it is combined and intermingled, in a greater or less degree, with others.

In all of these modifications the blood plays an important part: it determines the temperament of the individual, and as a consequence, the physical condition of all the tissues of the body subject to the general laws of the economy. But the dependency of the solids upon this fluid is only mutual; it, also, is dependent upon them, and the condition of the one is relative to that of the other. The solids, if we may be permitted to use the metaphor, are the distillery of the fluids, while they, in their

* Of the various writers who have treated upon this fluid, Magendie ranks deservedly high. To his persevering and laborious researches we are indebted for much valuable information. Not satisfied with mere conjecture, he instituted a great variety of experiments upon animals, which go to prove, conclusively, that no one of its constituents can be dispensed with without manifest and serious injury to the whole organism—and that, it is dependent for its living principles upon the motion that is given to it in the circulatory system.

turn, nourish, repair, and maintain the solids. A change, then, in the condition of one, is followed by a corresponding change in the condition of the other. If the blood be of an impure quality, or any of the substances that enter into its composition exist in too great or too small quantity, it will fail to supply the solids with the materials necessary to the healthful performance of their functions, and, if not actual disease, a tendency to it, will be the result. And, again, the purity of the blood is dependent upon the manner in which the solids perform their offices. While, therefore, duly appreciating the importance of this fluid, and its existence in a pure state, to the general health of the economy, we cannot ascribe to it, regardless of the functions of the solids, a controlling influence over the organism.

To distinguish all the nice and varied shadings of temperament, or states of the constitutional health, by the physiognomical appearances of the body, is perhaps impossible, or can only be done with great difficulty, and by those who have been long exercised in their observance; but to discover that which predominates is not so difficult a matter, and its indications are no where more palpably manifested than in the mouth. By an inspection of the several parts of this cavity, together with its fluids and the earthy matter found upon the teeth, we repeat, inductions may be made, not only with regard to the innate, but also the present state of the constitutional health, serviceable, both to the dental and medical practitioner; and, in the further prosecution of this inquiry, we shall endeavor to point out some of the principal of the indications here met with—the appearances by which they are distinguished, and to offer such other general reflections as the subject may, from time to time, seem to suggest.

CHAPTER SECOND.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TEETH.

THERE are few practitioners of dental surgery, of experience and observation, who have not noticed the marked differences that exist in the appearance of the teeth, gums, lips, tongue, and secretions of the mouth, of different individuals. They have also noted those of that earthy substance, (commonly called tartar,) which is deposited in greater or less abundance, on the teeth of every person, and though all may not have sought their etiology, many have had occasion to notice, at least, their local indications, and to profit from the information which they have thus been enabled to derive. They have not failed to observe that the volume, color, length and arrangement of the teeth vary, and that these are indicative of their susceptibility to disease.

There are five principal classes or descriptions of teeth, each of which differs, in some respects, from the others.

Class First.—The teeth belonging to this class are of a dull white, with a light cream colored tinge near the gum, which becomes more and more apparent as the subject advances in age—of a medium size, rather short than long; those of each class of uniform dimensions, and very hard. This description of teeth is most frequently met with in persons of a sanguinous temperament, or, at least, those in whom this greatly predominates; they rarely decay, and are indicative, if not of *perfect* health, of a state which bordered very closely on it at the time of their ossification.

Such teeth are occasionally possessed by persons of all nations and classes, but far more generally, by laboring people in healthy localities. Among the inhabitants of England, Ireland and Scotland, and more especially the middle and poorer

classes, they are very common. They are also frequently met with in the northern parts of the United States, the Canadas, the mountainous districts of Mexico, and so far as we have had an opportunity of informing ourself, in France, Russia, Prussia and Switzerland. Those who have them, generally enjoy excellent health, and are seldom troubled with dyspepsia or any of its concomitants. It is this kind of teeth, which Lavater says, he has never met with, except in "good, acute, candid, honest men," and of whose possessors, it has been remarked, that their stomachs are always willing to digest whatever their teeth are ready to masticate.

But, as it regards character or disposition of mind, it is, perhaps, more than questionable, whether any thing can be learned from the physiognomical appearances of the teeth, further than they may be influenced at the time of their ossification by the constitutional temperament or state of the general health, and though this may then be favorable to the production of such as possess the characteristics we have described, it may, afterwards, become so impaired as to retain but little of its original condition, while these organs, by reason of their exemption from the laws that govern the functional operations of other parts of the body, preserve theirs through life. Those who possess the temperament, however, necessary to the production of such teeth, usually have all their organs well developed, and as a very common consequence, have open, frank and cheerful dispositions. It is probable, therefore, that from having very frequently observed them in the possession of those who enjoy these happy qualities of mind, that this celebrated physiognomist was induced to regard them as an invariable accompaniment.

In confirmation of what the author has before said with regard to the influence which the state of the constitutional health at the time of the ossification of the teeth, exerts upon their susceptibility to morbid impressions, it is only necessary to mention the fact, well known and frequently alluded to, of the early decay of a single class, or a pair of a single class of teeth in each jaw, while the rest, possessing the characteristics just described, remain sound through life. Thus, whenever it happens that a child, of an excellent constitution,

is affected with any severe disease, the teeth which are at the time undergoing ossification, are found, on their eruption, to differ from those which have received their earthy material at at another time, when the operations of the organism were healthily performed. Instead of being of a dull or heavy white, and having a smooth uniform surface, they have a sort of chalky aspect, or are faintly tinged with blue, and have rougher and less uniform surfaces. Teeth of this description are very susceptible to the action of corrosive agents, and as a consequence, rarely last long.

But, not willing to rest the correctness of these views upon mere hypothesis or vague conjecture, we have, in a great number of instances, where we have met with teeth thus varying in their physical condition and appearance, taken pains to inquire of those who had had an opportunity of knowing the state of the general health of the subjects, at the different periods of their ossification, and in every case where we have been able to procure the desired information, it has tended to the confirmation of the opinion here advanced. Nor have we neglected to improve the many opportunities that have presented, in the course of a somewhat extended professional career, for making these observations.

Although the operations of the economy are so secretly carried on, that it is impossible to comprehend their mechanism fully, it is well ascertained, that the phenomena that result therefrom, are influenced and modified by the manner in which they are performed. If they are deranged, the blood, from which the calcareous materials that form the basis of all the osseous tissues are derived, is deteriorated, and furnishes these earthy salts in less abundance and of an inferior quality. Hence, teeth that ossify when the system is under the influence of disease, do not possess the characteristics necessary to enable them to resist the assaults of the corrosive agents, to which all teeth are more or less exposed, and which rarely affect those that receive their ossific matter from pure blood.

The calcareous ingredients of these organs are furnished by the red part of this fluid, and the gelatine is derived from the white or serous part;—"whence," as Delabarre remarks, "it

results that the solidity of these bones vary according as the one or the other of these principles predominates," and the relative proportions of these, as the author has endeavored to show, are regulated by the state of the blood at the time the teeth are undergoing ossification. In healthy subjects, the blood is composed of about four parts of crassamentum, or clot, which is the red part, and one of serum, but the relative proportions of these are not always the same. Disease tends to diminish the red, and to increase the white or serous part of it. Sometimes the serum forms more than one-half of this fluid, and as this abounds at the time of the solidification of the teeth, they will be soft in their texture, and liable to decay.

The researches of DUHAMEL go to prove, that bones acquire solidity no faster than the parts which are about to ossify become charged with red blood. The experiments of HALLER are also confirmatory of this opinion. And Delabarre, in remarking upon the ossification of the teeth, says, "the superficial layer of the pulp reddens before it ossifies, whilst all below is entirely white; soon another layer reddens, is ossified, and then whitens, and so on, successively."

There is one circumstance, however, that appears to have escaped the notice of osteologists, that might seem to militate against the doctrine that the calcareous ingredients of bony structures are exclusively derived from the red part of the blood; and that is, the increase of density which the teeth continue through life very gradually to acquire, notwithstanding the prevailing opinion, that the fluid they circulate subsequent to their ossification, is not so much as even tinged with red. But, that these organs are capable of being injected with red blood, has been satisfactorily shown; and, if teeth are capable, under any circumstances, of being injected with red blood, is it unfair to presume, that a portion of the crassamentum, or red part of this fluid, may become so diluted with the thinner or watery parts of it, as to be forced with them into the vessels of the dentine by the impetus which is ordinarily given to it by the circulatory apparatus. The author is of the opinion that it is not, and that it is in this way that the increase of density which the teeth acquire is to be accounted for. A sufficient

quantity of earthy salts, he would suppose, might be conveyed to them through the vessels with which they are penetrated, to effect the very trifling and almost imperceptible increase of density they acquire, subsequently to their ossification. This hypothesis, he is aware, does not accord with the views of Hunter in regard to the organization of the teeth, nor with those of several modern European writers on odontology, who maintain that these organs are not endowed with vascularity, but the incorrectness of this doctrine has been shown beyond the power of successful refutation. The circumstance to which we have just alluded, of the injection of the teeth with red blood, at once settles this question, and renders its further discussion on the present occasion unnecessary.

Class Second.—Having digressed thus far, we shall now proceed to notice the teeth belonging to the second class. They have a faint azure blue appearance; are rather long than short; the incisors generally thin and narrow; the cuspidati usually round and pointed; the bicuspids and molars small in circumference, with prominent cusps and protuberances upon their grinding surfaces. In some cases, the lateral incisors are very small and pointed.

Teeth possessed of these characteristics are generally very sensitive, more easily acted upon by corrosive agents than the teeth of the first class, and to the ravages of which, unless great attention be paid to their cleanliness, they frequently fall early victims. They are also often affected with atrophy, or have upon their surfaces, white, brown or opaque spots, varying in size and number; several are sometimes found upon a single tooth, and, in some instances every tooth in the mouth is more or less marked with them.

But this is not the only description of teeth liable to be affected with this disease. These spots are occasionally met with on teeth of every degree of density, shape, shade and size, but they are probably, more frequently seen on such as last described, than any other, and, besides, it often happens that they are affected with erosion on emerging from the gums, and sometimes, so badly as to place both their restoration and preserva-

tion beyond the reach of art. This species of erosion, or that which takes place while the teeth are in the matrices, is caused by some morbid condition of the fluid in which they are there bathed, and is denominated congenital.

Teeth like those now under consideration, are indicative of a weakly, innate constitution—of a temperament considerably removed from the sanguinous—and of blood altogether too serous to furnish materials, such as are necessary for the building up of a strong and healthy organism. They are more common to females than males, though many of the latter have them. They are met with among people of all countries, but by far more frequently among those who reside in sickly localities and whose systems have become enervated by luxurious living. Among the inhabitants of Great Britain, they are more rare than among those of the United States, and those who have them, seldom attain to a great age. Nevertheless, some, under the influence of a judicious regimen, and a salubrious climate, though innately delicate, do acquire a good constitution, and live to a great age, while the teeth, less fortunate, except the most rigid and constant attention has been paid to the use of the means necessary for their preservation, generally soon fall early victims to the ravages of disease.

Class Third.—The teeth of this class, though differing in many of their characteristics from those last described, are, nevertheless, not unlike them in their texture and in their susceptibility to deleterious impressions. The crowns of these are much larger than teeth of the ordinary size ; their faces are rough and irregular, with protuberances, rising, not only from the grinding surfaces of the bicuspids and molars, but also, not unfrequently, from their sides, with correspondingly deep indentations. Their appearance is that of a muddy white. The crowns of the incisors of both jaws are broad, long and thick. The posterior or palatine surfaces of those of the superior maxillary are rough, and usually have a deep indentation in them. In the majority of cases, their arrangement is tolerably regular, though they are more or less inclined to project. The alveolar ridge usually describes a broad arch. The excess in size, both

here and in the teeth, seems to consist more of gelatine than calcareous phosphate.

This description of teeth decay readily, and in some instances appear to set at defiance the resources of the dentist. They are liable to be attacked at almost every point, but more particularly in their indentations and approximal surfaces.

The author is acquainted with a family, consisting of seven or eight members, most of whom are adults, and all have this sort of teeth. The most thorough and constant attention has been paid by each, to the use of the most approved hygienic means, and yet all have lost a greater or less number of their teeth. They are generally first attacked on their approximal surfaces and in their indentations, but neither their labial faces nor most prominent points, are exempt from caries. No sooner than its progress is arrested in one place or part, than it appears in another. The author has had occasion to fill a single tooth in as many as four, five and even six different places, and in this way, though his efforts at the preservation of a considerable number of them have proved abortive, he has been able to save some for a few years. But it is not necessary to particularise cases. Every practitioner has seen teeth like these, and is aware of the difficulty of their preservation.

It may be remarked, however, that the corrosive properties of the fluids of the mouth are sometimes so lessened by an amelioration of the constitution, that notwithstanding the great susceptibility of the teeth of being acted upon by them, they may not for years, or until the general health relapses into its former, or some other unfavorable state, exert any very active or decidedly bad effects upon them. This has happened in several instances that have come under the author's immediate observation, and it should be borne in mind, that the solvent qualities of these juices, are influenced by the state of the constitutional health. So far as that can affect these fluids, and no farther will it exert a beneficial or prejudicial action upon the teeth.

Class Fourth.—The teeth of this class, generally have a white chalky appearance, are unequally developed, and of a very soft texture. They are easily acted upon by corrosive agents,

and like the teeth last noticed, when attacked by caries, generally fall speedy victims to the disease.

Persons who have teeth like those in classes three and four, generally have what Laforgue calls, lymphatico-serous temperaments. Their blood is usually pale, and the fluids of the mouth, while they are poured out in great abundance, are for the most part exceedingly viscid. They do not have that white frothy appearance observable in healthy sanguinous individuals.

Laforgue enumerates among the Europeans, three classes, each differing from the others in the quality of the materials that compose their respective organisms, that can be distinguished by their teeth. The first have pure blood, a good constitution, and, as a consequence, their osseous tissues are compact, their flesh firm, and all of their fluids of a healthy and good quality. The second class have sanguino-serous temperaments, and the third lymphatico-serous.

The first of these classes, he tells us, have handsome teeth, well enameled and of a cream color. The molars of the first dentition, of the second class, and sometimes the permanent incisors and cuspidati, are eroded, and the third class, he says, have teeth that are very white, brittle, and easily affected with caries.

The kind of teeth which he assigns to the third class, though frequently possessed by those who belong to it, are oftener met with among those of the second. It is among persons of this class that the teeth which we last described are most frequently found.

Continuing the subject, he says, "there are in each constitution, two degrees distinguished by the quality of the materials that compose the teeth. The second degree of the first class, has not so much of the bony structure, and their enamels are thinner than in the first degree; neither is the flesh, the blood, or any of the fluids of so good a quality. Persons of the second class are not so healthy as those of the first. There is nothing to distinguish them, except that the one constitution is more perfect than the other.

"In the second constitution, erosion is more strongly marked in the first than in the second degree, and it has its seat upon

the incisors instead of the large molars of the first dentition. In the third constitution, the second degree is marked by the softness of the teeth, which are more subject to caries than the first degree. The quality of the blood, the flesh, fluids, and the health and strength of subjects of the second and third constitutions are always in proportion to the density of the osseous system."

The present state of the constitutional health is not, as Laforgue supposes, indicated by the appearances of the teeth. The health of the general system is liable to impairment from a thousand causes, and though it be such, as may be necessary to "*handsome, well enameled*, and *cream colored teeth*," at the time of their formation, it may afterwards become bad, while these organs will retain their primitive characteristics. If the character of the original constitution is maintained, its condition may be ascertained, by the appearance of the teeth. It is probable, therefore, that Laforgue had reference to those cases only where it had not undergone any change, and if so, his views are unquestionably correct.

The classes of constitutions which he particularises, as distinguishable among the Europeans, by the appearances of the teeth, are all met with in the United States, together with an almost countless number of intermediary ones. They cannot, however, be so readily determined from an examination of these organs, for the reason, that both present a much greater variety and that though the first be primitively good, it is more subject here than there to impairment—a change, as has been before intimated, in which the latter does not participate. The reason of this, we are inclined to believe, is owing more to the difference in the habits, and modes of living of the inhabitants of the two countries, than that of any difference in the salubrity of the climates.

As teeth that are neither too large nor too small, and that have a close compact structure, and slightly tinged with yellow, are indicative of a constitution, whatever it may be at the present time, innately good, so those which are long, narrow, and faintly tinged with blue, as well as those that greatly exceed the ordinary size of these organs, and that are irregular in shape,

and that have a rough, muddy appearance, furnish assurance of a constitution that was, at least, originally bad. The first of the latter descriptions of teeth are more frequently met with among females than males, and among those of strumous habits, than those in whom this diathesis does not exist.

Class Fifth.—The teeth belonging to this class, are characterized by whiteness and a pearly gloss of the enamel. Their crowns are long, and usually small in circumference, though sometimes well developed. They are regarded by many as denoting a tendency to phthisis pulmonalis, and are supposed by some to be very durable, but the author has observed that individuals who have this sort of teeth, when attacked by febrile or any other form of disease having a tendency to alter the fluids of the body, were very subject to tooth-ache and caries, and that when this condition of the general system was continued for a considerable length of time, that their teeth, in rapid succession, crumbled to pieces.

It would seem from this circumstance, that the fluids of the mouth, in subjects of strumous constitutions, if free from other morbid tendencies, are less prejudicial to the teeth than in persons of most other constitutions, and the author is of the opinion that it is owing to this that they are so seldom attacked by caries. M. Delabarre believes, that caries supervenes to this disease, and is a consequence of the general debility engendered by it. He says, however, that "the patient generally dies before the central ganglion arrives at that state in which its properties are changed."

Now, this is directly opposed to all observation on the subject, for it is well known, that teeth are less affected by this disease than almost any other, and it is unfortunate for the doctrine, which he in another place advocates, that the bony tissue of these organs are softened by the ceasing of the arteries to supply it with calcareous materials, that he should have resorted to this argument. Its absurdity is rendered apparent by his own showing, and that, too, in the paragraph succeeding to the one in which it is used. He says, "whatever may be the diseased condition of the teeth, they may be examined as unex-

ceptionable evidence, that will inform us whether the patient owes his present state of health to a predisposition, or whether having supervened during the course of his life, it depends on an accidental cause."

If the state of the health, subsequent to the ossification of the teeth, were capable of diminishing or increasing the density of these organs, we could learn nothing from an inspection of them concerning the primordial constitution. Nor would we, therefore, be able to determine whether the present state of health was the result of constitutional predisposition, or that of some other cause; for, if they were subject to changes, like other parts of the body, their physical condition might be different to-day from what it was yesterday, so that a diagnosis, founded upon the appearance of the teeth, would be nothing more than mere vague conjecture.

But although Delabarre is, in many things, somewhat inconsistent, very many of his views are correct, and few men have contributed more largely, by observation and experience, to the advancement of the science of the teeth, than he has done.

In speaking of persons who have that kind of teeth, which, though beautiful, from having smooth and apparently polished surfaces, present shades intermixed with a dirty white, he says, they "have had alternations of good and indifferent health during the formation of the enamel. These teeth," he continues, "ordinarily have elongated crowns, and many present marks of congenital atrophy." Again, he observes, "teeth of this sort deceive us by appearing more solid than they are; they remain sound until about the age of fourteen or eighteen; then, at this period, a certain number of them decay, especially when in infancy the subject was lymphatic, and continues to be so in adolescence. This description of teeth is frequently met with among the rich classes, where children born feeble, reach puberty only by means of great care, and, consequently, owe their existence only to the unremitting attention of their parents, and the strengthening regimen that the physician has caused them constantly to pursue. Having reached the eighteenth or twentieth year, their health is confirmed, but the mucous membranes ever after have a tendency to be affected; the redder color of

the mouth, more especially its interior, and that of the lips, and the upper part of the palate, which, by degrees, discovers itself as the subject gradually advances in existence, shows its ameliorated condition. It is thus, that numerous persons, having gained a sanguinous temperament, would deceive us, if it were not that some marks of erosion are seen on the masticating surfaces of the first permanent molars, which informs us that the present health is the result of amelioration."

There are other cases in which the teeth are of so inferior a quality, that they no sooner emerge from the gums than they are seized and destroyed by caries, while the subjects who possess them, as has been intimated in another place, are enabled, by skillful treatment to overcome the morbid constitutional tendencies, against which, during the earlier years of their existence, they had to contend, and, eventually, to acquire excellent health. But in forming a prognosis, it is essential to ascertain whether the general organic derangement that prevented the teeth from being well formed, and thus gave rise to their premature decay, is hereditary, or whether it has been produced by some accidental cause subsequent to birth. The procurement of health in the former case, will be less certain than in the latter, for when the original elements of the organism are bad, the attainment of a good constitution is by far more difficult.

Persons of sanguino-mucous temperaments, who have suffered in early childhood from febrile or inflammatory diseases, often have their teeth affected with what Duval calls the decorticating process, or the denudation of their enamel, resulting, no doubt, from the destruction of the intermediary substance, which constitutes the bond of union between it and the bone.

The teeth of persons who have suffered from small-pox, measles, or other severe forms of eruptive disease, or malignant inflammatory fever, during the time of their enameling, often present a very singular appearance, unlike those affected with what is usually termed erosion, where the edges of the enamel around the affected part are rough and brittle, they are smooth, or comparatively so, while the injury is confined to only very small and regularly circumscribed spots, which extend in a direct horizontal line across such of the teeth as have been

attacked by it. These pits are sometimes so close to each other that half a dozen or more of them are united so as to form a sort of narrow and irregular groove. Two, and sometimes more, of these grooves or rows of pits extend across the same teeth, but this happens only in those cases, in which the subjects have either had relapses, or been affected, during the enameling process, with more than one of the diseases which give rise to their formation.

There are other characteristics which the teeth present in shape, size, density and color, and from which valuable inductions might be made, both with regard to the innate constitution and the means necessary to their own preservation; but as the limits we prescribed to this part of our subject will not admit of their consideration, we shall conclude by observing, that the appearances of these organs vary almost to infinity. Each is indicative of the state of the general health at the time of their formation, and of their own physical condition and susceptibility to disease.

CHAPTER THIRD.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GUMS.

LITTLE can be ascertained concerning the innate constitution from an inspection of the gums. Subject to the laws of the general economy, their appearance varies with the state of the constitutional health and the condition and arrangement of the teeth. Although the immediate or proximate cause of disease in them may be regarded as local irritation—produced by depositions of tartar upon the teeth, or decayed, dead, loose or irregularly arranged teeth, or a vitiated state of the fluids of the mouth, resulting from general organic derangement, or any or all of the first mentioned causes, their susceptibility to morbid impressions is influenced to a very considerable extent by the constitutional health; and the state of this, determines, too, the character of the morbid effects produced upon them by local irritants. For example, the deposition of a small quantity of tartar upon the teeth, or a dead or loose tooth, would not, in a healthy person, of a good constitution, give rise to any thing more than a slight vascular action in the margin of the gums in immediate contact with it; while in a scorbutic subject, it would cause it to assume a dark purple appearance for a considerable distance around, to become swollen and flabby, and to separate and retire from the necks of the teeth, or to grow down upon their crowns, to ulcerate and bleed from the slightest injury, and to exhale a fetid odor. In proportion as this disposition of body exists, their liability to be thus affected is increased; and it is only among constitutions of this kind that that peculiar preternatural prurient growth, by which the whole of the crowns of the teeth sometimes become almost entirely imbedded in their substance, takes place.

But, notwithstanding the dependency of the condition of the gums upon the state of the constitutional health, they are occasionally affected with sponginess and inflammation in subjects of the best temperaments and of uninterrupted good health. The wrong position of a tooth, by causing a continued tension of that part of the gum which invests its alveolus, sooner or later gives rise to a sort of chronic inflammation in it and the alveolo-dental periosteum, and a gradual wasting of its substance about the mal-placed organ. Tooth-ache, too, from whatever cause it originates, often produces the same effects, and the accumulation of salivary calculus upon the teeth, however small the quantity, is likewise prejudicial to their health.

All of these may occur independently of the state of the general health. A bad arrangement of the best constituted teeth, and tooth-ache may be produced by a multitude of accidental causes, independently of the functional operations of the other parts of the body.

Therefore, while the appearance and physical condition of this peculiar and highly vascular structure are influenced, in a great degree, by the habit of body, they are not diagnostics that always, and with unerring certainty, indicate the pathognomic state of the general system. It can, however, in by the far larger number of cases, where the gums are in an unhealthy condition, be readily ascertained, whether the disease is altogether the result of local irritation, or whether it has been favored by a constitutional tendency.

In childhood, or during adolescence, when the formative powers of the body are all in active exercise, and the nervous susceptibilities of every part of the organism highly acute, the sympathies between the gums and other parts of the system, and particularly the stomach, are, perhaps, greater than at any other period of life. The general health, too, at this time, is more fluctuating, and with all the changes this undergoes, the gums vary. Moreover, there are operations which are carried on beneath and within their substance, which are almost constantly altering their appearance and physical characteristics—and which, being additionally influenced by various states of health and dispositions of body, it may readily be conceived

that those which are met with in one case, might be looked for in vain in another.

Having arrived at that age when all the organs of the body are in full vigor of maturity, and not under the debilitating influences to which they are subject during the earlier periods of life, the gums participate in the happy change, and as a consequence, present less variety in their characteristics. The general irritability of the system is not now so great, the gums are less susceptible to the action of irritating agents, and as a consequence, less frequently affected with disease; but as age advances, and the vital energies begin to diminish, the latent tendencies of the body are re-awakened, and they are again easily excited to morbid action.

In individuals who possess the most perfect constitutions, and during adolescence, they present the following appearances. They have a pale rose-red color, a firm consistence, rough surface; their margins form along the outer surfaces of the dental circle beautiful and regular festoons, and their mucous membrane, as well as that which covers all the other parts of the mouth, has a fresh, lively, roseate appearance.

The time for the moulting of a primary tooth is announced some weeks before it takes place, by an increased redness and slight tumefaction of the edges and apices of the gums surrounding it. The dentition of a tooth, whether of the first or second set, is also preceded by similar phenomena in the gums through which it is forcing its way, and these will be more marked as the condition of the system is unhealthy, or as the habit of body is bad.

If the health of the subject continues good, and the teeth are well arranged, and their crowns do not wear off, and the necessary attention to their cleanliness be strictly observed, the characteristics just enumerated will be preserved through life, except that there will be a slight diminution of color in them, after the age of puberty until that of the next climacteric period of life, when they will again assume a somewhat redder appearance. But if the health of the subject becomes impaired, or the teeth be not regularly arranged, or wear off, or are not kept free from all lodgments of extraneous matter, the edges of

the gums, and particularly their apices between the teeth, will inflame, swell, and become more than ordinarily sensitive.

The gradual wasting or destruction of the margins of the gums around the necks of the teeth, which sometimes takes place in persons of the best constitutions, and is supposed by some writers to be the result of general atrophy, is ascribable, we have not the least doubt, to some one or other of these causes—favored, perhaps, by a diminution of vitality in the teeth, whereby they are rendered more obnoxious to the more sensitive and vascular parts within which their roots are situated. That these are the causes of the affection, (for it is evidently the result of diseased action in the gums,) is rendered more than probable, by the fact, that it rarely occurs with those who, from early childhood, have been in the regular and constant habit of thoroughly cleansing their teeth from four to five times a day.

Mr. Bell, however, while he thinks it may occasionally be an "indication of a sort of premature old age," does not believe it can "always be thus accounted for, as it is sometimes seen in young persons," and "doubtless arises," he says, "from the same cause as those presently to be considered," (alluding to what he afterwards says upon the same subject,) "as originating a similar loss of substance in these parts, when attended with more or less of diseased action." We cannot, for reasons already assigned, concur with him in opinion that it "occasionally takes place without any obvious local or constitutional morbid action."

Although possessed, as those in the larger number of cases are, whose gums are such as just described, with the best of constitutions; they may, by intemperance, debauchery, or long privation of the necessary comforts of life, or protracted febrile or other severe kinds of disease, have their assimilative and all their other organs so enervated, as to render every part of the body highly susceptible to morbid impressions of every sort, but still, this general functional derangement, rarely predisposes the structure now under consideration, to any of the more malignant forms of disease occasionally known to attack it in subjects possessed of less favorable innate constitutions. The margins of the gums may inflame, become turgid, ulcerate, and re-

cede from the necks of the teeth, and the whole of their substance be involved in an unhealthy action, but they will seldom be attacked with scirrhous or fungous tumors, or bad conditioned ulcers, or affected with morbid preternatural prurient growths, and in the treatment of their diseases, we can always form a more favorable prognosis in persons of this description, than those coming into the world with some specific morbid tendency.

But, the occurrence of severe constitutional disease, even in these subjects, is followed by increased irritability of the gums, so that the slightest cause of local irritation, gives rise to an afflux of blood to and stasis of this fluid in their capillaries.

The teeth of persons thus happily constituted, are endowed with characteristics, such as have been represented as belonging to those of the best quality. They are of a medium size, both in length and volume, of a dull or heavy white, compact in their structure, generally well arranged, and seldom affected with caries.

Another constitution is observed, in which the gums, though partaking somewhat of the characteristics just described, differ from them in some particulars. Their color is of a deeper vermilion; their edges rather thicker, their structure less firm, and their surface not so rough, but more humid. Their mucous membrane has a more lively and animated appearance. They are rather more sensitive and more susceptible to the action of local irritants, with morbid tendencies more increased by general organic derangement, than in gums possessed of the appearances first mentioned.

Disease in them, though generally easily cured by proper treatment, is, nevertheless, more obstinate, and when favored by constitutional derangement, assumes a still more aggravated form. Their predisposition to disease is so much increased by long continued disturbance of the general system, and especially during youth, and by febrile or inflammatory affections, or obstructions in the parenchymatous organs, that not only their margins, but their whole substance, also, sometimes become involved in inflammation and sponginess, followed by ulceration of their edges, and recession from the necks of the teeth, which, in consequence, loosen, and often drop out. But gums

of this kind, like those first described, seldom grow down upon the crowns of the teeth. Neither are they very liable to be attacked with scirrhous or fungous tumors, or any form of disease resulting in sanious or other malignant conditioned ulcers. Indeed, with diseases of this kind, they are not, perhaps, ever affected, except in those cases where every part of the body has become exceedingly depraved from intemperance, or debauchery, or some other cause.

The teeth of those whose gums are possessed of this second description of characteristics, if well arranged, and kept constantly clean—and, if the secretions of the mouth be not vitiated by general disease, will, in most cases, maintain their integrity of structure through life.

It is only among sanguinous persons that this description of gums is met with, and the teeth of subjects of this kind are generally of an excellent quality, and though rather more liable to be attacked with caries than those first noticed, they are seldom affected with it.

In sanguino-serous and strumous habits, the gums are pale, and though their margins are thin and well festooned, they often exude, after the twenty-fifth or thirtieth year, a small quantity of muco-purulent matter, which, on pressure, oozes from between them and the necks of the teeth. Their texture is usually firm, and they are not very liable to become turgid, and they often remain in this condition to a late period of life, without undergoing any very perceptible change. Although their connection with the necks of the teeth and alveolar processes appears weak, they rarely separate from them.

In remarking upon individuals having such constitutions, M. Delabarre tells us, that if they "abuse their physical powers," by an injudicious regimen, or too much study, they become enervated and "are subject to chronic sanguinous obstructions of the capillaries of the lungs, and to profuse hemorrhages." Dyspepsia and diseases in which the primæ viæ generally, is more or less involved, and chronic hepatitis, are not unfrequent, and are indicated by increased irritability, and sometimes, a pale yellowish appearance of the gums. In jaundice, the yel-

low serosity of the blood is very apparent in the capillaries of this structure.

These constitutions are more common to females than males, to the rich than the poor, and to persons of sedentary habits than to those who use invigorating exercises. If at any time during life the health is ameliorated, the gums assume a fresher and redder appearance, and the exudation of muco-purulent matter from between their edges and the necks of the teeth ceases.

In mucous dispositions, the gums have a smooth, shining appearance, and are rather more highly colored than the preceding. Their margins, also, are thicker, more flabby, and not so deeply festooned; they are more irritable, and, consequently, more susceptible to morbid impressions.

If, to this disposition, there be combined a scorbutic or scrofulous tendency, the gums during early childhood, in subjects, which, from scanty and unwholesome diet, have become greatly debilitated, are liable, besides the ordinary forms of disease to another—characterized by their separation from, and exfolition of, the alveolar processes—accompanied by a constant discharge of sanies. This form of disease, however, though peculiar to childhood, and wholly confined to the indigent, is by no means common.

These constitutions are rarely met with, except among persons who live in cellars, and damp and closely confined rooms in large cities, and in low, damp, and sickly districts of country. The mucous membrane in such subjects is exceedingly irritable, and secretes a large quantity of mucus.

In alluding to this species of disposition, M. Delabarre says, "in children, the skin is ordinarily white and tender; nevertheless, it is sometimes brown and wrinkled. They are usually fragile and weak; their blood is pale, their nutrition is imperfectly effected. In females, the vertebral column is disposed to curve about the age of puberty, because," says he, "at this period, the vital energies are principally directed towards the uterus, and, in consequence, although so very necessary in the osseous system, they appear to be weak.

"The number of observations that I have collected during

my practice in the city, and in several public institutions, have confirmed me in the opinion, that it is in this constitution, especially, (alluding to the mucous,) that the children of whom we have just spoken, are met with. The *organic life* in them has so little energy, that a local cause on a certain point, operates with greater activity than it would otherwise do, sensibly diminishes the assimilative force of almost all the others. It is also probable, that the development of ganglionic obstructions during dentition, are, many times, owing to the diminution of the sensibility in the lymphatics.

"We may also remark," says he, "that, their skin being very susceptible, the sympathy established between it and the mucous membranes, renders individuals of this kind very liable to contract rheums, and gastric and intestinal affections; they are, likewise, subject to easy night sweats, and vomitings of a seromucous fluid," &c.

But, persons even thus unhappily constituted, do, sometimes, by a change of residence and judicious regimen, acquire tolerably good constitutions. Little advantage, however, is derived from these, unless they are had recourse to before the twenty-fifth or thirtieth year of age, though they may prove beneficial at a much later period.

The gums, in subjects in whom there exists a scorbutic tendency, have a reddish brown color: their margins are imperfectly festooned, and thick; their structure rather disposed to become turgid, and ever ready, on the presence of the slightest cause of local irritation, to take on a morbid action. When thus excited, the blood accumulates in their vessels—where, from its highly carbonized state, it gives to the gums a dark, purple, or brown appearance; they swell, and become spongy and flabby, and bleed from the slightest touch. And to these symptoms, supervene the exhalation of a fetid odor, the destruction of the bond of union between them and the necks of the teeth, suppuration and recession of their margins from the same—gradual wasting of the alveolar cavities, the loosening, and not unfrequently, the entire loss of several, or the whole of the teeth. These are the most common results, but, sometimes, they take on other and more aggravated forms of diseased ac-

tion. Preternatural prurient growths of their substance, fungous and scirrhous tumors, ichorous and other malignant conditioned ulcers, &c.

The occurrence of alveolar abscess in dispositions of this kind is often followed by necrosis and exfoliation of portions of the maxillary bone, and the effects which result to the gums from it are always more pernicious than in habits less depraved.

The development of the morbid changes which take place in this structure, even in subjects of this kind, while their character is influenced, if not determined, by a specific constitutional tendency, are, nevertheless, referable to an immediate or proximate cause, and, were this the proper place, we could cite numerous cases tending directly to establish the truth of this opinion, but, as this constitutes no part of our present design, we shall content ourself with what has already been said.

In scrofulous dispositions the gums have a pale bluish appearance, and when subjected to local irritation, they become flabby, exhale a nauseating odor, detach themselves from the necks of the teeth, and their apices grow down between these organs. The blood circulates through them languidly, and debility seems to pervade their whole substance. They are exceedingly irritable, and not unfrequently take on aggravated forms of disease, and, as it often happens to this, as well as to the preceding habit, there are combined tendencies which favor the production of ill-conditioned tumors and ulcers.

The indications furnished by the gums of a mercurial diathesis in the system, are morbid sensibility, increased vascular and glandular action, foulness, bleeding from the most trifling injuries, pale bluish appearance of their substance, turgidity of their apices between the teeth and sloughing. The effects, however, resulting to these parts from the use of this medicine differ in different individuals according to the general constitutional susceptibility, the quantity taken into the system, and the length of time its use has been continued. In persons of very irritable habits, a single dose will sometimes produce ptyalism, and so increase the susceptibility of the gums, that the secretions of the mouth, in their altered state, will at once rouse up a morbid action in them.

The effects of a mercurial diathesis upon these parts, is not unfrequently so great as to result in the loss of the whole of the teeth. But with these effects both the dental and medical practitioner are too familiar to require any further description.

Finally, we would observe, that the indications of the several characteristics to which we have now briefly alluded, may not be correct in every particular, and there are others which we have not mentioned; yet, that they will generally be found so, we are persuaded that every one whose attention has been for any considerable length of time particularly directed to the subject, will agree. As a general rule, persons of a full habit, though possessed of mixed temperaments and in the enjoyment of what is usually called good health, have gums well colored, with rather thick margins, and very susceptible to local irritation, and with this description of individuals, inflammation, turgidity, and suppuration of the gums are very common. To prevent this, constant attention to the cleanliness of the teeth is indispensable.

Professor Schill says, the "gum is pale in chlorosis and anæmia; of a purple red color before an active hemorrhoidal discharge, and in cases of dysmenorrhœa; of a dark red color, spongy, and bleeding readily in scurvy and diabetes mellitus, and after the use of mercury. Spongy growths indicate caries of the subjacent bone."*

Regular periodical bleedings of the gums in dysmenorrhœa, and particularly in scorbutic and mucous subjects, are not unfrequent, nor in any case where they are in a turgid condition.

Spongy growth of the gums in scorbutic and scrofulous persons, often result from irritation produced by decayed teeth, and are not, therefore, always to be regarded as an indication of caries of the subjacent bone.

Mr. George Waite says, "a change of residence to a damp climate will often rouse up in the gums a great degree of vascularity. In the damp places of England and Ireland, the appearances which the gums present are of a turgid and vascular

* *Outlines of Pathological Semeiology*, page 168, of the Select Medical Library edition.

nature. In the damp countries of France, these conditions of the gums run a much greater length from the circumstance of the difference in the constitutions of the two nations. In the damps of Germany and Switzerland, persons also lose their teeth early in life, the climate engenders malaria and low fevers, enfeebles the power of digestion, and brings on rheumatic affections with languor and general constitutional debility."

Of the correctness of Mr. Waite's observations there can be no question, and they go to establish what has been said in regard to the predisposing cause of disease in the gums—namely, that the enervation of the vital powers of the body, from whatever cause produced, increases their susceptibility to morbid impressions.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF SALIVARY CALCULUS.

THE color, consistence, and quantity of salivary calculus, or tartar, as it is most commonly called, varies in different temperaments, and upon all of which, the state of the general health exercises a considerable influence. The characteristics of this substance, therefore, furnish diagnoses, important both to the physician and dental surgeon. Their indications are in many cases less equivocal than those of the appearances of any other part of the mouth; but, like those of the gums, should not, perhaps, be alone always relied upon. In forming a prognosis, we should not neglect to interrogate every part from which information can be derived concerning the pathognomic condition of the several organs of the body.

Salivary calculus is composed of earthy salts and animal matter. Phosphate of lime and fibrina, or cartilage, are its principal ingredients; a small quantity of animal fat, however, enters into its composition. The relative proportions of its constituents vary according as it is hard or soft, or as the temperament of the individual from whose mouth it is taken, is favorable or unfavorable to health; and hence it is, that the analyses that have been made of it by different chemists, differ. No two give the same result.

The black, dry tartar, says M. Delabarre, which is deposited around the necks of the teeth of such only as are possessed of good constitutions, is never in large quantity—is dissolved in muriatic acid with difficulty, while the dry, yellow tartar found upon the teeth of bilious persons, dissolves more readily in it; but the soft white tartar, found upon the teeth of individuals of mucous temperaments, he tells us, "is scarcely at all soluble in the acids," but, "is readily dissolved in the alkalies."

All persons are subject to salivary calculus, but not alike; it

collects on the teeth of some in much larger quantities than it does on those of others, and its chemical and physical characteristics are exceedingly variable. It is, sometimes, almost wholly composed of calcareous ingredients; at other times, these constitute but about one-half, or little more than one-half of its substance—the remainder being made up of animal matter. Nor is its color more uniform. Sometimes it is black, at other times, it is of a dark, pale, or yellowish brown, and in some instances it is nearly white. There is also a difference in its density. In the mouths of some persons it has a solidity of texture nearly equal to that of the teeth themselves, while in others, it is so soft that it can be scraped from the teeth with the thumb or finger nail. The black kind is the hardest, the white the softest, and its density is increased or diminished as it approaches the one or the other of these colors.

Salivary calculus collects in but very small quantities on the teeth of persons possessed of the most perfect constitutions, and, even on these it is seldom found, except on the inner surfaces of the lower incisors next the gums. It is then black, or of a dark brown; very dry, and almost as hard as the teeth, to which it adheres with great tenacity.

It rarely happens that any unpleasant effects arise from the presence of this kind of tartar upon the teeth. The general health is never affected by it, and the only local injury that results from it, is, slight turgidity of the edges of the gums in immediate contact with it.

The indications, therefore, of this description of tartar are favorable, both with regard to the teeth, gums and organism generally. The teeth upon which it is found are of an excellent quality and rarely affected by caries. They are possessed of those characteristics which have been represented as belonging to the best kind, and teeth of this description are only found among persons who have good innate constitutions.

There is another kind of black tartar, differing from this in many particulars. It is found in the mouths of those, who, though their innate constitutions were good, have, nevertheless, had their physical powers much enervated by privation of the necessary comforts of life, or disease, or intemperance

and debauchery, and most frequently by the last. It is found in large quantities on the teeth opposite the mouths of the salivary ducts, it is exceedingly hard, and is agglutinated so firmly to the organs that it is with the greatest difficulty that it can be removed from them; it is very black; has a rough and uneven surface: and is covered with a glairy, viscid, and almost insufferably offensive mucus.

The presence of this kind of salivary calculus is attended with very hurtful consequences, not only to the gums, alveolar processes and teeth, but also to the general health. It causes the gums to inflame, swell, suppurate and recede from the teeth—the alveoli to waste, and the teeth to loosen, and frequently to drop out. The secretions of the mouth are also vitiated by it, and thereby rendered unfit to be taken into the stomach. Hence, as long as it is permitted to remain on the teeth, neither the skill of the physician, nor the best regulated regimen, though they may afford partial and temporary relief, will fully restore to the system its healthy functions.

As this kind of tartar is seldom if ever met with except among persons who have had excellent constitutions, the teeth on which it is deposited are generally sound, and in this condition, they are often caused, by the effects which it produces upon the gums and alveolar processes, to loosen and drop out.

The dark brown tartar is not as hard as either of the descriptions of black. It sometimes collects in tolerably large quantities on the lower front teeth, and on the first and second superior molars; it is also often found on all the teeth, though not in as great abundance as on these. It does not adhere to the teeth with as much tenacity as either of the preceding kinds, and can, therefore, be more easily detached from them. It exhales a more fetid odor than the first, but is less offensive than the second.

The persons most subject to this kind of tartar, are of mixed temperaments—the sanguinous, however, almost always predominating. They may, perhaps, be denominated sanguino-serous and bilious. Their physical organization, though not the strongest and most perfect, may, nevertheless, be considered very good. But, being more susceptible to morbid impressions, their

general health is less uniform, and more liable to impairment than those possessed of the most perfect constitutions.

The effects arising from accumulations of this description of salivary calculus on the teeth, both local and constitutional, are less hurtful than the kind last noticed, but like that, it causes the gums to inflame, swell, suppurate, and to retire from and expose the necks of the teeth, the alveoli to waste, the teeth to loosen and sometimes to drop out. A vitiated state of the juices of the mouth, also results from its presence, or rather from the effects which it produces upon the gums and alveolar processes.

Salivary calculus of a pale or yellowish-brown color, is of a much softer consistence than that which is dark, and is seldom found upon the teeth of persons, except those of bilious temperaments, or those in whom this disposition preponderates. It has a rough, and for the most part, a dry surface; it is found in large quantities on the teeth opposite the mouths of the salivary ducts, and it sometimes happens that every tooth in the mouth is completely incrusted with it. It contains less of the earthy salts and more of the fibrina and animal fat than any of the foregoing descriptions, and from the quantity of vitiated mucus in it and adhering to it, has an exceedingly offensive smell. It is sometimes, though not always, so soft that it can be crumbled between the thumb and finger.

Inflammation, turgescence and suppuration of the gums, inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum, the destruction of the sockets and loss of the teeth, and an altered condition of the fluids of the mouth, are among the local effects produced by the long-continued presence of large collections of this kind of tartar. The constitutional effects are not much less pernicious. Indigestion and general derangement of all the assimilative functions, are among the most common. If the deposition be not large, inflammation and sponginess of such parts of the gums as are in immediate contact with it, and fetid breath, are the principal of the unpleasant consequences produced by it.

White tartar rarely collects in very large quantities, and though most abundant on the outer surfaces of the first and second superior molars, and the inner surfaces of the lower incisors, it is nevertheless frequently found on all the teeth. Its

calcareous ingredients are less abundant than those of any of the preceding descriptions. Fibrina, animal fat, and mucus constitute considerably more than one-half its substance. It is very soft, seldom exceeding in consistence common cheese curd, and to which in appearance, it bears a considerable resemblance. Although it exerts but little mechanical irritation upon the gums, it, notwithstanding, from its acrid qualities, keeps up a constant morbid action in them. Its effects, however, upon the teeth, are by far more deleterious than any other description of salivary calculus. It corrodes the enamel, and causes rapid decay of the organs. The fluids of the mouth are also vitiated by it.

It is only upon the teeth of persons of mucous habits, or those who have suffered from diseases of the mucous membranes, or those in whom these tissues have been more or less involved, that this kind of tartar accumulates.

There is one other kind of tartar described by dental writers. It, however, as we have on another occasion said, is of a dark green color, and is seen more frequently on the anterior surfaces of the upper teeth occupying the front part of the mouth, than on any of the others. Its resemblance is more that of a stain on the enamel than salivary calculus. Children and young persons are more subject to it than adults, though it is occasionally observed on the teeth of the latter. It is exceedingly acrid, and has the effect of decomposing the enamel; the margins of the gums around the teeth having it on them, are inflamed, and the sanguinous capillaries of their whole substance appear to be distended and more than ordinarily languid.

This kind of discoloration of the enamel is indicative of an irritable condition of the mucous membranes and viscidity of the fluids of the mouth. Sour eructations, vomitings, diarrhea and dysentery are not unfrequent with those whose teeth are thus affected.

CHAPTER FIFTH.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE FLUIDS OF THE MOUTH.

In treating upon the physical characteristics of the fluids of the mouth, it will not be necessary to dwell at much length on the effects produced by them, when in a morbid condition, on other parts. Concerning their agency in the production of caries of the teeth, we shall add one or two remarks.

The saliva, in healthy persons having good constitutions, has a light frothy appearance, and but very little viscidity. Inflammation of the gums, from whatever cause produced, increases its viscidity, and causes it to be less frothy. In a healthy state, it is inodorous, floats upon and mixes readily with water, but when in a viscid or diseased condition, it sinks and mixes with it with difficulty.

Irritation in the mouth, from diseased gums, aphthous ulcers, inflammation of the mucous membrane, the introduction of mercury into the system, or the taking of any thing pungent into the mouth, increases the flow of this fluid, and causes it to be more viscid than it is in its natural and healthy state.

In treating on the signs of the saliva, Professor Schill says, "The sympathetic affection of the stomach in pregnancy is sometimes accompanied by salivation, which, in this case mostly takes place after conception, and sometimes continues to the time of delivery. It is also observed to occur in weakened digestion, in gastric catarrhs, after the use of emetics, in mania, in what are called abdominal obstructions, in hypochondriasis and hysteria; salivation occurs during the use of mercury or antimony.

"In confluent small-pox, salivation is a favorable sign. If it cease before the ninth day the prognosis is bad. In lingering

intermittents, salivation is sometimes critical; more frequently in these affections it precedes the termination in dropsy.

"Diminution of the salivary secretion, and, in consequence of this, dryness of the mouth, is peculiar to the commencement of acute diseases, as also to the hectic fevers occasioned by affections of the abdominal organs. If the flow of the saliva stop suddenly, there is reason to apprehend an affection of the brain.

"Thick viscid saliva occurs under the same circumstances as the diminution of the salivary secretion, especially in small-pox, typhus, and in hectic fevers. It is thin in ptyalism. In gastric diseases, where the liver participates, it becomes yellow or green; by the admixture of blood it may assume a reddish color; in pregnant or lying-in women, it is sometimes milky; an icy cold saliva was observed by the author in face-ache.

"Frothy saliva from the mouth is observed in apoplexy, epilepsy, hydrophobia, and in the hysterical paroxysms."*

Dr. Bell, editor of the Select Medical Library and Bulletin of Medical Science, in a note to the work from which we have just quoted, says, "acid saliva is regarded by M. Donne, as indicative of gastritis or deranged digestion. Mr. Laycock," he observes, "on the other hand, infers from numerous experiments on hospital patients, that the saliva may be acid, alkaline, or neutral, when the gastric phenomena are the same. In general, Mr. L. remarked, that it was alkaline in the morning, and acid in the evening."

We have had occasion to observe, that the acid quality of the saliva was more apparent, and more common in lymphatic, mucous and bilious dispositions, than in sanguinous or in sanguino-serous persons, and that weakened or impaired digestion always had a tendency to increase it.

M. Delabarre says, "when this fluid," (the saliva,) "has remained in the mouth some moments, it there obtains new properties, according to each individual's constitution and the integrity of the mucous membrane, or some of the parts which it covers.

* *Outlines of Pathological Semeiology*; edition of the Select Medical Library, pp. 173–4.

"In subjects who enjoy the best health, whose stomach and lungs are unimpaired, the saliva appears very scarce, but this is because it passes into the stomach almost as soon as it is furnished by the glands that secrete it. It only remains long enough in the mouth to mix with a small quantity of mucus, and absorb a certain portion of atmospheric air, to render it frothy.

"On the other hand, the saliva of an individual whose mucous system furnishes a large quantity of mucus, is stringy and heavy; is but slightly charged with oxygen, contains a great proportion of azote and sulphur, and stains silver."*

Increased redness and irritablility of the mucous membrane of the mouth, is an almost invariable accompaniment of general acidity of these fluids. Excoriation and aphthous ulcers, and bleeding of the gums, also, frequently result from this condition of the salivary and mucous juices of this cavity.

Anorexia, languor, general depression of spirits, head-ache, diarrhea, and rapid decay of the teeth, are very common among persons habitually subject to great viscidity of the buccal fluids. It is likewise among subjects of this kind, and particularly when the viscidity is so great as to cause clamminess of these juices, that the green discoloration of the enamel of the teeth is most frequently met with.

* Vide *Traité de la Seconde Dentition.*

CHAPTER SIXTH.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE LIPS.

THE indications of the physical characteristics of the lips are more general than local, and the observations of Laforgue and Delabarre on this subject, leave little to be added. We cannot, therefore, do much more than repeat what they have said.

"The lips," says Delabarre, "present marked differences in different constitutions. They are thick, red, rosy or pale, according to the qualities of the arterial blood that circulates through their arteries."

Firmness of the lips, and a pale rose color of the mucous membrane that covers them, are, according to Laforgue, indicative of pure blood, and, as a consequence, of a good constitution. Redness of the lips, deeper than that of the pale rose, is mentioned by him, as one of the signs of sanguino-serous blood. Soft pale lips are indicative of lymphatico-serous dispositions. In these subjects the lips are almost entirely without color. When there is a sufficiency of blood the lips are firm, though variable in color, according to the predominancy of the red or serous parts of this fluid.

Both hardness and redness of the lips, and all the soft parts of the mouth, are enumerated among the signs of plethora. Softness of the lips, without change of color in their mucous membrane, is spoken of by this last author as indicative of deficiency of blood; and softness and redness of the mucous membrane of the lips are signs that the blood is small in quantity and sanguino-serous.

Serous *anæmia* and pale blood are indicated by want of color and softness of the lips, and general paleness of the mucous membrane of the whole mouth.

"The fluids contained in the vessels," says Laforgue, in the three foregoing forms of anæmia, "yield to the slightest pressure, and leave nothing between the fingers but the skin and cellular tissue."

In remarking upon the signs of the different qualities of the blood, the above mentioned author asserts that the constitution of children, about the age of six years, cannot, by a universal characteristic, be distinguished, but that the lips, as well as other parts of the mouth, constantly betoken "the quality of the blood and that of the flesh;" and, "consequently, they proclaim health or disease, or the approach of asthenic and adynamic disorders, which the blood either causes or aggravates."

Again, he observes, that the blood of all children is "superabundantly serous," but that it is redder in those of the second constitution than it is in those of any of the others; and that this is more distinctly indicated by the color of the lips. "This quality of the blood," says he, "is necessary to dispose all the parts to elongate in their growth. When the proportions of the constituent elements of the blood are just, growth is accomplished without disease. If the proportions are otherwise than they should be for the preservation of the health, or if one or more of its elements be altered, health no longer exists, growth is arrested altogether, or is performed irregularly. The nutritive matter is imperfect—assimilation is prevented or impaired. On the other hand, disintegration decomposes the patient: if death does not sooner result, it will consume him by the lesion of some vital organ."*

The changes produced in the color of the blood by organic derangement are at once indicated by the color of the lips.

The accuracy of Laforgue's observations on the indications of the physical characteristics of the lips has been fully confirmed by subsequent writers. Delabarre, in his remarks on the semeiology of the mouth, has added nothing to them.

"The secretion of the lips," says Professor Schill, "has a similar diagnostic and prognostic import to that of the tongue and gums. They become dry in all fevers and in spasmodic

*Vide *Seimeiologie Buccale et Buccamancie.*

paroxysms. A mucous white coating is a sign of irritation or inflammation of the intestinal canal; accordingly, this coating is found in mucous obstructions, in gastric intermittent fever in mucous fever, and before the gouty paroxysm. A dry brown coating of the lips is a sign of colliquation in consequence of typhus affections; it is accordingly observed in typhus, in putrid fever, in acute exanthema, and inflammations which have become nervous."*

The appearance of the lips, however, do not present so great a variety as those of other parts of the mouth, for the reason that they are not as subject to local diseases, but their general pathognomic indications are, perhaps, quite as decided.

*Vide *Pathological Semeiology*, p. 152.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE TONGUE.

THE appearance of the tongue, both in health and disease, is regarded by physicians as furnishing more correct indications of the state of the constitution and general health, than any of the other parts of the mouth. It is asserted, however, by others, and those, too, who have the very best opportunities for inspecting the various parts of this cavity, that the lips and gums furnish as marked and reliable indications as the tongue. That the state and quality of the blood can be as readily ascertained by an examination of these, as by that of the tongue, is, we believe, undeniable, but that the pathological condition of the body can, is a question which we shall leave for others to decide.

So far as the quality of the blood and the temperament of the subject are indicated by the color of the tongue, the preceding remarks concerning the lips will be found applicable here. For the one is as much influenced by them as the other. It will, therefore, be unnecessary to recapitulate what we have before said.

The effects produced on the mucous membrane of the tongue, by disease in another part, are said to be analogous to those produced on the general integument. So, also, are the changes of its color, consistence, humidity and temperature similar to those of the skin. We are likewise told that the changes of its coating agree with analogous changes of the perspiration, and that these phenomena are more decided in acute than in chronic affections.*

* Vide *Professor Schill's Semeiology.*

But the diagnostic and prognostic indications of the tongue vary according to the temperament and constitutional predisposition of the individual. The physician, therefore, should acquaint himself with its appearances in health, to be enabled to determine correctly its indications in disease. He should likewise inform himself on the changes produced in its appearance by certain morbid conditions of the body. In some subjects it is always slightly furred, especially near its root, and rather dry; in others it is always clean and humid; in some, again, it is always red, and in others pale.

Professor Schill divides the signs of the tongue into objective and subjective. To the objective, "the changes of size, form, consistence, color, temperature, secretion," and those of its "motion belong;" and "to the subjective, the anomalous sensations of taste." We do not know, however, that any advantage can be derived from this classification.

In enumerating the pathognomic signs of the tongue, this author says that hypertrophy, inflammation or congestion, may occasion its enlargement; and that inflammatory swelling of it, when arising from acute diseases, such as "angina, pulmonary inflammation, measles, plague, or variola, yields an unfavorable prognosis. Even non-inflammatory swelling of the tongue, is a dangerous phenomenon in acute diseases, especially cerebral, which are combined with coma. If it be the consequence of mercury, of the abuse of spirituous drinks, of gastric inflammation, of chlorosis, of syphilis, or if it occur in hysteria or epilepsy, the prognosis is not dangerous; but the disease is always the more tedious where the tongue swells than where it does not. It is enlarged, also, by degenerescence and cancer."

"Diminution of the size of the tongue takes place where there is considerable emaciation. In this case it continues soft and movable. If in acute states, the tongue becomes small, and is, at the same time, hard, retracted and pointed, the irritation is very great, and the prognosis bad. This sign occurs more especially in typhus, in the oriental cholera, in inflammation of the lungs, and in acute cerebral affections. In hysteria and epilepsy this phenomenon has no unfavorable import."

Internal maladies, he says, seldom cause the form of the

tongue to change, but, that the slightest change arising from chronic irritations of the stomach, chronic dyspepsia, and acute exanthems, is enlargement of its papillæ. In cases of protracted dyspepsia, the edges of the tongue sometimes crack, and in paralysis and epilepsy, it becomes elongated.

In acute diseases, a soft tongue is a favorable indication, and flaccidity of it, that of debility.

Humidity of the tongue, he tells us, is a favorable sign, and that dryness of it occurs in acute or violent inflammations and irritations, and more particularly when seated in the intestinal canal, and respiratory organs, as in the case of diarrhea, typhus, pneumonia, gangrene of the lung, pleuritis, peritonitis, enteritis, catarrhous gastricus, gastritis, inflammation of joints, &c. Among the higher degrees of dryness, he enumerates the rough, the fissured and burnt tongue, as furnishing still more unfavorable indications, informing us at the same time, that if these be not accompanied by thirst, they prognosticate a fatal termination. The abatement and crisis of the disease is indicated by the tongue becoming moist.

Dr. Bell, of Philadelphia, in a note to Professor Schill's observations on the tongue, says, "a rough, and dry, and even furred tongue, is seen in some dyspeptic persons, who sleep with the mouth open; and although it indicates an irritation of the digestive organs, it is not of a bad augury." Bilious persons, not unfrequently, though not troubled with any manifest symptoms of gastric or intestinal derangement, or any other apparent functional disturbance, have a furred tongue in the morning.

Paleness of the tongue, says Professor Schill, is a sign of a serous condition of the blood, of chlorosis, of great loss of blood, of chronic disorders, of sinking of the strength in acute maladies, assuming a "nervous form, as typhus and scarlatina maligna. It is also found," says he, "in enteritis and dysentery, when but little fever is present." He infers from this, that paleness of the tongue is caused by the "drawing of the fluids downwards," but it is often observed in persons who enjoy tolerably good health. Lymphatic dispositions, as has been before remarked, are peculiarly subject to it.

Again, he observes, that a very red tongue is indicative of

"violent inflammation, mostly of the intestinal canal, but also of the lungs and of the pharynx and of acute exanthems." He regards the prognosis as bad, when a furred tongue "in acute diseases of the intestinal canal becomes clean and very red," if the change is not accompanied with the return of the patient's strength. "But," he continues, "if the debility is not considerable, and the tongue becomes clean and very red, whilst other febrile symptoms continue, a new inflammation may be expected." But even in affections like these, the redness of the tongue is always more considerable in sanguinous, than in lymphatic or lymphatico-serous subjects, so that in forming a prognosis from this sign, the temperament of the individual should never be overlooked.

Proceeding with the description of the signs of this organ, he says, "the tongue becomes a blackish-red and bluish-red in all serious disturbances of the circulation and respiration, as also in severe diseases of the lungs and heart, as catarrhs, suffocations, asthma, extensive inflammations of the lungs, carditis, Asiatic cholera, plague, confluent small-pox, and putrid fevers. It becomes black and livid in cases of vitiation of the blood, more especially in scurvy, at the setting in of gangrene, and in phthisis, when death is near at hand."

Among the diseases mentioned as giving rise to an increase of the temperature of the tongue, are glossitis, violent internal inflammation and typhus; and, coldness of this organ is observed to take place in Asiatic cholera, and at the approach of death.

The signs from the secretion of the tongue are thus enumerated. A clean and moist tongue are favorable indications, but a clean, dry and red tongue, as are seen in slow nervous fevers, acute exanthems and plague, are bad auguries. A furred or coated tongue is said to occur chiefly in intestinal disorders, diseases of the lungs, skin, and in rheumatic affections. The coating is said to vary in "color, thickness, adherence, and extent," and different kinds of secretion from the mucous membrane of this organ are mentioned as ocurring in different diseases, and it should have been added in the same disease in different temperaments.

After describing the various kinds of coating on the tongue, together with their respective indications, which it is not necessary here to enumerate, the occurrence of false membranes and pustules, resulting from peculiar forms of mucous secretion, are next mentioned. The former show themselves either as small white points, or large portions, and sometimes they are said to envelop the whole tongue. Their color is "sometimes white, sometimes yellow and sometimes red," and the greater the surface covered by them, the more unfavorable is the prognosis regarded. "Pustules on the tongue," says our author, "are sometimes idiopathic, but in most cases symptomatic. They are either distinct or confluent; the confluent are the worst. Those which are hardish and dry, and also those which are blue, and those of a blackish appearance, which sometimes occur in acute diseases, are of an unfavorable import." On the other hand, those which have a whitish, soft, moist and semi-transparent appearance, are less unfavorable, and when the eruption or aphthæ is repeated, it portends a longer continuance of the malady. To the following diseases, they are mentioned as being frequent accompaniments; namely, gastritis, catarrhs, enteritis, metritis, dysentery, cholera infantum, peritonitis, intermittent and typhus fevers, pleuritis, pneumonia, and the third stage of pulmonary consumption. Their prognosis is said to be favorable, when "they appear with critical discharges after the seventh day," and unfavorable, when they occur as a consequence of a general sinking of the physical powers of the body.*

But it is unnecessary to enumerate all of the pathognomic indications of the various morbid phenomena described by semeiologists; we have already noticed more of them than it was our intention at first to have done. We shall, therefore, conclude the present inquiry, by simply observing, that the indications furnished by the physical characteristics, of not only the tongue, but those, also, of the teeth, the gums, salivary calculus, the lips and fluids of the mouth, are, as we have endeavored to show, essential to the successful exercise of the duties both of the dental and medical practitioner.

*Vide *Professor Schill's Semeiology.*

PART THIRD.

DISEASES OF THE TEETH AND THEIR TREATMENT.

DISLOCATION OF THE LOWER JAW.

PART THIRD.

DISEASES OF THE TEETH.

The doctrine that the diseases of the teeth are the same as those which attack the other osseous structures of the body, as promulgated by Fox, and, subsequently, advocated by Bell, Jobson, and other European writers, is now almost universally conceded to be incorrect. With the exception of exostosis and necrosis, the diseases of these organs do not bear the slightest analogy to those of other bones. They do not result from the same causes, nor can they be cured by the same remedies. In the treatment of those of the former, art must do all; in those of the latter, the recuperative powers of the economy, are the resources principally to be relied on.

The teeth are more liable to be attacked by caries than any other disease, and this, therefore, will first claim the attention of the author.

CHAPTER FIRST.

CARIES OF THE TEETH.

THERE is no disease to which the teeth are liable, more frequent in its occurrence, or fatal in its tendency, than caries. It is often so insidious in its attacks, and rapid in its progress, that every tooth in the mouth is involved in irreparable ruin, before its existence is scarcely suspected.

Its presence is usually first indicated by an opaque or dark spot on the enamel; and, if this be removed, the subjacent dentine will exhibit a black, dark-brown, or whitish appearance. It usually commences on the outer surface of the bone or dentine of the crown, under the enamel; from thence it proceeds towards the centre of the tooth, increasing in circumference, until it reaches the pulp cavity.

If the diseased part is of a soft and humid character, the enamel, after a time, usually breaks in, disclosing the ravages which the disease has made on the subjacent dentine. But this does not always happen; the tooth sometimes remains nearly perfect, until its whole interior structure is destroyed.

There is no portion of the crown or neck of a tooth exempt from the disease; yet, some parts are more liable to be first attacked than others; as, for example, the depressions in the grinding surfaces of the molars and bicuspids, the approximal surfaces of all the teeth—the posterior or palatine surfaces of the lateral incisors; and, in short, wherever an imperfection exists in the enamel.

The outer portion of a tooth, as has been stated in a preceding place, is much harder than the inner or osseous part, and is by far less easily acted on by the causes that produce the disease. It is sometimes, however, the part first attacked, and when this happens, the disease develops itself more frequently on the

labial, or buccal surface near the gum, than in any other locality—often commencing at a single point, and at other times at a number of points. When the enamel is first attacked, it is usually called erosion; but as the enamel does not contain so much animal matter as the subjacent dentine, the diseased part is often washed away by the saliva of the mouth, while in the bony part of the tooth, it, in most instances, remains, and may be removed in distinct laminæ, after the calcareous molecules have been decomposed.

In very hard teeth, the decayed part is of a much firmer consistence, and of a darker color, than in soft teeth. Sometimes it is black; at other times of a dark or light brown; and at other times again, it is nearly white. As a general rule, the softer the tooth, the lighter, softer and more humid the caries. The color of the decayed part, however, may be, and doubtless is, in some cases, influenced by other circumstances—perhaps by some peculiar modification of the agents, upon the presence of which, the disease is dependent.

The disease then, not being the result of any vital action of the organs themselves, the applicability of the term caries may be questioned; but, as it has been very generally sanctioned, and as we know of no better name, we shall continue its use. Mr. Bell has substituted the term gangrene, under the belief that it conveys a more correct idea of the true nature of the affection. The applicability of a term, regarded as almost synonymous with this, is also suggested by Mr. Hunter; who, in speaking of the affection, says, it "appears to deserve the name of mortification." Mr. Fox, too, speaks of the decay of the teeth, as a disorder which terminates in mortification, but while treating of it, he designates it by the name of caries, and we prefer this term, inasmuch as that of gangrene or mortification may be applied to another condition of the teeth; namely, necrosis, with as much propriety as to the one now under consideration. Moreover, the term gangrene, or mortification, is usually used to signify the death of a soft part, and not a diseased condition of a bony tissue.

Commencing externally beneath the enamel, the disease proceeds, as we have before stated, towards the centre of the tooth,

destroying layer after layer, until it reaches the lining membrane, and leaving each outer stratum softer, and of a darker color than the subjacent one.

The appellations, *deep seated*, *superficial*, *external* and *internal*, *simple* and *complicated*, have been applied to the disease. These distinctions are unnecessary, since they only designate the different stages of the same disease. By complicated decay, is meant caries which has penetrated to the pulp cavity of the tooth, and is accompanied by inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane, and the death of the organ. The lining membrane, however, is not always inflamed by exposure, nor suppurated by inflammation.

Equally unnecessary is the classification adopted by M. Duval, to designate the differences of color and consistence exhibited by the decayed part. He enumerates seven varieties or species, which are as follows: *calcareous*, *peeling*, *perforating*, *black*, *deruptive*, *stationary* and *wasting*.

The *first*, he employs to denote that affection of the teeth which is characterized by the appearance of a white opaque spot on the enamel, whereby it is rendered brittle, and oftentimes caused to break. The *second*, if not identical with, is at least analogous to the first—the difference consisting only in the color of the enamel. The *third*, from a defect in almost every part of the enamel covering the crowns of the teeth, attacks the molars and sometimes the bicuspids, at a number of points simultaneously, causing the speedy destruction of the organs. The *fourth*, he describes as not occurring until from the fifteenth to the thirtieth year, and as being principally confined to persons of a consumptive habit, and those disposed to rachitis. The color of the decayed part of a tooth in individuals of these habits of body, is sometimes black, but more frequently white. Black caries, as it is called, is oftener met with in the teeth of persons of good constitutions, and, as has previously been remarked, in hard rather than in soft teeth.

The *fifth species*, or deruptive, he represents as that, which attacks the front teeth of individuals of consumptive habits near the necks of the organs, extending downwards towards their roots, and forming a brownish semicircular groove. The *sixth*,

is that description, which, after having penetrated a certain distance into the substance of the tooth, becomes stationary. The *seventh* and last species, is that which is characterized by the gradual wasting of the grinding surfaces of the molars, dipping down in some places to a considerable depth, and leaving a smooth polished surface of a brown or yellowish color.

Finally, the roots of the teeth frequently remain firm in their sockets for years after their crowns and necks have been destroyed. The roots are less liable to decay than the crowns, but nature, after the destruction of the last, as if conscious that the former are of no further use, exerts herself to expel them from the system, which is affected by the gradual wasting and filling up of their sockets. It often happens, that after this operation of the economy has been accomplished, they are retained in the mouth for months, and oftentimes for years, by their periostial connections with the gums. But this effort of nature, is confined more to the back than to the front teeth, for it often happens that these last remain for a great number of years, and seemingly without much injury to the parts within which they are contained, after the destruction of their crowns.

DIFFERENCES IN THE LIABILITY OF DIFFERENT TEETH TO DECAY.

Having explained at some length in a preceding part of this work, the manner in which the physical condition of the teeth is influenced, it will not be necessary now to dwell upon this portion of our subject. It will, therefore, only be requisite to state, that teeth which are well formed, well arranged and of a firm texture, seldom decay, and even when they are attacked by caries, the progress of the disease is not rapid; whereas, those that are imperfect in their formation, of a soft texture, or irregularly arranged, are very susceptible to the action of the causes which produce it and when attacked, if the progress of the affection is not arrested by art, they generally fall speedy victims to its ravages. And, just in proportion as the dentinal structure of the teeth is hard or soft, their shape perfect or imperfect, their arrangement regular or irregular, is their liability to caries diminished or increased.

The density, shape and arrangement of the teeth, are influenced by the state of the general health and that of the mouth, during the time of their ossification. If, at this period, all the functions of the body are healthily performed, these organs will be compact in their structure, perfect in their shape, and regular in their arrangement. But if, on the other hand, the body, or any part of it, and especially the mouth, be morbidly affected, the teeth will be more or less imperfect, and consequently less capable of resisting the causes of decay, to which all teeth, are, necessarily, exposed.

That the teeth should be thus influenced, will not appear strange, when we consider, that "there exists," as Richerand remarks, "amongst all the parts of the living body, intimate relations, all of which correspond to each other, and carry on a reciprocal intercourse of sensations and affections." Hence, if there is a morbid action in one part, other parts sympathize with it, and, as if sensible of the mutual dependence existing between them, rally all their energies to rescue their neighbor from the power of disease.

An increased action in one portion of the system, is generally followed by diminished action in some other part; thus, for example, gastritis is usually produced by constipation of the bowels: puerperal fever, by a diminished action in the heart, and an increased action in the uterus, &c. Hence, we may conclude, that if the body, at an early age, be morbidly excited, its functions will be languidly performed—the process of assimilation checked—the regular and healthy supply of bony matter stopped—and that, consequently, the teeth which are then formed, will be defective. Other parts of the body, as has been before stated, in which constant changes are going on, if thus affected at these early periods, may afterwards recover their healthy energies; but if the teeth are badly formed, they must ever after, because of their low degree of organization, continue so, and, consequently, be more liable to decay than those that are perfect.

"That the teeth acquire this disposition," says Mr. Fox, "to decay, from some want of healthy action during their formation, seems to be proved by the common observation, that they be-

come decayed in pairs; that is, those which are formed at the same time, being in a similar state of imperfection, have not the power to resist the causes of the disease, and, therefore, nearly about the same period of time exhibit signs of decay; while those which have been formed at another time, when a more healthy action has existed, have remained perfectly sound to the end of life."

Most writers are of the opinion, that the power of the teeth to resist the various causes of decay is sometimes weakened by a change brought about in their physical condition through the agency of certain remote causes, such as the profuse administration of mercury, the existence of fevers, and all severe constitutional disorders.

Mr. Fox tells us, "That he has had occasion to observe, that great changes take place in the economy of the teeth in consequence of continued fever; and that the decay of the teeth is often the consequence of certain states of the constitution."

Mr. Bell remarks: "That amongst the remote causes, (of decay,) are those which produce a deleterious change in the constitution of the teeth, subsequent to their formation; one of the most extensive, in its effects, is the use of mercury. To the profuse administration of this remedy in tropical diseases, we may, we think, in a great measure, attribute the injury which a residence in hot climates so frequently inflicts on the teeth."

Severe constitutional disorders, and the administration of certain kinds of medicine, do not, as Mr. Fox and Mr. Bell suppose, act directly upon the teeth, by altering their physical condition and thus rendering them more liable to disease; but they exert an indirect influence upon them, by so vitiating the secretions of the mouth, as to cause them to act chemically upon these organs.

The following considerations establish, to our mind, the truth of what we have just stated. Artificial teeth of bone or ivory, which can undergo no such changes as those mentioned by Mr. Bell, decay more rapidly after the profuse administration of any medicine, of during the existence of any disease that tends to vitiate the secretions of the mouth, than at other times. Furthermore, teeth of so dense a texture, as to be capable of resist-

ing the action of the corrupted juices of the mouth—though just as liable as those of a spongy texture, to any disease that can be communicated from the general system, by changing their internal economy, are not affected by any disease of the general system, nor by any action that has been produced in it by mercurial medicines.

The following is the result of our own observations: The gums and alveolar processes are sometimes destroyed by the use of mercury, so that all the teeth loosen and drop out, without being at all decayed. The teeth of persons, in whom a mercurial diathesis has been for a long time kept up, or who have been for years suffering from dyspepsia, phthisis, fevers, or other severe constitutional disorders, often continue to be perfectly sound, while other teeth, under similar circumstances, frequently decay. Now, all this goes to prove, not that changes are effected in the structural condition of the teeth, whereby their predisposition to decay is increased, but that there are differences in the capabilities of different teeth to resist the action of the acrid secretions of the mouth, caused by the affections which have just been enumerated.

The predisposition of teeth to decay, may, however, be increased by improper dental operations, as injudicious filing, careless plugging, &c.

The author is aware that he differs from some of his professional brethren on this point, as well as from received popular opinion. The views which he has here presented, are not the result of mere closet reflections partially matured, but of long and attentive observation. He has noted the effects of mercury, and of other medicines, as well as of constitutional diseases of the severest and most protracted kinds, and he has always observed, that it was only as they impaired the healthy qualities of the juices of the mouth, that they affected the teeth. In fact, the density of these organs, their exposed situation, their functions, all would seem to indicate, that such changes in them, as take place in other parts of the body, are not only unnecessary, but even impossible.

Dr. Good says, "That caries of the teeth does not appear to be a disease of any particular age or temperament, or state of health."

It is not a disease of any particular state of health, farther than that certain disorders exert a deleterious influence upon the secretions of the mouth, and thus become indirect causes of the decay of these organs. That it is not a disease of any particular age, seems to contradict common experience, for it *comparatively* seldom happens that caries appears after the age of forty. The reason of which is obvious. Teeth of a loose texture, or otherwise imperfect, are unable to resist, to this period of life, the causes of decay, to which all teeth are more or less exposed, while those which are able to resist their action thus long, are generally enabled, by the increased density they gradually acquire, to resist them through life. Teeth, however, do sometimes, though rarely, decay at fifty, or even at a later period. But caries of the teeth, generally, may be said to be confined to youth and middle age.

The formation, arrangement and physical condition of the teeth, are, sometimes, influenced by an hereditary diathesis of the general system, or of the parts concerned in their production, and that a morbid condition of the system, either on the part of the father or mother, often predisposes their progeny to like affections, is a principle fully recognized in pathology, and a fact of which we have many fearful proofs.

Mr. Bell, in treating of what he calls the hereditary predisposition of the teeth to decay, remarks: "That it often happens that this tendency exists in either the whole or a great part of a family of children, where one of the parents had been similarly affected; and this is true to so great an extent, that we have commonly seen the same tooth, and even the same part of a tooth, affected in several individuals of the family, and at about the same age. In other instances, where there are many children, amongst whom there existed a distinct division into two portions, some resembling the father, and some the mother, in features and constitution, we have observed the corresponding differences in the teeth, both as it regards their form and texture, and their tendency to decay."

Conclusive proofs that there is an hereditary tendency in the teeth to decay, are almost daily presented to the dental practitioner. Yet we think it is occasioned, not by the transmission

from the parent to the child of any peculiarity of action in the teeth themselves, but of a similarity of action in the parts concerned in their production, so that the teeth of the child are, in form and structure, like those of the parent whom it most resembles, and from whom it has inherited the diathesis. The teeth of the child being shaped like those of the parent, possessed of a like degree of density, and, in most instances, similarly arranged, are equally liable to disease, and when exposed to the action of the same causes, are affected in a like manner, and, generally, at about the same period of life. Such being the fact, is it unreasonable to conclude, that judicious early attention may so influence the formation and arrangement of the teeth, that their liability to disease may be greatly diminished? It is, then, to the differences in the physical condition and manner of arrangement of these organs, in different individuals, and in the same mouth, that the differences in their liability to decay is attributable.

CAUSES OF CARIES.

Caries of the teeth has been attributed to a great variety of causes, and to notice, in detail, the various opinions advanced by American, English, French and German writers upon this subject, would be both inconsistent with the plan of an elementary treatise like this, and unprofitable to the reader; we shall, therefore, content ourself with a very brief exposition of the views of a few of the most prominent writers, and if, in doing this, we shall have occasion to differ from any, we trust we shall be able to give satisfactory reasons for so doing.

Fauchard, Auzebè, Bourdet, Lecluse, Jourdain, and most of the French writers of the eighteenth century on the diseases of the teeth, as well as nearly all of the more modern French authors, though their views with regard to the causes of dental caries are exceedingly vague and confused, express the belief that the disease is, for the most part, the result of the action of chemical agents; such, for example, as vitiated saliva, the putrescent remains of particles of food lodged between the teeth, or in their interstices, acids, and a corrupted state of the fluids

conveyed to these organs for their nourishment. They also mention certain states of the general health, mechanical injuries, sudden transitions of temperature, &c., &c., as being conducive to the disease. A similar explanation, too, of the cause of dental caries, is given by Salmon, the author of a Compendium of Surgery, published in London, in 1644.

The foregoing is a general summary of the views entertained by most of the older writers with regard to the cause of the disease under consideration, and, if they are not strictly correct, we think we shall presently be able to show that they are not altogether erroneous.

In the English school of dental surgery, since the time of the publication of Mr. Fox's celebrated treatise on the Natural History and Diseases of the Teeth, and until quite recently, inflammation of the bony structure of these organs has been regarded as the proximate or immediate cause of the disease in question.

Having discovered an identity of structure between the teeth and the other bones of the body, this author immediately concluded that the diseases of the one were identical with those of the other. This inference, it must be confessed, to one who has not made the disease of the former a subject of close and critical investigation, would seem to be irresistible. But observation has proven it, so far as most of the diseases of the teeth are concerned, to be incorrect. By instituting a comparison between caries of the teeth and that of other bone, it will at once be perceived that there is not the slightest analogy between the disease, as it occurs in the one, and manifests itself in the other. In the former, it consists simply in a decomposition of the earthy basis of the organs, whereas, in the latter, it is analogous to ulceration in soft parts, and constantly discharges a fetid sanies, and throws out granulations of fungous flesh. These are phenomena which dental caries never exhibit, and they establish a wide difference of character between it and the disease as occurring in the other osseous structures of the body.

But the promulgation of the doctrine of the vascularity of the teeth, not only led to the belief that caries of these organs was identical with caries of other bones, but it soon gave rise to the

supposition, that, inasmuch as inflammation was the cause which determined it in the latter, it also produced it in the former.* Among the ablest advocates of this theory is Mr. Thomas Bell, but, notwithstanding the support which it has received from his pen, it is opposed by facts which prove it, most conclusively, to be erroneous.

If inflammation of the bony structure of the teeth were the cause of caries, the disease would be as likely to develop itself in one part of a tooth as another. The root, the interior of the crown between the pulp-cavity and the enamel, would as frequently be the part first attacked as the external surface. Now what are the facts in relation to this matter? Does caries ever commence on the root of a tooth, or between the pulp-cavity and the external surface of the dentinal part of the crown? Most assuredly not.

Again, among the causes which would be most likely to excite inflammation in these organs, are, many of the operations performed for arresting the progress of the disease. For example, it is well known that filing and plugging, two of the most valuable operations in dental surgery, augment, for a time at least, the sensibility of the teeth, and increase their susceptibility to the action of heat and cold—agents which are regarded as among the most frequent and powerful of the exciting causes of inflammation. Now, if caries of the teeth were the result of inflammation, these operations, instead of arresting the progress of the disease, would cause a recurrence of it, and thus hasten the destruction of those upon which they had been performed.

Inflammation of the lining membrane of a tooth, may end in suppuration, but we cannot believe that inflammation of its osseous structure alone, causes a decomposition of any portion of its substance. For were such a change produced by any vital

* The doctrine of the vascularity of the teeth, as maintained by Fox, was the origin of the theory in England, that caries of these organs resulted from inflammation of their bony structure, but the doctrine had been advanced at a much earlier period in France. The celebrated French surgeon, Ambrose Paré, in treating on tooth-ache, says, "these organs, after the manner of other bones, suffer inflammation," and "quickly suppurate, become rotten," &c., &c., book xvii, chap. xxv, page 387; published, 1579.

action, the part thus deprived of vitality, would be exfoliated, and its loss repaired by the formation of new bone, which never happens; and, hence, we are led to conclude that the vital powers of the teeth are too weak to set up an action capable of effecting the decomposition, exfoliation, or restoration of any portion of their substance. Were their living powers more active, it is probable their diseases would be more analogous to those of other bones.

If inflammation of their bony structure, then, is not the cause of the affection, how is the disease produced? This question can only be answered in one way. It is the result of the action of external chemical agents, and this explanation of the cause is not based upon mere hypothesis. It is supported by facts which cannot be successfully controverted. It is well known, that the fluids of the mouth, especially the mucous, when in a vitiated condition, are capable of decomposing the enamel of the teeth when not possessed of more than ordinary density. The truth of this assertion is demonstrated by the fact that dead teeth, and the crowns of human teeth, or those of animals, when employed as substitutes for the loss of the natural organs, are as liable to decay as living teeth, and the decayed part in the one, exhibits about the same characteristics as in the other. The same is true, too, with regard to all artificial teeth constructed from bone of any sort or ivory. Now, if the disease was dependent upon any vital operation, neither dead teeth nor such dental substitutes as we have mentioned, would ever decay. But inasmuch as they do, is it not reasonable to suppose that the cause which produces it in the one case is capable of producing it in the other? We answer most assuredly it is.

Inflammation may influence the susceptibility of a tooth to the action of the causes which produce decay, and even the appearance of the decayed part, but it is not the immediate cause of the disease.

But it may be asked, if caries be produced by the action of external corrosive agents, how is it that the disease sometimes commences within the bony structure of a tooth, and makes considerable progress there, before any indications of its existence

are observed externally? We answer, that it never does commence there; its attacks, as we have before remarked, are always upon the external surface, sometimes upon the enamel, but most frequently upon the bone beneath the indentations in the grinding surfaces of the bicuspids and molars, and in the approximal sides of the teeth, where this outer covering is frequently so fractured by the pressure of the organs against each other, that the juices of the mouth find ready access to the subjacent osseous tissue. Decay may be gradually going on here for months and even years without any manifest signs of its existence: and the commencement of the disease in these places has led many to suppose that it had its origin within the osseous structure.

A thorough investigation of this subject, ought, we would suppose, to convince any one, that caries always commences externally. If it commenced in the interior or within the bony substance, as is asserted by some English writers, "the sphere of usefulness," as is very justly remarked by Dr. Fitch, "on the part of the surgeon dentist," would be, "to say the least of it, extremely limited. For, if their observations," alluding to those of Hunter, Fox, Koecker and other European writers, "are true, this disease, in its commencement, in one-half of the cases, is entirely out of the reach of medical aid." Dr. F., however, is of the opinion that it does sometimes commence within the substance of the tooth.

But a still more absurd and ridiculous theory in regard to the cause of the disease is advanced by Mr. Charles Bew. He attributes it to the arrest of the circulation in the organs, "by the lateral pressure of the teeth against each other."

The exposure of the teeth, too, to sudden changes of temperature, as from heat to cold, or cold to heat, has been regarded almost from time immemorial as the cause of their decay, but no explanation of the manner by which these agents produced the disease was attempted, until the promulgation of the doctrine that it was the result of inflammation, then they were numbered among the *exciting causes*. The popular belief that cold is a cause of dental caries, is traced back to Hippocrates, who, in

mentioning the parts of the body injuriously affected by it, includes the teeth.*

M. Ribe endeavors to prove that hot food is a cause of caries, from the fact, that "man is the only animal accustomed to hot food, and almost the only animal affected with carious teeth." Had he instituted a comparison between the teeth of man and of brutes, and between the solvent agents to which they are respectively exposed, he might, doubtless, have traced the decay of the human teeth to its proper cause.

"The Indians of North America," remarks Mr. Tillaeus, "knew nothing of the inconvenience of carious teeth and debilitated stomachs, until after the introduction of tea amongst them." From this one might suppose that tea caused the teeth to decay, and that dyspepsia was mainly attributable to its use.

The decay of the teeth of these people, since the introduction of tea amongst them, may, however, be much more plausibly accounted for. The susceptibility of these organs to the action of such causes as produce the disease, have been greatly increased by the impaired state of their general constitutional health, occasioned, since this time, by the use of spiritous liquors, and the luxuries common to civilized life, in which they have indulged.

Particular sorts of diet, too, such for example, as animal food, are said to exercise an unhealthy influence upon the teeth. In proof of the assertion, it is stated, that Indian nations, who live principally upon vegetables, scarcely ever have a tooth to decay. But the same may also be said of those nations who subsist chiefly on animal diet, and who enjoy an equal degree of constitutional health. Savage and barbarous people are usually possessed of better teeth than those of civilized nations, because their systems are not enervated by luxurious living. So far as diet is capable of effecting the health of the body, it may be considered as an indirect cause of caries; for the health of the child is not always dependent on the health of the parent, and, to the absence of disease in the general system during child-

*Frigidum inimicum ossibus, dentibus, nervis, cerebro, spinali medullæ: calidum varo utile. *Aph. sec. v.*—par. 18.

hood, the period when the teeth of second dentition are being formed, is attributable the soundness of the teeth of savages.

With regard to any direct action which animal food is capable of exerting upon the teeth, even in a state of putrefaction, it is, unquestionably, less hurtful than vegetable substances. The fibres of animal matter, it is true, may be retained longer between the teeth than particles of vegetables, and by remaining there until they undergo chemical decomposition, and by irritating the gums and absorbing and retaining the secretions of the mouth until they become vitiated, may thus indirectly contribute to the disease.

Those parts of the teeth which are covered with thick smooth enamel, are, in the first instance, never attacked by caries, unless the enamel has previously sustained some injury; and it is not necessary that the injury should be very conspicuous, in order to permit agents capable of producing the disease to pass through it to the subjacent dentine; they may be of so subtile a nature as to be capable of penetrating even a very small fracture.

Mr. Tomes believes that caries of a tooth is always preceded by loss of vitality in the affected part, and that it is not until this takes place, that the chemical agents, upon the action of which the structural alteration is produced, are capable of affecting the solid tissues of these organs, but that this opinion is erroneous is proven by the fact, that the animal frame-work of the affected part, after the complete decomposition of the earthy salts, is often so exceedingly sensitive that the slightest touch of an instrument is productive of severe pain—conclusively demonstrating the existence of remaining vitality.*

The opinion of Mr. Lintott with regard to the manner in which caries is produced is founded upon the endosmotic phenomena which he thinks takes place in the structure of a tooth. That endosmosis may take place in the outer part of a tooth is possible, and if it does, the secretions of the mouth, if at all acidulated, would be likely to decompose the calcareous molecules with which they are brought in contact during their imbibition. But whether such action takes place or not, the structural alteration, beyond doubt, is produced by chemical agents.†

* See *Tomes' Lectures on Dental Physiology and Surgery.*

† *Lintott on the Teeth.*

The existence of an acid in the mouth, capable of decomposing the teeth, is conclusively proven by Dr. S. K. Mitchell, in a letter addressed by him to T. C. Hope, M. D., of Edinburgh, dated October 10th, 1796, and the fact may be demonstrated by a very simple experiment, which consists in moistening a piece of blue paper, dyed with turnsole, with the fluids of this cavity, obtained from between the teeth, where they have been retained until they have become vitiated. If this be done, the paper will be turned red. If, then, these fluids, when in a vitiated condition, are possessed of acid qualities, they must necessarily exert a deleterious action upon the teeth, by decomposing and breaking down their calcareous molecules, or, in other words, causing their decay.

The acid detected by Dr. Mitchell was the septic, (nitrous,) but the acetic, lactic, oxalic, muriatic and uric have been detected in the saliva, in certain states of the general health. Donne, who has analysed the fluids of the mouth with great care, says, the saliva, "in its normal state," is alkaline, but that "the secretion of the mucous membrane of the mouth is acid."* It is highly probable, therefore, that the acids which have been detected in the first of these fluids, may have been principally derived from the latter. Acidity of the saliva may, however, occur in certain morbid conditions of the general system. Donne says, he has observed it in patients affected "with gastritis," "and in children with aphthæ." It is to the action of these acids upon those parts of the teeth, where they are long retained, that their decay is principally attributable.

The doctrine that the decay of the teeth is the result of the action of external corrosive agents, was first distinctly promulgated to the dental profession in the United States, about the year 1821, by Drs. L. S. and Eleazar Parmly. These agents may consist of menstrua, formed by the decomposition or acetous fermentation of the remains of certain aliments, lodged in the interstices of the teeth, or of the fluids of the mouth, especially the mucous, in a vitiated or acidulated condition, or of acids administered during sickness, or used as condiments. We are

* *Course de Microscope*, p. 209.

aware, that, according to the tables of elective attraction, there are but four acids, namely, the oxalic, sulphuric, tartaric and succinic, which precede the phosphoric in their affinity for lime. It may hence be argued, that none of the other acids are capable of decomposing the teeth, or of affecting them in any other way prejudicially, but daily observation proves the erroneousness of this conclusion. By a series of interesting experiments, performed by Dr. A. Westcott, in 1843, assisted by Mr. Dalrymple, it is proven that nearly all of the acids, both mineral and vegetable, act readily upon the teeth.* But we

* The following are the results of the experiments alluded to above, and we would state, in this connection, with all the vegetable acids except one; they were recently repeated by Dr. Westcott, before the class of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery.

"1st. Both vegetable and mineral acids act readily upon the bone and enamel of the teeth.

"2d. Alkalies do not act upon the enamel of the teeth; the caustic potash will readily destroy the bone by uniting with its animal matter.

"3d. Salts whose acids have a stronger affinity for the lime of the tooth than for the basis with which they are combined, are decomposed, the acids acting upon the teeth.

"4th. Vegetable substances have no effect upon the teeth till after fermentation takes place, but all of them capable of acetic fermentation act readily after this acid is formed.

"5th. Animal substances, even while in a state of confined putrefaction, act very tardily, if at all, upon either the bone or enamel. On examining the teeth subjected to such influence, the twentieth day of the experiment, no visible phenomena were presented, except a slight deposit upon the surface, of a greenish slimy matter, somewhat resembling the green tartar often found upon teeth in the mouth.

"To give a more definite idea of the deleterious agents to which the teeth are exposed, and their consequent liability to be affected by them, we will notice the effect produced by a few of the individual substances, which are more or less liable to be brought in contact with the teeth.

"Acetic and citric acids so corroded the enamel in forty-eight hours, that much of it was easily removed with the finger nail.

"Acetic acid or common vinegar is not only in common use as a condiment, but is formed in the mouth whenever substances, liable to fermentation, are suffered to remain about the teeth for any considerable length of time.

"Citric acid, or lemon juice, though less frequently brought in contact with the teeth, acts upon them still more readily.

"Malic acid, or the acid of apples, in its concentrated state, also act promptly upon the teeth.

"Muriatic, sulphuric and nitric acids, though largely diluted, soon decompose the teeth—these are in common use as tonics.

are disposed to believe that caries of the teeth results more frequently from the action of some acid contained in the mucous fluids of the mouth, than from that of acid medicines or condiments, or even from such acids as may be generated by the acetous fermentation of particles of certain kinds of food lodged between the teeth. The author is of the opinion, therefore, that if all the functional operations of the body were always healthily performed, caries of the teeth would never occur, for, in that case, the alkalinity of the saliva would be sufficient to completely neutralize the acidity of the mucous fluids of the buccal cavity, as well as any other acids which may be generated in the mouth.

The foregoing theory of the cause of dental caries, explains the *rationale* of the treatment at present adopted for arresting its progress. By the removal of the decomposed part and filling the cavity with an indestructible material, the contact of those agents, upon the chemical action of which the disease depends, is prevented, and the further progress of the decay arrested.

Among the indirect causes of caries, the following may be enumerated; depositions of tartar upon the teeth, a febrile or irritable state of the body, a mercurial diathesis of the general system, artificial teeth improperly inserted, or of bad materials; roots of teeth; irregularity in the arrangement of the teeth; too great pressure of the teeth against each other, and, in short, everything that is productive of irritation to the alveolar and dental membranes, or gums.

The doctrine we have here advocated, is one which, we confess, we were for a long time, unwilling to believe, because it was opposed to all our earlier preconceived notions upon the

"Sulphuric and nitric ethers have a similar deleterious effect, as also spirits of nitre—these are common diffusible stimulants in sickness.

"The acids of some of the salts also corrode the teeth.

"Super-tartrate of potash, as an example, destroyed the enamel very readily. This article is frequently used to form an acidulated beverage.

"Raisins so corroded the enamel in twenty-four hours, that its surface presented the appearance and was of the consistency of chalk.

"Sugar had no effect till after acetous acid was formed, but then the effect was the same as from this acid when directly applied."

subject; but long and attentive observation has forced us to acknowledge its truth.

It will be perceived from the foregoing exposition of the causes of dental caries, that three distinct theories have been advanced upon the subject, namely: 1. The *vital*, as advocated by Paré, Fox, Bell, and some others. 2. The *chemical*, as maintained by nearly all French authors, by Salmon, Drs. L. S. and E. Parmly, and by almost all late writers. 3. The *chemico-vital*, of Tomes. We might also add the *endosmotic* theory of Lintott, which, in fact, is nothing more than an explanation of the supposed manner in which chemical agents are brought in more direct contact with the earthy salts of a tooth.

PREVENTION OF CARIES.

It is an old adage, no less true than trite, that "an ounce of prevention is better than a pound of cure," and in the present instance it may be applied with its full force. Were more attention paid to the practical instruction thus conveyed, many of the most destructive diseases of the teeth might be avoided.

Most of the remarks that might be made on this subject have been anticipatied; consequently, it will only be necessary to observe, that if the teeth are well formed, and well arranged, all that will be required, will be to keep them clean; and if any irregularity occurs, it should be remedied by the means before described.

For cleansing the teeth, the regular and frequent use of a brush and waxed floss-silk, as previously recommended, will, in most cases, be sufficient. The enamel should be kept free from all stains and discolorations, by the employment, if necessary, once a day, of a dentifrice, or what is still better, an argillaceous tooth-polisher, as advised by Dr. L. S. Parmly. If a powder be preferred, either of the following may be used:

℞ Creta prep. ʒ iv, pul. orris root ʒ iv, pul. cinnamon ʒ ss, sup. carb. soda ʒ ss, sach. alb. ʒ i, ol. lemon gtt. 15, ol. rose

gtt. 2, Misce. ℞ Cret. prep. ʒ ii, pul. orris root ʒ ii, prep. pumice stone ʒ i—Misce.

These should be reduced to an impalpable powder, and passed through a sieve, previously to being used.

The importance of keeping the teeth clean, cannot be too strongly impressed upon the mind of every individual. Proper attention to the cleanliness of these organs, contributes more to their health and preservation than is generally supposed. Against caries it is a most powerful prophylactic. "Where the teeth," says Dr. L. S. Parmly, "are kept literally clean, no disease will ever be perceptible. Their structure will equally stand the summer's heat and winter's cold, the changes of climate, the variation of diet, and even the diseases to which the other parts of the body may be subject from constitutional causes."

The configuration of some teeth is such, however, as to preclude the possibility of keeping them clean, but this should not deter any one from using the proper means; for if disease is not wholly prevented, it will, at least, contribute very greatly to the preservation of the organs.

TREATMENT OF CARIES.

Although the physical condition of the teeth is sometimes such as to render them exceedingly susceptible to the attacks of caries, there is no disease to which the body is liable, that can be treated with a more certain prospect of success than this. If taken in time, it can almost always be arrested; and, if in the majority of cases it is not, it is attributable more to want of skill on the part of the practitioner, than to the incurable nature of the disease. The treatment, to be effectual, must be thorough, and there is no branch of manual medicine that requires more judgment, or a greater amount of skill than the one within whose province the treatment of the disease now under consideration, comes.

As a general rule, before any treatment is instituted for the purpose of arresting its progress, the gums and alveolo-dental periosteum should be in, at least, a tolerably healthy condition;

for, if they are inflamed, or ulcerated, or in a highly irritable state at the time, the most skillfully applied remedies may prove unavailing. If, therefore, these structures are diseased, such treatment as may be necessary to their restoration, and which will hereafter be described, should first be had recourse to.

The treatment for arresting the progrees of caries consists in two operations—filing and filling. The first is for superficial caries on the lateral or approximal surfaces of the teeth, and as preparatory to the other, when the disease is situated here. The second, is for deep seated caries, and the manner of performing each, will be described in the two following chapters.

CHAPTER SECOND.

FILING TEETH.

THERE is no operation in dental surgery, against which a stronger or more universal prejudice prevails, than that of filing the teeth; and when judiciously and skillfully performed, there is no one more beneficial, or effectual in arresting the progress of caries. Thousands of teeth are now every year rescued from its ravages, and preserved through life, by it. But, although it is productive of so much good, it is also, in the hands of ignorant and unskillful operators, productive of incalculable injury.

With regard to the merits of this wrongly judged and much abused operation, the author's views are so fully expressed by his brother, Dr. John Harris, in a paper, published, in the September No. of vol. 5, of the American Journal of Dental Science, that he cannot do better than quote his remarks upon the subject.

He says, "Filing the teeth is one of the most important and valuable resources of the dental art; it is one that has stood the test of experience, and is of such acknowledged utility, as to constitute of itself, in the treatment of superficial caries on the lateral surfaces of the teeth, one of the most valuable operations that can be performed on these organs. And even after caries, in the localities just mentioned, has progressed so far as to render its removal, by this means, impracticable or improper, the use of the file, in most cases, is still necessary, in order to the successful employment of other remedial agents. But in either case, a failure to accomplish the object for which it is used, would only be equivalent to doing nothing at all.

"The use of the file, then, may very justly be considered a *sine qua non*, for the removal of superficial caries from the sides of the teeth which come in contact with each other, as can be

attested by thousands of living witnesses, and in preparing the way, in deep-seated caries, for the thorough removal of the disease, and the filling, successfully, of the cavity thus formed.

"In a paper written by myself, some eleven or twelve years ago, upon this subject, I contended that filing the teeth was not necessarily productive of caries, and my subsequent experience and observations have only tended to confirm the correctness of the opinion which I then advanced, and I cherish the belief that this opinion, will not, at this time, conflict with the views of the more enlightened of my professional brethren.

"But when reference is had to the physical peculiarities of the teeth, it will at once be perceived, that they present a strange departure from the laws that govern and control all other parts of the body—that these organs, when diseased, can only be restored to health and usefulness by art, unaided by the sanitary powers of nature. Hence it is, that most of the operations upon them, will not, like those in general surgery, admit of mediocrity in their performance.

* * * * * * *

"The fact that the crowns of the teeth are covered with enamel, is alone sufficient evidence of its importance and utility in shielding and protecting the bony structure, which it envelops, from mechanical and morbid influences, so that it would seem that its removal or loss would necessarily expose the organs to certain destruction. But we have satisfactory evidence, that teeth after having suffered the loss of large portions of the enamel, have been restored to health, and preserved for many years, and often through life.

"The rapidity with which caries of the teeth progress, after the exposure of the bone, by the loss of the enamel, depends upon the physical peculiarities of the organs, and upon local and constitutional influences; hence the difficulty, and oftentimes impossibility of obtaining the object for which dental operations are instituted, while such influences are suffered to exist. If special regard is not had to the curative indications, most, if not all the operations upon the teeth, which have for their object their ultimate preservation, are sure, to a greater or less extent, to augment all of the previously existing local affections,

by increasing the irritability of the parts, and by rendering them more susceptible of being acted upon both by local and constitutional causes.

"Without indulging in further prefatory remarks,I shall proceed to notice more particularly the subject under consideration. And I would observe, firstly, that an experience obtained from twenty-three years' constant practice, has fully convinced me, not only of the propriety, but of the absolute necessity in the treatment of caries of the lateral surfaces of the teeth, of employing the file. There is no instrument so well adapted as this for the removal of the disease when situated in these parts of the teeth, and especially, when the organs are in close proximity with each other, or for the removal of rough and weakened edges of the enamel in deep-seated caries, and for making sufficient space or room for the removal of the diseased or unsound parts preparatory to plugging.

"It may be laid down as a rule, from which exceptions should never be taken, that the file should not be used, while the teeth or their contiguous parts are suffering general or local, acute or chronic, inflammation. Therefore, when this is the case, the treatment of the general and local affections should be precedaneous to the operation of filing. Upon the subjugation of all the acute or chronic diseases of the mouth, the success of the dentist in the treatment of affections of the teeth, calling for the employment of the file, greatly depends. As much importance, therefore, is to be attached to an enlightened and discriminating judgment, as to tact in the performance of the operation.

"In fact the removal of all local causes of irritation, such as all dead roots of teeth, teeth occasioning alveolar abscesses, or such as exert a morbid influence upon the surrounding parts, and all depositions of salivary calculus or other foreign matter, should always precede all other operations upon these organs.

"The length of time necessary for the restoration of the parts contiguous to the teeth to a healthy condition, may vary from a few days, or weeks, to months, depending upon the nature and extent of the disease, the general health of the patient, and the constitutional as well as local treatment to which they are sub-

jected. The frequent failures in accomplishing the object for which dental operations are performed, are, in most instances, the result of ignorance on the part of the practitioner, or the want of a correct knowledge of the nature, cause and curative indications of the disease he attempts to treat.

"But, in assuming the position, that filing the teeth, does not, of necessity, cause them to decay, it is by no means to be inferred, that the operation can, in all cases, and under all circumstances, be performed with advantage or even impunity. By no means; its effects, like those of most other operations upon the teeth, when the curative indications are disregarded, or not properly carried out, are never passive. The employment of the file at an improper time, and in an improper manner, increases the liability of the teeth to decay, and augments the irritability of all the parts adjacent to them, and consequently their susceptibility of being acted upon by local and constitutional causes.

"This view of the subject, taken in connection with the fact, that comparatively few of those engaged in the practice of this branch of surgery are properly qualified for it, satisfactorily accounts for the pernicious effects that so frequently result from the use of the instrument in question, and for the wide-spread and deep-rooted prejudice that has obtained against its employment.

"The principal, and I believe only objection, urged against filing the teeth, is based upon the erroneous belief, that the loss of any part of the enamel of these organs, must necessarily result in their destruction. But, if this be true, why is it, as I have, on another occasion, asked, that the negroes of Abyssinia have such sound teeth as they are represented to have, since it has long been a custom with them to file all their front teeth to points, so as to make them resemble the teeth of a saw or those of carnivorous animals. Of course, large portions of the enamel and considerable of the bony structure, must be removed in the operation, and yet, we are credibly informed that their teeth seldom decay. The same may be said of the Brahmins of India, who, from remote ages, have been in the habit of using the file, principally, I believe, for separating their teeth, and they, too, are noted for having fine teeth. I might refer to the people of

other countries, with whom the same practice has long had an existence, but it is not necessary to go abroad for proof, when we have such an abundance of it at home, to establish the propriety and absolute necessity for the practice I am now advocating.

"With the people just referred to, it is evident that they file, principally, for the purpose of ornamenting their teeth, but with us, only as a remedial agent in the treatment of their diseases. The reason why their teeth are not so subject to disease as are those of the inhabitants of civilized countries, is attributable to the difference in their habits of life, modes of living, and the absence of the causes productive of the various diseases peculiar to civilization and refinement.

"But notwithstanding the utility and value of the operation, filing the teeth may be regarded as a predisposing cause of caries. But if this be true, it may be asked, why file at all? I answer, in this country, owing to the prevalence of the immediate or direct cause of caries, the operation is only performed as remedial, for the purpose of removing *actual* disease, or as preparatory to plugging. It does not, of necessity, follow, that caries of the teeth, after having been judiciously removed or treated, although the organs be predisposed to the disease, should ever again occur. The general system often escapes the development of the diseases to which it is predisposed through life, so, also, do the teeth. If the operation be properly performed, and the filed surfaces kept thoroughly clean, a recurrence of the disease, notwithstanding the increased predisposition thus induced, will never again take place. The immediate cause of dental caries being the contact of corrosive agents with the teeth, the necessity for this precaution is obvious. The bony structure of these organs is more easily acted upon by such causes, than the enamel, and for this reason, when it becomes necessary to expose it, with a file, for the removal of disease, it should be done in such a way as to admit of its being kept thoroughly and constantly clean, so that if it afterwards becomes carious, it will be owing altogether to the inattention of the patient. In view of this, whenever it becomes necessary to file the teeth, whether for the complete removal of caries, or

as only preparatory to plugging, we should always impress upon the patient the importance of attending to this matter—of cleansing the surfaces thus operated upon, at least three or four times every day. The future preservation of the organs, and, especially, such as are of a soft or chalky texture, for they are then, by far, more easily acted upon by decomposing agents than when hard, will depend upon the constant and regular observance of this precaution.

"The cases requiring the use of the file vary so much, that it would be difficult to lay down precise directions with regard to the extent to which the operation should always be carried. This must be determined by the judgment of the operator.

"The object for which the operation is performed, may be defeated either by filing too much or too little. Either extreme should be avoided, but I am of the opinion, that by far the greater number of unsuccessful results are attributable, rather to the too moderate than to the too great use of this instrument, and, especially, where the circumstances of the case have nothing to do in determining the result.

"But it is not my object to describe the manner in which teeth should be filed, but merely to offer a few general remarks on the advantages that result from it when the operation is judiciously performed, and to show, that it is from the abuse of the use of the file, in the hands of the ignorant and inexperienced practitioner, that its merits have been so frequently erroneously estimated.

"It will be perceived from the foregoing remarks, that its utility depends upon carrying out all the curative indications, that it should never be resorted to except in the absence of disease in the parts with which these organs are immediately connected. Therefore, to estimate the merits of the operation, correctly, we should know all the circumstances under which it has been performed, the competency of the operator, and whether he was permitted the free exercise of his judgment.

"The dentist is often called upon to render his services, where, from the timidity or ignorance of his patient, he is, if he consents to operate at all, so restricted in the application of his remedies, that but little, if anything more than temporary

relief can be afforded. And cases may occasionally occur, in which, from unforeseen circumstances, even after the most skillful management, the dentist may be disappointed in his expectations, and fail in the attainment of the object for which his services were solicited."

To ensure the success of the operation, it is sometimes necessary to file away a considerable portion of the tooth, but in doing this, the operator should be careful not to destroy the symmetry of its labial surface. The aperture, anteriorly, should only be wide enough to admit of a free oblique or diagonal motion of a safe-sided file of about one-third of a line in thickness. In this way, one-fourth or more of a tooth may be removed without materially altering its external appearance. But a tooth should not be filed entirely to the gum; a shoulder or projection should be left so as to prevent the approximation of it and the adjoining organ.

When the decay occupies a large portion of the approximal surface, and has penetrated into the tooth to a considerable depth, and destroyed the enamel anteriorly, so as to cause it to present a ragged and uneven edge, it will be necessary to form a wider exterior aperture than correct taste would dictate. When the approximal surfaces of the two front teeth are affected with caries, about an equal portion, if circumstances will permit, should be filed from each tooth.

FIG. 61.



The accompanying engraving represents a front view of the superior incisors and cuspidati after having been filed.

It is scarcely necessary to give any directions with regard to the manner of holding the file. In filing the front teeth and those on the right side of the jaws, the operator should stand at the right and a little behind the patient, so as to steady his head as it rests against the head-piece or top of the back of his operating chair, with his left arm, while with the fingers of the hand of the same, the lips should be raised and the teeth properly exposed for the operation. In filing the teeth on the

left side of the mouth, it will be necessary for the operator to stand upon this side of his patient. The file, firmly grasped between the thumb and middle finger of the right hand, with the end of the fore-finger resting upon the edge of its distal extremity, should be moved backwards and forwards in a direct line, as any deviation from this would immediately snap the instrument. The first opening between the teeth, when the approximal edges of the two are carious, should be made with a flat file, of about one-third of a line in thickness, cut on both sides and both edges; this done, a file cut only on one side and both edges, should be employed for the completion of the operation. If but one tooth is decayed, the operation may be commenced and completed with a safe-sided file. The file, during the operation, should be frequently dipped in water, so as to prevent it from becoming heated, or choked between the teeth.

After a sufficient portion of the tooth has been filed away, the surface should be made as smooth as possible with a very fine or half worn file, or Arkansas oil-stone, and a burnisher. The edges and sharp corners should be rounded and made smooth, and when the operation is completed, the patient should be directed to keep the filed surfaces perfectly clean, for, if the mucous secretions of the mouth, or extraneous matter is permitted to adhere to them, a recurrence of the disease will take place.

The sensation produced by filing the teeth, is, to most persons, disagreeable, and, to some, positively painful; but, when the operation has been commenced, it should never be left uncompleted. If the patient becomes alarmed, his fears should be quieted by a true statement of the case, and his consent to proceed won, by a mild and persuasive deportment.

In separating the bicuspids, an aperture should be made somewhat in the form of the letter V; it should not, however, form an acute angle at the gum; and for its formation, a file, shaped like the pinion-file of a clock, or one that is oval on one side and flat on the other, will be found most suitable. An aperture, shaped like this, will prevent the approximation of the sides of the teeth, and, if plugging be necessary, it will enable the operator to do it in the most perfect manner.

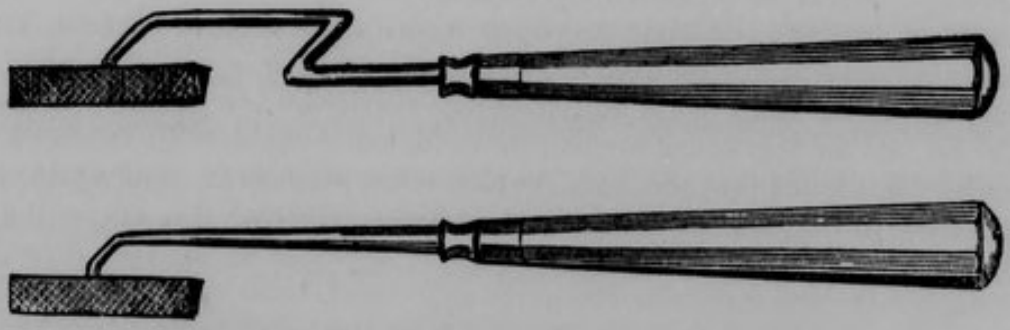
Fig. 62.



In Fig. 62 is represented a posterior view of the superior incisors and cuspidati after having been filed; also, a vertical view of the bicuspids and molars after having been subjected to the same operation.

When the separation of the molar teeth becomes necessary, the same shaped aperture should be formed. But, as these teeth are situated so far back in the mouth, it cannot often be done with a straight file, and to obviate the difficulty, an instrument, with which every dentist is acquainted, denominated a file carrier, is usually employed. But, in consequence of the difficulty

Fig. 63.



of procuring instruments of this kind, exactly suited to holding files of the right shape, the author, a few years ago, constructed some file patterns for this purpose, and, through Messrs. Canfield & Brothers, of Baltimore, sent them to Stub's manufactory, in England, and had files made, which he found to answer his fullest expectations.

These files, as may be seen by the above cut, are shaped something like the pinion-file of a clock: they are an inch and a half long, and have a handle of about six inches in length, bent in such a manner that the instrument may be used between the molar teeth without interfering with the corners of the mouth. These files are in pairs—one for the right and one for the left side of the mouth. But, in Fig. 63, two patterns are

respresented. The upper, in consequence of the handle being on a line with the file, works more easily than the lower one.

Fig. 64.

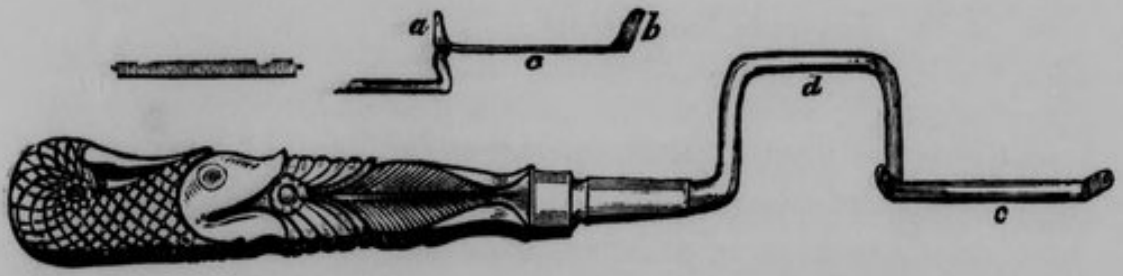


Fig. 64, represents a very useful and valuable file-carrier recently invented by Dr. A. Westcott. It is so constructed that the handle is brought on a line with the file—consequently two are required, one for each side of the mouth.

Fig. 64. The portion marked *c*, is a spring, and through the arms *a* and *b*, there are square mortices, to receive the ends of the file and to keep it from turning. It will be perceived, by examining the cut, that the arm *b* does not come off at right angles, and the object of this shape must be apparent. The *file* is prepared by making each end square, corresponding with the size of the mortices in the arms, and is adjusted to the carrier by first putting one end of the file into the arm *a*, and pressing down the other end into the mortice *b*, the spring constituting that portion of the instrument between the arm, which yields sufficiently to admit of this. It will be readily perceived that the file may be easily taken out, while it could not well be thrown in an opposite direction; also, that the arm *a* sustains almost the entire strain made upon the instrument; the arm *b* serving to steady the file, which is represented to the left of the detached portion of the instrument, marked *a*, *b* and *c*.

CHAPTER THIRD.

FILLING TEETH.

THIS is the most difficult operation the dental practitioner is ever called upon to perform—it often baffles the skill of operators who have been in practice from ten to twenty years. It is, also, when well performed, the most certain and only remedy that can be applied for arresting the progress of deep-seated caries. But to be effective, it must be executed in the most thorough and perfect manner. The preservation of a tooth, when well filled, and with a suitable material, if it be afterwards kept constantly clean, may be regarded as certain. At any rate, it will never again be attaked by caries in the same place.

On this highly important operation, Dr. E. Parmly thus remarks—"If preservation is as good as a cure, this is as good as both, for the operation of stopping, when thoroughly performed, is both preservation and cure. And yet, it must never be forgotten, that this assertion is true only in those instances in which the operation is well and properly done; and, perhaps, it is imperfectly and improperly performed more frequently than any other operation on the teeth.

"There are reasons for this fact, into which every ambitious and honorable practitioner will carefully inquire.

"Although the books are explicit on this point, I deem it sufficiently important to deserve a few additional remarks, and yet I am perfectly aware that my time requires me to be extremely general in my observations. Let me say, then, that the following considerations are essential, and, therefore, indispensable to success in this department of practice.

"*Firstly*—The instruments used must be of the proper construction and variety.

"*Secondly*—The metal employed must be properly prepared as well as properly introduced.

"*Thirdly*—The cavity which receives the metal, must be so

fitted, as to retain it in such a manner as to exclude not only solids, but all fluids, and even the atmosphere itself.

"*Fourthly*—The surface of the metal must be left in such condition as to place it beyond the reach of injury from food and other mechanical agents with which it must of necessity come in contact.

"*Fifthly*—The tooth thus stopped should be free from pain, and every known cause of internal inflammation."

It is important, however, that the operation should be performed before the caries has reached the pulp cavity, for after this, the permanent preservation of the tooth in many cases may be regarded as somewhat questionable. Still, under favorable circumstances, the author believes it may generally be performed with success. But, as the propriety and manner of filling a tooth after the pulp has become exposed, will hereafter come up for special consideration, as well, also, as the operation of filling the pulp cavity after the destruction of the pulp, it will not be necessary to enlarge upon these subjects at the present time.

A tooth is sometimes exceedingly sensitive, when the nerve is not exposed; but this need not deter the operator from removing the decayed part and filling the cavity, as the only inconvenience which it will occasion the patient will be a little suffering during the operation, and slight momentary pain for a few days, whenever any thing hot or cold is taken into the mouth. But, if the sensibility is so great as to render it impossible for the patient to endure the operation, the fortieth or fiftieth part of a grain of arsenic, with an equal quantity of the sulphate of morphia, may be applied to the diseased part, and the cavity afterwards sealed up with white wax, or gum mastic to prevent it from escaping into the mouth and being swallowed, and the saliva from getting into the cavity of the tooth. At the expiration of from two to three hours, it should be removed, and the cavity properly prepared and filled. There is great danger, however, when this is applied to the front teeth of very young persons, if it be permitted to remain too long, of its inducing inflammation and sometimes the death of the lining membrane, and causing the tooth to assume a dark, muddy, or purple appearance. Therefore, when applied only for the purpose

of destroying the sensibility of the bone of the tooth, it should not be permitted to remain any longer than is necessary for the accomplishment of this object. Chloride of zinc and cobalt have also been successfully employed for destroying the sensibility of teeth.

Filling teeth, is advisable only under certain circumstances, and when the operation is performed without a due regard to these, it may be productive of great injury.

MATERIALS EMPLOYED FOR FILLING TEETH.

Among the articles which have been employed for filling teeth, are, tin, lead, gum mastic, silver, an alloy of bismuth, tin and lead, amalgam, platina, and gold.

Tin, when chemically pure, and properly prepared is less objectionable, than most of the articles above enumerated, for filling teeth. Under favorable circumstances, if skillfully introduced it will prevent the recurrence of caries. But if the fluids of the mouth are very much vitiated, or should they at any time afterwards become so, it soon oxydizes and turns black, and then, instead of preventing, it rather promotes a recurrence of the disease. This, with the author, has constituted an insuperable objection to its use. As an excuse for its employment, however, many operators say, that in consequence of its greater malleability than gold, it can oftentimes be employed for filling a badly-shaped and large cavity when the last named article cannot be used. We do not, however, regard this as a valid objection. Any tooth that can be filled with tin, can be equally well filled with gold. Others again employ it, because many of their patients are not able to pay for a more costly material. Now, if a tooth is worth filling at all, it is worth filling in a proper manner, and with a suitable material, and it would be by far more creditable to the operator to divide the expense with his poor patient, than to use an article that may never benefit him.

Lead is even more objectionable than tin, as it is more easily decomposed by the secretions of the mouth, and by being intro-

duced into the stomach, may be productive of serious injury to the general health of the patient. But, happily, this article is now seldom used, except by the most ignorant and lowest class of empirics.

Gum mastic, although at one time much used, is now seldom employed, except as a temporary filling when the pulp of the tooth is exposed, and when used even for this purpose it requires to be often renewed, as it is soon dissolved by the saliva.

Silver. This article is more easily oxydized by the septic (nitrous) acid of the mouth than tin, and, therefore, in consequence of its greater destructibility, is more objectionable than the last named metal. Besides, it is much harder and more difficult to consolidate.

The alloy of bismuth, tin, and lead, or D'Arcet's metal, as it is sometimes called, is used in a state of fusion. It was never, however, very popular, as the temperature required to fuse it being that of boiling water, excited inflammation in the tooth and its membranes. It was also found, that upon cooling, it shrunk, and admitted the fluids of the mouth between it and the walls of the cavity of the tooth. Its use, therefore, has been discontinued.

Amalgam, better known by the name of *mineral cement*, or *lithodeon*, is decidedly the most pernicious material that has ever been employed for filling teeth. It not only readily oxydizes in the mouth, turning the teeth black, and hastening rather than preventing their destruction, but it also, when used in any considerable quantity, is apt to exert a deleterious effect upon the alveolo-dental membranes, gums, and other parts of the mouth.

In the first edition of this part of his work, the author expressed his disapprobation of the employment of this article, and since that time he has had abundant opportunity of observing its effects, and has been fully confirmed in the unfavorable opinion which he then advanced with regard to it. Several decided cases of salivation, occasioned by the use of amalgam, have fallen under his own observation.

Some have endeavored to obviate the objections that exist to its use, by employing silver perfectly pure; but it matters not how pure this metal may be, the amalgam is equally deleterious in its effects. Nor would it be any better if pure gold were substituted for silver. It is the mercury that does the mischief—consequently, it does not matter how pure, or what the other metal may be with which it is combined.

Platina, from its capability of resisting the action of the acids of the mouth, would, if it were sufficiently malleable, be unobjectionable, but when in a pure state, it is too hard to admit of being properly packed into the cavity of a tooth. A perfect filling, therefore, cannot, without great difficulty, be made with it. For this reason it is seldom used.

Gold. To the use of this metal, when properly prepared, there is no objection. It is the only one, in the opinion of the author, which should ever be employed for filling teeth. No better material is wanted for this operation. A tooth, in almost every case, may be so filled with it as to secure its permanent preservation. It should, however, be perfectly pure, be beat into thin leaves, and well annealed before it is used. When prepared in this manner, it may be pressed into all the inequalities of the cavity, and rendered so firm and solid as to make it impermeable to the fluids of the mouth.*

Although there may be no difference in the purity of the gold, and the thickness of the leaves, yet, a marked and great difference will be found to exist in the malleability and toughness of the foil of different beaters. The art of preparing gold for filling teeth is an exceedingly nice and difficult one, and it is believed has attained greater perfection in the United States than in any other country; or, at any rate, this fact is so generally

*It would seem from what Fauchard says upon the subject, (*Le Chirurgien Dentiste*, tome 2, pp. 68 to 70,) that this metal, to some extent at least, has been used for filling teeth for a long time. Although, he gives the preference to tin and lead, on account of the greater malleability of these metals, he speaks of gold as being used by other dentists. But the operation of filling teeth, at the time this work was written, was very imperfectly understood, and the gold then employed for this purpose must have been so badly prepared as to render its use exceedingly difficult.

admitted, that many of the most eminent European practitioners, procure most if not all they use, from Mr. Charles Abbey of Philadelphia, the oldest manufacturer in America. There are, however, many other gold beaters in the United States who manufacture gold foil of a very good quality.

The thickness of the leaves is determined by the number of grains which each contains, and is designated by numbers on the books, between the leaves of which they are placed, after having been properly annealed. These vary from 4 to 20. For example, a book containing a quarter of an ounce of No. 4, will have thirty leaves in it. The weight of the leaves, generally, vary two grains, so that the numbers run, 4, 6, 8, 10, and so on up to 20. Some dentists, in their practice, use foil varying in Nos. from 4 up to 20, while others confine themselves to a single No. If but one No. be used, 4 will, perhaps, be found to be better than any other. The author has used Nos. 4, 6, 8, 10, and 15, but he prefers the first, and is decidedly of the opinion that in a large majority of the cases, a better filling can be made with it than any of the others. There may be cases in which higher Nos. can be more advantageously employed.

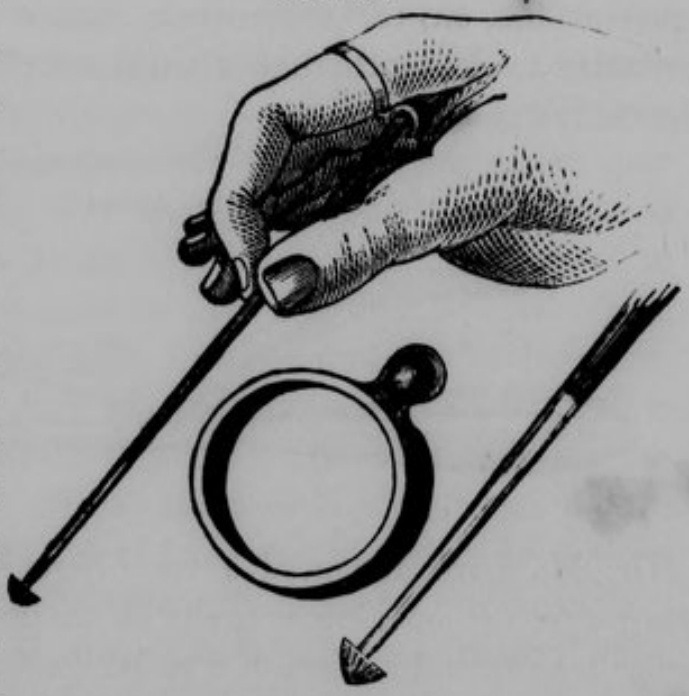
Sponge and crystallized gold have recently been employed by a few practitioners for filling teeth, and although the wishes of the profession thus far have not been fully realized by these preparations, the experiments which have been made with them warrant the belief that the last, at least, may be so much improved, as to render it an exceedingly valuable acquisition to this department of dental practice. The author has already used it in a number of cases with the most gratifying results.

INSTRUMENTS FOR FORMING THE CAVITY.

For the removal of the diseased part of a tooth, and the formation of a cavity for the proper reception and retention of a filling, a variety of instruments are required, which should be constructed from the best steel, and so tempered as to prevent them from either breaking or bending. Their points should be so shaped, that they may be conveniently applied to any part of a tooth, and made to act readily upon the portion which it may be necessary to remove.

The instruments employed for this purpose are called excavators. They may be formed either with, or fitted to, separate handles, or be made to fit into one common handle, provided with a socket for the purpose. Those having separate handles are rather more convenient than the others, but it would be well for every practitioner to be provided with a number of both kinds.

Fig. 65.



The flat and burr-headed drills are very useful for enlarging the opening into a cavity. When these are formed, each with a handle, the pressure of the instrument against the hand, between the thumb and fore-finger, is often productive of much irritation. To prevent which, Dr. A. Westcott has invented a very ingenious and useful contrivance to act as a support to it. It consists of a ring to be worn on the fore or middle finger, to the inside of which is attached a small socket, which is represented, together with the manner of using it, in Fig. 65.

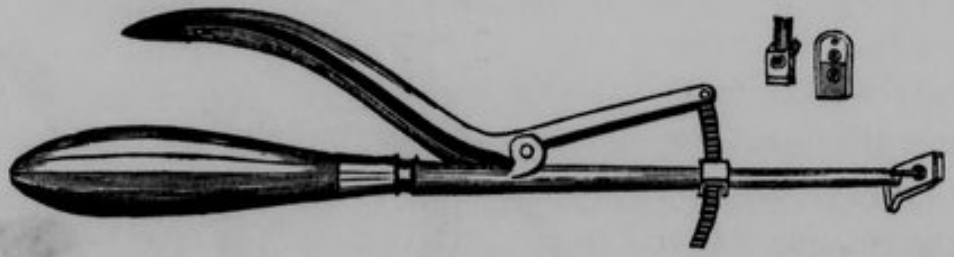
Fig. 66.



The author uses an open ring like the one represented in Fig. 66, with a bar attached to it, of a little more than an inch in length, with a socket at the extremity which rests in the hollow of the hand, between the thumb and fore-finger. This he finds much more convenient as it enables him to apply more pressure upon the instrument without irritating the finger, and as the ring is open, it adapts itself more readily to the finger.

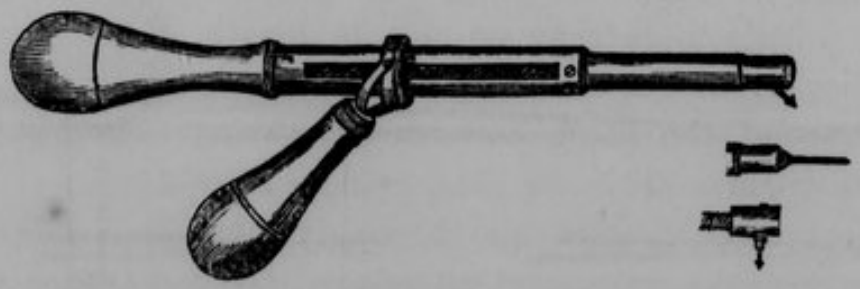
A socket-handle, however, will be found very useful, and when used, it should have a spring attached to it for the more perfect retention of the instrument. Some handles have only a simple socket for the reception of a burr-drill, but the one with a spring is preferable. A socket-handle may not only be used for holding drills, but it also answers for every description of excavator. The drill is also used in a stock, turned with a string and bow. This method of using it is objected to by some practitioners, on the supposition, that it is productive of more irritation to the tooth, than when the drill is moved simply with the thumb and fore-finger.

Fig. 67.



Dr. Maynard invented a very ingenious drill-stock, a few years ago, for opening a cavity in the grinding, buccal or posterior approximal surface of a molar tooth. It is so constructed as to move a drill, pointing in three different directions, but, as in the case of the drill-stock used with a bow, it requires both hands to work it. To obviate which difficulty, it has been improved, so that it may be used with one hand. This drill-stock, as thus improved, is represented in Fig. 67.

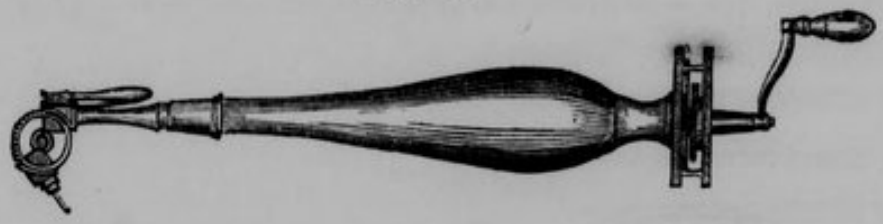
Fig. 68.



The author, some years ago, had sent to him two very ingeniously contrived dental drill-stocks; the first was from Dr. James

Robinson, of London, but invented by Mr. McDowell, of Lincoln Inn Fields. This instrument, represented in Fig. 68, is upon the principle of the helix lever. A drill-stock is inserted at the end of the screw, moved by means of a female screw attached to the handle of the instrument. As may be seen from the engraving, drills, pointing in three directions, may be worked in it. The other is from Mr. John Lewis, formerly of Burlington, Vt. This is represented in Fig. 69.

Fig. 69.



It is also a most beautiful and admirably contrived instrument. The drill may be moved in it, in any direction from a line with the handle to a parallel with the same.

For opening a cavity in the grinding surface of a tooth, partially covered by projecting portions of the enamel, the rose or burr-headed drill is invaluable, and it can also, very often, be advantageously applied to the side of a tooth. There are many cases, too, where the flat triangular pointed drill can be beneficially employed, as, for example, when it becomes necessary, as it often does, to extend the cavity further into the tooth than the disease has penetrated. A three-sided instrument brought to a point, as also a chisel-edged, and a four-sided one with a cutting edge, may often be very advantageously used in cutting away portions of enamel to enlarge the orifice. These instruments are represented in Figs. 70, 71 and 72. But the

Fig. 70.

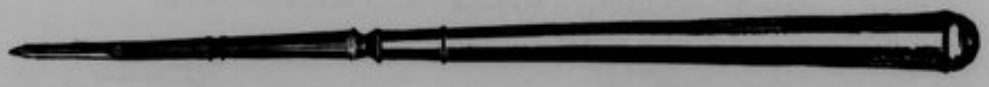


Fig. 71.

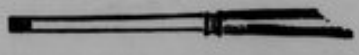


Fig. 72.

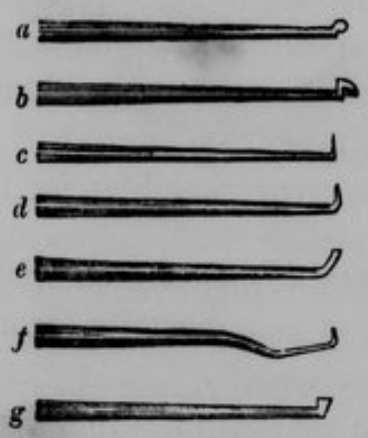


cavity can seldom be completed with either the flat or burr-headed drill, or either of the instruments represented above. After it has

been opened, and the orifice made sufficiently large, it should be finished with flat or curve pointed excavators, properly adapted to the purpose, and with instruments of this sort, it should, in fact, in the majority of cases, be wholly formed.

When, however, the drill is used, it should be frequently dipped in water, to prevent it from becoming heated by the friction which it produces. This precaution should never be neglected.

Fig. 73



Excavators shaped like those represented in Fig. 73, have been found by the author as well adapted for the removal of carious portions of teeth as any which he has ever employed. But every dentist should have several like each of these, and each varying in size from the other.

As the proper formation of the cavity greatly depends on having suitable instruments, every operator should be provided with a large supply of burr-drills and excavators, so that he may never be at a loss for such as may be required by the peculiarity of any case which may present itself. He should, also, be supplied with the means, and, in case of emergency, be able to make them himself. It is important, too, that these instruments should always be sharp, and as they are soon dulled, he should have a good oil-stone at hand, upon which he may, at any moment, sharpen them. The Arkansas oil-stone, on account of its great durability, and fineness and sharpness of grit, is preferable to any other.

MANNER OF FORMING THE CAVITY.

This is an important part of the operation, and though generally the easiest, is, nevertheless, often attended with some difficulty. The removal of the diseased part of the tooth is not

Fig. 73. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *g*, excavators for the removal of caries in different localities in teeth.

always all that is necessary to do, preparatory to the introduction of the gold. The cavity must be so shaped, as when properly filled, to prevent the liability of the filling from coming out. The part of the tooth, too, surrounding the orifice, should present no rough or brittle edges or points. The bottom of the cavity should be as nearly of the size of the orifice as it is possible to make it, and it would be better to have it even a little larger than smaller. But the difference between the size of the one and the other should never be very great; for if the interior of the cavity is much larger than the orifice, it will be difficult to make the filling sufficiently firm and solid to render it impermeable to the fluids of the mouth; and if, on the other hand, the orifice is larger than the bottom of the cavity, there will be danger of not being able to obtain sufficient stability for the filling to prevent it from ultimately loosening and falling out. It often happens, however, that the situation and extent of the decay is such, as to render it impossible to make the cavity as large at the bottom as at the orifice, and when this is the case, several circular grooves or pits should be cut on its inner walls for the purpose of obtaining as much security for the filling as possible. By properly attending to this precaution, a filling may be so inserted as to prevent it from coming out.

As a general rule it is much easier to form a cavity in the grinding surface of a molar or bicuspid, than in any other tooth or part of a tooth, though it sometimes happens, that even here, it is attended with difficulty, and especially when the decay, commencing in the centre, follows the several depressions which run out from it. In cases of this sort, the edges bordering on and covering the diseased part, and which are often thick and very hard, should be cut away so as completely to expose it and form an opening as large as the cavity will be in the interior after it has been removed.

Before a cavity can be prepared in the approximal surface of a tooth, it is generally necessary to separate the organ to be operated on from the adjoining tooth. This may be done either with a file, or by pressure operating from between the teeth in opposite directions. Each of these methods has its preference. When caries has extended over nearly the whole of the ap-

proximal surface of a tooth, so that after the removal of the diseased part the orifice of the cavity will be surrounded by a thin, brittle and irregular wall, and in individuals in whom there is a decided scorbutic tendency, or who have suffered from the use of mercurial medicines or syphilitic disease, and in aged persons, the former is the best and only method that should be resorted to. But when the caries has spread over only a small portion of the surface of the tooth, and is surrounded by sound and healthy enamel, the latter, in individuals in whom there is no manifest tendency to inflammation or sponginess of the gums, and especially in young subjects, is the preferable method. The manner of separating teeth with a file, has been already described; therefore, it will only be necessary, in this place, to offer a few remarks on the method of separating by pressure, which was first recommended, and, we believe, practiced by Dr. Eleazar Parmly, of New York.

The following are the advantages of the latter over the former method, where it can be resorted to with safety; namely, after the removal of the pressure, the teeth almost immediately come together, leaving no aperture to injure their beauty; and, what is of still greater importance, the dentine around the external surface of the filling is not exposed to the action of the secretions of the mouth, or other agents capable of exerting upon it a deleterious effect. On the other hand, some are of opinion, that by the approximation of the teeth, a lodgment is afforded to corrosive agents, upon the presence of which the disease was, in the first instance, produced, and which will, of necessity, soon cause a recurrence of it. In replying to this objection, it is only necessary to observe, that the parts of the teeth first attacked by caries, were the points in contact with each other, where the enamel may be supposed to have sustained some injury by pressure and friction, thus rendering them more vulnerable to the action of the causes that produced the disease. By properly replacing the diseased parts with gold, the external surfaces of the fillings will be the only parts that come in contact with each other in such a way as to render them liable to injury from the above mentioned mechanical causes; and the enamel around them, if proper attention to cleanliness be observed, is

not so liable to be acted on by chemical agents as the dentinal parts of the organs.

But, as has been already stated, teeth cannot always be separated by pressure with impunity; it can only be done with safety in certain cases. As a general rule, the writer is of the opinion that it ought not to be attempted after the twenty-fifth or thirtieth year of age, though it doubtless may sometimes be done with safety at a later period. The diseased action, excited for the time being, in the sockets of the teeth, does not so readily subside, at a later age, and it has, in some instances, been known to result in the loosening and ultimate loss of the organs. Much judgment, therefore, is often necessary in determining the propriety or impropriety of separating teeth in this manner.

The pressure should never be too actively exerted; it should be gradual and constant. From four to twelve days are usually required for the separation of two teeth sufficiently for the removal of the caries and the introduction of a filling. After they have been separated in this way, they should be kept apart, without any increase of pressure, until the soreness in their sockets shall have nearly subsided, before any farther steps are taken in the operation. Only two teeth should be separated in the front part of the mouth, and in the same jaw, at the same time.

The pressure for separating two teeth is usually applied by the introduction of a thin wedge of soft wood, a piece of gum elastic, or a little raw cotton, between their crowns, replacing it, every day or two, with a thicker piece. The writer prefers gum elastic to any other substance he has employed for the purpose. But the object may be readily accomplished with other substances.

But whether the teeth be separated with a file or by pressure, the aperture should be sufficiently wide to enable the dentist to operate with ease; otherwise, it will be impossible to remove the caries and fill the teeth in a proper manner.

After every particle of decomposed bone has been removed, the cavity should be thoroughly cleansed before the filling is introduced. This may be done by first injecting water into it

with a properly constructed syringe, and aftewards wiping it dry with a small lock of raw cotton fixed upon the point of a probe or excavator; or, the cavity may, in the first place, be wiped with a little raw cotton, moistened with water, and afterwards with dry cotton. Some recommend tissue paper for drying the cavity, for the reason that it absorbs moisture more readily than raw cotton. The latter, however, is the most convenient, and is equally as good as the former. It is desirable that the cavity should be dry when the material with which it is to be filled is introduced.

INSTRUMENTS FOR INTRODUCING THE GOLD.

For introducing and consolidating the gold, a number of instruments are required, which should be sufficiently strong to resist any amount of pressure the operator may be capable of putting upon them in the operation. They should have round or octangular handles, large enough to prevent the liability of being broken, and to enable him to grasp them firmly in his hand. Their points should vary in size, though none should be very large. Several should be straight, but for the most part, they require to be curved—some very slightly, others so as to form with the shaft of the instrument an angle of ninety degrees. Most of them should have a slim wedge shape. Some, however, both of the straight and curved instruments, should have blunt points with a crucial groove filed across them, and a few should have highly polished oval points, for finishing the surfaces of the fillings in the grinding and other exposed surfaces of teeth. Most dentists employ for introducing and consolidating the gold, simple blunt-pointed pluggers; but, it is impossible with such instruments to make a filling as firm and solid as it should be for the perfect preservation of the tooth, and especially if the cavity is large. From one-fourth to one-half more gold can be introduced into a tolerably large sized cavity, with a wedge-pointed, than with a blunt-pointed instrument.

The sides of the wedge-pointed pluggers should be left a little rough, for the purpose of preventing them from cutting the gold, and there should be one or two small notches filed across

their edges. When thus prepared, the gold can be more perfectly controlled and more readily conveyed to the bottom of the cavity than with smoother edged instruments. The blunt-pointed instruments, or those used for condensing the extruding extremities of the folds of gold, should, as before stated, have a crucial groove filed across their points.

This general description will serve to convey a tolerably correct idea of the number and sort of instruments required for the operation; but, no two dentists have their plugging instruments precisely alike; each has them constructed in such a way as he thinks will enable him to apply them most easily and efficiently to the various parts of a tooth which may require filling. In the chapter on filling individual cavities in teeth, cuts of most of the instruments employed in the operation will be found.

MANNER OF INTRODUCING AND CONSOLIDATING THE GOLD, AND FINISHING THE SURFACE OF THE FILLING.

The operator, being provided with the necessary instruments, should cut his gold with a pair of scissors, into strips of from half an inch to an inch wide. Each of these should be loosely rolled or folded together lengthwise, and after the cavity has been properly cleansed and dried, one end of one should be introduced and carried to the bottom of the cavity, with a straight or curved wedge-pointed instrument; the roll on the outside should then be folded on the part first inserted. The folding should be commenced on one side of the cavity, and the inner end of each fold should be taken to the bottom, and the outer should extend nearly the eighth of an inch on the outside of the orifice, and thus fold after fold should be introduced, until the cavity is tolerably well filled. Having proceeded thus far with the operation, a wedge-pointed plugger should be forced through the centre of the filling, and the gold firmly pressed out with it against the walls of the cavity. The opening thus made should then be filled in the manner as first described, and this time it should be packed in as tightly as possible. This done, the operator should endeavor to force in a small wedge-pointed instrument, at the side or some other part of the cavity;

and thus he should proceed, until he has tried every part of the plug; filling, as he proceeds, every opening which he shall have made, and exerting, in the packing of the gold, all the pressure which he can put on, without endangering the tooth. If one roll or fold of gold is not enough, he should take another and another, until every part of the cavity is filled.

The advantage to be derived from introducing the gold in this manner is obvious. By extending the folds from the orifice to the bottom of the cavity, the liability of the gold to crumble and come out, is effectually prevented, and by introducing it with a wedge-pointed instrument, it may be pressed out into all the depressions of the walls of the cavity, and rendered altogether more solid than it could otherwise be made.

After the cavity has been completely filled, every portion of the projecting part of the plug should be thoroughly consolidated, either with a straight or curved small blunt-pointed instrument, as may be most convenient; or if the plug is in the side of a tooth facing another, it may be compressed with the angle of the point of the plugger, making the adjoining organ a kind of fulcrum for the instrument. After the filling has been thus consolidated, as long as it can be made to yield in the least to the pressure of the instrument, the protruding part should be scraped or cut, if in the grinding face, and filed, if in the side, down to the tooth so as to form a smooth, uniform, gently swelling or perfectly flat surface. If in this part of the operation any portion of the gold should crumble or be dislodged, but which it will not do if it has been properly introduced and consolidated, the injury should be repaired by making in the part of the plug, where it has occurred, an opening, and filling it, or by the removal of the whole of the first, and the introduction of a new filling. Every part of the surface of the filling should be uniform and free from the slightest indentations which might afford a lodgment to clammy mucus or extraneous matter of any sort. This is a point which should never be lost sight of, for, however excellent the filling may be in other respects, if the surface is not smooth, uniform, and flush with the orifice surrounding the walls of the tooth, the object intended to be accomplished by it, may be partially, if not wholly de-

feated. If any portions of the gold have been forced over the edge of the orifice of the cavity, they should be carefully and accurately trimmed off. This is a precaution which should never be overlooked, and it should be more especially attended to, when the filling is in the approximal surface of a tooth where a portion of the gold is very liable to be forced up or down upon the neck of the tooth, as it may happen to be in the upper or lower jaw, and for the removal of any overlapping portion here, a thin pointed cutting instrument will be necessary.

After having prepared the surface of the filling in the manner as here described, it should be rubbed with finely powdered pumice-stone, or, with what is by far and incomparably better, a small piece of Arkansas oil-stone, until all the file scratches or other asperities shall be removed. If the filling is in the grinding, buccal or inner surface of a molar or bicuspid, a long piece of the stone, having a small triangular and slightly oval point, may be used, or, if powdered pumice-stone be employed, it may be used on the point of a similarly shaped piece of wood, previously moistened in water. For a filling in the approximal surface of a tooth, the oil-stone should be shaped like the pinion file of a clock, and in either case it should be frequently dipped in water, and when its pores become filled with gold, the surface may be ground off by rubbing it on another piece of the same kind of stone, or if pumice is used, it may be applied with floss silk, moistened with water, by drawing it backwards and forwards across the surface of the filling.

The surface of the filling, after all the asperities have been thus ground off, should be washed until every particle of the pumice-stone or grit which may have been left upon it is removed. Every portion of it should then be polished with a suitable burnisher, which should, from time to time, be dipped in water, having a small quantity of the purest castile soap dissolved in it, until it is rendered as brilliant as a mirror. This done, it should again be washed, and the operation completed by rubbing it from three to six minutes with dry floss silk.

When the caries has penetrated nearly to the pulp-cavity, the presence of a gold or any other metallic filling, is sometimes productive of considerable pain and irritation, and es-

pecially when hot or cold fluids are taken into the mouth, or during inspiration when the atmosphere is cold. In some cases, inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp supervenes. To prevent these disagreeable effects, a variety of means have been proposed. Dr. Solyman Brown recommends placing asbestos—this being a non-conductor of caloric—on the bottom of the cavity, previously to the introduction of the gold. Others have recommended placing a thin piece of cork, and others, again, oiled silk, between the filling and the bottom of the cavity. The author prefers a thin layer of *gutta percha.* This is less destructible than either of the two last named articles, and can be more conveniently and more perfectly applied than the first. It may be used in the form of a thick solution, prepared with chloroform, or a layer of thin gutta percha cloth may be placed at once in the bottom of the cavity. When the solution is used, a drop may be placed in the cavity, and a sufficient time allowed for the chloroform to evaporate, before introducing the filling. A thin layer of "Hill's stopping," of which gutta percha forms the principal ingredient, may be used with equal advantage.

The time required to fill a tooth well, by an expert operator, may be said to vary from thirty minutes to two hours and a half, according as the cavity is large or small, or favorably or unfavorably situated, and in some cases a much longer time will be required. The author has found it necessary in filling some cavities, to bestow as many as six hours constant labor upon the operation. Much less time and skill are generally required to fill a cavity in the grinding than in the approximal surface of a tooth, and the operation in either place to be beneficial to the patient, must be well performed, and the dentist who does not feel the importance of executing it in a proper manner, should never be entrusted with the management of the disease of these important organs.

In every part of the operation, the dentist should so guard his instruments as to prevent them from slipping, and he will be better able to do this by standing a little to the right and behind his patient than in any other position. In filling the lower teeth he should stand several inches higher than while filling

the upper, and to enable him to do this, he should be provided with a stool to be used whenever he may find it necessary to occupy a more elevated position. When it can be done, he should grasp the tooth he is filling with the thumb and fore-finger of his left hand, so as not only to steady it, but also to catch the point of the instrument in case it should slip; but if he is always careful to press in a direction towards the cavity, this need never happen, but, against which accident, he should, nevertheless, always be guarded. When he cannot shield the mouth with the thumb and finger of his left hand as described, he should let the thumb or one of the fingers of his right hand rest either upon the tooth he is operating on, or upon some other.

For the manner of filling individual cavities in teeth, the reader is referred to the next chapter.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

FILLING INDIVIDUAL CAVITIES IN TEETH.

To describe the method of procedure for filling each individual cavity in every locality in which a tooth is liable to be attacked by caries, would be both tedious and difficult. But, as this is one of the most important, and, at the same time, one of the most difficult operations in dental surgery, it may be well to enter a little more into detail upon the subject, than we have as yet done. But in doing this, the writer will confine himself, for the most part, to the manner of filling a cavity in each of the following localities, which are the parts of teeth most liable to become the seat of caries.

First.—In the approximal and labial surfaces of the superior incisors and cuspidati, and palatine surfaces of the former of the above mentioned classes of teeth—the latter are rarely attacked by caries on their posterior surface.

Second.—In the grinding, approximal, buccal and palatine surfaces of the molars and bicuspids of the upper jaw.

Third.—In the approximal surfaces of the inferior incisors and cuspidati.

Fourth.—In the grinding, approximal, and buccal surfaces of the molars and bicuspids of the lower jaw.

Other parts of the teeth sometimes become the seat of caries, but the foregoing are the localities most liable to be attacked by the disease.

FILLING THE SUPERIOR INCISORS AND CUSPIDATI.

In describing the manner of introducing a filling in one of the first named teeth, we shall commence with the right approximal surface of the left central incisor. The directions which we propose giving for the performance of the operation here,

will be applicable to the same surface, with a few exceptions, of all the upper incisors. As a general rule the gold should be introduced from behind the teeth forwards and upwards, and for the following reasons: 1. When the aperture between the teeth has been formed with a file, it should, when the circumstances of the case will permit, and for reasons stated in another place, be made wider behind than before, consequently, the diseased part can be most easily approached from this direction. 2. The gold in the majority of cases can be more conveniently introduced from this direction, and the force required for condensing it can be more advantageously applied.

The exceptions to the above mentioned rule, are, when the approximal side of the tooth is turned slightly forwards towards the lip, and when the caries is situated nearer the labial than the palatine surface; also, when the teeth, instead of occupying a vertical position in the alveolar border, or projecting slightly as they usually do, incline considerably backwards towards the roof of the mouth. It sometimes happens, too, when they are separated by pressure, that the diseased part can be most conveniently reached from before.

The instrument which the writer has found best adapted for the introduction of the gold in a cavity in the right approximal surface of an incisor or cuspid tooth, is represented in Fig. 74. The width and length, as well as the curvature or angle of the point, should vary according to the size of the cavity and the width of the aperture between the teeth.

Fig. 74.



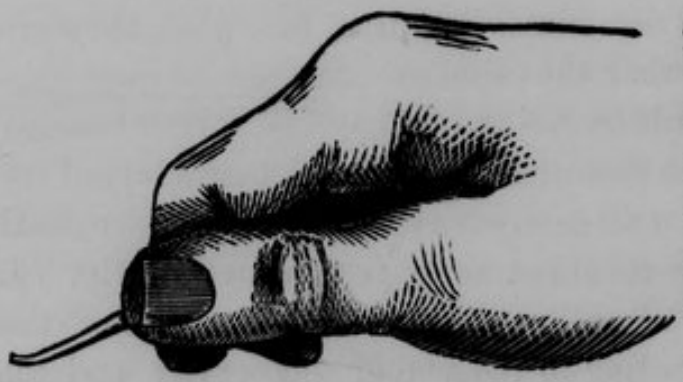
The stem of the instrument as well as the shank should be strong enough to sustain any amount of pressure which it may be necessary to apply in forcing the folds of gold tightly against each other. The point should be wedge-shaped.

The decayed part of the tooth having been removed, and the cavity properly shaped, cleansed and dried, is ready for the reception of the gold.

The patient should be seated in a chair sufficiently high to bring his head on a level with the breast of the operator, and recline on the head piece of the chair with the face upwards. The patient being thus seated, the operator standing upon the right side, should support his head firmly with his left arm during the operation, while with the thumb and fore-finger of the hand of the same, the strip or roll of gold is held, and one end placed in a proper position for being introduced into the cavity of the tooth. The middle finger of the same hand, should, at the same time, rest on the end of a tooth to the left of the one on which the operation is being performed, while with the little finger the lower lip may be gently depressed.

During the introduction of the gold, the instrument (see Fig. 74) should be held in the right hand of the operator in the manner as represented in Fig. 75, but grasped with sufficient firmness to prevent it from slipping or rotating.

Fig. 75.



In introducing the gold, the first fold should be applied against the upper wall of the cavity, so that the pressure in a direction towards may be always exerted the extremity of the root, applying each additional fold as closely to the preceding one as it can possibly be forced. The folds should, also, in their introduction, be applied as closely to the labial and palatine walls of the cavity as possible, but always directing the pressure, when these are thin and brittle, in a direction towards the axis of the root.

When the lower part of the orifice of the cavity is very narrow, as is often the case, especially when it extends nearly to the cutting edge of the tooth, it is often necessary to change the instrument for one having a smaller point.

To carry a fold of gold upon the point of an instrument, without breaking or cutting it, to the bottom of a cavity in a tooth, requires considerable tact. The point should never be carried directly towards the bottom of the cavity. On entering

the orifice, it should be directed towards the wall of the cavity opposite to the one against which the folds are first laid. Equally as much tact, too, is required to prevent displacing the gold before a sufficient quantity has been introduced to procure support for it from the walls of the cavity. This last is an accident particularly liable to occur with young practitioners, when the cavity is superficial and has a large orifice. To prevent which, the folds of gold should be long enough to project a considerable distance from the orifice, so that they may receive some support from the adjoining tooth, and the thumb and forefinger of the left hand of the operator. In this way the gold may be prevented from being moved or displaced, until the operation has arrived to that stage when sufficient support and stability shall have been obtained for it from the walls of the cavity.

There are some cases in which an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 76, can be very advantageously employed in the introduction of the gold; but, in the majority of cases, the instrument represented in Fig. 74 will be found more convenient and efficient than this.

Fig. 76.



After having filled the cavity so thoroughly that a small wedge-pointed instrument cannot be made to penetrate the gold at any point, the extruding portions of the filling should be condensed, beginning with the overlapping portions upon the lower part of the tooth and edge of the posterior wall. These should be carefully and firmly pressed in the direction of the orifice of the cavity, with an instrument like the one represented below. This done, it should be firmly applied to every part of the surface of the filling, repeating the pressure as long as the point of the instrument can be made to indent the gold.

Fig. 77.



When the space between the two teeth is too narrow to admit the application of an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 77, one having a differently shaped point should be used. See Fig. 78. The operator should be provided with two or three instruments like each of the two last, varying both in

Fig 78



the size, length and curvature of their points. Sometimes, he will be able to use one with greater efficiency than another.

During the process of condensing the gold, the tooth should be firmly grasped between the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand of the operator, to prevent it from being pushed too forcibly against the opposite side of the socket, while, at the same time, the end of the fore-finger, by being placed above the instrument, assists in directing the application of its point, and serves to prevent it from slipping.

When the labial and palatine walls of the cavity are very thin, great care is necessary in introducing and condensing the gold, to prevent fracturing them. The condensing should be commenced around the edges, and the pressure applied in a direction towards the centre of the cavity.

It sometimes happens that the caries extends forwards to the labial and approximal angle of the tooth, extending upwards, at the same time, above the termination of the apex of the gum. Great difficulty is often experienced, in cases of this sort, in thoroughly filling this portion of the cavity, and it cannot always be done from behind the tooth. In this case, after having filled the cavity in the manner as already described, the operator should take a position on the left side of the patient, and with an instrument having a wedge-shaped point, bent like the one represented in Fig. 79, make as large an opening as possible in the gold, which he should proceed to fill. In doing this, he should grasp the left lateral incisor or cuspid tooth with his thumb and middle finger of his left hand, elevating the upper lip with the fore-finger of the same; then, with the instrument held in his right hand, in the manner as represented in Fig. 80, he should proceed to introduce the gold, filling the upper part of the opening first. After introducing fold after fold, until it is completely and compactly filled, the extruding portion should be condensed with a similar shaped instrument, having a round point, crossed by a crucial groove—or an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 78.

Fig. 79.



The size of the roll of gold should be varied to suit the size of the cavity, though it should seldom have in it more than a

Fig. 80.



fourth of a leaf of No. 4. If more than this be employed at one time, it will be difficult to apply them sufficiently near together.

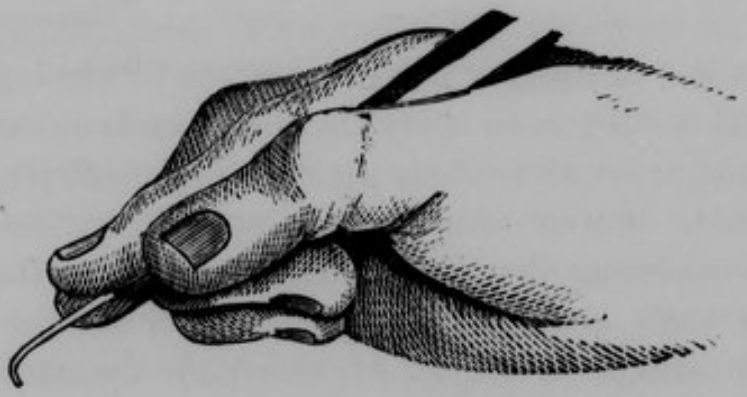
When the teeth have been separated by pressure, or when the aperture is as wide anteriorly as posteriorly, the gold may be introduced from either side as may best suit the convenience of the operator; but, when introduced from before, it should be done in the manner as just described, the operator standing on the left side of his patient, and using such instrument as he may find best adapted for its introduction. Sometimes the one represented in Fig. 74, will be found best suited to the purpose; at other times, the one represented in Fig. 79 can be most advantageously employed.

The gold having been introduced and condensed, the surface of the filling should be finished in the manner as already described.

In describing the manner of filling the right central incisor in the left approximal surface, it will not be necessary, as the method of procedure is so very similar to that of filling the left in the right side, to enter so minutely into detail. In this as in the other case, the gold, as a general rule, should be introduced from behind the tooth, forwards and upwards. But no matter from which side the gold is introduced, the operator should stand on the right side of the patient. The head of the latter, too, should have the same elevation, and the same inclination backwards, but the face should be turned more towards the operator to give him a better view of the cavity in the tooth, and to enable him to reach it more readily with the instruments.

The patient being seated, the cavity formed, cleansed, and dried, the operator may proceed to introduce the gold in the manner as already described. This he may do with an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 74. In many cases, however, he will require one having a rather longer point, and curved so as to form nearly a right angle with the stem. But, whatever be the length and curvature of the point of the instrument, it should be held somewhat differently in the hand, (see Fig. 81,) and grasped so firmly with the thumb, and fore and middle finger,

Fig. 81.



as to prevent it from rotating. The head should be securely confined with the left arm, the upper lip elevated with the thumb of the hand of the same, which should at the same time be firmly pressed against the anterior surface of the tooth. The middle or fore-finger, as may best suit the convenience of the operator, of the same hand, should be placed on the gum of the palatine surface, to direct the application of the point of the instrument, prevent the liability of its slipping, and control the free end of the roll of foil. The lower lip may be depressed either with the middle joint of this, or with any of the other fingers.

After having placed one end of the roll of foil in the cavity, fold after fold should be introduced, as before directed, until it is compactly filled, except in those cases where the lower part is very small, when, after having filled all but this portion, a smaller pointed instrument should be employed for the completion of the operation, and, indeed, for the introduction of the

whole of the gold, when the cavity is very small or the aperture between the teeth very narrow.

For condensing the extruding gold, the instrument represented in Fig. 77, will, in many cases, be all that is required. But in addition to this, others are often needed. The one represented in Fig. 82, can sometimes be used very advantageously. The one in Fig. 83, may often be efficiently employed in some parts of the operation of condensing a filling in the right, as well as in the left approximal surface of an incisor, or cuspid tooth.

Fig. 82.



Fig. 83.



Both of the last mentioned instruments may often be used to great advantage on the approximal surfaces of other teeth.

The gold having been properly introduced and condensed, the remaining part of the operation should be completed as before directed. But in doing this, it may be well to observe, that while it is important that every particle of gold overlapping the side of the tooth, and frequently extending under the free edge of the gum, should be removed in finishing the surface of the filling. The operator should, at the same time, avoid as much as possible, wounding the point of the gum and dental periosteum.

As the cavity in the tooth frequently extends not only to the gum, but sometimes a little above it, great care is necessary to prevent wounding it, and indeed there are many cases, in which it cannot be avoided, unless the dentist uses the precaution to press the point of it up between the teeth, by the introduction of a piece of raw cotton, or gum elastic, a day or two before the operation of filling is performed.

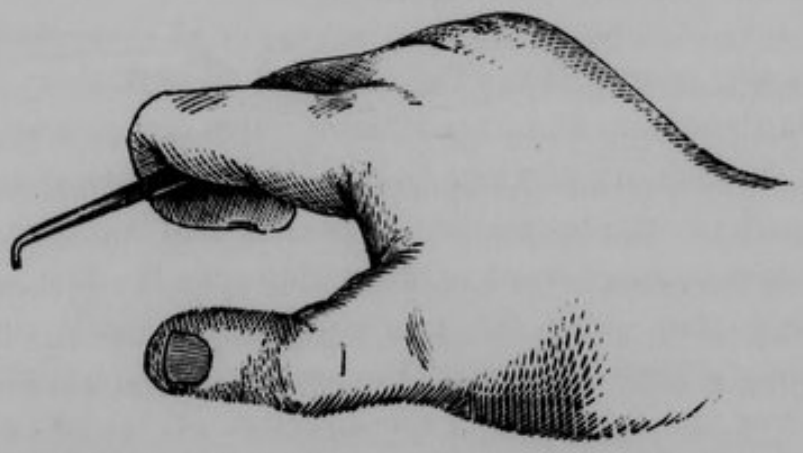
In filling an incisor, or cuspid tooth in its labial surface, the operation is often very simple, and easy of performance, but there are many cases, in which it is both difficult and tedious. The head of the patient should rest upon the head-piece of the chair, with his face looking upward in the same way as when having one of the same teeth filled in the approximal surface, and sustained in like manner by the left arm of the operator, while with the thumb of the hand of the same placed on the gum above the tooth, the upper lip should be elevated.

The fore-finger should be pressed firmly against the palatine surface of the tooth, and the left side of the chin gently grasped with the middle, annular and little fingers. Then with an instrument, like the one represented in Fig. 84, and having a wedge-shaped point, grasped with the right hand in the manner as seen in Fig. 81, or 85, as may be most convenient, the operator may proceed to introduce the gold, standing at the right side of the patient, with the thumb of the right hand resting on a tooth to the left

Fig. 84.



Fig. 85.



of the one he is about to fill, or against the check, he should commence by laying the first folds against the wall of the cavity nearest to him, and thus introduce fold after fold, until it is thoroughly and compactly filled. The extruding portion may be condensed with a round or square pointed instrument having the same bend, or with a straight pointed one as represented in Fig. 86. But in this part of the operation, great care is necessary to prevent the instrument from slipping and wounding the gums. After having partially consolidated the gold, the overlapping portions around the orifice of the cavity should be firmly pressed towards it, then the point of the instrument should be repeatedly applied to every part of the surface of the filling, until it can no longer be made to yield to pressure. This done, the gold may be filed down to a level with the surface of the tooth, ground with Arkansas oil-stone, and burnished or polished.

Fig. 86.



When the cavity is shallow and the orifice broad, the gold should be prevented from moving or being displaced, with the thumb of the left hand, until a sufficient quantity has been introduced to obtain for it the necessary support from the surrounding walls. But in overcoming difficulties of this sort, the peculiar circumstances of the case can alone suggest the proper means.

The decay sometimes extends entirely across the labial surface of the tooth, leaving after its removal a horizontal groove open at both ends. In this case, the walls should be made rough, or wider at the bottom than at the opening, and the operation of filling commenced at one end, by applying the folds of foil, first, against either the upper or lower wall, as may best suit the convenience of the operator, and carrying them across to the other, and introducing them so compactly as to prevent the liability of their being displaced during any subsequent part of the operation. Another and another series of folds should be introduced in the manner as the first, and each in close contact with the preceding series, until the groove is completely filled, applying the pressure during the whole of this part of the operation in the direction of the two walls. In condensing the extruding gold, the operator should commence, first at one end of the groove, then at the other, and afterwards proceed with the process of consolidating over the whole surface of the filling.

In finishing the operation, the same precaution, with regard to wounding the gums and dental periosteum, should be observed here as recommended for the approximal surface of the tooth.

Although it rarely happens that the palatine surfaces of the upper incisors are attacked by caries, yet the disease does sometimes develop itself there, in the indentations occasionally found a little below the free edge of the gum. But the removal of the diseased part, the formation of a cavity, and the introduction of a filling, can, in the majority of cases, be more easily accomplished in this, than in any other part of an incisor tooth.

The cavity being properly prepared for the reception of the filling, and the head placed as before directed, except that the chin should be a little more elevated, to enable the operator to

obtain a more convenient view of the locality of his operation, the thumb of the left hand should be placed on the labial surface of the tooth, and the fore-finger on the gum immediately above the palatine surface. He may now, with a wedge-pointed instrument, shaped like the one represented in Fig. 87, proceed to introduce the gold, applying the first fold against the palatine wall of the cavity, or the palato-approximal angle of the wall, as may be most convenient. Having filled the cavity, the extruding gold may be condensed with an instrument like the one represented in the annexed cut. See Fig. 88.

Fig. 87.



Fig. 88.



Sometimes straight instruments, and at other times instruments curved at the points more than those represented in Figs. 87 and 88, can be more efficiently and conveniently employed, depending altogether upon the size of the mouth and the forward or backward deviation of the teeth from a vertical arrangement in the jaw. This is a matter, therefore, which the judgment of the operator, in view of the peculiarities of the case, can alone determine.

FILLING THE SUPERIOR MOLARS AND BICUSPIDS.

In describing the manner of filling a cavity in each of the principal localities liable to be attacked by caries, in the above mentioned teeth, the writer will begin with the grinding surface of the first molar on the right side. The directions which he will give with regard to the manner of filling a cavity here with a few exceptions, will be applicable to the introduction of a filling, in the grinding surface of any of the upper molars or bicuspids.

When the cavity is very deep, and its circumference not very large, it is difficult, if not impossible, to introduce a filling that shall be sufficiently firm and solid in every part by the introduction of folds of gold long enough to extend from the bottom to the orifice. The operation, therefore, should be divided into two parts; namely, the upper half or two-thirds of the cavity

should be first thoroughly filled, and afterwards the remaining lower part, with vertical folds.

In filling a molar or bicuspid in any of its surfaces, the head of the patient should, for the most part, occupy very nearly the same position, and have the same elevation as is required for the performance of the operation on an incisor or cuspidatus. The cavity being prepared for the filling, and one end of the roll of foil placed in it, the tooth should be grasped with the thumb, and fore-finger of the left hand of the operator—the former placed on the buccal surface in such a manner as to press back the commissure of the lips, and the latter on the palatine surface, then fold after fold should be introduced and forcibly pressed against the posterior wall until the cavity is filled. For this purpose an instrument may be used like the one represented in Figs. 84, or 86, as may best suit the convenience of the operator. If the former is used it should be grasped as shown in Fig. 81. After which the extruding portions should be condensed with a straight instrument like the one represented in Fig. 86.

As a general rule, the filling of a cavity in the grinding surface of an upper molar or bicuspid tooth is an exceedingly simple operation, requiring less skill than the introduction of a plug in any other locality in these teeth, but there are cases in which it is rendered very difficult; as, for example, when there are one or more fissures or carious depressions radiating from the main cavity. To fill these thoroughly, after the diseased parts have been removed, which last is often a very tedious operation, requires considerable time and skill. When it is not properly done, as is too often the case, a recurrence of the disease will soon take place, and thus defeat the object for which the operation is performed.

Fig. 89.



The introduction of a filling in the grinding surface of the second or third molar of a person having a very small mouth, is often attended with great difficulty, and, in some cases, can only be done with an instrument having a point bent at nearly right angles with the stem, like the one represented in Fig. 89,

consequently the power required for introducing and condensing the gold is applied to great disadvantage.

In filling a cavity in the grinding surface of a first upper molar on the left side of the mouth, the thumb of the left hand should be placed against the left cuspid or first or second bicuspid tooth as may be most convenient to the operator, while the fore-finger is placed behind the point of the instrument, and at the same time made to push back the commissure of the lips. To obtain a good view of the cavity in a second or third molar during the operation, the cheek should be pressed from the tooth with the fore-finger of the left hand, but this finger can seldom be carried far enough back on this side of the mouth to be placed behind the point of the instrument. During the introduction of the gold the annular and little fingers of the right hand should be made to rest on the incisor teeth, while the instrument is grasped with the thumb, middle and fore-finger in the manner as seen in Fig. 81.

In filling a cavity in the anterior approximal surface of a right superior molar or bicuspid, the operation should be commenced by placing the gold against the palatine wall, and ending at the buccal. But before the process of condensing is commenced, every portion of the surface should be thoroughly tested with a wedge-pointed instrument, and wherever the point can be forced into the gold, the cavity thus formed should be filled. The instrument employed for the introduction of the gold should be like the one represented in Fig. 74, but having a rather longer point; and grasped in the manner as represented in Fig. 81. For condensing the extruding portions, either, or both of the instruments represented in Figs. 76, and 82, may be used, as also the one employed for the introduction of the gold; and, one like the following, see Fig. 90, may be sometimes used with great advantage. During this part of the operation the instrument may be held in the manner as last represented, or as seen in Fig. 91. A much greater amount of force can be applied when it is held in this manner than in the other.

Fig. 90.



Fig. 91.



Nearly the same method of procedure, and the same instruments are required for filling a tooth in the same surface on the opposite side of the jaw. When practicable, the fore-finger of the left hand should be placed on the palatine surface of the tooth, and the thumb against the buccal surface, and in addition to the instruments recommended for the right side of the mouth, the one represented in Fig. 76 may be very conveniently employd in introducing the gold, as can also one like Fig. 78, or the following, Fig. 92, in condensing the surface of the filling. The writer finds this last particularly valuable in very many cases.

Fig. 92.



A cavity in the posterior approximal surface of a bicuspid in the superior maxillary of either side of the mouth, can, in the majority of cases, be as easily filled as one in the anterior approximal surface. The position of the left hand is very nearly the same, and in the introduction of the gold, the first folds are placed against the palatine wall of the cavity. By commencing the operation on this side, the operator is enabled to lay the folds much more compactly than he could do, were he to commence at any other part. He also has a more perfect control over the instrument which he employs in this part of the operation, and, besides, it affords him a better view of the cavity during the introduction of the gold. For consolidating the gold, the instruments represented in Figs. 77 and 83, are, perhaps, as well adapted to the purpose as any that can be employed.

When the mouth of the patient is large, a filling can often be introduced with nearly as much ease and convenience, in the posterior approximal surface of a first, or even a second upper molar, as in the same surface of a bicuspid; but when the mouth is small and the cheeks fleshy, it not unfrequently becomes an exceedingly difficult and perplexing operation.

Although the same method of procedure is used, yet, as it is absolutely necessary to the introduction of a good filling, that the operator see the cavity and witness every part of the operation; his ingenuity is often taxed to the utmost, in contriving the most suitable means to enable him to do it. A number of instruments for drawing back the corner of the mouth have been invented; but, after all, the writer believes there are none so well suited to the purpose, as the thumb or fore-finger of the left hand of the operator.

Before dismissing this part of the subject, there is one point to which the attention of the young practitioner should be particularly directed. The part of the operation in which many, in other respects tolerably good operators, are most likely to fail, is, in not introducing a sufficient quantity of gold in the upper palatine portion of the cavity. The author frequently meets with cases in which every other part of the filling is well consolidated, and the walls of the cavity perfectly sound in every other place but this, and which, upon the application of a wedge-pointed instrument is easily perforated. He would, therefore, advise the inexperienced operator to thoroughly test this, by severe pressure with a sharp wedge-pointed instrument, as well, indeed, as every other part of the filling, before leaving the operation. There is also one other precaution that should be attended to, and which applies with as much force to fillings in the approximal surfaces of the incisors and cuspids as to the molars and bicuspids; it relates to overlapping portions of gold on the side of the tooth under the free edge of the gum.

In filling a cavity in the buccal surface of an upper bicuspid or molar, on either side of the mouth, the gold may be introduced with an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 74, or Fig. 84, as may best suit the convenience of the operator. The latter is best adapted for the left side, and may also be used on the right. The straight wedge-pointed instrument, too, may be advantageously employed on this side. In the introduction of the gold, the first folds should be placed against the posterior wall, and thus this part of the operation should proceed from behind forwards, pressing the folds against each other as compactly as possible.

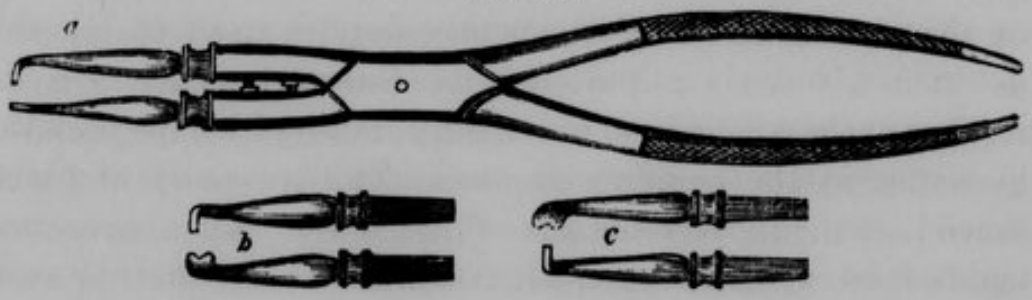
When the cavity has a large orifice, and is rather shallow, or in other respects badly shaped for the retention of the gold, the operation is often tedious, difficult and perplexing. But under favorable circumstances, a filling may be as readily introduced here as in almost any other part.

The palatine surface of a bicuspid is rarely attacked by caries nor does the disease very frequently develop itself on this side of a molar, and when it does, it is generally seated in a depression at the termination of a fissure leading from the posterior depression in the grinding surface. The depression first mentioned is generally situated near the posterior palato-approximal angle of the crown about equidistant from the gum and the coronal extremity of the tooth. It sometimes happens that the walls of these fissures are affected with caries throughout their whole extent, requiring, after the removal of the diseased part, a filling reaching from the depression in the grinding, to its termination on the palatine surface. In this case, the portion of the cavity on the grinding surface should be first filled, then the operator may proceed to fill that portion of it in the palatine surface, in the same way as if it were a simple cavity, placing the first folds of foil against the upper and posterior side of the opening, if it be in a tooth on the right side of the mouth, with an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 84. But in doing this, great care is necessary to prevent the instrument from slipping. It often happens, too, that the orifice becomes choked with foil before the cavity is half filled. This, indeed, is liable to occur in filling any cavity in any tooth, and when it does happen, unless a sufficient amount of pressure is applied to make a free opening into the cavity, the filling will be imperfect, and the object of the operation wholly defeated. When the cavity is situated in a left molar, the gold may be introduced with an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 74, or 87, as may be most convenient to the operator, placing the first folds against the upper wall of the cavity, and proceeding from thence towards the lower.

The curvatures of the points of the condensing instruments should be similar to those employed for the introduction of the gold. The process of condensing the extruding portions of a

filling in the buccal or palatine surface of a molar, as well as in the approximal surface of almost any isolated tooth, may be greatly aided with properly constructed forceps. The following cut will convey a more correct idea of their construction

FIG. 93.



than any description which can be given. They are provided with both straight and curved points, see Fig. 93, *a*, *b*, *c*, and are used by placing the flat jaw, covered with raw cotton or a cushion, against the sound side of the tooth, and the condensing point against the filling, which is made to act on it by pressing the handles towards each other. In this way as much pressure may be exerted upon the filling as the tooth will bear. It is only, however, in the fewest number of cases that this instrument can be advantageously employed. The credit of the invention, it is believed, belongs to the late Dr. H. H. Hayden.

A tubercle, of greater or less size, is sometimes found on the anterior-palatal part of the surface, near the coronal extremity of the tooth. Between this and the body of the crown, a deep depression is often seen, which becomes the seat of caries, but the removal of the diseased part, and the introduction of a filling is so simple, that a special description of the operation is not deemed necessary.

FILLING THE INFERIOR INCISORS AND CUSPIDATI.

The operation of filling a lower incisor or cuspidatus, is, by far, more difficult than filling an upper one. It is fortunate, therefore, both to the dentist and mankind generally, that the incisors and cuspidati of the lower jaw, are less liable to be attacked by caries than those of the upper.

The constant tendency there is in the lower jaw to move and

change its position, is often embarrassing in operating on any of the teeth in it, and on the incisors and cuspidati, it is sometimes peculiarly perplexing. To prevent this, all the effort the operator can exert with his left hand, is frequently required. From the backward inclination, too, of these teeth, it rarely happens that the gold can be introduced from the lingual side of the arch, consequently, it is necessary to make the aperture as wide anteriorly as posteriorly. But as these are, comparatively, very small, the separation when made with a file, should be no wider than is absolutely necessary for the removal of the diseased part and the introduction of the filling. When, however, it can be done with safety, the separation should be affected by the introduction of a piece of gum elastic or other substance between the teeth, in the manner as before described.

But before we proceed further it may be well to remark, that while operating on the teeth of the lower jaw, the head of the patient should occupy a more perpendicular position than while operating on those of the upper, and it may be made to do this, either by lowering the seat or raising the head piece of the chair. When by the latter, it will be occasionally necessary for the operator to stand upon a stool five or six inches in height.

In filling a cavity in the right approximal surface of a lower incisor or cuspidatus, the following method of procedure may be adopted. The cavity being prepared, and a sufficient quantity of gold foil to fill it made into a small roll, or folded lengthwise as the operator may prefer, with the left arm over the patient's head, the chin is gently grasped with the hand of the same, while the thumb is placed against the lingual surface of the tooth—the fore-finger serving to direct the gold and point of the instrument, and to depress the lower lip. The folds of gold in their introduction are pressed firmly against the lower wall of the cavity. The instrument employed for this purpose may be shaped like the one represented in Fig. 94, with a very small wedge-shaped point, and held in the right hand, in the manner as seen in Fig. 81. The consolidation of the extruding gold may be effected, partly with the same

Fig. 94.



instrument, partly with a round pointed one, in other respects shaped like this, (see Fig. 95,) and partly with an instrument shaped like the one represented in Fig. 83. But in this part of the operation the tooth should be firmly held between the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand, to prevent it from being moved in its socket by the pressure of the instrument.

Fig. 95.



When the incisors are very small, and the caries has spread over a large portion of the side of the tooth, it is often difficult to form a suitable cavity for the retention of a filling, without penetrating to the pulp cavity. In cases of this sort, the patience and skill of the operator are frequently taxed severely in obtaining a sufficiently secure support for the gold. But this he can generally do, if he can make the bottom of the cavity as large as the orifice, even though it have but little depth.

The manner of introducing a filling in the left approximal surface, is so very similar, that it is scarcely necessary to give a separate description of the method of doing it. The left arm and hand, as well as the thumb and fore-finger are all disposed of in the manner as just described. The same instruments, too, may be employed for the introduction and consolidation of the gold, though, in the first part of the operation, the instrument represented in Fig. 79, may often be advantageously substituted for the one represented in Fig. 94.

Thus far, nothing has been said with regard to the introduction of a filling in the labial or lingual surface of a tooth of either of the two classes of teeth now under consideration. Although caries rarely attacks either of these surfaces of a lower incisor, it does sometimes develop itself in the labial surface of a cuspidatus, but the operation of introducing a filling here is so simple, that a separate description of the manner of performing it is not deemed necessary.

FILLING THE INFERIOR MOLARS AND BICUSPIDS.

In filling a cavity in the grinding surface of a lower molar or bicuspis on the right side of the mouth, the operator should stand on the same side of his patient, and a few inches higher

than while operating on an incisor or cuspidatus. With his left arm placed over his patient's head, the tooth should be grasped with the thumb and fore-finger of the hand of the same, whilst the middle finger is placed along the side of the chin, the other two should be placed beneath it. The gold may now be introduced with an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 87, and held in the manner as shown in Fig. 81, pressing the folds against the posterior wall of the cavity.

In condensing the gold after the cavity is filled, an instrument may be employed like the one represented in Fig. 88. Sometimes, however, an instrument like the one represented in Fig. 90, which may be held in the manner as shown in Fig. 75; but a greater amount of force can be exerted when held in the manner as represented in Fig. 91, previously wrapped with the corner of a napkin, to prevent the small part of the instrument from hurting the little finger. The kind of instrument, and the manner of holding it, will, after all, have to be determined by the operator. But during the introduction and consolidation of the gold, the lower jaw should be firmly held with the left hand of the operator, to prevent it from moving and from being too much depressed. This precaution is the more necessary, as the muscles of the lower jaw and ligaments of the temporo-maxillary articulation are seldom strong enough to resist the amount of force required in the operation.

In filling a cavity in the grinding surface of a tooth on the left side, the dentist may sometimes operate to greater advantage by standing on the same side. In this case, the commissure of the lips should be pressed back with the thumb of the left hand, which should be placed on or against the tooth to be filled, while the fore-finger should pass in front of the chin, and the other three beneath it. As a general rule, however, he will be able to operate more conveniently by standing on the right side of his patient, and holding the tooth and chin in the manner as before directed. But, in either case, the gold, in its introduction, should be pressed against the posterior wall of the cavity.

The foregoing general directions, will, for the most part, be found applicable to the introduction of a filling in the approximal surfaces of the teeth under consideration. When the

crowns of the teeth are long, and the cavity situated near the gum, the operation is sometimes exceedingly difficult and tedious, requiring all the patience and skill the practitioner can exercise to accomplish it in such a manner as to secure the object for which it is performed. And this difficulty is increased when the shape of the cavity is unfavorable for the retention of the gold; or, in other words, when the cavity is shallow and has a large orifice. There is also another very serious difficulty which the operator frequently encounters in the introduction of a filling in the approximal, as well as in the buccal surface of a lower molar and bicuspid. It is this: the flow of saliva is often so profuse that the whole of the lower part of the mouth is completely filled, and the tooth inundated before it is possible to introduce a sufficient quantity of gold to fill the cavity. This not only retards the operation, but it also renders it altogether more difficult and perplexing, for it is necessary to force out every particle of moisture from the cavity and from between the different layers of gold before the necessary cohesive attraction between them can be secured. If this is not done, or at any rate, if the moisture is not all forced from the cavity, and the gold sufficiently consolidated to render it impermeable to the fluids of the mouth, the operation will be unsuccessful.

For the purpose of obviating the last mentioned difficulty, a variety of means have been proposed, but the one principally relied on, consists in placing the corner of a soft fine linen napkin on each side of the tooth, so as to form a sort of dam or wall around it. This may sometimes be successfully done, but in many cases it will fail to accomplish the object, as it always increases the flow of saliva, and is more or less embarrassing to the operator.

In the introduction of the gold, it should be pressed against the buccal wall of the cavity on the right side, and against the lingual wall on the left side. Either of the instruments represented in Figs. 74 and 84, as may be best adapted to the peculiarities of the case, may be employed for the introduction of the gold, whether the cavity be situated in the anterior or posterior approximal surface of the tooth, and it may be held in the hand in the manner as shown in Fig. 81.

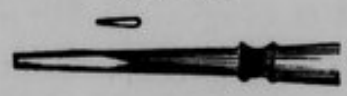
In filling a cavity in the lingual and posterior approximal angle of a first or second left bicuspid, and especially after the loss of the tooth behind it, and there is a backward inclination of the tooth, great care is necessary to prevent the instrument from slipping and wounding the lower lip. The most convenient position for the operator in this case is on the left side and partly in front of the patient. The tooth may then be firmly grasped between the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand, or only the thumb pressed against the buccal surface of it, as the operator may prefer, but in either case it may be used as a rest for the annular finger of the right hand, during the introduction and consolidation of the gold. But the locality of the cavity is such, especially when the mouth of the patient is very small, that it can only be seen with great difficulty. Hence the operator is constantly liable to place the point of the instrument on one side of the orifice against an overlapping portion of gold, which, when pressure is applied, is cut through or detached. The instrument then comes in contact with the hard smooth enamel, and unless the hand is so guarded as to control its motions, it is liable to slip and wound some part of the mouth, especially the lower lip. Indeed, this is an accident, which, unless proper precaution is observed, may occur in filling any tooth.

Among the principal difficulties the dentist has to encounter in filling a cavity in the buccal surface of a lower molar, apart from that which he experiences in keeping the cavity dry until the gold is introduced, is the contact of the lower and inner part of the cheek with the tooth. But this may be prevented, and the commissure of the lips at the same time pushed back with the fore-finger of the left hand of the operator, which will also serve, when the cavity is shallow and the orifice large, to hold the gold in place, until a sufficient quantity has been introduced to obtain mechanical support from the surrounding walls. It is sometimes, however, attended with considerable difficulty in filling a molar; but in operating upon the bicuspids, it is only necessary to depress the corner of the mouth to obtain free access to the cavity.

For the introduction of the gold on the right side, either of the instruments, represented in Figs. 74 and 84, may be em-

ployed, but on the left side the latter will, as a general rule, be found most convenient. A straight wedge-pointed instrument, as represented in Fig. 96, can often be advantageously used in introducing the foil in either of the right bicuspids, and sometimes even in the first molar. In fact this instrument can, not unfrequently, be used efficiently in filling a cavity in the grinding surface of a molar of either jaw, but oftener in the upper than the lower. It is scarcely necessary to say, that the introduction of the gold should proceed from behind forwards.

Fig. 96.



The instruments represented in Figs. 77 and 86, may be used in consolidating the extruding portions of foil, as also the one represented in Fig. 93.

When the cavity is situated near the gum, or, as is often the case, when the lower part of it is a little below its margin, the precaution of removing all the overlapping portions, and this sometimes constitutes a difficult part of the operation, should never be omitted. For this purpose, the file invented by Dr. E. Townsend, of Philadelphia, (Fig. 97,) may often be advan-

Fig. 97.



tageously used. Some are made straight at each end, others are curved. These files are very useful, not only for the purpose just stated, but also for filing down the extruding gold of a filling in the approximal and other surfaces of nearly all the teeth.

It may be well to mention here, that in filling a molar or bicuspid on the left side in the upper jaw, whether in the grinding, approximal or buccal surface, the back of the chair, if so constructed as to admit of being moved, should be thrown five or six inches farther back, so as to lower the head of the patient and give the face a more horizontal inclination. By this means the operator is enabled to approach the locality of his manipulations with greater ease, thus enabling him to exer-

cise a more perfect control over his instrument, as well as the corner of the mouth. But if the back of his operating chair is stationary, he should stand upon a stool of five or six inches in height.

The foregoing details, with regard to the manner of filling teeth, will serve as a general guide for the performance of the operation, and, at the same time, give to the student and inexperienced practitioner, some idea of the amount of labor, accuracy of manipulation, and perfection of execution, it requires.

CHAPTER FIFTH.

FILLING TEETH WHEN THE LINING MEMBRANE IS EXPOSED.

THE propriety of filling a tooth after the invasion of the pulp-cavity by caries, without first destroying the pulp, is doubted by many practitioners. It is thought that inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp, must, as a necessary consequence, result from the operation. But Dr. Koecker, who was the first to recommend filling a tooth under such circumstances, cites a number of cases in which he performed the operation successfully. He also expresses the belief that, "on an average, five out of six teeth may be preserved alive, and rendered useful for a long space of time," after the lining membrane has become exposed. Recent experiments, however, have demonstrated that a much larger proportion, if treated under favorable circumstances, may be saved. From August, 1846, to August, 1851, the author filled three hundred and seventeen teeth in which the lining membrane was exposed; of this number, he has subsequently seen two hundred and twenty, and the operation was successful in two hundred and two, averaging nearly eleven and a fourth, out of every twelve cases. But in some of the teeth, examined after the operation had been performed, it may be, that a sufficient length of time had not elapsed to enable the author to determine the ultimate result with positive certainty, and hence, it is possible, that the relative success here stated may not prove strictly correct. It is also possible, as the writer has stated in another place, that when the treatment of teeth in which caries has penetrated to the pulp-cavity shall be better understood, the vitality of a still larger relative proportion may be preserved. At any rate, so long as it can be done in even nine cases out of ten, the operation must be regarded as a val-

uable one, for a healthy living tooth is less liable to become obnoxious to the surrounding parts than one deprived of a large portion of its vitality.

The fact that teeth can, in very many cases, be preserved alive after the lining membrane has become exposed, being admitted, the question arises, does the pulp remain in the condition in which it is at the time the operation is performed? It is difficult to conceive how a vacant space can exist between it and the filling, or that a foreign body can remain in contact with it, with impunity. Drs. Harwood, of Boston, and Foster, of New York, and Dwinelle, of Cazenovia, are of the opinion, from experiments which they have made, that it ossifies. That the pulps of teeth, under certain circumstances, do undergo a change of this sort, is well known, and the transition is evidently the result of increased vascular action, caused by irritation of some sort. Examples of this kind are met with in teeth in which the crowns have lost a considerable portion of their substance from mechanical or spontaneous abrasion, and it is a beautiful provision made by nature to prevent the exposure of these delicate and highly sensitive parts. The same thing sometimes occurs in teeth which have suffered no loss of substance, and in this case, it is doubtless the result of some constitutional or local cause of irritation.

These facts, as we have elsewhere stated, would seem to justify the conclusion that the pulp of a tooth, when subjected, for a sufficient length of time, to the influence of an irritating agent, capable of exciting only a very slight inflammatory action, undergoes ossification; or rather, is converted into a substance resembling *crusta petrosa*, or what Professor Owen terms, *osteo-dentine*. When it fails to undergo this change in a tooth which has been filled after the lining membrane has become exposed, it is liable, from constitutional disease, or other causes, either to perish from derangement of its nutritive functions, or to become the seat of active inflammation, and to suppurate. But something more than mere ossification, or its conversion into *osteo-dentine*, takes place when a space is left between it and the filling. If this vacant space was not obliterated, we have reason to believe that the slightest increase of vascular action

would, as has been justly remarked by Dr. Elliot, force a portion of the pulp into it, and thus brought in contact with the sharp angles of the walls of the cavity, active inflammation would be excited, and this, as a natural consequence, would be likely to terminate in suppuration. But we have reason to believe, from experiments which we have made, that nature, ever fruitful in her resources, uses means for the prevention of such an occurrence; consisting, first, in filling the vacant space with *coagulable lymph*, (*liquor sanguinis*,) effused from the lining membrane or exposed surface of the pulp—then, in its *organization*, and, lastly, its *conversion* into *callus* and *bone*, or perhaps more properly, *osteo-dentine*. Nature seems to employ the same means here that she does in other parts of the body, for the reparation of injuries.

When this reproductive process does not take place after the operation, it may be owing either to the want of increased vascular action in the lining membrane or pulp, or, to too much inflammation. A certain amount of increased vascular action, seems necessary to the effusion of coagulable lymph, an indispensable requisite to it, but when this is too great, it generally terminates in suppuration. This being the case, it is obvious that the success of the operation must very greatly depend upon the circumstances under which it is performed. However skillful the operator may be in the preparation of the cavity and the introduction of the gold, if these be unfavorabe, his efforts to preserve the vitality of the organ, will, in a large majority of cases, prove unavailing. The health of the patient should be unimpaired, the tooth of a tolerably good quality, free from pain at the time the operation is performed; it should never have ached, and the pulp, peridental membranes and surrounding parts should be in a perfectly healthy condition. The cavity, too, should be of a proper shape for the easy introduction and permanent retention of a filling, and the smaller the point of exposure of the lining membrane the greater the prospect of success. It is also important that every particle of completely decomposed dentine should be removed, and if there be any oozing of blood from the ruptured vessels, this should have ceased before the filling is introduced.

The method of procedure pursued by Dr. Koecker in the performance of the operation, is as follows:

First. Remove the caries and give to the cavity a proper shape for the reception and retention of the filling; then free it of all bone dust that may be in contact with the nerve, with a little raw cotton moistened in warm water.

Second. If the lining membrane is not wounded, dry the cavity, and place a small plate of very thin leaf lead over the exposed nerve and surrounding bone; then fill the cavity in the ordinary way with gold.

Third. When the lining membrane is wounded and bleeds, cauterize the part with an iron wire, heated to a red heat—using the precaution not to wound the pulp. After the hemorrhage has been arrested and an artificial cicatrix formed, free the cavity from all loose extraneous matter, in the manner as before directed, then cover the nerve with sheet lead and fill the cavity with gold.

The reason assigned by Dr. Koecker for covering the nerve with lead, is, that it has a "more cooling and anti-inflammatory effect" than gold. He also states that when he employed gold exclusively, he was seldom successful, and that inflammation, pain, &c., generally supervened, rendering the removal of the filling necessary.

The foregoing method of treating an exposed dental pulp has not proved so successful in the hands of other practitioners. It has been found, that inflammation and suppuration supervene in a large majority of the cases, and, especially, where the cautery has been used—consequently, the practice is now seldom resorted to. The direct application of any metallic substance to the lining membrane or pulp, is, according to the observations of the author, always followed by inflammation and suppuration of these tissues. Some of the vessels of the lining membrane are always necessarily wounded in removing the last layer of decomposed bone, but the hemorrhage, when no other injury is inflicted, is always very slight, and sometimes scarcely perceptible, so that the operation of filling need never be delayed more than from three to ten minutes. The application of a

small particle of raw cotton moistened with spirits of camphor will always immediately arrest it.

Dr. S. S. Fitch proposes to cover the nerve, when exposed with a plate of gold, previously to filling the cavity, and this, in the opinion of the author, is preferable to the direct application of a piece of leaf lead, as recommended by Dr. Koecker. It is certainly a better protection to the nerve, and if it be so fitted to the cavity that its edges shall rest upon the surrounding solid bone, a filling may afterwards be introduced without injury to the pulp. Still, in very many cases the application of a covering of this sort is objectionable. It is difficult to fit it with sufficient accuracy to prevent the liability of its being displaced in the introduction of the filling; and where the cavity is very shallow it will often occupy so much room as to render it impossible to fill the remainder of it in a substantial manner, yet it may sometimes be very advantageously applied.

The plan pursued by Dr. J. H. Foster of New York, in filling teeth after the pulp has become exposed or is covered only by a very thin layer of bone, is as follows: "If," says he, "after a careful removal of all the defective portion, within and about the parietes of the cavity, the thin layer of bone which lies adjacent to the lining membrane, has a moderate degree of consistency, yet not sufficient to protect the dental pulp from irritation caused by the pressure of external agents, it has been my practice to leave it there, and fitting a gold cap over it, (with great caution as to its proper adjustment, as a protection,) proceed to fill the tooth." But this method of procedure, he says, was not as successful as he could have desired, depending, in a great degree, as he supposed, upon the extent to which the thin subjacent layer of bone had been involved in disease, and the liability of the pulp to be affected with heat and cold.

But to guard against the irritation and inflammation produced by this, he fills the concave surface of the gold cap with "Hill's stopping," using the precaution to preserve the concavity, so that it may not press upon the part it is designed to protect. This treatment, he says, has proved successful in a considerable majority of the cases. "Believing," says Dr. F., "that many failures occurred in consequence of the comparatively small

portion of newly exposed bone which was covered and protected by the non-conducting medium, I resolved to try another experiment. Instead of lining the gold cap, after having fitted it accurately upon the floor of the cavity, I filled the whole of the cavity external to it, with Dr. Hill's composition, (which in its chemical properties and action is a harmless agent,) allowing this to remain for five or six months as a *temporary* stopping."

By this plan of procedure, Dr. F. says he has, with one or two exceptions, been successful in preserving the vitality of the teeth during the past year. He also states that he has occasionally removed these fillings after the lapse of two or three months, and finding the irritability of the tooth still continued, he refilled them in the same manner, and permitted the filling to remain two or three months longer, when, on again removing the stoppings, he found the inflammation diminished, and the subjacent layer of bone almost firm enough to bear the pressure of a gold filling; but he still uses the cap underneath the gold, as before. He believes, however, that if Dr. Hill's "stoppings" could be relied upon for preserving the walls of the cavity for one or two years, as perfectly as it does for a few months, that the caps might be removed, and a solid gold filling introduced, without danger of causing irritation by pressure upon the bottom of the cavity.* Dr. F. further adds, that he has frequently

*The author will state one fact here, in connection with what Dr. Foster says in relation to Dr. Hill's "stopping." Mr. S., of Baltimore, applied to the author, in May, 1848, to fill the first left superior molar, which had a large cavity in its anterior approximal surface. On examination, it was found that the pulp had been destroyed, and that there was a discharge of fetid matter from the pulp-cavity. As he was anxious to retain the tooth, the decomposed portions were removed, to the extremities of the roots, and the cavities injected, once a day, for some eight or ten days, with a strong solution of chloride of soda. The fetid discharge had by this time apparently ceased; but still fearing, that if the tooth were filled, an alveolar abscess would form, the author, with a view of ascertaining the effect which would be produced by the operation, filled the tooth with Dr. Hill's "stopping," requesting Mr. S. to call on him again in three weeks, if the tooth should occasion him no pain, or sooner, if it should become troublesome. This he promised to do, but as he was much occupied with his business, he neglected to keep his appointment. As the tooth gave him no uneasiness, he deferred calling from week to week, until nearly two years had elapsed. Recollecting, however, that his tooth had only a temporary filling in it, he, on the 25th of April, 1850, called to have it filled with gold. To the astonishment of the author, the walls of the cavity were found to be in as sound a condition as when the "soft stopping" was introduced.

taken out gold fillings of his own insertion, "by way of experiment, which had been introduced under like circumstances, after they had been in for two or more years, and on removing the cap, had found the bone beneath so unyielding and void of sensibility that he was able to introduce a solid gold filling without the cap."

The method pursued by the author when he fills a tooth after caries has penetrated to the pulp-cavity, is a very simple one. The caries is removed and the cavity prepared in the usual manner, using the precaution not to wound the lining membrane if it can be avoided, though some of its vessels are always ruptured in the removal of the last layers of decomposed bone; then, to wipe out the cavity very carefully with a dossil of raw cotton, saturated with spirit of camphor, which immediately arrests the effusion of blood from the minute capillary vessels. The gold is next introduced, commencing by placing the folds on one side of the cavity, and afterwards inserting fold after fold, without carrying those immediately over the exposed part of the lining membrane or pulp, to the bottom of the cavity, until every part, except a very small space immediately over the nerve, is thoroughly filled. The folds should be forced so tightly one against the other, as to prevent the liability of pressing their inner extremities in the consolidation of the extruding portions of the filling, against the exposed pulp at the bottom of the cavity. After the gold has been thoroughly condensed, the surface of the filling should be finished in the manner as before described.

The author has occasionally placed a drop of the solution of gutta percha in the bottom of the cavity, and waited until the chloroform had completely evaporated, before introducing the gold. He has also used collodion in the same way. Dr. Elliot of Montreal, states in an article on filling teeth over exposed nerves, published in No. 4, Vol. 1, New Series of the American Journal of Dental Science, that he places the gold "directly upon the living nerve, and in perfect contact with it, over the whole of its exposed surface," using, when the cavity is sufficiently deep to admit of it, *asbestos*, a non-conductor, "*enveloped in a few thicknesses of gold-foil.*" He also says,

that within the last year he had "but two cases in which irritation advanced so far as to become troublesome to the patient," and that in "both instances, perfect and permanent relief was obtained by the use of leeches and a mild cathartic." We have tried this method in some twelve or fifteen cases, and so far as we have been able to ascertain, with very satisfactory results, still, we are inclined to believe that by leaving a vacant space between the filling and the pulp, the success of the operation will be somewhat increased.

The result of the operation, however, performed in either way, cannot always be immediately ascertained. Though it may at first be apparently successful, suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp may take place, three, six, or even twelve months after the introduction of the filling.

Dr. S. P. Hullihen described to the author in the fall of 1851, a method which he had recently introduced of treating teeth after the lining membrane had become exposed. It consists, after filling the tooth in the usual way, of drilling a hole with a small spear-pointed drill, about a line above the edge of the alveolus through the gum, alveolar wall and root into the pulp cavity, using the precaution not to separate the nerve, and wounding it as slightly as possible. The effusion of lymph resulting from the inflammation occasioned by the pressure of the filling, escapes through this opening, which, when the increased vascular action subsides, is filled with callus, and ultimately with bone. In this way, Dr. H. informed the author, he had succeeded, in almost every instance, in preserving the vitality of the tooth. The author has not performed the operation often enough to enable him to express an opinion with regard to its merits.

Without going into detail, we have now, in as few words as possible given all the information we possess on the subject of filling teeth, with a view to the preservation of their vitality, after the lining membrane has become exposed; embracing the result of our experience since the publication of the fourth edition of this work, which, as the reader may perceive, has very greatly increased our confidence in the utility of the operation.

CHAPTER SIXTH.

FILLING THE PULP-CAVITIES AND ROOTS OF TEETH.

THE propriety of filling a tooth after the destruction of the lining membrane and pulp, is doubted by many eminent practitioners of dental surgery. The objection to the practice is founded upon the supposition, that, in proportion as the vitality of the organ is lessened, it, in the same proportion, becomes obnoxious to the surrounding living parts. It is contended that, though the presence of the tooth may not give rise to alveolar abscess, it is, nevertheless, to some extent, a local irritant, and as such, must, as a necessary consequence, exert a morbid influence, not only upon the living parts with which it is in immediate contact, but, also, upon the whole economy. Hence it is argued, that the proper remedial indication, after the death of the lining membrane, is, the extraction of the tooth, and this reasoning, it must be admitted by all who have any knowledge of the laws of health and disease, it is not without much seeming plausibility. Until recently, the result of all efforts made for the preservation and retention of teeth in this condition, fully justified its supposed correctness; for, in nine cases out of ten, the operation of filling, unless an opening was left for the escape of the matter secreted at the extremities of the roots, was followed, sooner or later, by alveolar abscess. The very general conclusion, therefore, that such teeth could not remain in the mouth with impunity, was a very natural one. But more recent experiments have proven it, to some extent, at least, to be incorrect.

Drs. Maynard and Baker were the first to demonstrate that most of the morbid phenomena resulting from the presence of a tooth in the mouth after the destruction of the lining membrane, were caused by the irritation produced by the matter contained in the pulp-cavity and canal of the root. To prevent their occurrence, therefore, they propose filling both in such a manner

as completely to exclude every thing else. The accumulation of matter here being prevented, its secretion at the extremity of the root, as has been proven by repeated experiments, will, in a majority of cases, either cease altogether, or go on no faster than it can be taken up and carried off by the absorbents. Thus it would seem, that the amount of living principle which a tooth derives from the investing membrane is sufficient, ordinarily, to prevent it from exerting any *manifest* morbid action upon the surrounding living parts.

Although it is desirable that the operation should be performed before any diseased action has been set up at the extremity of the root, it is believed by some that much advantage may sometimes be derived from it even after alveolar abscess has actually occurred. Dr. Maynard informed the author, in a recent conversation with him, that he had succeeded in curing the disease by it. Dr. Dunning has also done it; and the author has certainly known great benefit, in several instances, to result from cleansing and filling the cavities and canals in the roots of teeth which had given rise to abscesses. The discharge of matter has, in most cases, on which he has operated, been greatly diminished, often subsiding altogether for several months at a time, and the recurrences rarely occasioning much inconvenience, or continued for more than a week, or ten days. Still, he does not feel warranted, from his own observations and experience, in recommending the operation in cases of this sort, unless the presence of the tooth is called for by some peculiar necessity.

During the year 1849, Dr. J. H. Foster filled the pulp-cavities and roots of forty teeth, with the following results:

	Alveolar Abscess.	Successful.	Unsuccessful.
3 Superior molars, . .	1	3	
1 Inferior molar, inflammation without abscess, . .	1	1	
9 Superior bicuspids, . .	1	8	1
4 Inferior do. . .	2	4	
7 Superior cuspidati, . .	1	7	
2 Inferior do. . .	1	1	1
13 Superior incisors, . .	1	13	
1 Inferior do. . .		1	

"In the case of the superior bicuspid, marked unsuccessful, Dr. F. says, the patient would not submit to the pain, and insisted upon the removal of the tooth during the incipient stage of alveolar abscess. In that of the superior cuspidatus, the abscess did not form until some months after the operation. It was opened in due time," but as the parts still continued painful, Dr. F. attempted to remove the filling. This, however, he could not do, and as the pain continued, he extracted the tooth, which he had filled into the root from a cavity in the labial surface. The fang, he says, was of unusual length, and had a bold lateral curvature about three-fourths of the way up to the apex, rendering the passage of an instrument, beyond the angle, impossible. He had, however, forced the first piece of foil a little below this curve, which resisted all efforts for its removal. The fang below this point had become discolored and the periosteum inflamed.

Dr. E. J. Dunning of New York, states, in a letter to the author, dated March 12th, 1850, that he has been for several years, and is now constantly in the habit of filling teeth and their fangs, after destroying their nerves, and also of cleansing and filling the cavities of the fangs of teeth which had previously lost their vitality,* and had become more or less diseased. He also states, that but very few cases had occurred in his practice, where ulceration had occurred, rendering the removal of the tooth necessary. Dr. D. furthermore remarks, that whenever the investing membrane and gums of teeth, treated in this manner, become thickened and swollen, the symptoms are less severe. In proof of the correctness of this opinion, he has furnished the author with the following details of a case which came under his observations a few months since.

"A gentleman from the south called immediately after his arrival in this city, and stated that during his passage in the steamer, he had been suffering intensely from pain in a first superior molar. On examination I found the tooth thoroughly

* By the loss of vitality, we presume Dr. D. means, that which the teeth derive from the lining membrane, for after the death of the investing periosteal tissue, a tooth becomes a foreign body and must of necessity be a constant source of irritation.

injected with red blood—the periosteum highly inflamed and considerably thickened, though there was no swelling of the gum. A small cavity in the posterior approximal surface had been filled with gold a day or two before sailing. In preparing the cavity for filling, arsenic had been used to allay sensibility.

"In most cases I should have advised the removal of the tooth—for the symptoms were most unfavorable to any operation for its preservation. But as the mouth was otherwise perfectly healthy, the arches unbroken, and the cavity in the tooth very small, and the patient extremely anxious to preserve it, I determined to try to save it."

"On examining the cavity carefully, I found that the nerve had never been exposed—the arsenic had acted upon it through the circulation, and had thus produced this severe inflammation.

"Having removed the layer of sound bone that covered the nerve, and finding it quite sensitive, I made an application of an exceedingly small quantity of a mixture of arsenic, morphine and creosote, and covered it with a metallic cap or arch, to prevent pressure, followed by a loose filling of tin foil. The pain and much of the soreness were immediately relieved.

"Saw the patient again on the fourth day—found the soreness entirely gone—had suffered pain since the application was made—injection remained the same. Found the part of the pulp contained in the central cavity entirely insensible—removed it; finding the portion in the fangs still sensitive, made the same application at the entrance of each canal and filled the cavity again with tin. At this sitting, ventured to file the tooth so as to increase the separation between it and the second molar. The filed surface showed the injection beautifully, the bone appearing a bright red, and the line at the junction with the enamel very distinct.

"In three or four days saw the patient again, and to my surprise and delight found that the injection had entirely disappeared, and the tooth almost as perfect in color as any of its neighbors.*

* The injection of the tooth from the vessels of the lining membrance and pulp, is of frequent occurrence in teeth to which arsenic is applied for the pur-

"The nerves were then removed from the fangs, and their places filled with gold, and at a subsequent sitting the external cavity was filled.

"As three months have elapsed since the operation was performed, without any news with regard to it, I conclude that it is thus far successful."

Other cases of a similar character, and with similar results, might be given, but we will not enlarge further upon this part of our subject.

With regard to the best means for destroying the nerve, or rather the pulp of a tooth, there exists considerable diversity of opinion. Immediate *extirpation* with an instrument, *arsenic*, and the *actual cautery*, are the ones most frequently employed, and each has its advocates.

To the use of arsenic and all similar agents, Dr. Harwood, of Boston, is strongly opposed. He states, in a letter to the author, dated February 13th, 1850, that "they cause death and sloughing in the parts to which they are more immediately applied, and irritation and unmanageable trouble in the parts next beyond those they absolutely kill. In other words, they *irritate* the parts beyond the dental cavity, and from this cause, (and perhaps from chemical injury to the tooth itself,) the periosteum of the root and socket becomes the seat of great, and frequently of uncontrollable difficulty." Entertaining these views, Dr. H. regards the use of such means, as opposed both to experience and sound philosophy, and adopts, without knowing that the same thing had been done by others, what he believes to be a more correct practice—immediate extirpation. He thus describes his method of procedure for the accomplishment of this object.

pose of merely destroying the sensibility of the dentine. At the first meeting of the American Society of Dental Surgeons, Dr. Hayden mentioned a case that had a short time before fallen under his observation, and several others were cited by the author at the same time. Since then he has met with numerous cases in which this had occurred. It is doubtless the result of increased vascular action, excited in the lining membrance and pulp by the action of the arsenic, and it proves the capability of the vessels of teeth under certain circumstances, of conveying red blood. It occurs, however, much more frequently in the teeth of young, than in those of persons in advanced life.

He says, "I first effect such an opening as will enable me to approach the exposed pulp, in the line of its axis, or as nearly so as circumstances will permit. Then, having carefully but sufficiently exposed the surface of the pulp, I pass down to the apex of the root, through the pulp, a small untempered steel instrument, with a trochar-shaped point, and revolving it once or twice, sever the vessel and nerve. This, as any one knows, who is accustomed to inserting artificial teeth, produces but a slight and momentary pain. I then, by means of minute instruments, adapted to the purpose, endeavor to remove every portion of the severed pulp and lining membrane, and as soon as the hemorrhage ceases, dry the cavity, and fill" the tooth.

In relation to the subsequent parts of the operation, Dr. H. says, "I have sometimes only filled the canals at the first sitting—leaving the body of the tooth to be treated after a few days. This course has been adopted from a fear that all the pressure necessary to complete the operation, might enhance the danger of inflammation and suppuration. This is prudent, but experience does not convince me that it is necessary.

"It should be borne in mind, that at the point where the vessels and nerve in question enter the root, the passage is much smaller than it is immediately within. This *strait* will be easily recognized when reached, by the touch, the instrument appearing to be arrested by an obstacle, and not by being wedged in a narrow passage. Care should be taken, I think, that the instrument is not allowed to pass through the strait, either by being too small, or by being revolved there till it cuts its way through. For, by wounding the parts without the tooth, and forcing particles of bone out upon the parts external to the root, the danger of an unfavorable result would be greatly increased."

Dr. Harwood adds, in conclusion, that he believes it is better to make the division of the parts a little within the strait, though he does not regard the matter as being yet fully settled by observation and experience.

As to the success of the practice, Dr. H. speaks very confidently, not having had a case treated in this manner, where the patient and pulp were healthy, in which there has been a single symptom of alveolar abscess.

In a paper read before the American Society of Dental Surgeons, at the meeting held in the city of New York, August, 1845, and published in the sixth volume of the American Journal of Dental Science, p. 15, Dr. E. J. Dunning maintains very similar views with regard to the means most proper to be employed for the destruction of the pulp of a tooth. He says, "The destruction of the nerve by mechanical means has been practiced to a small extent by dental surgeons for many years, but on account of the severe pain which in many cases attends it as well as the fact that, in the manner in which it has generally been practiced, it has proved no more successful than other and less severe methods, it has been considered rather in the light of a dernier resort." But this, Dr. D. believes to be owing to the fact, that the nerve is often only punctured and lacerated, and afterwards shut up in the tooth and left to decompose. To prevent which, he says, the whole nerve should be removed, and its place filled with gold or tin foil.

Again, Dr. D. says, "The instrument which I have used to excavate the fangs, is a delicate probe of steel, perfectly annealed. The point may be converted into a very slight hook, and made sharp, so as to bring away the nerve or other matter with which the cavity may be filled. For the removal of the nerve in the chamber of the crown, existing in molar teeth, as well as to enlarge the cavity, so as to give free access to each of the fangs, a burr-drill is very useful. As these teeth are generally very much decayed, it will be found advisable, when the cavity is on the side of the crown, to remove its edges in such a manner as to admit the light directly upon the openings of the fangs. This will facilitate the operation very much, and at the same time give strength to the walls that are to contain the stopping."

With regard to the result of the operation of filling the pulp-cavity and roots of a tooth in which the nerve has been destroyed in the manner as above described, Dr. Dunning says, so far as he has been able to observe, it has been successful in every case.

On the different methods of destroying the nerve, Dr. J. H. Foster, of New York, says, "It is a difficult matter, and I have

generally found it utterly futile to attempt to induce patients to submit to the removal of the pulp by *extraction* or *excision* with *instruments*, in those cases in which it becomes necessary to destroy vitality before the teeth can be filled.

"To obtain the consent of the patient by a representation of the advantages of this mode of treatment, as contrasted with the more slow and uncertain practice, in its immediats effects, of *extirpation*, by the aid of *chemical agents*, has been my earnest endeavor. I do not remember a single case of the removal of the dental pulp by an instrument—the gold being inserted into the dental cavity immediately after the hemorrhage has been checked—which has resulted in alveolar abscess."

Dr. Foster, however, generally employs arsenious acid, with sulph. morphia, in the proportion of two grains of the former to eight of the latter, applied on a small pellet moistened with creosote. After applying this directly over the nerve, he covers it with a cap, so as to avoid pressure; then fills the external cavity with some soft material which will exclude moisture. At the end of forty-eight hours, he removes this, enlarges the dental cavity, removing its contents to the apex of the root; then, after waiting another forty-eight hours, he proceeds to fill the canal, leaving the cavity in the crown to be filled at a subsequent sitting.

In performing this operation on molar teeth, "where there is a probable chance of a favorable issue," and the preservation of these teeth is particularly called for, Dr. F. thinks it important that the excavation should be done at intervals, so as to cause as little irritation at each sitting as possible, and that the filling of the different cavities in the tooth be also proceeded with in like manner.

Dr. Maynard, who has been as successful in filling the pulp-cavity and roots of teeth as any other practitioner, and has probably had more experience, having been in the habit of performing the operation since 1838, and who has thoroughly tested the method of destroying the nerve by immediate extirpation with an instrument, as well as that by the application of arsenious acid, we believe, gives the preference to the latter. His method of procedure, as described by Dr.

Westcott, in vol. 7, p. 286, of the American Journal of Dental Science, is as follows: "He takes white wax and works it into cotton or lint, till it is thoroughly mixed together. With this he fills the cavity in the tooth." But, "before doing this, he exposes the nerve as much as possible, applies the arsenic, and *caps* the orifice with a plate of lead, of a cup shape, the convex side outwards. While this is carefully kept in place, he fills the cavity with the cotton and wax, very carefully and perfectly, in a way so as not to shut in and compress any air which might press upon the nerve. On removing this packing," in a case which Dr. W. had an opportunity of witnessing, he says, "I was surprised to see that his preparation had been kept perfectly dry, although it had been there twenty-four hours.

"After he removed this packing and the preparation, he proceeded to remove the nerve. Instead of attempting to do this at once, he began by cutting on every side of the orifice, so much enlarging it as to be enabled to remove the nerve without pressing the contents of the cavity upwards.

"It was to us a matter of interest to examine the instruments used, particularly for removing the nerve.

"Some of his probes were made from the main-spring of a watch, by filling or grinding them sufficiently narrow, to enter the smallest space which he wished to probe. In this way he secures the most perfect *spring temper*, a point not easily attained in so firm an instrument as a probe adapted to this purpose. These probes were bearded by cutting them with a sharp knife—the beards pointing backwards.

"With different sizes of these [and other] probes, and by enlarging the cavity from time to time, he removes the nerve to the extremity of the root."

Dr. Arthur, author of a series of ably written articles on the treatment of caries of the teeth, complicated with disorders of the pulp and peridental membrane, published in the American Journal of Dental Science, recommends the use of cobalt for destroying the nerve as preferable to any other agent or means that have been employed for the purpose.

In the destruction of the pulp of a tooth the author has employed both mechanical and chemical agents. He has been in

the habit of occasionally extirpating the nervous pulp to the extremity of the root by introducing a very small untempered instrument, with a spear-shaped point, for more than twenty years, though not at first with the view of afterwards filling the pulp cavity. He has also used the actual cautery and arsenious acid. To the use of the last named agent as used by most dentists for destroying the vitality of teeth, he was at one time strongly opposed, and he still believes a vast amount of injury is produced by it, but with the proper care and judicious treatment after the destruction of the pulp, it may be used with safety, and, in most cases, advantage. It is the agent we now employ for destroying the vitality of the lining membrane and pulps of the molar and bicuspid teeth, and occasionally, we apply it to the incisors and cuspidati. As a general rule, however, when we wish to destroy the nerve of one of the last named teeth, we extirpate it by thrusting a small instrument up the pulp cavity to the extremity of the root. When we use arsenic, we apply about the thirtieth or fortieth part of a grain, with an equal quantity of sulphate of morphia, on a small particle of raw cotton, moistened with water, creosote, or spirit of camphor, sealing up the cavity with white or yellow wax. At the expiration of about seven hours, or two hours after the tooth has completely ceased aching, we remove the wax and arsenic, and afterwards the pulp of the tooth. If the portions in the roots are still sensitive, we apply it a second time, but we seldom find it necessary to do so.

The method of procedure which we adopt in filling the root, or roots if it be a molar tooth, is the same as that pursued by Dr. Maynard, which is described by Dr. Westcott in the article from which we have just quoted.

"His operation," says Dr. W., "of filling the root, is characterized by the same neatness and dexterity. His instruments are of the most delicate kind, and are adapted to reach to the end of the fang, although the canal may not be entirely straight. In filling these roots," alluding to the operation which he says Dr. M. performed, he used very heavy gold, we believe from No. 12 to 30. This is cut into strips corresponding to the diameter of the cavity, and is not doubled. The end of one of

the strips is laid upon the end of one of these delicate pluggers, and carefully carried up to the upper extremity of the root. If this is effected, the instrument is withdrawn a slight distance, then returned, carrying with it another portion, till the strip is exhausted. In this way the whole root is filled."

The root of the tooth being filled, the cavity in the crown is filled in the usual manner.

It sometimes happens that the canals in the buccal roots of the upper molars are so small as to preclude the introduction even of a small sized hog's bristle. In cases of this sort, it is impossible to fill them, and fortunately, from their small size, they cannot serve as reservoirs, for accumulations of morbid matter. The canal in the palatine root is always much larger than it is in either of the buccal roots.

We have now presented a condensed summary of most of the information we possess in relation to the operation on which we have just been treating; and notwithstanding the favorable light in which it is viewed by many eminent practitioners, we think it should be restricted to teeth, the presence of which in the mouth, is called for by some *peculiar* or *very urgent* necessity. It is only in *such cases*, that we conceive the operation to be advisable; for, the unsuccessful results which have, at least occasionally, attended it, in the practice of every one, who has performed it many times, prove, that a tooth, after the destruction of even the lining membrane and pulp, is more liable to give rise to a diseased action in the socket, than a tooth not deprived of these essential constituents. If these parts did not perform some necessary function, or contribute in some way to the well being of the tooth, or the parts with which it is connected, they would not be left there; the process of ossification would doubtless be carried on until the cavity in which they are contained was completely obliterated. Still, these parts, as we have already stated, and as is fully proved by the facts which have been adduced, may often be dispensed with without causing a tooth to exercise any *immediate manifest* hurtful action upon the surrounding parts or general system.

It sometimes happens that the crown of a tooth, in which the central cavity has been filled for a length of time with black

purulent matter, or the pulp after having been accidentally deprived of vitality by the application of arsenic to a carious cavity, with a view of merely destroying sensibility, assumes a dark brown, and sometimes almost a black color. This, in some cases extends to every part of the dentine of the crown of the tooth, and in such cases it is important to restore the natural color of the organ before filling. The means which the author has employed for this purpose, for a number of years, is a solution of the chloride of soda. After freeing the pulp-cavity to the extremity of the root of all impurities, and removing from its inner walls, the softened or decomposed portions of bone, he fills the tooth with raw cotton, saturated with this solution, closing the orifice with white wax, and permitting the whole to remain for twenty-four hours. A single application will sometimes produce the desired effect; at other times several are necessary. Dr. Dwinelle has used successfully, for the same purpose, a solution of lime.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

TOOTH-ACHE.

PAIN in a tooth, tooth-ache, or *odontalgia*, as it is technically termed, is a symptom of some functional or structural disturbance, either of the organ in which the pain is seated, or of some other part or parts of the body; but more frequently of the former than of the latter. But so variable is the character of the sensation, that any description would fail to convey, to one who has never experienced it, a correct idea of its nature. The pain sometimes amounts only to a slight uneasiness; at other times the agony is almost insupportable. It may be dull, deep-seated, boring, throbbing, or lancinating. It may be slight at first, gradually increasing in severity, until it amounts to the most excruciating torture, or it may come on without any premonition whatever. It may be confined to a single tooth, or it may affect several at the same time. It may commence in one tooth, and pass from thence to another, and another, until every one, in turn, has been affected. It may continue for hours and days without scarcely any cessation, or, it may be intermittent, the paroxysms recurring at stated or uncertain intervals, and each lasting from thirty minutes, to one, two, or more hours.

CAUSES.

The causes of tooth-ache are almost as numerous as are the varieties of character which it exhibits. Irritation and inflammation of the pulp, and inflammation of the investing membrane are among the most frequent, but it is sometimes referable to a morbid condition of the nerve or nerves going to a single tooth, or of "the trunk from which several teeth are supplied," also, to

derangement of the digestive organs, to increased nervous susceptibility of the uterus, resulting from pregnancy, amenorrhœa, &c., and to certain diatheses of the general system.

Dr. S. P. Hullihen enumerates the following as the causes of tooth-ache; 1, exposure of the nerve; 2, fungus of the nerve; 3, confinement of pus in the internal cavity; 4, a diseased state of the periosteum covering the fang, and 5, sympathy.* Dr. Heilden attributes it to congestion or inflammation, or a lesion of innervation of the lining membrane and pulp, or of the peridental membrane.†

Inflammation of the lining membrane and pulp may be produced by a blow upon a tooth, or by powerful impressions of heat and cold communicated through the conducting medium either of the enamel and dentine or of a metallic filling; but it is more frequently occasioned by pressure and the direct contact of irritating agents, such as carious portions of the tooth, particles of alimentary substances, acrid humors and other irritating external bodies. But inflammation is not always a necessary consequence of impression of this sort. Pain may be produced by them when it does not exist, but in this case it usually subsides soon after the removal of the irritant. Indeed the pulp of a tooth may be exposed for months, and subjected several times every day to the contact of foreign substances, without becoming the seat of inflammatory action, and in the absence of which, the pain, though coming on with the suddenness of an electric flash and often of the most excruciating kind, is seldom of long duration.

But when inflammation exists, the pain, which, at first, amounts only to a slight gnawing sensation, is more constant; after while, it assumes a throbbing character, and if not promptly arrested, it increases in severity and continues until suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp takes place. So long as it is confined to the parts within the pulp-cavity, the pain is not increased by pressure on the tooth, nor is the tooth started from the socket, as it is in periodontitis. The locality of the inflammation may also be distinguished by the fact, that cold water or ice applied to the tooth, generally gives relief. But the inflamma-

* American Journal Dental Science, vol. i, p. 106.
† Half-yearly Abstract of Medical Science, vol. i, 1845.

tion rarely confines itself long to the interior of the tooth; it usually soon extends to the periosteum of the root, and alveolus, when a somewhat different train of phenomena are developed. Suppuration, however, having taken place, an abscess soon forms at the extremity of the root.

The severity of the pain attending *odontitis*, as inflammation of the pulp is technically termed, from the supposition that every part of the organ is involved in the diseased action, is, doubtless, owing to the fact that this exceedingly sensitive structure, as its vessels become injected with blood, is prevented from expanding by the unyielding nature of the walls of the cavity in which it is situated. Its capillaries being thus distended, must, as a necessary consequence, press upon the nerves which are every where distributed upon it, and the excruciatingly painful throbbing sensation by which this variety of tooth-ache is characterised, is produced, we have no doubt, by the pulsation of these vessels which takes place at each injection from the artery supplying them with blood. Hence, increased action of the heart and arteries, from whatever cause produced, augments the pain, which is also more severe at night, while the body is in a recumbent posture, than during the day. The phenomena attending the inflammation, however, are influenced very much by the condition of the tooth and the habit of the body of the patient.

When the inflammation is acute, it extends to every part of the pulp and lining membrane. It also occurs more frequently before than after these tissues have become exposed, and generally terminates in suppuration. Chronic inflammation usually results from partial exposure of the pulp, and may exist for months without being attended by pain; but the pulp, when thus affected, is more susceptible to impressions of heat and cold, and of irritating substances, and the liability of the tooth to ache, especially at night, is greatly increased.

Tooth-ache caused by acute inflammation of the investing membrane, is characterised by pain, at first dull, afterwards acute and throbbing, soreness and elongation of the tooth, redness and tumefaction of the gums, and sometimes by swelling of the cheek, indicating the formation of alveolar abscess. In

this variety of odontolgia, the tooth is often so much raised in its socket as to interfere very seriously with mastication.

The pain attending the foregoing pathological conditions, when severe and protracted, is often accompanied by constipation, head-ache, dryness of the skin, flushed cheeks, fullness and increased rapidity of pulse, and other constitutional morbid phenomena.

The nervous susceptibility of the teeth is sometimes so much increased by organic and even functional disturbances of other and often remote parts, that the mere contact of the minute nerves, distributed upon the pulp, the lining and investing membranes, with the parts with which they are associated, is frequently attended with severe pain. This variety of odontalgia is termed *sympathetic*, and is supposed to result from the transfer of nervous irritation, or more properly, we would suppose, from *exalted excitability* of the dental nerves, resulting from a morbid condition or functional disturbance of some other part. If this hypothesis be true, it is probable, that with this heightened nervous excitability, there is a slight increase of vascular action in the pulp, the lining and investing membranes of the teeth, with a corresponding increase of size in their capillaries, and in consequence of which, it is fair to presume, they would be likely to exert some undue pressure upon the nervous filaments supplying these tissues. Though pain, arising from this cause, may have its seat in sound as well as in decayed teeth, it occurs more frequently in the latter than the former, owing to the fact that any structural alteration in the dentine of these organs adds to their already increased nervous excitability.

Persons of highly excitable nervous temperaments, pregnant females, and individuals laboring under a deranged condition of the digestive organs are particularly subject to this variety of tooth-ache. It also sometimes occurs as a symptom of rheumatism or gout,* the pain, in cases of this sort, assuming the specific

* A most remarkable and interesting case of tooth-ache associated with gout fell under the observation of the author in May, 1850. The subject, Mr. W., a resident of Baltimore, about forty years of age, had been subject to attacks of

character of that by which these diseases are characterized. Odontalgia arising from other pathological or functional conditions of other parts, assumes a great variety of forms. The pain may be continued, but more frequently it is periodical. It may be confined as we have before stated, to a single tooth, or it may attack half a dozen or more at the same time, the pain assuming every variety of grade and character.

In what is termed neuralgic tooth-ache, "The pain," says Dr. Wood, "is usually of the acute character, sometimes mild in the beginning, gradually increasing in intensity, and as gradually declining; but usually very irregular, at one time moderate, at another severe, and occasionally darting with excruciating violence through the dental arches. Not unfrequently it assumes a regular intermittent form. Instead of pain, strictly speaking, the sensation is sometimes of that kind which is indicated when we say that the teeth are on edge, and is apt to be excited by certain harsh sounds, such as that produced in the filing of saw teeth, by mental inquietude, and by the contact of acids or other irritant substances. Neuralgic tooth-ache sometimes persists, with intervals of exemption, for a great length of time. The diagnosis is occasionally difficult. When, however, it occurs in sound teeth, it is paroxysmal in its character, is attended

this most excruciatingly painful affection, for more than fifteen years. The paroxysms, for some four or five years previously to the above mentioned time, had occurred at intervals of from three to six months, and from ten to twelve days before each attack, during this period, he suffered from pain in the first right superior molar tooth, which was slightly affected with caries in the centre of the grinding surface, but it had not yet penetrated to the pulp-cavity. The pain at first was not severe, but it gradually increased in intensity, and assumed a peculiar boring, and at times, grinding and lancinating character. His attacks of gout were confined to the joint of the big toe of his right foot, and as soon as the pain commenced here, it subsided in his tooth. But when the paroxysm of gout began to pass off, it again commenced in the tooth, where it continued for about two weeks.

At the request of Mr. W. we removed the diseased portion of the tooth and filled the cavity. The operation for about three months promised to be successful, but about ten days previously to the next paroxysm of gout, the tooth began to ache, the pain subsiding with the occurrence of the paroxysm, but commencing again when it had passed off, and continued as it had formerly done for about two weeks. His suffering from the pain in the tooth during these periods was so great, he determined to have it extracted. What the result of its removal has been, we have not yet ascertaind.

with little or no swelling of the external parts, occupies a considerable portion of the jaw, and especially when it alternates or is associated with pain of the same character in other parts of the face, there can be little doubt as to its real nature." This is a variety of sympathetic tooth-ache, favored, perhaps, by caries, or by the manner in which the teeth are arranged in the alveolar arch, or by some peculiar susceptibility of the parts to morbid impressions, as is shown by the fact, that the pain almost always ceases on the removal of all causes of irritation. But while on the other hand, pain in the teeth may be caused by a morbid condition of other parts, other organs frequently sympathise with a diseased condition of these, and become, to use the language of Mr. Bell, "the apparent seat of pain." "I have," says this writer "seen this occur not only in the face, over the scalp, in the ear, or underneath the lower jaw, but down the neck, over the shoulder, and along the whole length of the arm." Similar cases aee frequently met with by other practitioners.

In treating of tooth-ache, Dr. Good observes: "This is often an idiopathic affection, dependent upon a peculiar irritability, from a cause we cannot easily trace, of the nerves subservient to the aching tooth, or the tunics by which it is covered, or the periosteum, or the fine membrane that lines the interior of the alveoli. But it is more frequently a disease of sympathy, produced by pregnancy, or chronic rheumatism, or acrimony in the stomach, in persons of an irritable habit."

"It is still less to be wondered at, that the nerves of the teeth should often associate in the maddening pain of *neuralgia faciei*, or tic douloureux, as the French writers have quaintly denominated it, for here the connection is both direct and immediate. In consequence of this, the patient, in most instances, regards the teeth themselves as the salient points of pain, (*and they unquestionably may be so in some cases,*) and rests his only hope of relief upon extraction; and when he has applied to the operator, he is at a loss to fix upon any one point in particular. Mr. Fox gives a striking example of this, in a person from whom he extracted a stump, which afforded little or no relief; in consequence of which his patient applied to him only two days afterwards and requested the removal of several adjoining teeth, which were

perfectly sound. This he objected to, and suspecting the real nature of the disease, he immediately took him to Mr. (now Sir) Astley Cooper, who, by dividing the affected nerve, produced a radical cure in a few days."

The author is acquainted with a gentleman similarly affected. He has had all his teeth on the right side of both jaws extracted, without obtaining any relief.

There is one other cause of tooth-ache, which we should not omit to mention; namely, exostosis; but from the obscurity of the diagnosis, the existence of the affection can seldom be determined with positive certainty, except by the removal of the teeth. But as we shall hereafter have occasion to treat of this disease, it will not be necessary in this place, to enlarge upon the subject.

Finally, some teeth, from peculiar constitutional idiosyncrasy, are more liable to ache than others. It sometimes happens that every tooth in the mouth is destroyed by caries without being affected with pain, while at other times, teeth apparently sound become the seat of the most agonizing torture.

TREATMENT.

The first thing to be attended to in the treatment of tooth-ache, is, the removal of the causes which have given rise to it, and this can only be done by carrying out the curative and remedial indications of the morbid conditions and functional disturbances which it attends. While these continue, it will be impossible to obtain permanent exemption from pain. The sensibility of the nerves supplying a tooth may often be obtunded, and the pain palliated by the application of stimulating and anodyne agents to the exposed pulp, but the relief thus procured is seldom of long duration. When their effects subside, the pain not unfrequently returns with increased severity. When the pain results from chronic inflammation and irritation produced by external agents on an exposed portion of the lining membrane, applications of this sort may be employed sometimes with great advantage; and, among those which have been used for this purpose, are, creosote, the oils of cloves, cinnamon, caj-

eput, &c., laudanum, spirits of camphor, tannin, ether and chloroform. But of the preparations prescribed by the author, he has found none more useful in allaying the pain than the following:

℞	Sul. ether,	ʒi.	℞	Sul. ether,	ʒi.
	Pul. camph.	ʒij.		Creosote,	ʒss.
	Pul. alum,	ʒij.		Ext. nut. galls,	ʒi.
	Sul. morphia,	℈i. Misce.		Pul. camph.	ʒss. Misce.

After removing all foreign matter from, and carefully drying, the cavity of the tooth, a small bit of raw cotton or lint saturated with either of the above may be applied, and renewed several times a day if necessary. The relief obtained by the application of either of the above preparations, is, in the majority of cases, almost instantaneous, but as the effect is only temporary a recurrence of the pain is liable to take place. Since the publication of the third edition of this work, the author has used, in many cases, a thick solution of *gutta percha* in chloroform. The application of a drop or two of this to the exposed pulp is generally followed by an immediate cessation of pain, and as the chloroform evaporates, a thin layer of gutta percha remains and serves for a time as a sort of protection to the pulp.

But the only way in which permanent exemption from pain can be procured, is, by the extraction of the tooth or the destruction of the pulp, and as there are many cases in which the patient cannot be prevailed upon to submit to the former, and as there are others in which the retention of the organ is called for by some peculiar necessity, it often becomes necessary to have recourse to the latter. This may be effected either by immediate extirpation with a small sharp-pointed elastic stilet or probe, the actual cautery, arsenious acid,* and cobalt, or chloride of zinc. But immediate extirpation, arsenic or cobalt are the

*The employment of arsenious acid for the destruction of an exposed dental pulp, and the relief of the pain resulting therefrom, originated with the late Dr. Spooner of Montreal, and in 1835, it was recommended to the profession by his brother, Dr. S. Spooner of New York, in an excellent popular treatise upon the teeth.

means usually employed for the purpose, and as we have described the manner in which the destruction of the pulp is effected by each of these, it will not be necessary to repeat what has been said upon the subject.*

Pain in a tooth arising from acute inflammation of the pulp and lining membrane, can only be removed by the extraction of the tooth, the destruction of the pulp, or by subduing the inflammatory action, and the last can seldom be done except in its very incipency, and then, only, by the most energetic treatment, in cases where the decay has not penetrated to the pulp-cavity. The propriety or impropriety of extraction will be determined by the amount of pain, the progress made by the inflammation, the condition of the parts with which the tooth is immediately connected, the effect of the local disturbance upon the general system, the situation and importance of the tooth, and the extent of structural alteration which has taken place in the crown. If the retention of it, on account of its location, or the loss of several other teeth, is of great importance to the patient, and the circumstance of the case justify a well-grounded belief that it can be preserved and rendered useful, without acting as a morbid irritant, the operation, if possible, should be avoided. In this case, supposing the inflammation to have proceeded too far to be arrested, the pulp may be destroyed and the tooth treated in the manner as described in another chapter, as it would be useless to procrastinate the suffering of the patient by instituting other treatment in the vain hope of avoiding an alternative, which, after all, may not enable the dentist to secure the permanent preservation of the organ. Indeed, after the lining membrane has become exposed, this is the only method of procedure, in any stage of the inflammation, which, with a view to the preservation of the tooth, holds out any prospect of success.

When the inflammation is produced by other causes than exposure of the pulp and contact of external irritants, it may be, sometimes, successfully combated. The treatment, in cases of this sort, is similar to that for local inflammation in other parts

* See Filling the Pulp-cavities and Roots of Teeth.

of the body, and should consist of saline cathartics, leeches to the gum of the affected tooth, abstinence from animal food and stimulating drinks. When the pulse is full and hard, blood may be taken from the arm with advantage. If these means fail to arrest it, and the inflammation be permitted to continue until suppuration takes place, the formation of an alveolar abscess may be prevented by promptly perforating the crown of the tooth for the escape of the matter, but when it has this termination, it always gives rise to periodontitis, which, perhaps, arises as frequently from this as any other cause.

The treatment of inflammation of the investing membrane is, for the most part, the same as above. But, in addition to which, the mouth may be gargled several times a day, with some cooling and astringent wash. Fomentations to the face and plasters of the seeds of hyoscyamus, mustard, capsicum and other narcotic and rubefacient applications have sometimes been found useful. But when the formation of alveolar abscess is threatened, the removal of the tooth, in most cases, will be found necessary. If it be an incisor or cuspidatus, however, the operation should only be performed as a last resort. When the inflammation is chronic, the necessity for the removal of the tooth is still more urgent.

Tooth-ache assuming a rheumatic or gouty form often calls for a somewhat different plan of treatment. In addition to the local means already described, it may be necessary to adopt the constitutional treatment applicable for rheumatism and gout as occurring in other parts of the body. When the pain results from increased vascular action and nervous irritation of the pulp, arising from a disordered condition of the digestive organs and assumes an intermittent form, an emetic or cathartic, followed by the use of quinine, will generally afford relief, provided caries has not penetrated to the pulp-cavity. If dependent on general nervous irritability of the system, tonics, exercise, change of air, and such other constitutional measures as the peculiarities of the case may indicate, should be recommended.

The extraction of the tooth is the only remedy that can be relied upon for relief of pain arising from exostosis of the root. Dr. Good, however, thinks it may be cured in the early stages by the use of leeches and mercurial ointment.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

EXTRACTION OF TEETH.

THERE are few operations in surgery that excite stronger feelings of dread, and to which most persons submit with more reluctance, than to the extraction of a tooth. Many endure the tortures of tooth-ache for weeks and even months rather than undergo the operation, and, when we take into consideration the accidents, of which we hear, as having attended its performance by awkward and unskillful individuals, it is not at all surprising that it should be approached with some degree of apprehension. But when performed by a skillful hand and with a suitable instrument, the operation is always safe, and in a large majority of the cases, may be effected with ease.

Dr. Fitch relates a case which will serve to illustrate the above remarks. The subject was a man residing in Botetourt county, Virginia, and in attempting to have the second superior molar, of the right side, extracted by a blacksmith, had a large portion of the jaw and five other teeth removed at the same time. "The fangs of his tooth," says Dr. F., "were greatly bifurcated and dove-tailed into the jaws, and would not pass perpendicularly out, though a slight lateral motion would have moved them instantly. The jaw proved too weak to support the monstrous pull upon it, and gave way between the second molar tooth and first molar, and, instantly, both the anterior and posterior plates of the antrum gave way. The fracture continued to the spongy bones of the nose, and terminated at the lower edge of the socket of the left front incisor, carrying out with the jaw, six sound teeth, namely, the first molar, the two bicuspids, one canine, one lateral, and one front incisor, six in all. The soft parts were cut

away with a knife. A severe hemorrhage ensued, but the patient soon recovered, though with excessive deformity of his face and mouth."*

Dr. Cross, of Jackson, Northampton county, North Carolina, related to the author in 1838 a case so very similar, to the one just quoted, that he was inclined to believe that it was the same, until he recollected that one occurred in Virginia, and the other, in the county in which Dr. C. resides. The operator in this, as in the other instance, was a blacksmith, who in attempting to extract one of the superior molar teeth, brought away a piece of the jaw, containing five other teeth, together with the floor, and the posterior and anterior plates of the antrum. The piece of bone thus detached, is now in the possession of a physician residing about eight miles from Jackson.

We have adverted to these cases, merely to show the impropriety and danger of entrusting the operation to individuals possessing neither knowledge of its principles, nor skill in its performance. Injuries of the jaws, occasioned by the operations of such persons, have frequently come under the immediate observation of the author, to whom it has always been a matter of surprise, that an operation to which such universal repugnance is felt, should ever be confided to such persons.

The removal of a wrong tooth, or two, or even three, instead of one, are such common occurrences, that it were well if the precautions given by the illustrious Ambrose Paré, met with more strict attention. So fearful was he of injuring the adjacent teeth, that he always isolated the tooth to be removed, with a file, before he attempted its removal. He regarded it as of the greatest importance, that a person, who extracted teeth, should be expert in the use of his "tooth mullets; for," says he, "unless he knows readily and cunningly how to use them, he can scarcely so carry himself, but that he will force out three teeth at once." Although great improvements have been made, since his time, in the construction of instruments for the extraction of teeth, yet even now the accidents to which he alludes, are almost of daily occurrence.

* *Fitch's Dental Surgery*, p. 347.

It is truly surprising, that an operation which is so frequently required, should receive so little attention from medical practitioners, by whom, though not strictly belonging to their province, it must frequently be performed. This neglect can only be accounted for, by the too general prevalence of the supposition, that little or no surgical tact is necessary for its performance. But every physician residing in the country, or where the services of a skillful dentist cannot always be commanded, should provide himself with the proper instruments, and make himself acquainted with the manner of performing the operation.

INDICATIONS FOR THE EXTRACTION OF TEETH.

With regard to the indications that determine the propriety of the operation in question, the author does not deem it necessary to say much, in this place, upon the subject, as they are so fully pointed out in other parts of the work. But, lest some of them may be overlooked, he will briefly mention, in this connection, a few of the circumstances which call for the operation.

Beginning with the teeth of first dentition, it will be sufficient to state, that when a tooth of replacement is about to emerge from the gums, or has actually made its appearance, either before or behind the corresponding temporary, the latter should, at once, be removed; and when the aperture formed by the loss of this is so narrow as to prevent the former from acquiring its proper position, it may sometimes be even necessary to extract an adjoining temporary tooth; but, for more explicit directions upon this subject, the reader is referred to what has been said on the management of second dentition. Alveolar abscess, necrosis of the walls of an alveolus, and pain in a temporary tooth, which cannot be assuaged by any of the usual remedies, may, also, be regarded as indications which call for the operation.

With regard to the indications which should determine the extraction of a permanent tooth, the following may be mentioned as constituting the principal:

First, when a molar, from the loss of its antagonizing teeth, or other causes, has become partially displaced, or is a source

of constant irritation to the surrounding parts, it should be removed.

Second, a constant discharge of fetid matter through a carious opening in the crown from the nerve cavity, and the canal of the root of a tooth, may, also, be regarded as an indication calling for the operation under consideration. There may, however, be circumstances which would justify a practitioner in yielding to the wishes of, or even advising his patient to permit the retention of such a tooth; as, for example, when the discharge of fetid matter from it is not very considerable, and the tooth is situated in the anterior part of the mouth, and cannot be securely replaced with an artificial substitute. The secretion of fetid matter, too, may, in some cases, by judicious treatment, be prevented; in this case, the tooth may, perhaps, be preserved for many years, by plugging, and the morbid influence which it would otherwise exert upon the surrounding parts, would then be counteracted. But, it is only in the fewest number of cases that such favorable results can be secured. A front tooth should not be sacrificed unless called for by some very urgent necessity, but neither an upper incisor nor cuspidatus should be permitted to remain in the mouth, if it exerts a manifest morbid influence upon the surrounding parts. In this case the effects resulting from its retention in the mouth would be worse than the loss of the tooth.

Third, a tooth which is the cause of abscess in its alveolus, should not, as a general rule, be permitted to remain in the mouth, but, as in the case last described, if it be an incisor or cuspidatus, and the discharge of matter through the gum is small, occurring only at long intervals, and, especially, if the organ cannot be securely replaced with an artificial substitute, it may be advisable to permit it to remain. But an abscess in the socket of a bicuspid or molar, may be considered as constituting a sufficient indication for the removal of a tooth.

Fourth, irregularity in the arrangement of the teeth, resulting from a disproportion between the size of the teeth and alveolar arch, is another indication which calls for the operation. But, with regard to the teeth which it is the most proper to remove, the reader is referred to the chapter on irregularity of

these organs. Here he will find full directions for the management of cases of this kind.

Fifth, all dead teeth and roots of teeth, and teeth which have become so much loosened from the destruction of their sockets as to be a constant source of disease to their adjacent parts, or teeth which are otherwise diseased, and are a cause of neuralgia of the face, a morbid condition of the maxillary sinus, dyspepsia, or any other local or constitutional disturbance, should, as a general rule, be extracted.

There are other indications which call for the extraction of teeth, but the foregoing are among the most common, and will be found sufficient, in most cases, to determine the propriety or impropriety of the operation. Cases are, however, continually presenting themselves, to which no rules that could be laid down would be found applicable, and where enlightened judgment, only, can determine the practice proper to be pursued.

In conclusion, it is scarcely necessary to say, that whenever a tooth can be restored to health, it should always be done, but tampering with such as cannot be rendered healthy and useful, and which, by remaining in the mouth, exert a deleterious influence, not only upon the adjacent parts, but also upon the general health, cannot be too strongly deprecated.

INSTRUMENTS EMPLOYED IN THE OPERATION.

Different operators employ different instruments. For about fifty years, the key of *Garengeot* was almost the only instrument used in the performance of the operation, but recently, this, in a great measure, has been superseded by forceps, which when properly constructed, are far preferable, yet as the key is still used by some practitioners, it may be well to give a brief description of it.

KEY INSTRUMENT.

The common tooth-key may be regarded in the light of a wheel and axle; the hand of the operator acting on two spokes of

the wheel, to move it, while the tooth is fixed to the axle by the claw, and is drawn out as the axle turns. The gum and alveolar process of the jaw, form the support on which the axle rolls.—*Arnott.*

Different dentists have their keys differently constructed, yet the principle upon which they all act is precisely the same. Some prefer the bent shaft, others the straight. Some give a decided preference to the round fulcrum, others to the flat, and though the success of the operator depends greatly upon the perfection of the instrument, yet he can remove a tooth more expertly by means of a key with which he is familiar, than one with which he is unaccustomed, though its construction be even better.

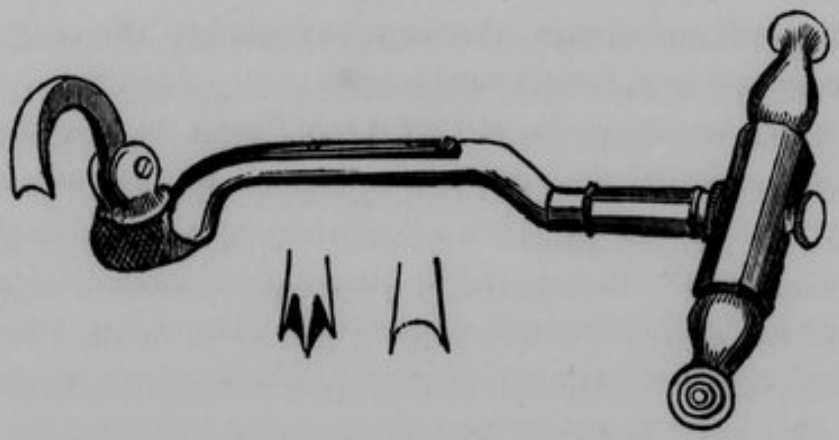
The author has tried almost every variety of key-instrument that has been used in this country, and he is of opinion that the straight shank with a small round fulcrum, is decidedly preferable to any other. The objection raised to its use by some, that it is liable to interfere with the front teeth, is without good foundation. It can be used with as much safety as a key of any construction, and, in most cases, can be as easily applied. The round is certainly preferable to the flat fulcrum, because it is less liable to injure the gums and the alveolus. Its size should be a little larger than a half-ounce bullet.

Every key instrument should be supplied with several hooks, differing in size, to correspond to that of the teeth upon which they are to be applied. The hook described by Dr. Maynard in No. 3, vol. 3, of Am. Jour. of Dental Science, is preferable to any which the author has seen. It very nearly resembles the eagle's claw, except that its curvature is rather greater. The edge of the point is about the sixteenth of an inch in width, and divided into two points, by a shallow notch, filled in the centre. A hook of this description is much less liable to slip, and can be more readily applied to a tooth than those ordinarily used.

But with regard to the merits of the key instrument, compared with the forceps presently to be described, the author must confess, he has a very poor opinion, or of any other instrument having the same principle of action. The following remarks

quoted from the late work of M. Desirabode, are in accordance with those which he has held and promulgated for many years.

Fig. 98.



In treating of the causes of fractures of the alveoli, he says, "one of the most common, it is necessary to say it, although not a very flattering acknowledgment from our art, is a badly performed operation in the mouth, and if it is necessary to specify cases, we would not hesitate to quote, in the first place, the use of the key of Garengeot; for we shall prove, in treating of the extraction of teeth, that this *dangerous* instrument, which is only fit to mask the unskillfulness of the operator, to the detriment of the operation, is one of the most defective of surgical instruments, and that no practitioner of good sense, being convinced of its mode of action, would attempt to employ it if he wished to extract a nail from a hole, if he did not desire to break the wall."

FORCEPS.

Forceps were not very generally or extensively employed, except for the extraction of the front teeth, until about the year 1830, but the improvements that have been made in their construction, since that period, are so great, that their use has now, among dental practitioners, almost altogether superseded that of the key.

The forceps formerly used, were so awkwardly shaped, and

Fig. 98, represents a key instrument with a bent shank and two hooks, one for molar and one for bicuspid teeth.

badly adapted to the teeth, that the extraction of a large molar with an instrument of this description, was regarded as so exceedingly difficult, and even dangerous, that, previous to 1830, its practicability was doubted by many of the most experienced practitioners, and hence, the key was almost the only instrument resorted to for this purpose.

When we consider the strong prejudices that so recently existed to the use of forceps, it is not at all wonderful that their employment should have been admitted by the profession with caution. Nor is it surprising that a gentleman of Mr. Bell's intelligence and practical experience, should, so late as the period of the publication of his work, 1830, tell us, that the key is the only instrument to be relied on for the removal of teeth that are much decayed, and that those who have heaped the most opprobrium upon it, are glad to have a concealed recourse to its aid.

This may have been true at the time Mr. B. wrote, but it is not now. On the contrary, cases are daily occurring of the extraction of teeth with forceps, upon which the key had been previously unsuccessfully employed. It is generally supposed, that a greater amount of force is necessary to remove a tooth with forceps, than with the key, but this is a mistake. It does not ordinarily require so much. All that is gained by the lever action of the key, is more than counterbalanced by the greater amount of resistance encountered in the lateral direction of the force exerted by that instrument in the removal of the tooth. But with the forceps, the direction of the force being perpendicular, either upwards or downwards, as the tooth may happen to be in the upper or lower jaw, a sufficient amount only to break up the connection with the socket, and to overcome the resistance of the walls of the alveolus, is required.

The author has used forceps, to the exclusion of the key, since 1833, and he does not hesitate to affirm, that any tooth that can be extracted with the latter, can also be removed with the former, if properly constructed, and that, too, in the majority of cases, with greater ease to the operator, and less pain to the patient. He knows that, in this expression of opinion, he differs from many of his professional brethren; and

that there are many skillful and experienced practitioners, who, while they prefer the forceps for the extraction of most teeth, still occasionally use the key. But he is confident, that, if they would provide themselves with forceps properly constructed for the extraction of the teeth, which they now remove with the key, and use them for six months to the exclusion of that instrument, they would never employ it again. He could mention the names of more than fifty, who, at his instance, have done this, and the result has been, that they have wholly abandoned its use.

It may perhaps require a little more practice to become skilled in the use of forceps, than in that of the key. We would, therefore, advise those who have been accustomed to the key, not to lay it at once entirely aside; but to commence the use of forceps on teeth that are least difficult to remove, as for example, the bicuspids, and then afterwards upon the molars.

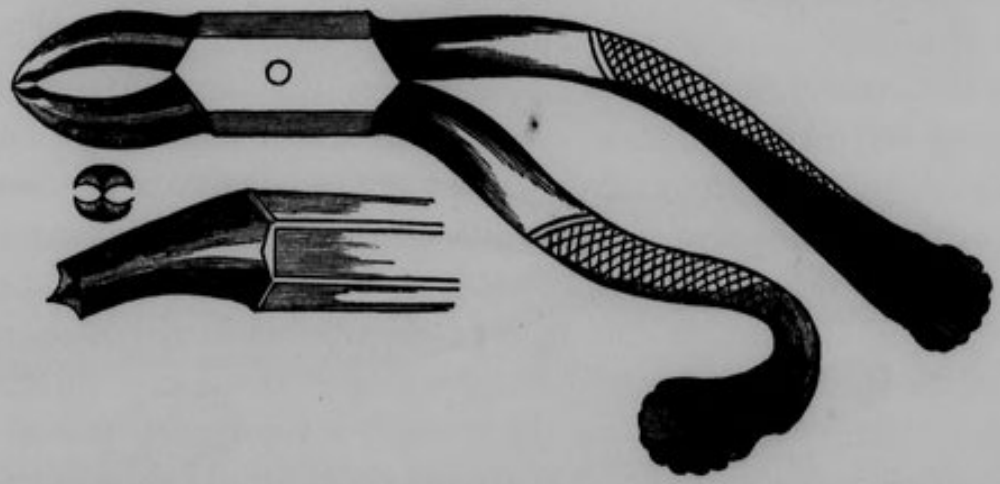
But, in order that the forceps may be used with ease, it is necessary that they should be of a proper shape and construction. Every operator should possess several pair, (seven at least,) each with a differently shaped beak, fitted to the necks of the teeth to which they are respectively designed to be applied.

For the extraction of the molars, the forceps recommended by Mr. Snell, are the best in use. His forceps, for the upper molars, are two in number, one for each side, curved just below the joint, so that the jaws of the beak will form an angle with the handles, of about twenty or twenty-five degrees, just enough to clear the lower teeth. The inner blade is grooved so as to fit the palatine side of the neck of one of these teeth; the outer blade has two grooves with a point in the centre to fit the depression just below the bifurcation of the two buccal roots.

Each blade of the beak of his lower molar forceps has two grooves, with a point in the centre, so situated, that in grasping the tooth, it comes between the two roots just at the bifurcation. Mr. Snell employs two pair for the extraction of the lower, as well as for the upper molars, in order, as he says, to have a "hook to turn round the little finger," which he supposes must be on opposite sides of the instrument. But this is rendered unnecessary by an improvement made by the author in

the year 1833, which consists in having the handles of the instrument so bent that it may be as readily applied to one side of the mouth as the other, while the operator occupies a position at the right and a little behind the patient. By this improvement, the necessity for two pair is wholly superseded, and it moreover enables the operator to control the head of his patient with his left arm, and the lower jaw with his left hand, rendering the aid of an assistant wholly unnecessary.

Fig. 99.

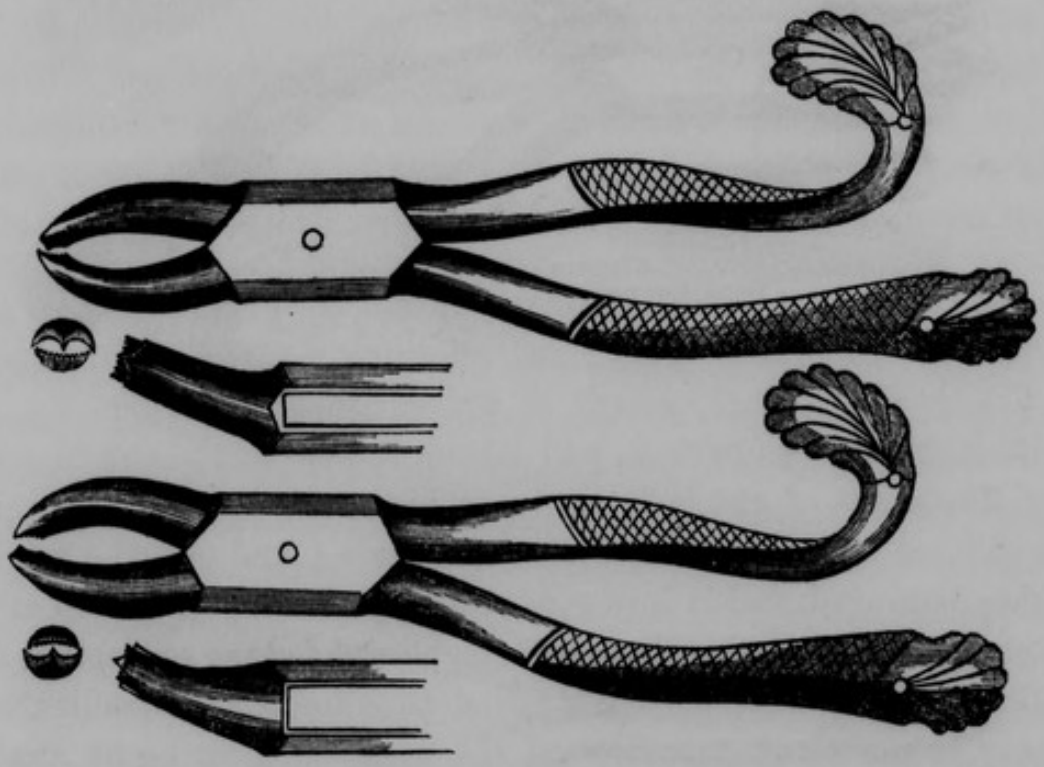


The shape of the instrument, as improved by the author, is exhibited in the accompanying engraving, and all who use it thus improved, and it is now used by hundreds, prefer it to any other instrument they have ever employed for the extraction of the lower molars. When applied to a tooth, the handles, as may be perceived, turn toward the operator, forming an angle with the median line of the mouth, of about twenty-five or thirty degrees. Without this curvature in the handles of the instrument, the arm of the operator would often be thrown so far from his body, as to prevent him from exercising the control over it, frequently required in the performance of the operation. And, while it is important that they should be bent in the manner here represented, they should, at the same time, be wide and accurately fitted to the hand.

The improvements made by Mr. Snell in the shape of the beaks of the upper and lower molar forceps, are very valuable, and for which he is entitled to much credit—more than the profession, generally, seem willing to award. Another, and very

valuable improvement of his, consists in having one of the handles bent so as to form a hook. This passes round the little finger of the hand of the operator, to prevent it from slipping. In the drawings which Mr. Snell has given of his superior molar forceps, the hook is on the palatine handle of each, so that in the extraction of a right upper molar, the upper side of the instrument must be grasped, and the lower side in the extraction of a left upper molar. But the author has found that by having the handle so bent, that when applied, the hook of each

Fig. 100.

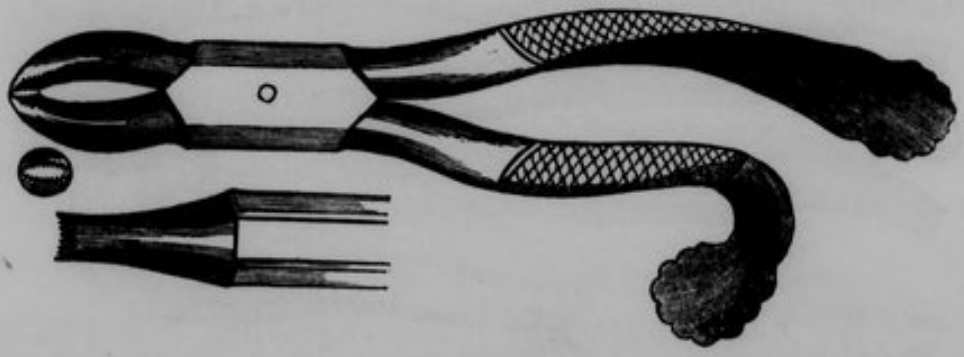


is next the operator, they can be more conveniently employed; and, as in the case of the lower molar forceps, the handles should be wide, and large enough to prevent them from springing under the grasp of his hand; to which, too, they should be accurately fitted. The beak should be bent no more than is absolutely necessary to prevent the handles from coming in contact with the teeth of the lower jaw; for in proportion to the greatness of the curvature, will the force required to be applied to the instrument, be disadvantageously exerted. Every dentist, therefore, in having forceps manufactured, should give special directions with regard to their shape and size. For the extraction of the superior molars, two forceps, as has been

before stated, are necessary; one for the right and one for the left side, as represented in Fig. 100.

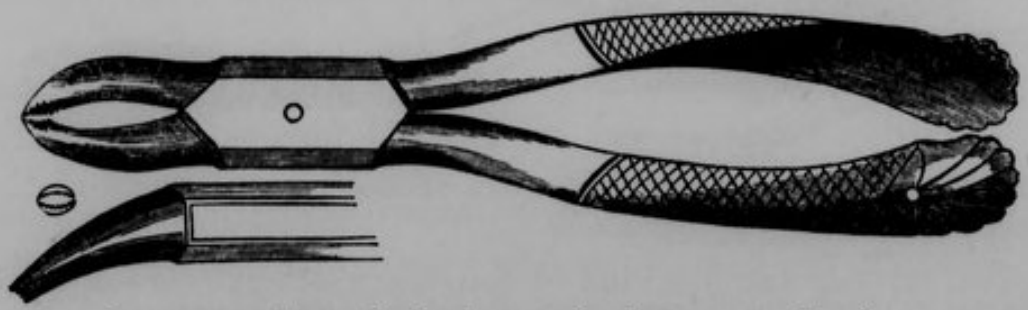
For the extraction of the upper incisors and cuspidati, one pair of forceps only is necessary. These should be straight, with grooved or crescent-shaped jaws, accurately fitted to the necks of the teeth. They should also be thin, so that, when it becomes necessary, from the decay of the tooth, they may be

Fig. 101.



easily introduced under the gum, up to the edge of the alveolus. And like the superior and inferior molar forceps, the handles should be large enough to prevent them from springing in the hand of the operator, and a hook formed at the end of one of them.

Fig. 102.

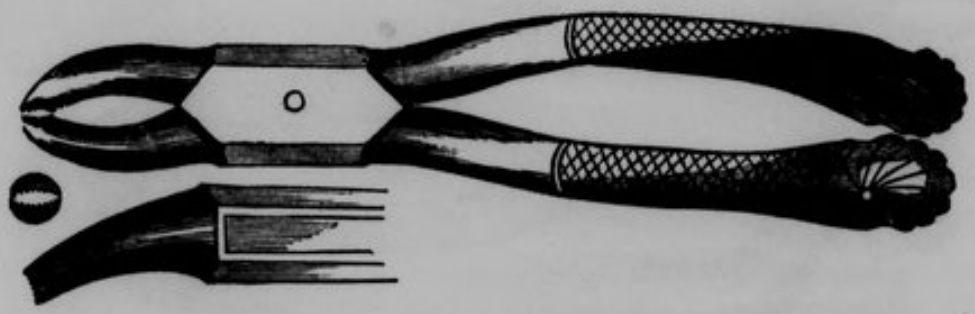


For the extraction of the lower incisors, a pair of very narrow beaked forceps are necessary, in order to prevent interfering with the teeth adjoining the one to be removed. The beak below the joint of the instrument, should be bent downward so as to form an angle of about twenty-five degrees, with the handles, (Fig. 102.) This, too, is one of the most useful instruments that can be employed for the extraction of the roots of teeth.

Forceps for the extraction of the bicuspids should have their jaws so bent as to be easily adapted to these teeth; they should

be narrow, and have a deeper groove on the inside than those for the upper incisors and cuspidati, and like them they should be thin, yet strong enough to sustain the pressure which it may be necessary to apply to them. One pair will answer for the bicuspids of both jaws, but when only one pair is employed,

Fig. 103.



both handles must be straight. The engraving, Fig. 103, represents the instrument here described.

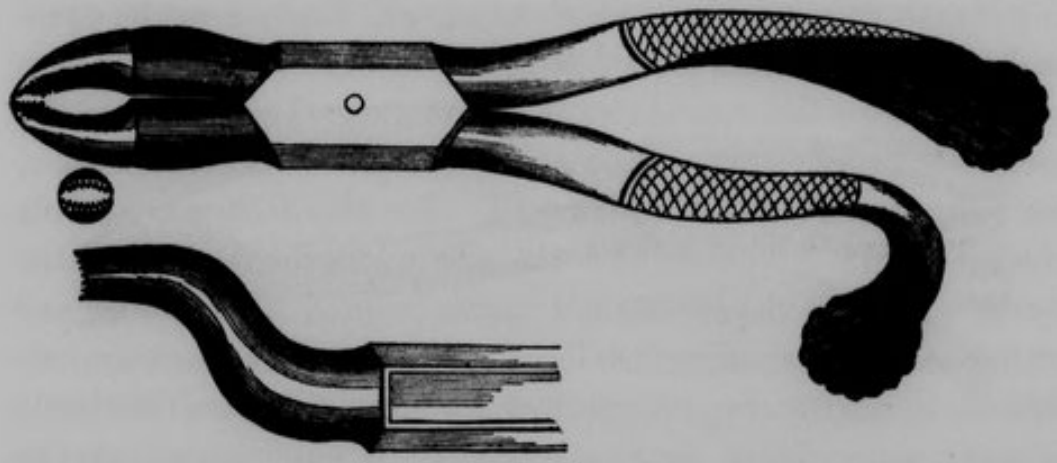
For the removal of the cuspidati of the lower jaw, the hawk's-bill forceps, with crescent-shaped beaks, are often employed, but the instrument last described, and represented in Fig. 103, is better suited to the extraction of these teeth, and can be more conveniently applied and used than the other. No other instrument, therefore, is required for the removal of the inferior cuspidati.

The dentes sapientiæ, also, in a large majority of cases, can be as readily extracted with the bicuspid forceps, as any other, and these can be as conveniently applied to the teeth of the upper as to those of the lower jaw.

But there is another kind of forceps, which can be employed for the removal of the upper dentes sapientiæ, when the bicuspid forceps cannot be applied. The beak of these is bent above the joint, so as to form nearly two right angles, as shown in Fig. 104. These forceps, we believe, were invented by the late Dr. Edward P. Church, about the year 1830, and in those cases where the superior dentes sapientiæ are considerably shorter than the second molars, they can be successfully and advantageously employed, and oftentimes when they cannot be

reached with any other extracting instrument.* These forceps are also useful in the extraction of roots of teeth, situated behind a bicuspid or molar tooth which has a very long crown.

Fig. 104.



A great variety of forceps and other instruments have been invented, and are used for the extraction of teeth; but the author has not seen any comparable with those which he has just described. Seven pair are all that are really necessary in the performance of the operation; and these, if properly constructed, are better and more efficient than thirty pair of the awkwardly contrived forceps which many practitioners use.

The handles of a pair of forceps should be no longer than is absolutely necessary for the accommodation of the hand of the operator.

In conclusion, we would remark, that Mr. Arnold, Dental and Surgical Instrument Maker, of Baltimore, is in possession of patterns of all the forceps which we use; and that he manufactures them in the neatest and most substantial manner.

*Dr. Church was an ingenious and talented man, and during his brief professional career—a period of about four years, he acquired a reputation for skill, which but few, in so short a time, have ever been able to achieve, and had his life been spared, he would at this time have ranked among the very first practitioners in the country. Born in the western part of the state of New York, he chose the Mississippi valley as a temporary field for his professional labors, intending ultimately to locate in Cincinnati, but during the prevalence of the Asiatic cholera, in 1832, he fell a victim to this ruthless destroyer, while on a visit to his family, in New York, in the 26th or 27th year of his age.

MANNER OF USING THE KEY INSTRUMENT.

The directions required for the use of the key are few and simple; but as cases frequently present themselves to which no general rules can be applied, much will depend on the practical judgment and surgical tact of the operator. The first step to be taken in the operation, is, to separate the gum from the neck of the tooth down to the alveolus, and this should be done, not only on two sides, but all round. For this purpose, suitable knives should be provided. On the approximal sides of the tooth, a straight narrow-bladed knife, pointed at the end, and with one cutting edge, will be found most convenient and effectual, in performing this part of the operation; and it should be used, as described by Dr. Maynard, by passing the point in between the neck of the tooth and gum, down to the alveolus, with its back downwards, and cutting from the direction of the roots towards the coronal extremity of the tooth. In this way, the adhesion of the gum to the approximal sides of the neck of the tooth may be thoroughly severed. The same kind of knife or a common gum-lancet, may be used for separating the gum from the lingual or palatine, and buccal sides of the tooth. If this precaution be neglected, there will be danger of lacerating the gum in the removal of the tooth.

After the tooth has been thus prepared, the key, with the proper hook attached, should be firmly fixed upon it; the bolster, on the inside, resting upon the edge of the alveolus, the extremity of the claw, on the opposite side, pressed down upon the neck. The handle of the instrument should now be grasped with the right hand, and the tooth, by means of a firm, steady rotation of the wrist, raised from its socket. In order to prevent the claw from slipping, (an accident that too frequently occurs,) it should be pressed down with the fore-finger or thumb of the left hand of the operator, until, by the rotation of the instrument, it becomes securely fixed to the tooth.

If the tooth be situated on the left side of the mouth, the position of the operator should be at the right side of the patient; but, if it be on the right side of the mouth, he should stand before him.

For the removal of a tooth, on the left side of the lower jaw, or the right side in the upper, the palm of the hand should be beneath the handle of the instrument; and *vice versa*, in the extraction of one on the right side in the lower jaw, or on the left side in the upper. The manner of grasping the instrument is, perhaps, of more consequence than many imagine. If it be not properly done, the operator loses, to a great extent, his control over it, and applies the power disadvantageously.

The directions here given are, in some respects, different from those laid down by other writers; yet, we are convinced from much experience, that they will be found more conducive to the convenience of the operator and the success of the operation, than those usually given for the use of this instrument.

There is a great diversity of opinion, as to whether a tooth should be removed inwards or outwards. Some direct the fulcrum of the instrument to be placed on the outside of the tooth, others on the inside, while others again, regard it as of but little importance on which side it is placed. But experience has taught us that the fulcrum should, generally, be placed on the inside, especially of the lower teeth, as they almost always incline towards the interior of the mouth. Moreover, the alveolar parietes of these teeth are usually a little higher on the exterior edge of the jaw than on the interior; so, that the first motion of the instrument, with its fulcrum on the outside, brings the side of the tooth against its socket, and thus, nearly double the amount of power is required to remove it; while, at the same time, the pain, and the chances of injury to the alveolar processes, are very much increased.

The alveolar walls of the upper teeth are, generally, thinner than those of the lower, and do not afford so strong a support to the fulcrum of the instrument.

It is, however, frequently necessary to place the bolster of the instrument on the outside of the tooth; especially when it is decayed in such a way, as not to afford a sufficiently firm support for the claw of the instrument on this side of the tooth. But, whenever it is possible to remove a tooth inwards, it should be done.

MANNER OF USING THE FORCEPS.

In describing the manner of using these instruments, we shall commence with the extraction of the incisors of the upper jaw. These are generally more easily removed than any of the other teeth.

After separating the gum, in the manner as described in another place, from the neck of the tooth, the latter should be grasped with a pair of straight forceps, like those represented in Fig. 101, and pressed several times, in quick succession, outwards and inwards, giving it at the same time, a slight rotary motion, which should be continued until it begins to give way; when, by a slight pull downwards, it is easily removed.

If the tooth is much decayed, it should be grasped as high up under the gum as possible, and no more pressure applied to the handles of the instrument, than may be necessary to prevent it from slipping. Teeth are often unnecessarily broken by not attending to this precaution.

The same directions will, in most cases, be found applicable for the removal of a lower incisor. But the arrangement of these teeth are sometimes such as to render their extraction rather more difficult. The forceps best calculated for the removal of these are represented in Fig. 102.

For the extraction of a cuspidatus, much greater force is usually required, than for the removal of an incisor. The straight forceps (see Fig. 101) should be employed for the removal of the superior, and curved-beaked forceps (see Fig. 103) for the inferior cuspidati. But in the extraction of one of these teeth, less rotary motion should be given to the hand than in the removal of a tooth situated in the front of the mouth. In every other respect, the operation should be conducted in the same manner. The inferior cuspidati, generally, have longer roots, and are, usually, more difficult to remove than the superior.

Very little rotary motion can be given to a bicuspid, especially an upper, in its extraction. After it has been pressed outwards and inwards several times, or until it begins to give way, it should be removed by depressing or elevating the hand, as it

may happen to be in the upper or lower jaw; but for the extraction of the upper, the forceps represented in Fig. 101, and for the lower, those represented in Fig. 103, are the proper instruments to be employed in the operation, except the crown has become so much weakened by decay, as to be unable to bear the requisite amount of pressure. In this case, the gum should be separated on each side, from the alveolus, about an eighth or three-sixteenths of an inch above its margin, and slitted so as to admit of the application of the narrow-beaked forceps, Fig. 102. With these, the alveolar walls on each side, may be easily cut through, and a sufficiently firm hold obtained upon the root of the tooth, for its removal. These forceps will also be found the most efficient instruments for the removal of any of the back teeth or cuspidati, when in a similar condition, that can be employed.

The upper molars, having three roots, generally require a greater amount of force for their removal than any of the other teeth. They should be grasped as high up as possible, with one of the forceps represented in Fig. 100, and then pressed outwards and inwards, until they become well loosened, when they may be pulled from their sockets. If the forceps used for the extraction of these teeth are of the right description, and properly applied, they will be found the safest and most efficient instruments that can be employed for their removal.

The superior dentes sapientiæ are generally less firmly articulated to the jaw than are the first and second molars, and are, therefore, more easily removed than either of the last mentioned teeth. When their crowns are sufficiently long to admit of being grasped with the bicuspid forceps, (see Fig. 103,) they should be removed with this instrument, but when it cannot be applied without interfering with the teeth anterior to these, the forceps represented in Fig. 104, should be substituted.

The inferior molars, although they have but two roots, are often very firmly articulated, and require considerable force for their removal, and it sometimes happens, that when the approximal side of one has been destroyed by caries, the adjoining tooth has approached it, and rests on it in such a manner as to

constitute a formidable obstacle to its extraction. Two teeth are often removed in attempting to extract one when thus situated, when the precaution of filling the side of the encroaching tooth has not been previously used. This should never be omitted, in the extraction of a lower molar or bicuspid, when locked down in the manner just described. And, though less frequently, it sometimes happens that the upper teeth impinges upon each other in the same manner, and when this occurs, the adjoining tooth should be filed sufficiently to liberate the one that is to be extracted, before attempting its removal. In applying the forceps to an inferior molar, the points on the ends of the blades of the beak of the instrument should be forced down between its roots, and, after having obtained a firm hold, the tooth should be forced outwards and inwards, several times, until its connection with the jaw is partially broken up, and then lifted from its socket. If the tooth has decayed off down to its neck, the upper edge of the alveolus may be included between the points of the beak of the instrument, through which they will readily pass on applying pressure to the handles, and in this manner a secure hold will be obtained upon the tooth. The same should also be done in the extraction of a superior molar when in this condition.

The dentes sapientiæ in the lower jaw, when situated far back under the coronoid processes, are oftentimes exceedingly difficult to extract, but with forceps, like those represented in Fig. 102, they may always be grasped, by a little tact on the part of the operator, except in those cases where their crowns have been destroyed by caries, when a portion of the alveoli should be cut away, either with the forceps, or a strong sharp-pointed instrument, previously to attempting their removal. It occasionally happens, too, that the roots of these teeth are bent in such a manner as to constitute a considerable obstacle to their removal. But when this is the case, the roots are almost always turned posteriorily towards the coronoid processes, so that after starting the tooth, if the operator is unable to lift it perpendicularly from its socket, he will have reason to suspect its retention to be owing to an obstacle of this nature. To over-

come this, as he raises his hand, he should push the crown of the tooth backwards, so as to make the organ, in its passage from the alveolus, describe the segment of a circle; for should he persist in his efforts to remove it directly upwards, the root will be broken and left in the jaw.

It sometimes happens, too, that the roots of the first and second molars of both jaws, and those of the superior dentes sapientiæ, are bent, or diverge, or converge so much as to render their extraction exceedingly difficult. The convergency of these is often so great, that in their removal the intervening wall of the alveolus is brought away, but neither from this, nor from the removal of a portion of the exterior wall, does any unpleasant consequences ever result. Similar mal-conformations are occasionally met with in the roots of the bicuspids, the cuspidati, and even the incisor teeth.

Other obstacles sometimes present themselves in the extraction of teeth, which the judgment and tact of the operator only will enable him to overcome. The nature and peculiarity of each case, will suggest the method of procedure most proper to be pursued in the performance of the operation. The practitioner should never hesitate, whenever it is necessary to enable him to obtain a firm hold upon the tooth, to embrace a portion of the alveolus between the jaws of the forceps. The removal of the upper edge of the socket, is never productive of injury, as it is always, soon after the extraction of the tooth, destroyed by a peculiar operation of the economy. By this means, when the crown of a tooth has become so much weakened by disease as to be unable to bear the pressure of the instrument, it may, in every instance, be immediately removed; and that, too, without inflicting upon the patient, half the amount of pain, that would be caused by attempting to remove it in any other manner. Finally, I would remark, that in every instance, the gum should be completely separated from the neck of the tooth before any attempt is made to extract it.

MANNER OF EXTRACTING ROOTS OF TEETH.

The extraction of roots of teeth is sometimes attended with considerable difficulty; but, generally, they can be more easily removed than whole teeth, and especially those of the molars, for after the destruction of their crowns, an effort is usually made by the economy to expel them from the jaws. This, as has been stated in another place, consists in the gradual destruction and filling up of the socket, by a deposition of ossific matter at the bottom, whereby the articulation of the root becomes weakened, and its removal rendered proportionably easier. The alveolar cavities are often wholly obliterated in the course of two or three years after the destruction of the crowns of the teeth, and the roots retained in the mouth, simply by their connection with the gums, so that for their removal, little more is necessary than to sever this bond of union with a lancet or sharp-pointed knife.

Fig. 105.

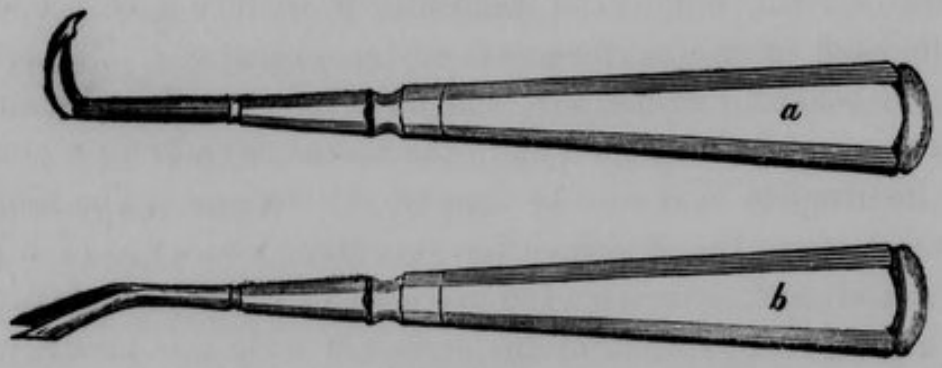
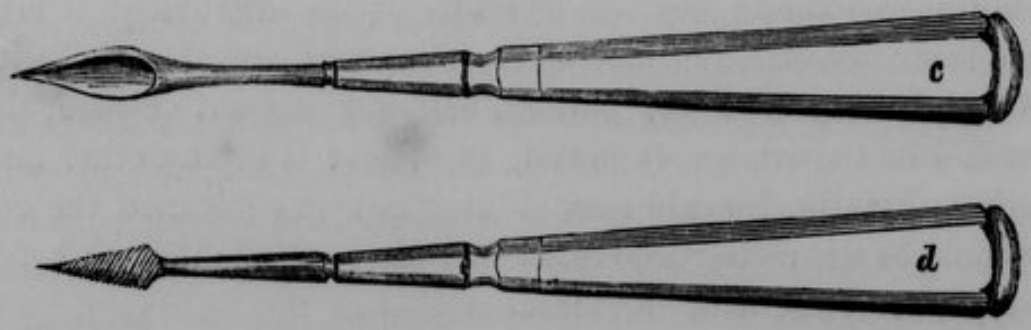


Fig. 106.



The instruments usually employed in the extraction of roots of teeth, are, the hook, punch, elevator and screw; all of which are represented in Figs. 105 and 106. Although every dentist has them made to suit his own peculiar notions, the manner of using them, and the principle upon which they act, are the same.

It will therefore be sufficient to say, that they should be of a convenient size, made of good steel, and so tempered as neither to bend nor break.

The hook *a*, Fig. 105, is chiefly used for the extraction of the roots of the molar and bicuspid teeth on the left side of the mouth; the punch *b*, Fig. 105, for the removal of roots on the right side; the elevator *c*, Fig. 106, for the extraction of roots on either side, as occasion may require; and the screw *d*, Fig. 106, for the removal of the upper front teeth.

Considerable tact is necessary for the skillful use of these instruments, and this can only be obtained by practice. Great care is requisite in using the punch and elevator to prevent them from slipping and injuring the mouth of the patient. Whenever, therefore, either of these are used, the fore-finger of the left hand of the operator should be wrapped with a cotton or linen rag, and placed on the side of the root opposite to that against which the instrument is applied, so as to catch the point of it in case it should slip.

But, for the removal of the roots of the bicuspid and molar teeth, and often for those of the cuspidati and incisors, the narrow beaked forceps, recommended for the extraction of the lower incisors, (see Fig. 102,) is the most efficient and successful instrument that can be employed. When the root is decayed down to the alveolus, the gum should be separated from the latter, and so much of it as may be necessary to obtain a secure hold upon the former, included between the blades of the beak of the forceps, which, from their being very narrow, readily pass through it, and a firm hold is at once obtained upon the root; when, after moving it a few times, outwards and inwards, it may be easily removed from its socket. There are some cases, however, in which the punch, hook and elevator may be advantageously used. We have also occasionally met with cases where we have succeeded in removing roots of teeth with great ease, with an elevator shaped like the blade of a knife, by forcing it into the socket by the side of the root, and then turning it so as to make the back press against the former and the edge against the latter. When this instrument, as represented in Fig. 107, is used, the blade should not be

more than an inch in length; and it should be straight, short at the point, and have a very thick back, in order to prevent it from breaking in the operation. In using the common elevator, it is

Fig. 107.



necessary that there should be an adjoining tooth or root, to act as a fulcrum. When this can be obtained, a root, or even a whole tooth, may sometimes be removed with it; but as a general rule, the forceps should be preferred to any of these instruments.

For the extraction of the roots of the upper front teeth, after they have become so much funneled out by decay, as to render their walls incapable of sustaining the pressure of the forceps, the screw is invaluable. This is of a conical shape, and with it, a sufficiently firm hold can be obtained for its removal, by screwing it up into the cavity of the root. But before it is introduced, the softened decomposed bone should be removed from the interior of the root, with a triangular pointed instrument like the one represented in Fig. 108.

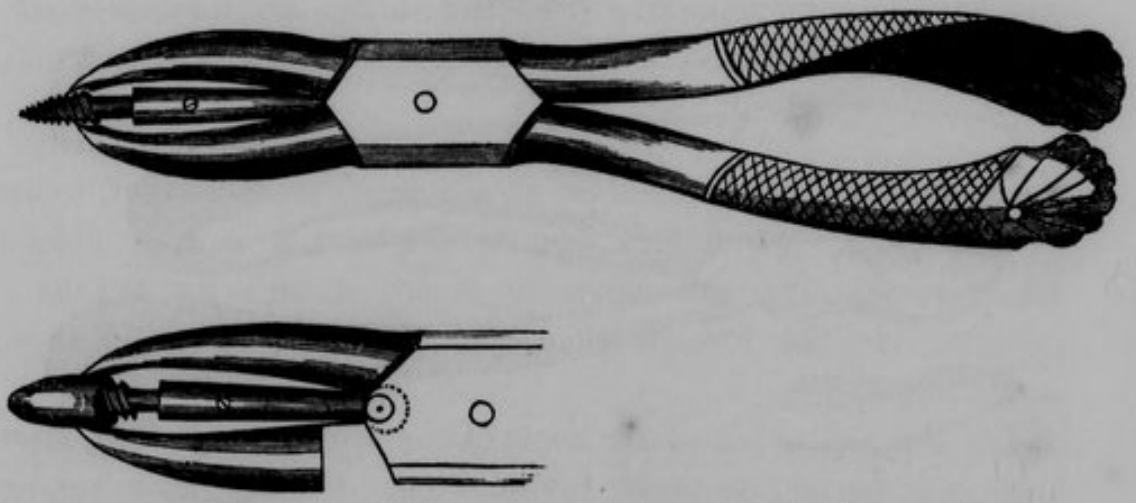
Fig. 108.



Dr. S. P. Hullihen has invented a most valuable and useful instrument for the removal of the roots of the superior incisors and cuspidati, when in the condition just described. It combines the advantages both of the screw and forceps, as may be seen by the accompanying cut. It is thus described by the author: "Lengthwise, within and between the blades of the beak, is a steel tube, one end of which is open; the other solid and flat, and jointed in a mortice in the male part of the joint of the forceps. When the forceps are opened, this joint permits the tube to fall backwards and forwards from one blade of the beak to the other, without any lateral motion. Within this tube is a spiral spring, which forces up a shaft two-thirds of the

tube, the other part is a well tapered or conical screw. * * * * The shaft and tube are so fitted together, and to the beak of the forceps, that one-half of the rounded part of the shaft pro-

Fig. 109.



jects beyond the end of the tube; so that the shaft may play up and down upon the spring" about half an inch, and the screw or shaft be embraced between the blades of the beak of the instrument.

The instrument here represented, (see Fig. 109,) differs a little from Dr. Hullihen's, in the manner of its construction, though it acts upon precisely the same principle.

"The forceps," says Dr. H., "are used, by first embracing the shaft between the blades."* "Then screwing it as gently and deeply into the root as possible, the blades are opened—pushed up on the root, which is then seized" and extracted.

"The screw thus combined with the forceps," as is justly remarked by Dr. H., "prevents the root from being crushed. It acts as a powerful lever when a lateral motion is given; it is likewise of advantage when a rotary motion is made—it prevents the forceps from slipping, or of their action being lost, should even one side of the root give way in the act of extracting it—and is used with equal advantage where one side of the root is entirely gone."

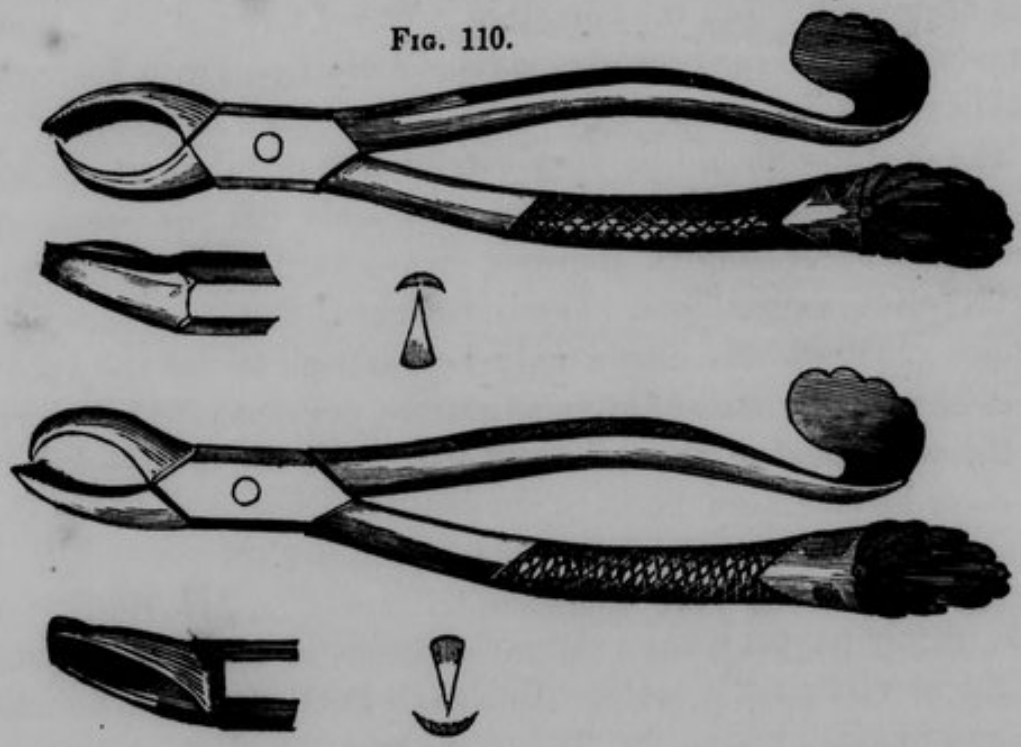
The opportunities which the author has had of testing the value of this instrument, have been sufficient to justify him in

* The author has a pair constructed so that the upper extremity of the screw is grasped between the blades of the beak of the forceps, instead of the shaft.

stating that its merits are not overrated by the inventor. Every practitioner would, therefore, do well to provide himself with one of them.

For the extraction of the roots of the upper molars, before they have become separated from each other, the forceps represented in Fig. 110, and invented by Dr. Maynard, will be found

Fig. 110.



highly valuable. The outer nib of each instrument is brought to a sharp point, for perforating the alveolus between the outer roots of the teeth and for securing between them, a firm hold, while the inner nib is intended to rest upon the edge of the alveolus and embrace the palatine fang. By this means a sufficiently firm hold is secured to enable the operator to remove the roots of an upper molaris without difficulty; two pair, as represented in the engraving, one for the right and one for the left side, are required. The advantage to be derived from forceps of this description, in the extraction of the superior molars, when in the condition as above described, must be apparent to every practitioner of dental surgery. When properly applied, they will always enable him to remove an upper molar at once, and by a single effort.

EXTRACTION OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH.

The temporary teeth should be extracted in the same manner as the permanent ones, and with the same instruments. If the power be properly directed, very little force is required for their removal, because the roots of these teeth are generally more or less destroyed before the operation is called for, and when they remain, the alveolar processes, at this early age, are so soft and yielding, as to offer very little resistance to their extraction.

The operator should be very careful not to injure the pulps of the permanent teeth, or the jaw-bone. Serious accidents sometimes occur from an improper or awkward removal of these teeth. But, as has been before remarked, their extraction is seldom required. It should only be resorted to for the relief of tooth-ache, the cure of alveolar abscess, to prevent irregularity in the permanent teeth, or in case of necrosis of the socket.

HEMORRHAGE AFTER EXTRACTION.

It rarely happens, that excessive hemorrhage is occasioned by the extraction of a tooth. Indeed, it is oftener more desirable to promote bleeding by rinsing the mouth with warm water, than to attempt its suppression. Nevertheless, cases do sometimes occur, in which it becomes excessive and alarming; and it has even been known, in some instances, to terminate fatally.

Excessive hemorrhage from the extraction of a tooth, does not appear to be dependent upon the manner in which a tooth is extracted, but rather upon a hemorrhagic diathesis of body. Hence, whenever a tendency to it exhibits itself in one member of a family, it is usually found to exist in all. Of the many cases which have fallen under our own observation, we shall mention only one.

In the fall of 1834, Miss I——, a young lady of about fifteen years of age, called on us to remove the second molar on the left side of the upper jaw. The hemorrhage, immediately after the operation, was not much greater than that which usually occurs, and in the course of half or three-quarters of an hour, it altogether subsided. But at about twelve o'clock on

the following night, it commenced again, in such a manner as to excite considerable alarm. A messenger was immediately sent to ask our advice, and we directed the alveolar cavities to be filled with pledgets of lint, saturated with the tinct. of nut galls. Two days after, at about six o'clock in the morning, we were hastily sent for by the young lady's mother, and on our arrival at her residence, were informed that the bleeding had then been going on for about four hours; and that during this time, more than two quarts of blood had been discharged. The blood was still oozing very fast. After we had removed the coagulum, we filled the alveolus with pieces of sponge, saturated, as the lint had been, with tinct. of nut galls. When the pieces of sponge had been firmly pressed in, and secured by a compress, the hemorrhage immediately ceased. These were permitted to remain until they were expelled by the suppurative and granulative processes.

We afterwards had occasion to extract a tooth for a sister, and two for the mother of the young lady, and a bleeding, similar to that just described, occurred in each case.

We have had, perhaps, some fifteen or twenty cases of this description, but never found it necessary, except in one instance, to adopt any other course of treatment than that detailed in the case just narrated. More powerful remedies, however, are sometimes employed. Some use a solution of the sul. cupri, or of the nitrate of silver, while others employ the actual cautery. But if pressure be so applied, as to act directly upon the mouths of the bleeding vessels, it will almost always arrest the hemorrhage. The author has, in two cases, found it necessary to have recourse to the actual cautery.

The following case is quoted by Dr. Fitch, from *Le Dentiste Observateur, par H. G. Courtois*, Paris, 1775.

"A person, living in Paris, called on me to extract a canine tooth for him. On examining his mouth, I thought that this man was attacked with scurvy; but this did not seem sufficient to hinder the person from having his tooth extracted, much less would he have consented to it on account of the pain which his tooth gave him. After the tooth was extracted, it did not appear to me that it bled more profusely than is customary after

similar operations. In the meanwhile, the following night, I was called upon to see the patient, who had continued to bleed ever since he left me. I employed, for stopping this hemorrhage, the agaric of the oak bark, which I commonly used with success. The following day I was again sent for; the bleeding still continued. After having disburdened the mouth of all the lint pledgets, which I used for making compression at the place where the blood appeared to come from, I made the patient take some mouthfuls of water to clear his mouth of all the clots of blood with which it was filled; I perceived, then, that the blood came no more from the place where I had extracted the tooth, but from the gums; there was not a single place in the whole mouth from which the blood did not issue. I called in the physician, who ordered several bleedings in succession to each other, besides astringents, which were taken inwardly; and gargles, of the same nature were used; but all these remedies, like all the others he took to give the blood more consistence, were all used to no purpose. It was not possible to stop this hemorrhage. The patient died the ninth or tenth day after the extraction of the tooth."

Mr. Snell mentions a similar case, which also terminated fatally.

CHAPTER NINTH.

ATROPHY OF THE TEETH.

THAT peculiar structural alteration of the teeth, designated by the term atrophy, is less frequent in its occurrence than any other disease to which these organs are liable, and as the progress of the affection usually terminates with the action of the causes concerned in its production, it has scarcely been deemed of sufficient importance to merit serious consideration. Hence neither its ætiology nor pathology has been very carefully investigated. Indeed, most writers upon the diseases of the teeth have overlooked the affection altogether, while a few have only merely alluded to it, without describing the characteristics even of its principal varieties. Whether we shall now be able to throw any additional light upon it, or establish the correctness of any opinions already advanced, or not, we shall leave to others to determine.

The strict application of the term atrophy, as the two principal varieties of the affection consist rather in a congenital defect, most frequently of some portion of the enamel of two or more of the teeth, than wasting from want of nourishment, of any of the dental tissues, may, perhaps, be considered as somewhat questionable. And this would seem to be rendered still more so by the fact, that neither of the varieties to which we have referred, occurs subsequently to the formation of the enamel. But as the congenital form of the disease is evidently the result of altered function in a portion of one or more of the formative organs, if not of absolute degeneration, from vicious nutrition, we are disposed to regard the term as the most applicable of any that can be applied to it.

In the formation of the enamel, Mr. Fox speaks of a defect, sometimes met with in its organization, characterized by a "yellow color," and of "a great number of indentations upon

its surface," giving to the teeth the appearance of "the exterior of a sponge," which he termed "honey-combed." He refers these defects to a deviation from the natural action of the membrane which secretes the enamel, and dependent upon some "peculiarity of constitution," during the first months of infancy. He thinks it is liable to occur in several children of the same family, and that teeth thus affected are less liable to decay than those which have beautiful and transparent enamel.*

M. Delabarre, an ingenious physiologist, and for the most part, a close and very accurate observer, has, probably, approached nearer a correct explanation of the true cause of dental atrophy than any other writer. But he has evidently confounded one of the varieties of the affection with erosion—a disease characterized by essentially different phenomena, and produced by different causes. He restricts the term to the variety which consists simply of discoloration and absence of a portion of the enamel. In the former cases he believes it may be congenital or accidental, but in the latter, he thinks it is always congenital. He confounds the variety which consists of perforations in the enamel with erosion.† But, so distinctly marked are the peculiarities of each, there is no necessity for confounding the one with the other.

The opinion of M. Delabarre, with regard to the cause of dental atrophy, is founded upon the supposition, that the doctrine of the formation of the enamel as maintained by Hunter, Jourdain, Fox and Cuvier, is erroneous, and that this portion of a tooth is formed from an immense number of exhalents which cover the crown, forming a "sort of imperceptible velvet."‡ These he regards as integral parts of the tooth, and believing the enamel fibres to be secreted by them, he ascribes the affection under consideration to their vicious development or imperfect nutrition.

Lefoulon adopts the views and almost the precise language

* Natural History and Diseases of the Human Teeth; American edition, pages 57, 8 and 9.

† Traitè de la Seconde Dentition, pp. 20, 1, 2 and 3.

‡ It is scarcely necessary to state that the exhalents of Delabarre, correspond exactly with the corpuscles or fibres of the enamel membrane of Raschkow.

of Delabarre, in the description which he gives of atrophy of the teeth. Maury treats of both it and erosion as being one and the same disease. But in describing atrophy he notices the distinctive peculiarities by which each affection is characterized.*

In describing the difference between erosion and atrophy, M. Delabarre says, the part atrophied is deformed and deprived of the enamel, "that the teeth are yellow and sensitive, the touch of the finger causing pain." In erosion, if the crystals of the enamel are not wholly destroyed, "the bottom of the pits are of a white color, and on being touched, no disagreeable sensation is experienced; if, on the contrary, the crystals are destroyed to the dentine, the part thus denuded is irritable."

In an article on erosion, Maury gives a very accurate description of several varieties of atrophy of the teeth. The first, he represents as consisting of irregular white, deep or light yellow spots, situated in the enamel of the tooth, without affecting the smoothness of its surface. The second; as characterized by little crowded holes, or irregular depressions, resembling quilting; or as consisting of transverse sinuosities, single or divided by prominent lines, which are sometimes "yellow, but of the color of the enamel." The third variety effects the dentine as well as the enamel, reducing the dimensions of the crown of the tooth sometimes to one third of its natural size, and not unfrequently dividing it by a deep circular groove or depression.

Not one of the phenomena here described is produced by the action of corrosive agents, or is the result of chemical decomposition either of the enamel or dentine, but are manifestly dependent upon other causes. The term erosion, therefore, cannot be applied to either variety of the affection just noticed, with the least show of propriety.

Odontatrophia may very properly be divided into three varieties. Each has distinctive peculiarities which characterizes it from either of the others. Two are always congenital, and the other, although most frequently congenital, sometimes occurs subsequently to the eruption of the tooth.

* Traitè Complet de l'Art du Dentiste, pp. 99 and 100.

Although Maury has given a better description of the three principal varieties of dental atrophy than any other writer, he has omitted some things which it will be proper to mention. But in treating of these different varieties, we shall change, somewhat, the order of the arrangement which he has laid down.

First variety. The peculiarities that distinguish this variety of atrophy from either of the others are, that it never impairs the uniformity and smoothness of the surface of the enamel, and is characterized by one or more white, or dark or light brown, irregularly shaped spots, upon the labial or buccal surface of the tooth. It occurs oftener than the third variety, and less frequently than the second. It rarely appears on more than one or two teeth in the same mouth, though several are sometimes marked by it. It is seen on the molars more frequently than the bicuspids, and much oftener on the incisors of the upper jaw than any of the other teeth. We do not recollect to have ever observed it on the cuspids of either jaw, nor on the palatine or lingual surfaces of the incisors.

The enamel is much softer on the affected than on the unaffected parts of the tooth, and may be easily broken and reduced to powder with an instrument. It seems to be almost wholly deprived, in these places, of its animal constituents as well as its connection with the subjacent dentine.

The size of the atrophied spots are almost as variable as their shape, but the only bad effect resulting from them, is the unpleasant aspect they sometimes give to the tooth.

As we have before remarked, this variety of atrophy is sometimes accidental, occurring subsequently to the eruption of the tooth, but in a large majority of the cases it is congenital. It is rarely seen on a temporary tooth. In all the cases which have come under our observation it was confined to the teeth of second dentition.

Second variety. This may be very properly denominated *perforating* or *pitting* atrophy, as it gives to the enamel an indented or pitted appearance, the irregular depressions or holes extend transversely across and round the tooth. They are sometimes more or less distinctly separated one from another, by prominent lines; at other times they are confluent, and

form an irregular horizontal groove. Sometimes they penetrate but a short distance into the enamel; at other times they extend entirely through it to the dentine. Their surface, though generally rough and irregular, usually presents a glossy and polished appearance—a peculiarity which always distinguishes this variety of the affection from erosion. The pits often have a dark brownish appearance, though sometimes they are of the color of the enamel on other parts of the tooth.

This variety of atrophy is never confined to a single tooth. Two, four, six or more corresponding teeth are always affected at the same time, in each jaw, and the corresponding teeth of the same class precisely in the same manner, and in the same place. When more than two are marked, the distance of the pits from the coronal extremities of the organs varies, according to the progress the formation of the enamel had made on each class at the time of the operation of the causes concerned in the production of the affection. For example, when the line of pits in the central incisors is situated about two lines from their cutting edges, it will scarcely be one line from the cutting edges of the laterals, and only the points of the cuspids will be marked. When the indentations are nearer the edges of the central incisors, they will be on the edges of the laterals, and the cuspids will have entirely escaped.

Sometimes the teeth are marked with two or three rows of pits, and when this is the case, the patient has either had two or three relapses or been attacked two or three times in quick succession with different diseases capable of interrupting the progress of the formation of the enamel.

Although the incisors are more frequently marked with these indentations than any of the other teeth, the cuspids, bicuspids, and even the molars are sometimes affected with them. When the disease attacks the molars, its effects are generally located on the grinding surface. The permanent teeth are more liable to be attacked than the temporary. We have never known but one instance in which the latter were affected with the disease.

This variety of atrophy occurs oftener than either of the others, and though it sometimes gives to the teeth a very disagreeable and unsightly appearance, it rarely increases their liability to decay.

Third variety. In this variety of atrophy the whole or only a part of the crown of a tooth may be affected—the dentine being often implicated as well as the enamel. The tooth usually has a pale yellowish color, a shrivelled appearance, and is partially or wholly divested of the enamel. Sometimes the crown is not more than one-half or one-third its natural size. Its sensibility is usually very greatly increased, and its susceptibility to pain from external impressions is most wonderfully excited by acids. It is also more liable than the other teeth to be attacked by caries. The root of the tooth, though rarely, is nevertheless sometimes affected, and presents an irregular knotted appearance.

The disease is often confined to a single tooth, but it more frequently shows itself on two corresponding teeth in the same jaw. According to our observation, the bicuspids are more liable to be attacked than any of the other teeth. The temporary teeth are rarely affected with it.

This variety of atrophy occurs less frequently than either of the others, and although it increases the liability of the affected organs to decay, they sometimes escape its attacks to an advanced period of life.

In the description which we have given of the three varieties of dental atrophy, we may have omitted to mention some of the peculiarities belonging to each, but we believe we have pointed out their principal characteristics with sufficient accuracy to enable almost any one to distinguish one from another, and either from erosion.

CAUSES.

The first variety is evidently produced by some cause capable either of preventing or destroying the bond of union between the enamel and subjacent dentine, but what that cause always is, is a question which it may be difficult to answer. Subsequently to the eruption of the teeth, it may be occasioned by mechanical violence, but we have never known but one case in which it had resulted from this cause. The subject of this was a boy about ten or eleven years of age; he accidentally fell

while running, and struck the right central incisor against a sharp angle of a rock. The tooth was nearly displaced, and remained sore and sensitive to the touch for several weeks. Ultimately a small white spot developed itself on the labial surface of the organ.

Now, whether the bond of union between this portion of the enamel and the subjacent dentine was immediately destroyed by the concussion of the blow, or whether it resulted from subsequent inflammation and the death of the intermediary membrane, is a question we do not feel ourself able to answer. If it were destroyed at once by the blow, one would be led to suppose that the change in the color of the enamel would have been observed immediately, but this may have resulted from some subsequent change or alteration in the animal constituents of this part of the enamel, which followed as a consequence of the injury produced by the violence of the blow. These are questions, however, which the present state of our knowledge does not enable us to solve. But that the white spot in this case resulted as a consequence of the blow, there cannot be the least shadow of doubt.

But when the affection is congenital, as it almost always is, it is dependent upon some other cause, possibly upon disease in the pulp, or intermediary membrane, which constitutes the bond of union between the dentine and enamel, subsequently to the formation of the latter. But what the determining cause of the disease of these parts, is, if the affection be produced in this way, whether simple local irritation, or general constitutional disturbance, we are not prepared to say. One would be likely to suppose, if the atrophied spots were occasioned by disease of the pulp or intermediary membrane, the morbid action would scarcely confine itself to such narrow and circumscribed limits. But, whether the destruction of the intermediary membrane of the affected part results as a consequence of actual disease, or merely from vicious nutrition, or whether from some unknown cause, it has failed to be developed here, it is certain that the fibres of this portion of the enamel are not united to the subjacent dentine; and, not receiving a supply of nutrient fluid or vital principle, their animal frame work par-

tially or wholly perishes, leaving but little more than their inorganic constituents.

The cause of this variety of congenital atrophy, it must be confessed, is very obscure; and in the absence of positive knowledge we can only infer the cause from the nature of the affection. If it does not result from one or other of the above mentioned causes, it is difficult to imagine in what way it is produced.

The cause of the second variety of odontatrophia is, we think, susceptible of a more satisfactory explanation. The formative organ of the enamel, as is now generally admitted, consists of a membrane, composed almost wholly of short hexangular corpuscles or fibres, which correspond in shape and arrangement to the fibres of the enamel. This membrane is accurately moulded to the crown of the tooth, and according to Raschkow, each fibre is a secretory duct, whose peculiar function it is to secrete the fibre of the enamel corresponding to it. It should also be borne in mind that the secretion of the earthy salts of the enamel commences at the coronal extremity of the tooth, and gradually proceeds towards the base of the crown. Now we can readily conceive that some constitutional disease, by interrupting the secretion of the earthy salts deposited in the enamel cells or secretory ducts of the enamel membrane, for the formation of the enamel fibres, by occurring at the time when this process is going on, might prevent them from being filled, and cause them to wither or waste away, giving to this portion of the enamel the pitted appearance which characterizes this variety of atrophy. In other words, the secretion of the inorganic constituents of the enamel being interrupted for a short time, the horizontal row of cells in the enamel membrane, into which it should be deposited, will not be filled, consequently, as we might readily suppose, they will waste away, leaving a circular row of indentations around the crown of the tooth. But as soon as the constitutional disease has run its course, the secretion of the enamel fibres will be resumed, and unless the child experiences a relapse, or has a second attack of disease capable of interrupting this secretory process, the other parts of the enamel will be well formed.

Some writers ascribe the formation of these pits in the en-

amel to the chemical action of a corrosive fluid, or to an acidulated condition of the fluid contained in the dental sacs, but those who have done so, have confounded the affection with erosion. Others, and with much plausibility, believe they result as a consequence of an eruptive disease during the "enameling" process, and there are many facts which go to sustain the correctness of this opinion. In seventy-one cases which we have recorded, that have come under our observation during the last eighteen years, we have endeavored to elicit all the facts which we supposed could have any connection with the origin and cause of the disease. The following is the result of our inquiries.

In thirty-eight cases, we were informed, either by the individuals themselves, or relatives, that they had had the measles, and as nearly as we could ascertain, sometime during the formation of the enamel of the teeth: in six cases, the chicken pox; in four, scarlet fever; in three, catarrhal fever; in two, small pox; in one the mother had had an attack of varioloid about seven or eight weeks previous to her accouchment, but in this last case, the atrophied teeth belonged to the temporary set. With regard to the other seventeen cases, we are unable to obtain any certain reliable information concerning the state of the general health during the few first years of childhood.

Although the information we obtained concerning the early history of the fifty-four cases, was not, in many instances, very precise in relation to the exact age when the diseases we have mentioned occurred, it was sufficiently so, we think, to establish their probable connection with the condition of the teeth, or rather, their agency in the production of the atrophy.

Three cases occurred in the same family in two instances, and two cases in six. How far this fact may go to establish the correctness of the opinion advanced by Mr. Fox, that several cases are liable to occur in the same family, we leave to others to decide. If eruptive diseases are more favorable to the production of this variety of atrophy than others, the correctness of it might seem to be favored by the consideration, that when one of this class of diseases occurs in a family, several of the children, where there are a number, are usually attack-

ed about the same time; and when it happens that there are two of nearly the same age, the teeth of both would be likely to be affected, those of the youngest nearer the coronal extremity than the other. But the differences in the ages of children in the same family, would, in the majority of cases, prevent the teeth of more than one from being marked with atrophy, unless eruptive diseases should occur at different times in the family.

The cases to which we have referred, would seem to establish the fact, that although the affection is caused altogether, and by far more frequently, by eruptive, than any other form of constitutional disease, it may, nevertheless, occasionally result from other diseases.

The third variety of dental atrophy, so far as our observations upon the subject would seem to justify an opinion, always results from altered or vicious nutrition, caused by disease of the pulp or enamel membrane, or both, during the secretion of the dentine or enamel, according as one or both are affected. We are inclined to believe that the disease in the dental pulp or enamel membrane may be produced either by local or constitutional causes, or both. But the information which we have been able to obtain concerning the state of the general health, and that of the mouth at the time of the ossification of the pulp and the secretion of the enamel, in the cases that have fallen under our observation, has not been as satisfactory as we could have wished.

In only thirteen out of nineteen cases, of which we have kept a record, were we able to elicit any information calculated to throw the least light upon the origin and cause of the affection. In five of these cases, we ascertained, upon inquiry, that the gums around the temporary teeth had been very much diseased from alveolar abscess, for about three years and a half or four years previously to the eruption of the organs of replacement, and that purulent matter had been discharged from them a great portion of this time. The subjects of three of the other cases had a severe attack of dysentery about the third year of age, and from the effects of which they did not recover for a long time. In two cases, the subjects had been badly salivated, and

in consequence of which, lost two of the temporary teeth, from necrosis and exfoliation of their sockets, about the third year of age. One of these last was almost wholly deprived of enamel, and the crown was of a light brown or yellow color, and but little more than half the natural size. The subjects of two of the other cases had had a severe attack of fever, about the time, as nearly as we could ascertain, of the commencement of the ossification of the atrophied teeth, and from the effects of which they did not recover for eight or ten months. The subject of the other case had had several attacks of sickness between the first and seventh year of age, which so impaired the general health, as to render its restoration a matter of great doubt, both with the parents and attending physician.

In four out of the nineteen cases, the crowns of the teeth were not much more than one-half the natural size, with scarcely a single trace of enamel on them, and three were of a light, and one of a dark brown color. They were exceedingly sensitive to the touch, and three were badly decayed in their approximal surfaces, rendering their immediate removal absolutely necessary. The portion of the dentine of these which was not affected by caries, was so soft that it could be easily cut with a knife. Their roots were feebly developed, and in other respects more or less imperfect.

The crowns of the teeth, in five of the other cases, had a shrivelled appearance, were much smaller than the natural size, with only small patches of enamel on the cusps and points of their coronal extremities, which were the only parts not preternaturally sensitive to the touch. The other parts were of a pale or dark brown color. Four of them were affected with caries in their approximal surfaces, and in two it had extended to the pulp-cavity, rendering their removal necessary.

From one-fourth to one-half of the crown, in the other ten cases, was either wholly deprived of enamel, or covered with only a very thin discolored layer, and of so soft a texture that it could have been easily scraped away with a knife or other instrument. The atrophied parts of six were affected with caries.

Eleven out of the nineteen teeth were bicuspids—eight in the lower and three in the upper jaw; one was a superior cus-

pidatus; three were incisors—two in the upper and one in the lower jaw; and four were molars. In eighteen of the cases, the atrophy was confined to the permanent teeth.

The circumstances which we have mentioned, as having had a probable connection with the origin and cause of the atrophy, in the thirteen cases to which we have particularly referred, would seem to warrant the conclusion, that altered function or vicious nutrition of the pulp or enamel membrane, or both, upon which the structural peculiarities or morbid phenomena presented by teeth thus affected, are dependent, is the result of either local or constitutional disease. Although we failed, in six cases, to elicit any information concerning either the state of the general health, or the condition of the mouth, when the secretion of the earthy salts of the atrophied teeth must have been going on, it is certain that this process must have been interfered with, either by some local or constitutional disturbance.

The difficulty of obtaining a correct account of all the circumstances connected with the history of any disease, several years after its occurrence, must, when the inquiry is delayed for so long a period, prevent us from becoming sufficiently acquainted with them to determine the exact importance to which each is entitled. This has ever constituted a serious obstacle to the investigation of obscure causes of morbid phenomena; but in the examination of the affection on which we have been treating, we believe the facts we have adduced justify the inferences we have ventured to make.

Since writing the foregoing, the following interesting case of dental atrophy has fallen under our observation:

Mrs. C. called, December 16, 1850, to consult us concerning her daughter's teeth, which, from congenital defect, presented a most unsightly appearance. The girl was between nine and ten years of age. The cutting edges of the upper central incisors were badly pitted and very rough; the corresponding teeth in the lower jaw had a transverse row of pits passing around them, about a sixteenth of an inch below their cutting extremities. Another row of pits, so close together as

to form a rough groove, encircled the upper central incisors, about an eighth of an inch below the gum, and the laterals a little nearer their cutting edges; the lower incisors were similarly marked, but not quite so near the gum. The enamel, near the second transverse row of pits, and between it and the incisive extremities of the teeth, was thin, and of a light brown color. A little above the first row, on the central incisors, were two or three brown, opaque spots. The first permanent molars were also encircled with a row of indentations, about half way between their grinding surfaces and the gums.

On inquiry, we learned from the mother, that the child had a light attack of measles when she was between eleven and twelve months old; of scarlet fever when about fifteen or sixteen months of age, and dysentery at about the twenty-first or twenty-second month.

Now, here we had the three varieties of atrophy on the same teeth, and the occurrence of constitutional disease about the time when the affected parts of the teeth must have been re ceiving their earthy salts, would seem to establish, very conclusively, the connection of the one with the other.

TREATMENT.

The nature of this affection is such as not to admit of cure. The treatment, therefore, must be preventive rather than curative. All that can be done is to mitigate the severity of such diseases as are supposed to produce it by the administration of proper remedies. By this means, the effects, may, perhaps, be partially or wholly counteracted.

It seldom happens that atrophied teeth decay more readily than others, so that the only evil resulting from the affection, is, a disfiguration of the organs. When the cutting edges of the incisors only are affected, the diseased part may sometimes be removed with a file without inflicting the slightest injury on the teeth.

CHAPTER TENTH.

NECROSIS OF THE TEETH.

By the term necrosis, when applied to a tooth, is meant the death of the entire organ, or of the crown and inner walls of the root, for it often happens that a degree of vitality is kept up in the outer walls by the investing membrane, long after the destruction of the pulp and lining membrane. When other bones are affected with necrosis, the dead part is thrown off, and the loss supplied by the formation of new bone. But the teeth are not endowed either with exfoliative or recuperative powers.

The density of a tooth is not sensibly, if at all, affected by the mere loss of vitality, but so great a change takes place in the appearance of the organ, that it may readily be detected by the most careless observer. After the destruction of the lining membrane, the tooth gradually loses its peculiar semitranslucent and animated appearance, and assumes a dingy or muddy brown color, and this change is more striking in teeth of a soft than in those of a hard texture. The discoloration, too, is always more marked when the loss of vitality has resulted from a blow, than when produced in a more gradual manner. The discoloration is partly owing to the presence of the disorganized matter in the pulp-cavity, and partly to the absorption of this matter by the surrounding walls of the tooth.

After the destruction of the lining membrane, the tooth may receive a sufficient amount of vitality from the alveolo-dental periosteum to prevent it from exerting a manifest morbid influence upon the parts with which it is immediately connected. Teeth have occasionally been retained under such circumstances

with apparent impunity, for fifteen or twenty years. But when every part of a tooth has lost its vitality, it becomes an extraneous body, and when this happens, inflammation of the socket ensues; the gum around it becomes turgid and spongy, bleeds from the slightest injury, and the tooth gradually loosens and ultimately drops out. In the mean time, the diseased action frequently extends to the sockets and gums of the adjoining teeth.

The front teeth from being more exposed to injuries from blows, are more liable to necrosis than the back teeth.

CAUSES.

Necrosis of the teeth may be produced by a variety of causes, such as protracted fevers, the long continued use of mercurial medicines, and by caries. The immediate cause, however, when not occasioned by a blow sufficiently violent to destroy the vascular connection of the tooth with the rest of the system, is inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane, or it may result from deficiency of vital energy and impaired nutrition. The author has met with several cases in which the loss of vitality could not be accounted for in any other way.*

TREATMENT.

When a tooth, deprived of its vitality, is productive of injury to the gums and to the adjacent teeth, it should be immediately removed; for, however important or valuable its presence may be, the health and durability of the others should not be jeopardized by its retention.

When necrosis of a tooth is apprehended, we should endeavor, by the application of leeches to the gums, and gargling the mouth with suitable astringent washes, to prevent its occurrence. If this plan of treatment is adopted at an early period, it will sometimes prevent the loss of vitality; but, if long neglected, a favorable result need not be anticipated.

When the loss of vitality is confined to the crown and inner

* Vide Spontaneous Disorganization of the Dental Pulp.

walls of the root, if the former is not seriously impaired by caries, it may be perforated, and the pulp cavity and root cleansed and filled in the manner as directed in another part of this work. If the necrosed tooth is an incisor, the perforation should be made from the palatine surface, provided the approximal surfaces are sound. But previously to the introduction of a filling, the decomposed surfaces of the walls of the pulp-cavity should be completely removed, and if this does not restore to the tooth its natural color, the cavity should be filled with raw cotton, saturated with a solution of chloride of soda, as directed in another chapter.

CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

EXOSTOSIS OF THE ROOTS OF THE TEETH.

THIS disease is common to all bones, but it rarely attacks any other part of a tooth than the root, and it usually commences at the extremity, then extends upwards, covering a greater or less portion of the external surface. It sometimes, however, commences upon the side of the root and forms a large tubercle, at other times the deposit of the new bony matter, is spread over its surface, often uniformly, but more frequently unequally. The osseous matter thus deposited, is usually of the color, consistence and structure of the cementum, though sometimes it is much harder and assumes a yellower tinge. Indeed, the enlargement is supposed to arise from a mere hypertrophied condition of this substance.

FIG. 111.



The deposit of osseous matter, is sometimes so considerable, that the roots of two or more teeth are firmly united by it. The author has one specimen in his possession, presented to him by Drs. Blandin and Reynolds, of Columbia, S. C., of two teeth thus united, which are represented in the accompanying cut, and there is one in the Museum of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, contributed by Dr. Hawes of New York, in which three molar teeth are thus united.

The most extraordinary specimen of dental exostosis which the author has ever seen was sent to him for examination by Dr. V. M. Swazy, dentist, of Easton, Pa. The tooth, apparently, is a dens sapientiæ, and the formation of the exostosis must have commenced with the ossification of the pulp. It had spread over every part of the tooth, and the crown as well as the root; it had ruptured and penetrated every part of the enamel membrane, but had not wholly destroyed the function of this organ, as nodules of enamel are seen in various parts of the exostosis. The tumor, including the tooth, is about as large as a common sized hickory nut.

Exostosis often continues for a long time without producing any inconvenience whatever. It usually first manifests itself by a slight soreness in the affected tooth, which increases as the fang becomes enlarged, until pain, either constant or periodical, and of a character more or less severe, is experienced.

The most remarkable case of dental exostosis on record, is related by Mr. Fox. The subject was a young lady, who, at the time she came to Mr. F., had suffered so much and so long, that the palpebræ of one eye had been closed for near two months, and the secretion of saliva had, for some time, been so copious, that it flowed from her mouth, whenever opened. She had tried every remedy within the province of medicine, without experiencing any permanent benefit, and was only relieved from her suffering, by the extraction of every one of her teeth.

In the course of the author's practice, he has removed many teeth affected with exostosis, but has never met with a case similar to that narrated by Mr. F. In one instance, he was compelled to extract four sound teeth and nine roots; yet the pain was not, at any time, severe, but it was constant, and a source of great annoyance to the patient. The following is one among the many cases which have fallen under his observation:

Mr S., of Baltimore, having suffered some time from pain in his first left superior bicuspid, applied to a dentist in 1843, for the purpose of having this tooth removed. In the operation, the root, about three-sixteenths of an inch from its extremity, was fractured and left in the socket. In consequence of which, the gnawing pain with which he had for a long time before been

troubled, continued, and at the expiration of twelve months the gum over the remaining portion of the root became very much swollen, puffing out the lip to the size of half a hen's egg. The tumor, after a few days, was opened, and a large quantity of dark colored, purulent and very fetid matter was discharged, which, for a short time, gave him considerable relief. The tumor, however, was re-formed and opened some four or five times in about that number of months. In the fall of 1845, he called upon us for the purpose of obtaining our advice. At this time his gum was swollen, and upper lip puffed out in the manner as just described. On opening the tumor, about three tablespoonfuls of black matter, resembling thin tar, escaped. We then found, upon examination, that the outer wall of the antrum, immediately over the remaining portion of the root of the first bicuspid, was destroyed, and an opening through it large enough to admit the fore-finger. Believing that the extremity of the root which had been left in the socket was the cause of the disease, we immediately proceeded to extract it which we succeeded in doing by the removal of the outer wall of the alveolus. The root was found, on removal, to be enlarged by exostosis, to the size of a very large pea. The operation proved perfectly successful, the secretion of purulent matter soon ceased, and in a few weeks he was completely relieved from the troublesome affection under which he had so long labored.

CAUSES.

The primary cause of this disease does not appear to be well understood. Most writers concur in attributing the proximate cause to irritation of the periosteum of the fang. And this irritation is not, as some suppose, necessarily dependent upon any morbid condition of the crowns themselves; for it often attacks teeth which are perfectly sound. It seems rather to be attributable to some peculiar constitutional diathesis.

TREATMENT.

The disease having established itself does not admit of cure, and when it has progressed so far as to be productive of pain

and inconvenience to the patient, the loss of the affected teeth becomes inevitable. When the enlargement is very considerable and confined to the extremity of the root, and has not induced a corresponding enlargement of the alveolus around the neck of the tooth, the removal of the affected organ is often attended with difficulty, and can only be effected by removing a portion of the socket, or fracturing it.

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

SPINA VENTOSA OF THE TEETH.

Among the diseases which attack the teeth, Mr. Fox mentions spina ventosa, but the author is of the opinion that the term is not strictly applicable to the affection which he treats of under that designation. In medical language, the term is used to designate a disease consisting of an ulcerated tumor of a bone, caused by internal caries, and attended by a prickling of the flesh.

Mr. Fox describes the disease as being seated in the cavity of the tooth, and "the vessels ramifying on its membrane," he says, "acquire a diseased action by which the membrane becomes thickened, absorption of some of the internal parts of the tooth takes place, and the opening, at the extremity of the fang, also, becomes enlarged. This disease of the membrane is attended with the formation of matter, discharging itself at the point of the fang, into the alveolar cavity, which, being rendered more porous by the process of absorption, affords an easy exit. During the progress of the disease, the gum, covering the alveolar process, becomes inflamed, and acquires a spongy texture: the matter, passing from the socket, makes its escape into the mouth by several openings through the gum, which is thus kept in a constant state of disease."

Now, it will be perceived, that there is little or no analogy between spina ventosa and the disease spoken of by Mr. F. under that name. The latter is nothing more than the effects of alveolar abscess, arising from inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane.

Matter being confined in the cavity of the tooth, the canal in the root may become greatly enlarged. The author has met with many cases, where this has happened, and he has in his possession more than twenty examples of teeth thus affected.

If, previously to the suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp, the tooth is effected with exostosis, the disease would then resemble spina ventosa.

CAUSES.

The enlargement of the opening at the extremity of the root, is not, as Mr. Fox believes, caused by the action of the absorbents. Before this takes place, the membrane lining the canal of the root, has been destroyed, and the vital powers of the root so much reduced as to preclude the possibility, even admitting that the absorbents are capable of effecting such enlargement, of its being accomplished through their agency.

We can, therefore, attribute this enlargement only to the action of the confined matter, or rather to that of some corrosive property possessed by it. This explanation appears the more probable, when we consider that the matter discharged from the socket, is ichorous, offensive, and of a corrosive character.

Moreover, spina ventosa is characterized by exterior enlargement of the bone, while, in the disease in question, the size of the root is not increased. The external appearance of the organ is that of a necrosed tooth.

TREATMENT.

A tooth affected with this disease does not admit of cure. The proper treatment, therefore, consists in the prompt removal of the organ. There are no local nor general remedies which can be applied, that will afford relief. The symptoms, perhaps, may sometimes be palliated, but it is not advisable to tamper with a tooth thus affected, as it will only serve to protract and ultimately to augment the evil.

It is possible that the occurrence of the affection might, in some cases, be prevented by prompt antiphlogistic treatment; such as recommended for the prevention of necrosis, and for the cure of tooth-ache caused by inflammation of the lining membrane. But after suppuration has taken place, and a secretion of fetid and corrosive matter been kept up until the canal of the root has become enlarged, the proper remedial indication is the removal of the tooth.

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

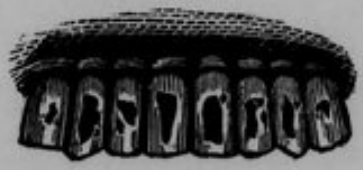
DENUDING OF THE TEETH.

THIS is one of the most remarkable affections to which the teeth are liable. It consists in a gradual wasting of the enamel on their labial surfaces, attacking first the central incisors, then the laterals, afterwards the cuspidati and bicuspids, and extending, sometimes, to the first and second molars. It usually forms a continuous horizontal groove, as regularly and smoothly constructed as if it had been made with a file. See Fig. 112.

FIG. 112.



FIG. 113.



After it has removed the enamel, it commits its ravages upon the subjacent bone, sometimes penetrating to the pulp-cavity.

It rarely changes the color of the enamel, but after the subjacent dentine becomes exposed, it assumes first, a light and afterwards a dark-brown color, retaining however a smooth and polished surface. But this destructive process does not always commence at one single point on the labial surface of the central incisors, in the manner as just described; it sometimes attacks several points simultaneously. (See Fig. 113.) As it spreads, these unite and ultimately a deep excavation is formed, with walls so smooth and highly polished that the tooth presents the appearance of having been scooped out with a broad square, or round-pointed instrument.

The progress of the affection is exceedingly variable. It is sometimes so rapid that the dentine becomes exposed within two or three years from the time of its attack; at other times its effects upon the enamel is scarcely perceptible for six or eight years after the discovery of its occurrence. The author is acquainted with a lady whose teeth have been suffering from

the denuding process for nearly twenty years, and it is only within the last five or six that the dentine has been exposed.

CAUSES.

The cause of this singular affection has never been satisfactorily explained. It was first noticed by Mr. Hunter, who calls it decay by denudation, and supposes, "from its attacking certain teeth rather than others, and from its being confined to a particular tooth," that it is a disease inherent in the tooth itself, and not dependent on circumstances in after life.

Mr. Bell thinks that Mr. H. has confounded the affection with another, similar in its appearance, but arising from a wholly different cause.

He says, quoting Mr. Hunter's remarks, "'I have seen instances where it appeared as if the outer surface of the bony part, which is in contact with the inner surface of the enamel, had first been lost, so that the attraction of cohesion between the two had been destroyed; and, as if the enamel had been separated for want of support, for it is terminated all at once.' In this passage, Mr. Hunter describes very accurately the result of superficial absorption of the bony structure, a circumstance which I have occasionally seen, though more rarely than the present abrasion of the enamel, with which it cannot, for a moment, be considered as identical. In one case the enamel is gradually and slowly removed by a regular and uniform excavation; in the other, the abruptness and irregularity of the edges, show that it had broken away at once, from having lost its subjacent support. The cause of the former is external; in the latter, it is within the enamel."

Mr. Bell, in attempting to correct one error, has fallen into another, equally as great and palpable. He attributes the breaking in of the enamel to an absorption of the subjacent bone, instead of ascribing it to decomposition by chemical agents, the true cause.

In almost every instance, where the author has found the edges of the enamel in the condition as described by Messrs. Hunter and Bell, he has also observed, that the surface of the exposed bone was decayed.

But the breaking in of the enamel is not the affection now under consideration. That is the result of caries of the subjacent bone; this, a sort of spontaneous abrasion.

Mr. Bell is unfortunate, also, in the suggestions which he throws out in regard to the cause of the disease. "Whatever may be the cause," says he, "and, at present, I confess myself at a loss to explain it, the horizontal direction in which it proceeds, may, I think, be connected with the manner in which the enamel is deposited during its formation; for it will be recollected, that it first covers the apex of the tooth, and gradually invests the crowns by *successive circular depositions;* it is therefore, not improbable, that from some temporary cause, acting during its deposition, certain circular portions may be more liable to mechanical abrasion, or other injury than the rest."

This conjecture, though it may seem somewhat plausible, is far from satisfactory. If, as he supposes, certain circular portions of the enamel are less perfectly formed than others, and, consequently rendered more liable to the disease, it would not be wholly confined to the anterior surface of the tooth, but would extend entirely around it, and, as soon as these imperfectly formed circular portions were destroyed, its ravages would cease.

Mr. Fox frankly acknowledges his inability to assign any cause for this affection; but conjectures, that it is dependent on some solvent quality of the saliva. Were this supposition correct, every part of the tooth would be alike subject to its attacks.

Other writers suppose it is occasioned by the friction of the lips. But this hypothesis is destitute of the least semblance of plausibility. The narrowness and depth of the grooves are sometimes such as to preclude the possibility of the contact of the lips with their interior surfaces. Some authors, again, believe it to be attributable to the use of tooth brushes; but this is an equally gratuitous supposition.

The dentine, after it is denuded of enamel, is generally quite sensitive, and very susceptible of heat and cold.

The author is of the opinion, that the loss of substance which characterizes the affection, is produced by the action of

acidulated mucus. In every other part of the mouth this fluid is mixed with saliva, and the acid which it contains so much diluted as to prevent it from acting on other portions of the teeth. That this is the true cause, is rendered almost certain by a case which, a few years since, fell under the observation of Dr. Eleazar Parmly, where the crowns of human teeth which were used for dental substitutes, were attacked in the same manner, thus proving, conclusively, that the loss of substance was caused by the action of chemical agents.

TREATMENT.

As a preventive, Mr. Fox recommends the avoidance of whatever tends to produce it, but unfortunately he leaves his readers entirely in the dark upon this subject. In advanced stages of the affection, the author has often succeeded in arresting its progress, by widening the groove at the bottom, and afterwards filling it with gold. This, in the majority of cases, will prove successful.

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

SPONTANEOUS ABRASION OF THE CUTTING EDGES OF THE FRONT TEETH.

Fig. 114.



The spontaneous abrasion of the cutting edges of the front teeth, is an affection of very rare occurrence. It commences on the central incisors, and from thence proceeds to the laterals, the cuspidati, and sometimes, though very rarely, to the first bicuspids. Teeth affected by it, have, when the jaws are closed, a truncated appearance; the upper and lower teeth do not come together, and are rather more than ordinarily susceptible to the action of acids and of heat and cold. In other respects, little or no inconvenience is experienced from it until the crowns of the affected teeth are nearly destroyed.

Its progress, as in the case of abrasion of the labial surfaces, is exceedingly variable. It sometimes destroys half or two-thirds of the crowns of the central incisors in two or three years; at other times, seven or eight years are required for the same effect to result from it. In one case which came under our own observation, the abrasion had extended to the bicuspids; and the central incisors of both jaws were so much wasted, that, on closing the mouth, they did not come together by nearly three-eighths of an inch; and but two years had elapsed since its commencement. In another case, where it had been going on for seven years, it had not extended to the cuspidati,

Fig. 114—Represents a case of spontaneous abrasion, taken from a drawing given by Mr. Bell.

and the space between the upper and lower incisors, did not exceed an eighth of an inch. The subjects of both were gentlemen—the first aged about twenty-eight, and the other twenty-one.

Mr. Bell gives an interesting case of a gentleman whose teeth were thus affected:—"About fourteen months since, 1831, this gentleman," says he, "perceived that the edges of the incisors, both above and below, had become slightly worn down, and, as it were, truncated, so that they could no longer be placed in contact with each other. This continued to increase and extend to the lateral incisors, and, afterwards, successively, to the cuspidati and bicuspids. There has been no pain, and only a trifling degree of uneasiness, on taking acids, or any very hot or cold fluids, into the mouth. When I first saw these teeth, they had exactly the appearance of having been most accurately filed down at the edges, and then perfectly and beautifully polished: and it has now extended so far, that when the mouth is closed, the anterior edges of the incisors of the upper and lower jaws are nearly a quarter of an inch asunder. The cavities of those of the upper jaw must have been exposed, but for a very curious and beautiful provision, by which they have become gradually filled by a deposit of new bony matter, perfectly solid and hard, but so transparent that nothing but examination by actual contact, could convince an observer that they were perfectly closed. This appearance is exceedingly remarkable, and exactly resembles the transparent layers which are seen in agatose pebbles, surrounded by a more opaque mass. The surface is uniform, even, and highly polished, and continuous, without the least break, from one tooth to another. It extends at present, to the bicuspids, is perfectly equal on both sides, and when the molars are closed, the opening, by this loss of substance in front, is observed to be widest in the centre, diminishing gradually and equally on both sides to the last bicuspids."

Dr. J. D. McCabe described to the author, in 1837, a case he had seen a short time before, very similar to the one mentioned by Mr. B. He also gave him the name and age of the individual and the length of time the abrasion had continued; but these he does not recollect with sufficient accuracy to repeat.

CAUSES.

With regard to the cause of this most extraordinary affection, Mr. Bell says, he is "wholly at a loss to offer even a conjecture," referring to the case which he describes. "It cannot have been produced by the friction of mastication, for these teeth have never been in contact since the first commencement of the affection; nor does it arise from any apparent mechanical cause; for nothing is employed to clean the teeth, excepting a soft brush. Absorption will equally fail to account for it; for not only would this cause operate, as it always does, irregularly, but we find that, instead of these teeth being the subjects of absorption, a new deposition of bony matter is, in fact, going on, to fill the cavities which would otherwise be exposed."

Mr. Bell is correct in supposing that it is not the result either of mechanical action or absorption. If then, neither of these agencies are concerned in its production, it must be the result of some chemical action, though not of the salivary fluids of the mouth, for if it was, every part of the exterior surfaces of the teeth would be acted on alike. This, as well as the affection last noticed, the author is disposed to believe is produced by the action of acidulated mucus. The anterior surfaces of the upper front teeth not being so frequently washed by the saliva, the mucous secretions of the upper lip, are often permitted to remain on these portions of the teeth for a considerable length of time, and to the presence of this, when in an acidulated condition, we believe the denuding process to be attributable, while the abrasion of the cutting edges of the incisors and cuspidati is caused by acid mucus, secreted by the mucous follicles of the end of the tongue, which is brought in contact with the cutting extremities of the front teeth almost constantly, and we believe it is in this way that their loss of substance is effected.

Dr. Nuhn, a German physician, describes a gland which he has recently discovered in the interior of the tip of the tongue. It is represented as having a number of ducts opening through the mucous membrane over it. It is thought to be a mucous gland, and it may be, that this gland in peculiar idiosyncrasies,

secretes the acidulated mucus which is concerned in the production of the affection under consideration. But, whether this hypothesis be correct or not, it is evidently the result of the action of a chemical agent, and that this is furnished by the end of the tongue is rendered more than probable from the fact, that it is brought in contact with the cutting edges of the teeth, every time the mouth is opened.

TREATMENT.

This, like some of the other affections of the teeth, cannot be cured. If the tendency to an acidulated condition of the mucous secretions of the mouth could be overcome or counteracted, its progress, perhaps, might be arrested. But, this is a branch of practice that comes rather within the province of the medical than the dental practitioner, so that any directions upon the subject here are unnecessary.

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

MECHANICAL ABRASION OF THE TEETH.

WERE it true, as declared by Richerand, that the loss of the enamel occasioned by friction, is repaired by a new growth, it would never suffer permanent loss from mechanical abrasion; but, the assertion is not only untrue, but too absurd to need refutation.

But the teeth rarely suffer loss of substance from friction when the incisors of the upper jaw shut in front of those of the lower. It is only when the former fall plumb upon the latter, that mechanical abrasion of their cutting edges can take place, and when this happens, they sometimes suffer great loss of substance. The crowns of these teeth are occasionally worn entirely off, while those of the molars and bicuspids are, comparatively, but little affected. The reason of this is, that when the upper and lower front teeth strike plumb upon each other, the lateral motions of the jaw not being restricted, the friction is greater at the anterior, than at the posterior part of the mouth; consequently, the front teeth will suffer more from abrasion than the molars.

Sometimes, the whole of the teeth are worn off alike; at other times, owing to the peculiar manner in which the jaws come together, it is confined to only a few.

Mr. Bell believes that certain kinds of diet tend, more than others, to produce abrasion of teeth. To establish his belief, he tells us that sailors, who, the greater portion of their lives, live on hard biscuits, have only a small part of the crowns of their teeth remaining above the edges of their gums. But the loss of substance is not produced so much by the friction of masticating certain sorts of diet as by the action of the lower

teeth upon the upper, when those of the superior and inferior maxillary sustain the relationship to each other, just described.

When the front teeth of the lower jaw strike against the palatine surface of those of the upper, the substance of the latter is sometimes worn more than three-fourths away, and in some instances, entirely up to the gums. We have seen the teeth of some individuals so much abraded, in this way, that but little of their crowns remained, except the enamel on their anterior surfaces.

The wearing away of the crowns of the teeth would expose the lining membrane, were it not that nature, in anticipation of the event, sets up an action by which the pulps are transformed into a substance called *osteo-dentine*, which is always identical in structure with cementum. By this beautiful operation of the economy, the painful consequences which would otherwise result, are wholly prevented.

The loss of the crowns of the upper incisors and cuspidati may sometimes be advantageously replaced with substitutes attached to the remaining roots of the natural organs. See Manner of Preparing a Natural Root and Inserting a Pivot Tooth.

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

FRACTURES AND OTHER INJURIES OF THE TEETH FROM MECHANICAL VIOLENCE.

The injuries to which the teeth are subject from mechanical violence, are so variable in their character and results, as to render a detailed description of them impossible. The same amount of violence inflicted upon a tooth does not always produce the same effect. The nature and extent of the injury will depend as much upon the physical condition of the teeth, the state of the constitutional health and the susceptibility of the body to morbid impressions, as upon the violence of the blow. Thus, a blow sufficiently severe to loosen a tooth, might not, in one case be productive of any permanent bad consequences, while in another, it might cause the death of the organ and inflammation of the adjacent parts, as well as necrosis of the alveolus.

A tooth of a compact texture, and in a healthy mouth, may be deprived of a portion of its substance without any serious injury; but a similar loss of substance of a tooth, not so dense in its structure, would be likely to produce inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane, and possibly of the alveolo-dental periosteum. Hence, in order to form a correct opinion of the result of injuries of this sort, we must take into consideration, not only the character of the tooth upon which the blow has been inflicted, but also the state of the health of the mouth and of the individual.

If the tooth is not loosened in its socket, any injury that might result from the loss of a small portion of the enamel, or even of the dentine, may be prevented by smoothing the fractured surface with a file, so that the juices of the mouth, and particles of extraneous matter, may not be retained in contact with it.

But if the tooth is loosened, and inflammation of the investing membrane supervene, leeches should be applied to the gums, and the mouth washed several times a day, with some astringent lotion, until the inflammation shall have subsided.

When a tooth has been displaced from its socket by a blow, and its vascular connection with the general system destroyed, necrosis must, as a necessary consequence, be the result. An imperfect union between the tooth and alveolus may sometimes be established by the effusion of coagulable lymph, and the formation of an imperfectly organized membrane; but the tooth will ever after, from the slightest cold, or derangement of the digestive organs, be liable to become sore to the touch, and it will ultimately assume a muddy-brown and unhealthy appearance.

The author has, on several occasions, replaced teeth that had been knocked from their sockets; but in only two instances was the operation attended with any thing like success. The subject in one case was a healthy boy, of about thirteen years of age, who, while playing bandy, received a blow from the club of one of his playmates, which knocked the left central incisor of the upper jaw entirely out of its socket. He saw the boy about fifteen minutes after the accident. The alveolus was filled with coagulated blood. This he sponged out, and, after having bathed the tooth in tepid water, carefully and accurately replaced it in its socket, and secured it there by silk ligatures attached to the adjacent teeth. On the following day, the gums around the teeth were considerably inflamed; to reduce which, he directed the application of three leeches, and the frequent use of diluted tinct. myrrh, as a wash for the mouth. At the expiration of four weeks, the tooth became firmly fixed in its socket, but from the effusion of coagulable lymph, the alveolar membrane was thickened, and the tooth, in consequence, somewhat protruded. A slight soreness, on taking cold, has ever since been experienced.

Dr. Noyes, dentist, of Baltimore, mentioned to the author, a case of a somewhat similar character. The subject was a boy of about ten years of age. One of his front teeth, by a fall, was forced from its socket. It was replaced shortly after, and in a few weeks, became firm in its alveolus. Mr. Bell also mentions a case, attended with a like result.

The alveolar processes and jaw-bones are sometimes seriously injured by mechanical violence. In 1834, the author was requested by Dr. Baker, of Baltimore, to visit, with him, a lady who, by the upsetting of a stage between Washington and this city, had her face severely bruised and lacerated. All that portion of the lower jaw, which contained the six anterior teeth, was splintered off, and only retained in the mouth by the gums and integuments, with which it was connected. The wounds of her face, having been properly dressed, the detached portion of the jaw was carefully adjusted and secured by a ligature passed around the front teeth and first molars, and by a bandage on the outside, passed round the chin and back part of the head. Her mouth was washed, five or six times a day, with diluted tinct. myrrh. The third day after the accident, by the direction of Dr. B., she lost twelve ounces of blood; and, in five or six weeks, with no other treatment than the dressing of the wounds, she perfectly recovered.

It often happens, that the crown of a tooth is broken off at the neck. We have known the crowns of four, and in one case of thirteen teeth to be fractured from a single blow. The subject of the last case was a fireman of Baltimore, who, in 1835, received an accidental blow in his mouth from the head of an axe, which broke off the crowns of all the upper and lower incisors, two cuspids and three of the bicuspids of the inferior maxillary. The subject of the other case was a boy about twelve years of age, who, from a similar accident, occasioned by running up suddenly behind a man who was chopping wood, had the crowns of his upper incisors broken off. In both of these cases, the inflammation which supervened was so great as to render the removal of the roots necessary. The crowns, fangs, and alveolar processes, are sometimes ground to pieces, or the teeth driven into the very substance of the jaw. Mr. Bell says, he once found a central incisor so completely forced into the bone, that he thought it to be the remains of a fang, but, on removing it, found it to be an entire tooth.

When the crown of a tooth has been broken off by a blow, the root should, as a general rule, be immediately extracted, because the injury it has received will seldom permit it to remain with im-

punity in its socket. We have sometimes engrafted artificial crowns on such roots, but the practice is, usually, a bad one. If the tooth is to be replaced with an artificial substitute, the root should be first extracted.

But whether the loss of the crown be replaced or not, the root can seldom remain without injury, for after the inflammation, induced by the concussion of the blow, has sufficiently subsided, or terminated in the suppuration of the lining membrane, which it usually does, it acts as a morbid irritant to the socket and adjacent parts, and for this reason it should be removed.

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

DISEASES OF THE DENTAL PULP AND PERIOSTEUM.

As we have already had occasion to allude to most of the morbid conditions to which the dental pulp and periosteum are subject, it will not be necessary to go into a very minute description of the causes which are concerned in their production, nor of the structural changes to which they give rise. Odontalgia, one of the principal phenomena by which they are characterized, might, perhaps, with some propriety, be treated of in connection with the diseases of these structures, but as this is sometimes a symptom of pathological conditions and functional disturbances of other parts, the discussion of which does not come properly within the scope of a work like this, we have deemed it unworthy of separate consideration. The same might be said of alveolar abscess, which results from, though not always a necessary consequence of, disease of these tissues, but, as this affection complicates with it a morbid condition of other parts, we shall devote to it a separate chapter.

With these prefatory remarks, we shall proceed to notice: 1. Inflammation of the dental pulp; 2. Spontaneous disorganization of the dental pulp; 3. Fungous growth of the dental pulp; 4. Ossification of the dental pulp; 5. Inflammation of the dental periosteum.

INFLAMMATION OF THE DENTAL PULP.

The pulp of a tooth is one of the most highly organized and exquisitely sensitive structures of the body, and when exposed to the action of irritating agents, is liable to become the seat of intractable inflammation and of the most torturing and agonizing pain. It then loses its greyish appearance and assumes a bright red color, and its capillaries, which, when in a healthy

state, are invisible to the naked eye, may now be distinctly seen. When the inflammation is acute, it immediately diffuses itself over every part of the pulp, extending rapidly to the alveolo-dental periosteum, and if not promptly arrested by active antiphlogistic measures, soon terminates in the complete disorganization of the contents of the cavity of the tooth. This variety of inflammatory action occurs in the pulps of sound as well as in those of decayed teeth, but altogether more frequently in the latter than in the former.

The violence of the inflammation will depend on the state of the general health, the nervous susceptibility of the pulp, the condition of the tooth, and character of the causes concerned in its production. When the pulp is in an irritable condition, active and general inflammation is more easily lighted up than when it is in a perfectly healthy state; in this case, it is usually very soon followed by suppuration, and if an opening is not made immediately for the escape of the pus, by the formation of alveolar abscess, a disease which we shall hereafter have occasion to notice.

Inflammation of the pulp is attended by an effusion of lymph, and when there is no opening through the crown of the tooth for its escape, it accumulates, and by compressing the pulp into still narrower limits, becomes an additional source of irritation, augmenting the already existing inflammatory action. An effusion of lymph may also result from mere irritation; but in this case, the quantity is very small, and may, under certain circumstances, contribute to the reparation of the injury the tooth has sustained.*

Chronic inflammation may exist for months without causing any other structural alteration than a slight increase of vascular action in the affected part; and it may be confined all this time to the portion of the pulp which has become exposed from the decay of the tooth. But, after continuing, for a longer or shorter period, it may, from the action of some irritating agent, assume an acute form. When this happens, it extends to every part of the pulp, and we might say, lining membrane, for the two

* See chapter on Filling Teeth after the lining membrane has become exposed.

are so intimately connected, that when one becomes diseased, the other always participates.

The causes, symptoms and treatment of inflammation of the pulp, having been described in the chapter on tooth-ache, it will not be necessary to recapitulate what has been said upon these subjects.

SPONTANEOUS DISORGANIZATION OF THE DENTAL PULP.

The spontaneous destruction of the pulp of a tooth is an affection which seems to have been entirely overlooked by writers on dental pathology; and, although it is one which rarely occurs, examples of it are met with sufficiently often to entitle it to a place among the diseases of the teeth. The first case which attracted the attention of the author, occurred in 1836, and he has subsequently met with six or seven others; in each of which, the disorganization had been carried on so insidiously, that neither the presence of disease, nor structural alteration, was suspected, until the teeth had assumed a dull brownish or bluish brown appearance. The death of the pulp had not been preceded in any of these cases, by the slightest indication of inflammatory action. It had, apparently, resulted from a want of sufficient vital energy to sustain the nutritive function.

The sockets of the affected teeth, in the cases which have fallen under the observation of the author, were, seemingly, in a healthy condition—a circumstance, which, when we take into consideration that the parts at the extremities of the roots were exposed to the action of the disorganized remains of the dental pulps, may appear somewhat strange. But this may have been owing, partly, to diminished excitability in the alveolo-dental periosteum, and, partly, to the smallness of the quantity, and the innoxious character of the matter contained in the central cavities of the teeth. The gums of that portion of the alveolar border occupied by the affected teeth, had a pale, greyish-purple appearance, but exhibited no indications of actual disease. They were as thin and their margins as distinctly festooned here, as in any other part of the mouth. In some of the cases too, the teeth had been in this condition for seven or eight years. With

the view of restoring to them their natural color, we perforated the crowns of several, and on doing so, a drop of dark brown matter having but little odor, and about the consistence of thin cream, escaped from the pulp cavity of each.

In all the cases which the author has seen of this most remarkable affection, the loss of vitality had taken place previously to the twentieth year of age, and according to his observations upon the subject, it seldom confines itself to a single tooth, but occurs simultaneously in corresponding teeth. The pulps of several usually perish at about the same time. In the first case to which his attention was called, six had lost their vitality. The affection, too, seems to be principally confined to the incisors and cuspidati, and sound teeth appear to be as subject to it as those which are carious.

Now, as the disorganization of the pulp, in cases of this sort, is not the result of inflammatory action, it must be dependent upon constitutional rather than local causes—upon some peculiar cachectic habit of body, in which the function of sanguification is imperfectly performed. This inference, too, seems to be fully warranted by the appearance of the subjects in all the cases which the author has had an opportunity of examining. Each of whom was characterized by an extremely pale and slightly bloated aspect of countenance—indicating an exceedingly serous condition of blood.

The remedial indications in cases of this sort, are the same as in necrosis produced by inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp.

FUNGOUS GROWTH OF THE DENTAL PULP.

The pulp of a tooth, when exposed by the decay of the crown, sometimes becomes the seat of a fungous growth, constituting a small vascular tumor. These morbid growths sometimes attain the size of a large pea, completely filling the cavity made in the crown of the tooth by decay; at other times they do not exceed that of a small elderberry. The former have little sensibility, and bleed freely from the slightest injury; the latter are less vascular, but are nearly as sensitive as the pulp in a healthy state.

It often happens that a fungous growth of the gum or dental periosteum, finding its way through an opening in the side of the neck or root of a decayed tooth, appears in the central cavity, and this is sometimes mistaken for a morbid growth of the pulp. Tumors of this sort usually grow very fast and sometimes attain the size of a hickory nut. They are exceedingly vascular, bleeding profusely when wounded, and are soon reproduced after removal. The author has met with tumors of this kind which had originated in the alveolo-dental periosteum of the extremity of the root.

The remedial indication in such cases consists in the removal of the tooth. A cure cannot be effected by extirpating the morbid growth. The author has frequently removed them nearly to the extremity of the root, but they have always reappeared in a few days or weeks after the operation. But even if a return of the disease could be prevented, still, the extraction of the tooth should be insisted on, as all teeth in which tumors of this sort are situated, have become morbid irritants, and cannot remain without detriment to the health of the parts with which they are in immediate connection.

OSSIFICATION OF THE DENTAL PULP.

Allusion has been made, several times, in the course of this work, to the ossification of the dental pulp, as a means employed by nature to prevent the exposure of this most delicate and exquisitely sensitive structure. But examples of it are occasionally met with in teeth, which have suffered no loss of substance, either from mechanical or spontaneous abrasion, or from the decay of the dentine. The occurrence, whatever may be the other circumstances under which it takes place, is evidently the result of the operation of an established law of the economy, dependent upon moderate irritation and a slight increase of vascular action, and ossification having commenced, it usually goes on until every part of the pulp is converted into a substance analogous to, if not identical with, cementum. We infer then, that when the pulp of a tooth becomes the seat of a sufficient amount of irritation, ossification must follow as a

necessary consequence, but if the irritation be succeeded by active inflammation, a different result may be expected.

The irritation necessary to the ossification of the pulp of a tooth sometimes arises from constitutional causes, but in the majority of cases, it results from the action of local irritants, and most frequently, from impression of heat and cold, communicated through the conducting medium of a metallic filling or a thin layer of dentine.

During the ossification, a sensation is occasionally experienced in the tooth somewhat similar, though altogether less in degree, to that which attends the knitting of the fractured extremities of a broken bone. A numb, vibratory pain, barely perceptible, is felt passing through the tooth several times a day, but only lasting a second or two at a time. It is scarcely sufficient to occasion any annoyance, or to attract any thing more than momentary attention.

With the ossification of the pulp, the crown and inner walls of the root lose their vitality, but the appearance of the tooth is not, as in the case of necrosis arising from the disorganization of the pulp, materially affected. The central cavity being filled with semi-translucent bone, or osteo-dentine, the crown retains its natural color. The discoloration and opacity attending necrosis produced by other causes, results, partly from the presence of putrid matter in the pulp-cavity, and partly from its absorption by the surrounding dentinal walls.

INFLAMMATION OF THE DENTAL PERIOSTEUM.

Inflammation of the periosteum of a tooth may be *acute* or *chronic*, and each variety may be modified in its character both by the state of the constitutional health and the causes concerned in its production. The acute variety, when left to itself, usually terminates in alveolar abscess, but the suppurative process sometimes extends to nearly every part of the periosteum, causing the entire death of the tooth, and often followed by erosion of the root, and necrosis of the alveolus. (See Fig. 115.) When favored by a cachectic habit of body, it often extends to the periosteum of the jaw, followed by suppuration and necro-

sis. Some idea may be formed of the severity which it occasionally assumes by the following case.

Fig. 115.



In 1840, a poor girl, aged fourteen, was brought to the author; about three months before, she had been taken to a barber tooth-drawer for the purpose of having the first left inferior molar extracted. The crown was broken off, the roots left in the socket. Inflammation supervened. This soon extended to the periosteum of the entire bone from the second bicuspid to the coronoid process, and as it was permitted to run its course uninterrupted, it terminated in necrosis and exfoliation of all this portion of the bone, the anterior extremity of which, at the time she was brought to the author, had passed through the integuments of the lower part of the face, and protruded externally. A few days after, it was removed without difficulty. See Fig. 115.

But, as the causes, symptoms and remedial indications of acute inflammation of the dental periosteum were briefly described in the chapter on tooth-ache, and as we shall have occasion to refer to the subject again when we come to treat of alveolar abscess, it will not be necessary to dwell upon it here. We will merely state, however, that, after having terminated in suppuration, it sometimes, instead of subsiding altogether, degenerates into a chronic form, and when favored by some constitutional vice, as the scorbutic, venereal or scrofulous, it often gives rise to the destruction of the socket and loss of the tooth.

Chronic inflammation of the dental periosteum, however, is not always preceded by a more active form of disease. It may assume this form at the commencement, but in this case it is complicated with tumefaction of the gums and a discharge of puriform matter from between their edges and the necks of the teeth. For the treatment of this variety, the reader is referred to chronic inflammation and tumefaction of the gums.

CHAPTER EIGHTEENTH.

DISLOCATION OF THE LOWER JAW.

From the peculiar manner in which the inferior maxilla is articulated to the temporal bones, it is not very liable to be dislocated, and when one or both of its condyles are displaced, the luxation is always forwards. The confirmation of the parts prevents it from taking place in any other direction. The oblong, rounded head of each condyle is received into the fore part of a deep fossa in the temporal bone, situated just before the meatus auditorious externus, and under the beginning of the zygomatic arch. The articular surface of each is covered with a smooth cartilage, and between which there is a movable cartilage. This latter is connected with the articulating surface of the condyle and fossa of the temporal bone by ligaments attached to its edges. But the articulation is rendered still more secure by means of an external ligament which rises from the external edge of the fossa in the temporal bone, and is attached to the neck of the condyle of the jaw, which it surrounds—constituting the true capsular ligament. The intervening movable cartilage, from being more strongly connected with the head of the condyle than to the articular cavity, escapes with the former, whenever a dislocation of the jaw takes place.

Dislocation of the lower jaw is rarely caused by a blow, except it is given when the mouth is open; it is more frequently occasioned by yawning or laughing. It has been known to occur in the extraction of teeth, and in attempting to bite a very large substance. Sir Astley Cooper mentions the case of a boy who had his jaw dislocated by suddenly putting an apple into his mouth to keep it from a playfellow.

After the jaw has been dislocated once, it will ever after be

more liable to this accident, and in consequence of which, Mr. Fox very properly recommends to those to whom it has once happened, the precaution of supporting the jaw whenever the mouth is opened very widely in gaping, or for the purpose of having a tooth extracted. But none of these causes would be sufficient to produce the accident, except the ligaments of the temporo-maxillary articulation are very loose, and the muscles of the jaw very much relaxed.

The author has never had an opportunity, in his own practice, of witnessing but one case of dislocation of the lower jaw, and the subject of this was a young lady from Virginia, about seventeen years of age. It occurred in attempting to extract the first right inferior molar. Both condyles were displaced, but so completely were the muscles of the jaw relaxed, that he immediately reduced it without the least difficulty, and afterwards, by supporting the jaw with his left hand, succeeded in removing the tooth.

Fig. 116.



When the lower jaw is dislocated, the mouth remains wide open, as seen in Fig. 116 and a great deal of pain is experienced, which, according to Boyer, is caused by the pressure of the condyles on the deep-seated temporal nerves, and those which go to the masseter muscles, situated at the roots of the zygomatic processes. The condyles having left their place of articulation, are advanced before the articular eminences and lodged under the zygomatic arches. The jaw cannot be closed; the coronoid processes may be felt under the malar bones; the temporal, masseter and buccinator muscles are extended; the articular cavities being empty, a hollow may be felt there; the saliva flows uninterruptedly from the mouth, and deglutition and speech are either wholly prevented, or very greatly impaired. Boyer says, that "during the first

five days after the accident, the patient can neither speak nor swallow." The jaw, when only one condyle is displaced, is forced, more or less, to one side.

If the dislocation continues for several days or weeks, it is said, the chin gradually approaches the upper jaw, and that the patient slowly recovers the functions of speech and deglutition. We are told by Mr. Samuel Cooper, that it may prove fatal, if it remains unreduced;* but Sir Astley Cooper says, he has never known any dangerous effects to result from this accident—on the contrary, that after it had continued for a considerable length of time, the jaw partially recovered its motion.†

In the reduction of a dislocation of the lower jaw, the ancients employed two pieces of wood, which were introduced in each side of the mouth, between the molar teeth, and while they were made to act as levers for depressing the back part of the bone, the chin was raised by means of a bandage.

The method usually adopted by surgeons for reducing a dislocation of this bone, consists in introducing the thumbs, wrapped with a napkin or cloth, to prevent them from being hurt by the teeth, as far back upon the molar teeth as possible, then, depressing the back part of the jaw, and, at the same time, raising the chin with the fingers. In this way the condyles are disengaged from under the zygomatic arches, and made to glide back into their articular cavities. But the moment the condyles are disengaged, the thumbs of the operator should be slipped outwards between the teeth and cheeks, as the action of the muscles, at this instant, in drawing the jaw back, causes it to close very suddenly, and with considerable force, so that this precaution is necessary to prevent being hurt, unless a piece of cork or soft wood has been previously placed between the teeth.

By the foregoing simple method of procedure, the dislocation may, in almost every case, be readily reduced, but Mr. Fox mentions a case in which it failed. The subject was a lady who had had her lower jaw luxated several times before, and this time the accident was occasioned by an attempt which he made to extract one of the inferior dentes sapientiæ. After

*Vide *Surgical Dictionary*, p. 306.

†Vide *A. Cooper on Dislocations*, p. 389.

having failed to reduce the luxated bone by the usual method, he says, he "happened to recollect a statement made to him by M. de Chemant, of his having been frequently applied to by a person at Paris, who was subject to this accident, and that he always succeeded in reducing the luxation immediately," by means "of a lever of wood, as recommended by Dr. Monroe." Profiting by this statement, Mr. F. procured a piece of wood "about an inch square, and ten or twelve inches long." He placed one end of this upon the lower molars, and then raised the other, so that the upper teeth aided as a fulcrum. As soon as the jaw was depressed, the condyle of this side of the jaw, upon which the wood was applied, immediately slipped back into its articular cavity. The wood was then applied to the opposite side of the jaw, and the other condyle reduced in the same manner.*

The method proposed by Sir Astley Cooper, consists, when both condyles are displaced, in introducing two corks behind the molars, and then elevating the chin. He, however, first places his patient in a recumbent posture.†

After the reduction of the dislocation, the patient is recommended to abstain, for several days, from the use of solid aliments, and to prevent a recurrence of the accident, to wear a four-tailed bandage,‡ or, what is still better, the bandage contrived by Mr. Fox, (see Fig. 60,) to prevent its recurrence in the extraction of teeth. When it is used for the latter purpose, the mouth is first opened to a proper extent, when, with the condyles in their articular cavities, it is applied, and the straps tightly buckled. This done, it is impossible to advance the jaw sufficiently to produce a dislocation.

* Vide American edition of *Fox on the Human Teeth*, p. 330.
† Vide *A. Cooper on Dislocations*, p. 391.
‡ Vide *Cooper's Surgical Dictionary*, p. 306.

PART FOURTH.

SALIVARY CALCULUS.

DISEASES OF THE GUMS AND ALVEOLAR PROCESSES, AND THEIR TREATMENT.

PART FOURTH.

CHAPTER FIRST.

SALIVARY CALCULUS.

THE physical characteristics, and local and constitutional indications of salivary calculus, having been noticed in a preceding place, it will not be necessary to refer to them again. We shall, therefore, confine our remarks chiefly to its elementary constituents—its origin—the manner of its formation—its effects, and the manner of removing it from the teeth.

FIG. 117.

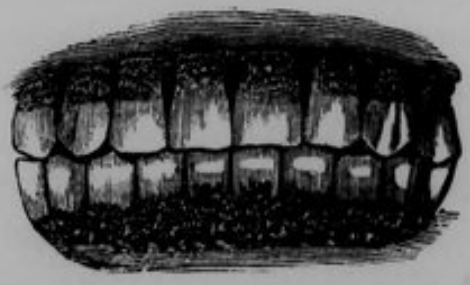


FIG. 118.



Tartar or salivary calculus sometimes accumulates in very large quantities upon the teeth, giving to the mouth a most disagreeable and repulsive aspect, and imparting to the breath, not unfrequently, an almost insufferably offensive odor. Fig. 117 represents a set of teeth encrusted with it, and Fig. 118 a single tooth presented to the author by Dr. W. Allen, of Massachusetts, with the largest accumulation of this substance upon it which he has ever seen in one mass. Its longest diameter

is an inch and an eighth, its shortest seven-eighths, and its thickness five-eighths of an inch. Imbedded in its substance is the entire crown and neck of a lower dens sapientiæ, which was removed with it. It is of a light brown color, and weighs two drachms and seventeen grains.

CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF SALIVARY CALCULUS.

Tartar or salivary calculus is composed of phosphate of lime and animal matter, combined in various proportions, according as it is hard or soft, consequently, no two analyses will yield the same result. The following is the analysis made by Mr. Peps for Mr. Fox. Fifty parts yielded:

Phosphate of lime,	35
Fibrini, or cartilage,	9
Animal fat, or oil,	3
Loss,	3
	50

Berzelius gives the following analysis. He found one hundred parts to contain

Phosphate of lime and magnesia,	79.0
Salivary mucus and salivine,	13.5
Animal matter,	7.5
	100.

Dr. Dwinelle, dentist of Cazenovia, New York, furnishes the following:

"Of one hundred parts, there are," says he, "of

Phosphate of lime,	60
Carbonate of lime,	14
Animal matter and mucus,	16
Water and loss,	10
	100"

The last named gentleman acknowledges that he could make no two analyses agree. Hard dry tartar contains more earthy, and less animal matter than the soft humid tartar.

The infusoria of which M. Mandl says tartar is composed, have their origin in the vitiated mucus which is always mixed with it. Scherer has detected infusoria, with a microscope, in the saliva of a girl laboring under a scorbutic affection of the mouth, in large numbers, but the author is inclined to believe that they had their origin in the mucous secretions of this cavity, which are always mixed with the former fluid. They are more or less numerous, as the tartar is hard or soft, or in proportion to the quantity of mucus that enters into its composition. Dr. Dwinelle has given a minute description of their appearance, in the 1st No. of the 5th volume of the American Journal of Dental Science.

ORIGIN AND FORMATION OF SALIVARY CALCULUS.

There exists a variety of opinions with regard to the source from whence salivary calculus is derived. English and American writers believe it to be a deposit from the saliva, but the French do not agree concerning its origin. Jourdain thinks it is secreted by glands, which he believes to be scattered over the periosteum of the teeth. Gariot says it comes from the gums. Serres tells us he has discovered upon the mucous membrane of the gums, certain glands, whose particular function it is to secrete this substance. In commenting upon the views of this last mentioned author, M. Delabarre remarks: "The small glands, which he thus designates," (alluding to the appellation of *dental* which the author gives to them,) "may, perhaps, belong to the mucous or salivary system, for the saliva, as all physiologists know, is not alone furnished by the parotid glands, but by a great number of calculus kennels, that are very observable in ruminating animals, scattered over various parts of the mucous membrane of the mouth. I, therefore, am of opinion, that this is a gratuitous supposition on the part of this author, because children of a very early age are not affected with tartar, and it is on them that he believes he has discovered the glands

which produce it. Did these really exist, they would augment in size, instead of decreasing, as age advanced, and their functions becoming more and more established, they would attain to a very large size in old persons, and those most subject to tartar. Now, there is nothing to lead one to suppose their existence in these individuals. Therefore, to suppose that organs that have no functions may be very perceptible, which, when they have them, cannot be discovered, is contrary to sound philosophy; were we to do so in this case, the *dental glands* of the author would be entirely different from all others, which are the more decided the more they are in action. Inadmissible, then, as this supposition is, I do not believe in the existence of these glands, which I have patiently searched for, but in vain."

Our own views in relation to the supposed existence of the dental glands of M. Serres, are so fully expressed in the foregoing remarks of M. Delabarre, that we do not deem it necessary to say more on the subject, except to add what has been suggested by others, that he has evidently mistaken the follicles of the mucous membrane of the gums for glands.

But M. Delabarre is not more fortunate in the theory which he advances of the origin of salivary calculus, than Serres. He believes it to be an exhalation from the mucous membrane of the gums. Alluding to what M. Dupuy, professor of the veterinary establishment at Alfont, says, concerning the formation of tubercular matter of a calcareous nature in soft tissues, where he supposes there are no other fluid but mucus, he tells us that it is "in the same manner that the exhalents of the gums furnish tartar," and that "they give out more or less of it according as the gums are in a healthy or inflamed state." "When diseased," he says, "they are covered with a whitish layer, which is at first soft," but gradually collecting upon the teeth, it afterwards becomes hard; and, according to this author, it is only when the gums are inflamed that it is produced.

It is in this way that he accounts for its accumulation on the teeth of one side of the mouth, while those of the other have none of it on them, though they are all bathed alike in the saliva. The concretions of earthy salts in the salivary conduits, he accounts for, by supposing them to be furnished by the ex-

halents of the mucous membrane which lines them, and not by the fluid they convey to the mouth.

Analogous formations in other parts, he accounts for in the same way. The calculous incrustations found upon a sound, on its removal, after having remained in the bladder for a long time, and from subjects in whom no previous disposition to gravel had existed, he supposes to be the result of the irritation produced by the instrument, on the mucous membrane of this viscus. In replying to this part of his argument in support of his theory that salivary calculus is furnished by the exhalents of the mucous membrane of the mouth, Mr. Bell says, "The previous non-existence of calculus in the bladder cannot be deemed any proof that the elements of its composition had not been held in solution in the urine, requiring only the occurrence of any extraneous body in the bladder to serve as a nucleus for its deposition. This view of the subject is amply confirmed by the fact, that depositions, both of the lithic salts and of the triple phosphate, the bases of the usual varieties of urinary calculi, are constantly formed from the urine after its expulsion from the bladder."

It is unfortunate for M. Delabarre, that he drew this analogy, for Mr. Bell has shown it to be conclusive against the theory which he intended to establish by it. He says, "that salivary calculus, or tartar of the mouth, is deposited in a similar manner from the saliva, is, I think, directly proved, or at least supported by the highest degree of probability by every circumstance connected with its formation." The fact, too, that it is always found in largest quantity on the teeth opposite the mouths of the salivary ducts, is a strong argument of itself, in favor of the theory that it is a salivary formation; but, still more conclusive, is the fact of its formation within the very channels themselves of these conduits.

The theory of M. Delabarre is insufficient for the explanation of its deposition here, for, it is not presumable, that inflammation would seize upon a single point of the mucous membrane of one of these passages, without effecting it to a considerable extent. The most probable cause of its formation here, therefore, appears to us, to be the accidental precipitation

of a particle of it from the saliva on its passage through them, which, becoming entangled in the mucus, is detained, and afterwards serves as a nucleus for its deposition.

Of the existence of the elements of its composition in the saliva there can be no question. Chemical analyses of this fluid, direct from the glands, place all doubt upon the subject at rest. Turner, in enumerating its chemical constituents, mentions as one, bone earth.* and, Siedemann, Gemlin† and Scherer,‡ have detected phosphate of lime, as has also Enderlin§ and other chemists who have analysed this fluid. Thus it is seen that the chief earthy constituents which enter into the formation of this substance are contained in the saliva. It may also exist in solution in the mucous fluid of the mouth.

The circumstance that its deposition on the teeth is always accompanied by inflammation of the gums, M. Delabarre seems to rely upon as conclusive in favor of the correctness of his views of the manner of its formation. But here again, he is equally unfortunate. The inflammation of which he speaks, is the effect, and not the cause, as he supposes, of its deposition. The soft white layer of tartar, of which he makes mention, as observable on the gums, when diseased, is nothing more than thick, hardened mucus. We have repeatedly examined it, and are well assured of the correctness of the assertion.

The deposition of tartar on the teeth of one side of the mouth, without a similar deposit on the corresponding teeth of the opsite side, does not furnish the least shadow of evidence in support of the doctrine that it is an exhalation from the sanguineous capillaries of the mucous membrane of the gums. The mastication of food, with most persons, is principally performed by the teeth, on one side of the mouth, and, that this function prevents, in a considerable degree, the accumulation of tartar on the organs immediately concerned, is a fact with which every dentist must be familiar. Hence, its frequent collection on the teeth of one side, and not on those of the other. And, that it is as-

* *Turner's Chemistry*, p. 756.
† *Müller's Physiology*, vol. 1, p. 461.
‡ *French Lancet*. April, 1845.
§ *Liebig, Annalen*, 1844, pp. 3 and 4.

cribable to this circumstance, is susceptible of positive proof. If, on the removal of the tartar from the teeth of a person, in whose mouth it had only collected on those of one side, mastication be afterwards altogether performed on these, it will not re-accumulate on them, and if the requisite attention to the cleanliness of the teeth on the other side be not properly observed, it will soon collect there, although these teeth had before remained free from it. We have frequently requested our patients to do this, and such has almost invariably been the result, which would not have been the case, were its formation dependent on inflammation of the gums.

Again, it often happens that disease of a severe character, is excited in the gums, by the use of mercurial medicines and other causes, and yet, but a small quantity of tartar collects on the teeth; but, that any condition of the general system, or of the mouth, tending to increase the viscosity of the fluids of this cavity, promotes its formation, is undeniable. There are, however, some temperaments much more favorable to its production than others, and, it is a fact equally well established, that the mucous membrane of those in whose mouths it accumulates in largest quantity are the most irritable, and their buccal fluids most viscid. Again, if it were deposited by the mucous fluids of the mouth, it would collect in largest quantities on those teeth which are less abundantly bathed in the saliva, as for example, the anterior surfaces of the upper incisors and cuspidati, while those opposite to the mouths of the ducts, which discharge this fluid into the mouth, would be less liable to deposits of tartar than any of the other teeth.

From all the light, therefore, that has been thrown upon this subject, the conclusion, that this earthy matter is a salivary deposit, to us appears irresistible, and, the following seems to be the manner of its formation.

It is precipitated from the saliva, as this fluid enters the mouth, on the surfaces of the teeth, opposite the openings into the ducts, from which it is poured. To these, its particles become agglutinated by the mucus always found, in greater or less quantity, upon them. Particle after particle is afterwards deposited, until it sometimes accumulates in such quantities

that nearly all the teeth are almost entirely encrusted in it. It is always, however, found in greatest abundance on the outer surfaces of the superior molars, and the inner surfaces of the inferior incisors, and it is opposite to these that the mouths of the salivary ducts open.

EFFECTS OF SALIVARY CALCULUS UPON THE TEETH, GUMS, AND ALVEOLAR PROCESSES.

The effects resulting from the presence of this substance on the teeth are always pernicious, though sometimes more so than others. An altered condition of the fluids of the mouth, diseased gums, and not unfrequently the gradual destruction of the alveolar processes, and the loosening and loss of the teeth, are among the consequences that result from it. But besides these, other effects are sometimes produced; among which, may be enumerated: tumors and spongy excrescences of the gums, of various kinds; necrosis and exfoliation of the alveolar processes, and portions of the maxillary bones, hemorrhages of the gums, anorexia and derangement of the whole digestive apparatus; foul breath, catarrh, cough, diarrhea, diseases of various kinds in the maxillary antra and nose, pain in the ear, head-ache, melancholy, hypochondriasis, &c. The character of the effects, however, both local and constitutional, depends upon the quantity and consistence of the tartar, and the temperament of the individual and the state of the general health; and the two former of these, are determined by the two latter, and the attention paid to the cleanliness of the teeth. If this last be properly attended to, salivary calculus, no matter how great the constitutional tendency to its formation may be, will not collect upon the teeth. The importonce, therefore, of its constant observance, cannot be too strongly impressed upon the mind, and especially in those of whom there exists a great tendency to its deposition.

The teeth and their contiguous parts suffer more from accumulations of this substance, than almost any other cause. Caries is not much more destructive to them.

When it is permitted to accumulate for any great length of

time, the gums become so morbidly sensitive, that a tooth-brush cannot be used, without producing pain: consequently, the cleanliness of the mouth is not attempted, and thus, no means being taken to prevent its formation, it accumulates with increased rapidity, until the teeth, one after another, and in quick succession, fall victims to its desolating ravages.

It sometimes not only undermines the soundest constitutions, by occasioning discharges of fetid matter from the gums, and corrupting the juices of the mouth, but also renders the breath exceedingly unpleasant and offensive. So nauseating and disagreeable is the odor which some descriptions of tartar exhale, that the atmosphere of a whole room is contaminated by it in a few minutes.

MANNER OF REMOVING SALIVARY CALCULUS.

This is an operation of great importance to the health of the gums, alveolar processes and teeth. But, from a misconception of its nature, rather than from fear of pain, many are much opposed to it: and, notwithstanding the universal admiration excited by clean and white teeth, suffer the beauty of these organs to be destroyed, rather than submit to its performance. There are some, indeed, who, though scrupulously particular in every thing that regards dress, seem, nevertheless, to consider the cleanliness of their mouths as unworthy of notice.

For the removal of tartar from the teeth, a variety of instruments are necessary, which should be so constructed, that they may be easily applied to all of the teeth. The instruments put up in small boxes and sold in the shops, are illy suited for the purpose. Those used by dental practitioners, are so very similar in their shape, and so well known, that we do not deem it necessary to point out the minute differences of construction, or even to give a general description of the instruments themselves.

Every dentist should have a sufficient number and variety to enable him to perform the operation in the most perfect manner, and with the least possible inconvenience to the patient.

For if any particles of tartar be suffered to remain, they will

irritate the gums, and serve as nuclei for immediate subsequent re-accumulations.

The adhesion of tartar to the teeth is sometimes so great, that considerable force is required for its removal, even when the sharpest and best tempered instruments are employed. But ordinarily, it may be removed with ease. Considerable tact, however, is always necessary to perform the operation in a skillful manner; more than most persons, from its simplicity, imagine. This skill can be acquired only by practice. Tartar may be taken from the outer and inner surfaces of the teeth without much difficulty, but the removal of it from between them, is more troublesome, and can only be effected by means of very thin, sharp-pointed instruments.

Several sittings are sometimes necessary for the completion of the operation, especially when the tartar has accumulated in very large quantities. In cases of this sort, it should be removed at the first sitting from between the edges of the gums and the necks of the teeth. The mouth in the mean time, during the intervals between the several operations, should be gargled several times a day, with some cooling and astringent wash; but more particular directions will be given on this subject in the next chapter.

During the removal of tartar from the teeth, the gums often bleed very freely, and when they are much swollen and spongy, it may be well to promote it by holding tepid water in the mouth. When the lower incisors are loose, as is often the case, the operation should be proceeded with cautiously to prevent starting them from their sockets, and this is the more necessary when the tartar is very hard and adheres to the organs with great tenacity.

Chemical agents are sometimes employed for the removal of salivary calculus, especially such of the mineral acids as are supposed to have less affinity for the lime of the teeth, than the phosphoric with which it is combined; but it is scarcely necessary to say, that any acid capable of dissolving tartar, will act upon these organs. The use of agents of this sort, therefore, should be carefully avoided. Nearly all, both of the mineral and vegetable acids, as has been shown in a preceding part of this work, act readily upon the teeth.

CHAPTER SECOND.

DISEASES OF THE GUMS.

THE gums and alveolar processes, from apparently the same cause, frequently assume various morbid conditions. An unhealthy action in one, is almost certain to be followed by disease in the other. The most common form of disease, to which these parts are subject, is usually, though very improperly, denominated scurvy, from its supposed resemblance to *scorbutus*, "a genus of disease in the class *cachexiæ*, and order *impetiginis*, of Cullen." To this disease, however, it bears no resemblance. Instead, therefore, of continuing the use of the term, we propose to treat it under the appellation of *chronic inflammation and tumefaction of the gums, attended by recession of their margins from the necks of the teeth*, which seems to express more clearly the condition of the parts, and the nature of the disease. The gums sometimes, though less frequently, become the seat of acute inflammation. The other affections to which the gums are liable, will be noticed under their appropriate heads.

The diseases of the gums and alveolar processes, are divided by Mr. Bell, into two classes: "those which are the result of local irritation, and those which arise from constitutional causes."

But were it not for local irritation, the constitutional tendencies to disease, in these parts, would rarely manifest themselves; and on the other hand, were it not for constitutional tendencies, the effects of local irritation would seldom be of a serious character. "Thus," says Mr. B., "the same cause of irritation, which, in a healthy person, would occasion only simple abscess, might in a different constitution, result in ulceration of a deci-

dedly cancerous type; and, in others, in the production of fungous tumors, or the formation of scrofulous abscesses."

Each constitution has its own peculiar tendency, or, in other words, is more favorable to the development of some forms of disease than others, and this tendency is always increased or diminished, according as the functional operations of the body generally, are healthily or unhealthily performed. Thus, in an individual of a mucous habit, derangement of the digestive organs increases the tendency superinduced by it to certain forms of diseased action in particular organs, and in none more than the gums. A local irritant, which would not before have produced any thing more than slight inflammation of the margins of the gums, would now give rise to turgidity and sponginess of their whole structure. The same, too, may be said with regard to a person of a scrofulous or scorbutic habit.

The susceptibility of the gums to the action of morbid irritants, is always increased by enfeeblement of the vital powers of the body. Hence, persons laboring under excessive grief, melancholy, or any other affection of the mind, or constitutional disease, tending to enervate the vital energies of the system, are exceedingly subject to inflammation, sponginess and ulceration of the gums. But, notwithstanding the increase of susceptibility which the gums derive from certain constitutional causes and states of the general health, these influences, in the majority of cases, may all be counteracted by a strict observance of the rules of dental hygiene; or, in other words, by constant and regular atention to the cleanliness of the teeth.

A local disease, situated in a remote part, often has the effect of diminishing the tendency in the gums to disease, but when, from its violence or long continuance, the general health becomes implicated, the susceptibility of these parts is augmented.

Although deriving the predisposition which they have to disease, from a specific, morbid constitutional tendency, they, nevertheless, when diseased, contribute in no small degree to derange the whole organism. An unhealthy action here vitiates the fluids of the mouth, and renders them unfit for the purposes for which they are designed—hence, when these parts are restored to health, whether from the loss of the teeth, or the

treatment to which they may have been subjected, the condition of the general health is always immediately improved.

Thus, while the susceptibility of the gums to morbid impressions is influenced by the state of the general health, the latter is equally influenced by the condition of the former. And, not only is a healthy condition of the gums essential to the general health, but it is also essential to the health of the teeth and alveolar processes. From the intimate relationship that subsists between the former and latter, disease cannot exist in one, without, in some degree at least, affecting the other. Caries of the teeth, for example, often gives rise to inflammation of the gums and alveolo-dental periosteum; and, on the other hand, inflammation of these parts, vitiates the fluids of the mouth, and causes them to exert a deleterious action upon the teeth as well as upon other parts of the body.

ACUTE INFLAMMATION OF THE GUMS.

This affection very frequently occurs in connection with stomatitis, or inflammation of the mucous membrane generally, of the buccal cavity, which appears under a great variety of forms; but in this case, the inflammatory action does not always extend to the subjacent fibro-cartilaginous structure, and the local disease is complicated with other disorders, the treatment of which comes more properly within the province of the medical than that of the dental practitioner. Acute ulitis, or active inflammation of the gums, properly speaking, is, in most cases, a purely local disease, usually arising from the irritation of dentition, or as a consequence of periodontitis. It often extends to the submaxillary glands and muscles of the face, attended by swelling and other morbid phenomena.

But as this form of inflammation of the gums is treated of in connection with other subjects, it will not be necessary to repeat what we have said elsewhere concerning it.

CHRONIC INFLAMMATION AND TUMEFACTION OF THE GUMS, ATTENDED BY RECESSION OF THEIR MARGINS FROM THE NECKS OF THE TEETH.

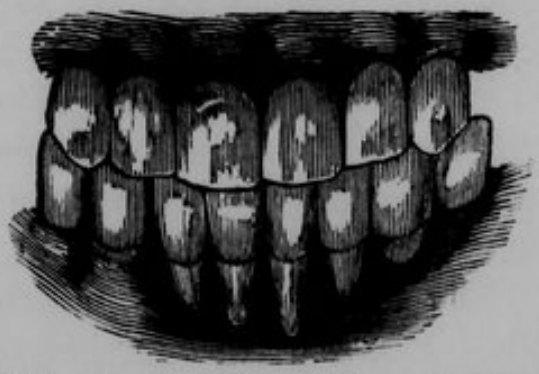
The affection on which we are now about to treat has been variously designated. Jourdain and other French writers, term it, in its more advanced stages, "*conjoined suppuration*," because it is then complicated with a discharge of purulent matter from between the edges of the gums and the necks of the teeth, and a gradual destruction of the alveolar processes. Dr. Koecker calls it the "*devastating process*," because it is attended by wasting of the gums and alveoli, but it is more frequently treated of under the appellation of "scurvy" than any other name.

Chronic inflammation of the gums may exist for years without being attended by suppuration, or recession of their margins from the necks of the teeth, but, sooner or later, according to the amount of local irritation and the state of the constitutional health and habit of body, these phenomena, accompanied by the gradual destruction of the alveolar processes and loosening of the teeth, are developed. With the occurrence of the inflammation the margins of the gums gradually lose their festooned appearance, become thick, spongy and rounded, and, ultimately, on being pressed, purulent matter is discharged from between them and the necks of the teeth. Their sensibility is increased, and they bleed from the most trifling injury.

The diseased action usually develops itself, first, in the gums around the lower front teeth and the upper molars, opposite the mouths of the salivary ducts, and in the immediate vicinity of aching, decayed, dead, loose, or irregularly arranged teeth, or in the neighborhood of roots of teeth, and from thence it extends to the other teeth. The rapidity of its progress depends on the age, state of the general health, temperament and habit of body of the individual, and the character of the local irritants which have given rise to it. It is always more rapid in persons addicted to the free use of spiritous liquors, and in individuals in whom there exists a scorbutic tendency, or who have suffered from a mercurial diathesis of the general system, or from venereal disease.

The inflammation may be confined to the gums of two or three teeth, or it may extend to the gums of all the teeth, in one or both jaws.

FIG. 119.



The gums, as the disease advances, begin to recede from the necks of the teeth, the alveoli to waste, and as the teeth lose their support, they loosen and ultimately drop out. In Fig. 119, is represented a case in which nearly one half of the roots of the lower incisors have become exposed from this devastating process.

But the loss of the teeth, though it puts a stop to the local disease, is not the only bad effect which results from it. Constitutional symptoms often supervene; more vital organs become implicated, and the health of the general system is sometimes very seriously impaired. Hence, the improvement that is often observed in the general health, after the loss of the teeth of persons, whose mouths have for a long time been affected with this disease. No condition of the mouth has a greater tendency to deteriorate its secretions, and impair the function of mastication and digestion than the one now under consideration.

In forming an opinion of the consequences likely to result from the disease, the practitioner should be governed not only by the health and age of the patient, and the local causes concerned in its production, but he should also endeavor to ascertain, whether it is connected with a constitutional tendency, or is purely a local affection. Some have been led to believe, that the wasting of the gums and alveolar processes, may sometimes take place without being connected with any special, local or constitutional causes; that it is identical with that process by which the teeth of aged persons are removed, and that when it occurs in persons not past the meridian of life, it is symptomatic of a sort of premature old age.

Mr. Bell, on this subject, remarks: "In forming a judgment upon cases of this description, however, and even on those in

which the loss of substance is associated with more or less of diseased action, it is necessary to recollect, that the teeth are generally removed in old age by this identical mode, namely, the destruction of their support, by the absorption of the gums and alveolar processes; and as this step towards general decay commences at very different periods in different constitutions, it may, doubtless, in many cases, even in persons not past the middle period of life, be considered as an indication of a sort of premature old age, or an anticipation, at least, of senile decay, as far as regards these parts of the body."

The loss of the teeth, from the wasting of the gums and alveolar processes, although occurring frequently in advanced life, is not a necessary consequence of senility, for we occasionally see persons of seventy, and even eighty years of age, whose teeth are as firmly fixed in their sockets, and their gums as little impaired, as in individuals at twenty. We do not recollect ever to have seen a case of this sort, in which there was not evidently some diseased action in the gums. But it is of little importance whether it be the result of old age, a constitutional tendency, functional derangement of some other part, or local irritation, since the consequences resulting from such loss are always the same.

The gums after having been once the seat of chronic inflammation, are ever after more susceptible to the action of morbid irritants.

CAUSES.

The immediate or exciting cause of inflammation of the gums, is local irritation, produced by salivary calculus, carious, dead, loose or aching teeth, or roots of teeth, or by teeth which occupy a wrong position, or that are crowded in their arrangement. It may also be produced by very hard teeth, which, in consequence of their density, possess only a very low degree of vitality. Cases of recession of the gums, in which only a slight inflammatory action exists, are frequently met with in individuals having teeth of this description. The cause of this can only be explained, by supposing a want of congeniality

between the organs and the more sensitive and highly vitalized parts with which they are in immediate contact. The same thing is observed when the vitality of the teeth is weakened by age, which Mr. Bell regards as an indication of senile decay.

The secretions of the mouth, too, especially the mucous, are often rendered, by certain conditions of the general system, so acrid as to become a source of irritation to the gums.

Dr. Koecker, who has had the most ample opportunities of observing this affection in all its various forms, says, he has never seen a case of it in which tartar was not present. That it is present in a large majority of the cases there is no question, but that it is in all, is certainly a mistake. The author has met with many, in which not the smallest deposit could be detected.

The disease attacks persons of all ages, ranks, and conditions, and in every country, climate and nation. "I have observed," says Dr. Koecker, "the inhabitants of the most opposite countries, the Russians, the French, the Italians, the Spaniards, the Portuguese, the English, the African, the East and West Indians, and those of the United States, to be all more or less liable to it."

It is, however, more frequently met with in the lower than in the higher classes of society. Persons who pay no attention to the cleanliness and health of their teeth, are particularly subject to it. With sailors, and those who live principally on salt provisions, it is very common. "Persons of robust constitutions," says the author just quoted, "are much more liable to this affection of the gums, than those of delicate habits; and it shows itself in its worst forms, oftener after the age of thirty, than at any earlier period."

To the causes of irritation which have already been enumerated, may be added, accumulations of extraneous matter on the teeth, and along the edges of the gums, exostoses of the roots of the teeth, artificial teeth badly inserted, or of improper materials, and dental operations badly performed. The use of improper tooth-brushes and powders, especially charcoal, may be reckoned among its exciting causes. Acids of all sorts, we are told by Dr. Fitch, produce "irritability of the gums about the necks of the teeth."

Every condition of the general system tending to increase the susceptibility of the gums to the action of local irritants, favors the production of the disease; and every thing that tends to induce such conditions, may be regarded as its predisposing cause; such as bilious and inflammatory fevers, the excessive use of mercurial medicines, venereal poison, intemperance and debauchery. Any deterioration of the fluids of the body is peculiarly conducive to it. Persons of cachectic dispositions are far more subject to it, and generally in its worst forms, than those in whom no such tendency exists.

Strumous individuals sometimes have an affection of the gums, which differs from the one just described in many respects. The gums, instead of being purple and swollen, are paler and harder than ordinary, and, on being pressed, discharge a mucopurulent matter, of a dingy white color. They often remain in this condition for years, without appearing to undergo any structural alteration, or to affect the alveolar processes.

This variety of disease of the gums, is principally confined to persons who have very white teeth; it is much less likely to attack males than females; and has never, so far as we have been able to ascertain, been mentioned by any dental writer. Mr. Fox speaks of ulceration of the gums of scrofulous children; but that is of frequent occurrence, and is characterized by the usual phenomena of inflammation. This rarely occurs before the age of eighteen or twenty; and, it seems to be the result of impaired nutrition. The gums exhibit no signs of inflammatory action; on the contrary, they are paler, less sensitive, and possessed of less warmth than usual. It is never attended with tumefaction nor by absorption, except in its advanced stages; whereas, the affection of which Mr. Fox speaks, is always accompanied by both.

TREATMENT.

In the treatment of inflamed, spongy and ulcerated gums, the first thing claiming our attention, is the removal of the exciting causes. If there are dead or loose teeth in the mouth, or teeth which from their position, act as mechanical irritants, they

should be extracted at once. The remaining teeth should at the same time be freed from all depositions of tartar and other irritating foreign matter.

Dr. Koecker goes so far as to recommend the extraction of any molar tooth, particularly of the upper jaw, which has lost its antagonist, believing that a tooth under such circumstances is a source of irritation to the alveolo-dental periosteum and gums.

"In this manner," says Dr. K., "the loss of one molar tooth, produces the destruction of its remaining antagonist. This is effected, however, after a struggle of nature, of very long duration, which will always involve, in some degree, all the other in a like diseased condition; it is necessary, therefore, to prevent this morbid condition, particularly pernicious in this disease, by the extraction of the tooth, or any molar so situated.

Although a molar tooth, after having lost its antagonist, is sometimes a source of irritation, it may often remain with impunity. Its removal is necessary only when it acts as an irritant to the gums, and it may in a majority of cases be prevented from doing this by keeping it constantly clean.

It is essential in the treatment of the disease under consideration that a decided impression be made upon it at once; consequently, no time should be lost in the removal of local exciting causes. If there be any teeth which act as irritants, and cannot be restored to health, they should as before stated, be immediately removed. The advantage derived from this operation, says Dr. Koecker, would be either partly or wholly lost, were it performed at different periods. This observation has been verified by the author more than once. When he has been prevented by the timidity of his patient from extracting all the offending teeth, at the first sitting, he has always found the cure much retarded, and in some instances, almost entirely defeated.

The extraction of such teeth as it may be necessary to remove having been effected, Dr. Koecker thinks it is better to wait ten or fifteen days before the tartar is taken off The author has never been able to discover any advantage from such delay; on the contrary, he regards it as important that as much of it

as possible, should be taken from the teeth at the same time. Several sittings, however, as has been before remarked, are often required for its complete removal.

The bleeding from the gums and sockets, occasioned by these several operations, should be promoted by frequently washing the mouth with warm water; and when the gums are much swollen, advantage will be derived from scarifying them freely every three or four days with a sharp lancet. This last operation is highly recommended by Messrs. Hunter, Fox and Bell, and indeed its good effects are so apparent, that it should never be neglected. Leeches may also be used in some cases with advantage.

The cure may be accelerated, by washing the mouth several times a day with some tonic and astringent lotion. The author has found the following to be very serviceable:

℞	Pul. nut gall,	ʒ ij.	
	Orris root,	ʒ i.	
	Cort. cinchonæ,	ʒ ij.	
	Infus. rosæ,	℥ iv.	Misce.

Mr. Fox says, great benefit is derived from the use of sea water, "and, therefore," says he, "I always recommend it whenever it can be procured;" adding, that if the gums be tender, it should be used warm. We are unable to speak of the merits of this remedy from experience, never having tried it. We have, in cases where there was much soreness and ulceration of the gums, prescribed the following:

℞	Sub boras soda,	℈ ij.	
	Decoct. sage,	℥ vj.	
	Honey,	℥ i.	Misce.

As a wash for the mouth, Dr. Fitch recommends a decoction of the inner bark of green white oak, which we have, in several cases prescribed, and always found it to be beneficial. The following are recommended by Dr. Koecker, as being very serviceable:

"Take of clarified honey, three ounces, and of vinegar, one ounce. This, diluted in the proportion of three table spoonfuls to a pint of warm sage tea, or water, may be used frequently during the day.

"Take of clarified honey, and of the tincture of bark, two ounces each. Mix and dilute as above.

"Take of honey, and of the tincture of myrrh, two ounces each. Mix and use as above.

"Take of honey, and of the tincture of rhatania, two ounces each. Mix and dilute as above.

"Take of honey, and of the tincture of catechu, one ounce each. Mix and dilute as above."

Mr. Bell recommends the following:

℞ Aluminæ, ʒ ij.
Decoct. cinchonæ,
Infus. rosæ ā ℥ ij. Misce. Fiat lotis.

But when the last prescription is used, the mouth, immediately after, should be thoroughly washed with water and a soft brush, to prevent the sulphuric acid of the alum from exercising a hurtful effect upon the teeth.

But one of the most pleasant, and at the same time most efficacious, lotions which the author has ever employed, is the following:

℞ Pul. ext. rhatania, ℥ ss.
" catechu, ℥ ss.
" orris root, ℥ i.
" cinnamon, ℥ i.
" sub-borate of soda, ʒ ss.
Alcohol, ℥ viii.
Water, ℥ xii.
Oil gaultheria, ʒ iss.
Honey, ℥ viii.

Misce—digest for six days and filter.

If, notwithstanding the use of the means which we have here recommended, matter still be discharged from around the necks of the teeth, and the gums continue spongy, and manifest no disposition to heal, their edges should be touched with a strong solution of the nitrate of silver, which will seldom fail to impart to them a healthy action. It may be used in the proportion of one or one and a half grains to one ounce of water. The most convenient mode of applying it, is with a camel's-hair pencil. Its use is recommended by Mr. Fox, and will often succeed, when other remedies fail. In those cases where the matter discharged from the edges of the gums has a nauseating and disagreeable odor, "a weak solution," says he, "is an excellent remedy for rendering the mouth sweet and comfortable;" but in using it in this way, precaution is necessary to prevent it getting in the fauces, as, in that case, it will cause a disagreeable nausea.

While the means here directed for the cure of this disease are being employed, a recurrence of its exciting causes must be studiously guarded against. Tartar and foreign matter of every kind, should be prevented from accumulating on the teeth, by a free and frequent use of a suitable brush and waxed floss silk, which, until a healthy action be imparted to the gums, should be used at least five times a day; as, for example, immediately after rising in the morning, after each meal, and before retiring at night. The application of the brush may at first occasion some pain; but its use should, nevertheless, be persisted in; for, without it, all the other remedies will be of but little avail. The friction produced by it, besides keeping the teeth clean, is of great service to the gums in imparting to them a healthy action.

Treatment, different from that here described, is necessary for the form of disease, which we noticed, as being characterized by a preternatural paleness of the gums, and by a discharge of muco-purulent matter, from between their edges and the necks of the teeth. In the first case of this disease, treated by the author, he directed astringent and detergent lotions to be used; but these did not produce the desired effect. Having been led from his observations, in this case, to believe that the disease

was connected with the state of the constitutional health, and probably the result of a debilitated state of the general system, he recommended in the next case, the use of tonics and free exercise in the open air. This course, though attended with evident improvement to the general health, seemed to be productive of no benefit to the gums. They still appeared debilitated, and, on being pressed, discharged matter from beneath their edges. He advised a continuance of the tonics and exercise, and with a view of exciting inflammation, touched the edges of the gums with nitrate of silver. This had the desired effect, and, as he had anticipated, a new disease was substituted for the old one; for the cure of which, he directed the mouth to be washed, five or six times a day, with sage tea, slightly impregnated with alum, and sweetened with honey; and every night and morning with salt water.

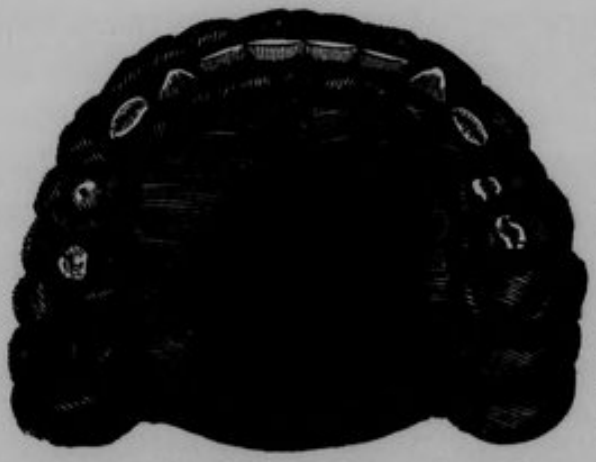
This treatment was perfectly successful. In about three weeks, the gums assumed a healthy appearance, acquired their natural color, and the discharge of muco-purulent matter entirely ceased. He has since had occasion to treat several other cases of the same disease; in all of which he adopted a similar practice, and with like success.

MORBID GROWTH OF THE GUMS.

The structural changes which take place in the gums, as a consequence of increased vascular action, are almost as various as are the constitutional tendencies of different individuals. Those characterizing the affection last noticed, consist, for the most part, in increased thickness and recession of their edges, from the necks of the teeth; but in the one on which we are are now about to treat, there is a morbid growth which is sometimes so considerable, that it almost covers the crowns of the teeth, thus interfering, very seriously, with the function of mastication. When thus affected, the gums have a dark purple color, thick, smooth and rounded margins, and discharge almost constantly from their inner surface, a thin, purulent matter, which exhales an exceedingly offensive odor. They bleed profusely from the slightest injury, and are so sensitive that the

pressure even of the lips is sometimes attended with pain. They are also affected with a peculiar itching sensation, which, at times, is a source of considerable annoyance.

Fig. 120



The accompanying engraving will convey to the reader, a more correct idea of the appearance of the gums when thus affected than any description which can be given. It will be perceived from this, that the morbid growth extends to the gums of all the teeth, as it usually does, when they become the seat of this variety of diseased action.

Among the local and constitutional effects which result from the disease, are, offensive breath, vitiated saliva, destruction of the alveoli, with loosening and ultimately loss of the teeth, impaired digestion, with all its disagreeable concomitants, enlargement of the tonsils and bronchitis, together with a long train of other morbid phenomena.

CAUSES.

The exciting cause of this peculiar affection is local irritation, produced by salivary calculus, dead, diseased or irregularly arranged teeth, but the character of the structural alteration is evidently determined by some cachectic habit of body or constitutional tendency. It often attacks the gums, it is true, of individuals whose teeth are sound and well arranged, but the author has never met with a case in which tartar was not present, though in some instances the quantity was so small as almost to lead one to doubt whether it would have had much agency in the production of the disease. But the susceptibility of the gums to morbid impressions, in individuals liable to this affection, is usually so great, that an irritant, which, under other circumstances would scarcely excite an increase of vascu-

lar action, would, in cases of this sort, give rise to the rapid development of an aggravated form of disease.

TREATMENT.

The first thing to be attended to in the treatment of this disease, is the removal of all dead and such other teeth as may, in any way, irritate the gums. The morbid growth should next be removed, by making a horizontal incision entirely through the diseased gums to the crowns of the teeth. This should be carried as far back as the morbid growth extends. After this, the gums should be freely scarified, by passing a lancet between the teeth down to the alveoli, in order that the vessels may be completely divided, and discharge their accumulated blood. This should be repeated several times, and at intervals of four or five days. Meanwhile the mouth should be washed several times a day with some astringent and detergent lotion, and occasionally with a weak solution of nitrate of silver. The tartar should be removed as soon as the gums have sufficiently collapsed to admit of the operation.

The progress of the disease may be arrested, but a cure cannot be effected by mere local treatment. Particular attention should be paid to the regimen of the patient, and such general remedies prescribed as the peculiar nature of the case may indicate. Excesses and intemperance of every kind must be avoided. The diet should consist principally of vegetables. If animal food be used, it should consist of fresh meats, such as beef, mutton and fowls. Fruits and acid beverages, such as infusions of malt and vinegar, lime juice, spruce beer, &c., may be used with advantage.

The teeth should be kept perfectly and constantly clean. Not a particle of foreign matter should be permitted to remain between them or along the edges of the gums. The most scrupulous attention to this precaution is indispensably necessary. It constitutes one of the most important remedial indications in the treatment of the disease.

MERCURIAL INFLAMMATION OF THE GUMS.

The frequently repeated introduction of mercury into the system, when taken in sufficient quantity, gives rise to the development of peculiar morbid phenomena in the gums and other parts of the mouth. The first indication of the specific action of this powerful medicinal agent upon the animal economy, consists in a slightly increased redness and tumefaction of the free edges of the gums around the necks of the inferior incisors, while the investing mucous membrane of the adherent portion, a little lower down, often assumes a white color, owing to the opacity of the epithelium. These appearances are soon followed by increased secretion of saliva, a brassy or coppery taste, soreness of the teeth and gums, inflammation and swelling of the mucous membrane of the roof of the mouth, fauces, cheeks and salivary glands, swelling of the tongue with increased redness of its edges, and a peculiarly offensive odor of breath. In the meantime, the edges of the gums about the necks of all the teeth swell and assume an increase of redness; the saliva becomes viscid, and is secreted in such abundance as to flow from the mouth, and the movements of the jaws are attended by pain. The alveolo-dental periosteum is thickened, and the teeth raised from their sockets and loosened. A vesicular eruption sometimes appears, followed by ulceration and sloughing of the gums, and very frequently by necrosis of large portions of the alveolar processes and jaw-bones. We were shown a few years since, the entire alveolar border of both jaws, the necrosis and exfoliation of which had been occasioned by severe mercurial salivation, and we have frequently had occasion to remove portions both of the superior and inferior maxillary bones.

By the prudent administration of mercury, however, salivation may be induced, without causing the deplorable effects just described. But the specific action of this agent upon the constitution is always attended by more or less tumefaction and sponginess of the gums, and when once brought under its influence, however perfectly its effects may have subsided, they are ever after more susceptible to morbid impressions.

TREATMENT.

It is scarcely necessary to say, that until the use of the mineral is discontinued, it will be impossible to remove or even counteract its effects upon the gums, but in mild cases, these usually soon disappear after the action which it has produced on the general system has completely subsided. But when they continue spongy, the bowels should be kept open with saline purgatives, and the patient restricted to a fluid farinacious diet, and the mouth gargled several times a day with demulcent decoctions and mild astringent lotions, to which it may sometimes be advisable to add a little laudanum. Washes made from chloride of soda or lime may be used to correct the excessive fetor of the breath

After the action of the medicine upon the system has subsided and the disease assumed a chronic form, the gums, as directed by Mr. Thos. Bell, should be freely scarified by passing a lancet entirely through their substance between the teeth, and this operation should be repeated as often as every four or five days, until they are completely restored. The use of the astringent washes should at the same time be continued, and if there are any teeth which, from the loss of their vitality, or from having become very much loosened by the partial destruction of their sockets, act as irritants, they should be removed.

When the gums have ulcerated, the application of a strong solution of sulphate of zinc or nitrate of silver with a camel's-hair pencil is recommended. Chomel, an eminent French physician, has employed with advantage, in cases of mercurial stomatitis, vapor baths.

ULCERATION OF THE GUMS OF CHILDREN, ATTENDED BY EXFOLIATION OF THE ALVEOLAR PROCESSES.

The gums and alveolar processes of children are occasionally attacked by a very peculiar and most singular form of disease, and it occurs more frequently during the shedding of the temporary and the dentition of the permanent teeth, than at any other period of childhood. Adults, we have never known to

be affected with it, and to the ordinary spongy, inflamed and ulcerated gums, it does not appear to be at all analogous. It bears a much closer resemblance to *cancrum oris*, yet, in many particulars, it differs from this disease.

Among the symptoms which characterize the disease in question, are, itching, ulceration and separation of the gums from the necks of the teeth and alveolar processes; there is, at first, a discharge of muco-purulent matter from between the gums and necks of the teeth, but this ultimately becomes ichorous and fetid. The teeth loosen, and the alveoli lose their vitality and exfoliate. Ulcers are formed in various parts of the mouth, the gums and lips assume a deep red or purple color. In the exfoliation of the alveolar processes, the temporary, and sometimes the crowns of the permanent teeth, are carried away. The skin, for the most part, is dry; the pulse small and quick, the bowels generally constipated, though sometimes there is diarrhea, and to these may be added lassitude and a disposition to sleep.

These may be regarded as the most prominent symptoms of the disease in its most aggravated form. When exfoliation of the alveolar processes takes place, they usually abate, and sometimes wholly disappear. Delabarre says, "among the great number of children that are brought to the orphan asylum, he has had frequent occasion to notice singular complications of the affection," which are modified according to the strength, "sex, and idiosyncrasies of the different subjects." The gums and lips, in some, he describes as being of a beautiful red color; in others, the lips are rosy and the gums pale, and sometimes very much swollen. He also enumerates among the symptoms, burning pain in the mucous membrane of the cheeks, ulceration, pain and swelling in the submaxillary glands.

In the majority of cases the disease is confined to one jaw and to one side, though sometimes both are affected by it. The effects on the permanent teeth, in all the cases which have fallen under the notice of the author, were always injurious, though Delabarre says, if children reach the seventh or eighth year, they are not injured, except that it causes them to be badly arranged, in consequence of the want of a proper development of the jaw.

The author from whom we have just quoted, enumerates among the symptoms of the most aggravated form of the disease, inordinate appetite, burning thirst, a small spot on the cheek, or about the lips, resembling an anthrax, which rapidly increases in size, turns black, separates, discharges an ichorous fluid, and its edges "roll themselves up like flesh exposed to the action of a brisk fire." The flesh separates from the face; the bones become exposed, hectic fever ensues, and in the course of fifteen or twenty days, death puts an end to the sufferings of the child. We are also informed by Delabarre, that this affection is more common among females than males, and that the bones of the jaw are so much softened that they may be easily cut with a knife.

CAUSES.

This disease seems to be the result of general debility or defective nutrition and a cachectic habit of body. It never occurs among the wealthy, but is always confined to children of the poor and destitute, and, so far as the author's observations extend, to those who reside in cellars or small and confined apartments. Children of scorbutic habits, too, seem to be the most subject to it. Delabarre, however, informs us that he has met with it in children who appear robust and in other respects well. He says, its "seat is in the organs of nutrition, and in the fluids that are conveyed to them." The bad disposition which gives rise to it, he mentions as being sometimes innate, and sometimes the result of suffering from want of proper nourishment. He does not regard it as resulting from "a distinct disturbance of any organ separately considered."

From the great debility of all the organs of the body, their functions are languidly and but imperfectly performed. That the disease is determined by general enfeeblement of the functions of the body, there is, we think, little doubt; but whether or not it would develop itself independently of any local cause, is a question which we do not feel ourself able satisfactorily to answer. It is not at all improbable, however, that local irritants are the exciting cause, and we are the more inclined to

this belief from the fact, that in all the cases which have fallen under our observations, the teeth were considerably decayed, and had previously given rise to pain, and in some, they were coated with tartar. While, therefore, the character of the affection is determined by some peculiar constitutional tendency and general enfeeblement of the vital powers of the body, it is not unlikely, that local irritation is the immediate cause of its development.

TREATMENT.

As the treatment of this affection comes more immediately within the province of the medical than the dental practitioner, we shall not dwell long upon the subject.

The local treatment should consist of acidulated and astringent gargles, and a solution of the chloride of lime or soda. The ulcerated parts should be occasionally touched with a strong solution of the nitrate of silver, and Delabarre says, he has, in some cases, derived great advantage from touching them with the actual cautery. As soon as the alveolar processes exfoliate, they should be removed. After this takes place, a cure, with suitable constitutional treatment, is generally speedily effected. This last should consist of mild alteratives, a generous nutritive diet, consisting of succulent viands; and in the absence of fever, tonics and exercise in the open air.

The author just quoted, with a view to arouse the vitality, says, he has "successfully employed the *juice of cruciferous plants, the guinea in powders*," but with the last he unites opium, in order to diminish the action of the digestive apparatus. Counter irritants, such as blisters, he employs when it is necessary to displace irritation of some interior organ.

ADHESION OF THE GUMS TO THE CHEEKS.

The gums and inner walls of the cheeks sometimes contract adhesions which interfere very seriously with the functions of the mouth. The affection may be congenital, but in a large majority of the cases it occurs subsequently to birth. The extent of the adhesion may be small, or it may occupy the gums

of the entire alveolar border of one or of both sides of the mouth, and of one or of both jaws. Desirabode relates the case of a young man who, in consequence of a venereal ulcer, had his upper lip united to the gums of the four incisors in such a way as to form a sort of loop above the teeth, and which, by the retraction of the lip were caused to jut out.*

Adhesion of the gums to the cheeks or lips, results from ulceration of the contiguous structures, whether caused by constitutional disease or local lesions. But that it arises more frequently as a consequence of the immoderate use of mercury than from any other cause, is a universally admitted fact. The author has met with several cases, however, in which the affection had resulted from ulceration of the gums of necrosed temporary teeth, and of the corresponding wall of the cheek, caused by excoriation of the mucous membrane, produced by the sharp points of the protruding roots. But the extent of the union in cases of this sort, is never very considerable.

The proper remedial indication in a case of this kind, consists in separating the parts which have grown together, with a sharp bistoury. This done, a reunion should be prevented, by keeping a piece of cotton or lint in the wound, until the process of cicatrization is completed.

*Author's translation of Desirabode's Complete Elements of the Science and Art of the Dentist, page 227.

CHAPTER FIFTH.

TUMORS AND EXCRESCENCES OF THE GUMS AND ALVEOLAR PROCESSES.

From the gums and alveolar processes, tumors and excrescences of various kinds are occasionally developed, varying in character, from a mere simple growth of the gums, to morbid productions of a fungoid, cartilaginous, bony or scirrhous nature.

The surface of some is smooth, that of others rough, and sometimes covered with eroding ulcers: some are bulbous, and have a broad base; others are attached to the gums by a mere peduncle: some are soft; others are hard: the growth of some is astonishingly rapid; that of others is so slow as to be scarcely perceptible: some are almost entirely destitute of blood vessels; others appear to be almost wholly composed of sanguiferous capillaries: some are nearly destitute of sensibility; others are so exquisitely sensitive, that the slightest touch produces great pain; and hence they have been named, *noli me tangere:* some are nearly white; others have a grayish appearance: some retain the natural color of the gum; others are of a dark purple hue. Finally, some exists for years, without being attended with any serious consequences, while others, in a few months, acquire so aggravated a character as to threaten the life of the patient.

CAUSES.

Tumors of the gums seldom arise spontaneously, but are, in most instances, the result of local irritation, occasioned by the presence of tartar, decayed, or dead teeth, or roots of teeth, but the character which they assume is determined by the state of the constitutional health or by the habit of body of the individ-

ual. Hence their great variety. Different effects are produced by the same causes; and a cause which would give rise to the development of a simple morbid growth of the gums in a person of good health, might in one affected with some constitutional vice, or specific morbid tendency give rise to a tumor of a fungoid, cartilaginous, bony, or scirrhous character.

It is supposed by some that morbid productions of this sort are occasionally developed, independently of any local cause, but this opinion does not seem to be well founded, and we are disposed to believe that, if all the circumstances connected with the history of each case, especially the previous condition of the teeth, could be accurately ascertained, their cause might, in most instances, be traced to irritation of the gums, or alveolar membranes, produced by some unhealthy or crowded state of these organs, or to salivary calculus.

Mr. Liston, in his practical surgery, remarks: "Very many of the *tumors of the jaws*, are traceable to faulty growth or position of the teeth, to diseases of their bodies, or to improperly conducted operations upon them." And, in speaking of tumors of the gums, he observes: "They are caused by decay of some part of one or more teeth, of the crown, neck, fang, or they may arise from their being crowded or misplaced." The pressure of the teeth, when crowded in their arrangement, is always productive of more or less irritation to the alveolo-dental periosteum.

We do not, however, conceive it necessary to the production of tumors, that any of the causes here enumerated should exist at the time they make their appearance. The gums and alveoli having been once affected, are ever afterwards more susceptible to morbid impressions. It is, therefore, quite probable that an unhealthy action is sometimes continued in them long after the cause that produced it ceases to exist; and that this, from being favored by a subsequent unhealthy action of some other part, or of the system generally, determines their development. When we consider how often, and almost constantly, the gums and alveolar periosteum, are exposed to irritation, from the causes just mentioned, we cannot fail to admit, that the hypothesis is, at least, supported by a high degree of

probability. No one, we think, will pretend to deny, that the maxilla and gums suffer more from local irritation than any of the other parts of the body; and to this irritation, we are firmly persuaded most of their diseases are to be ascribed.

TREATMENT.

The most common form of morbid growth met with in the mouth, is that which resembles in structure the gums, except that it is usually rather more vascular. This description of tumor is always the result of dental irritation, and usually disappears soon after the removal of the cause.

In 1828, the author was consulted by a gentleman, who had a considerable enlargement of the gums, which had followed an attempt to extract the first superior molar of the left side. In the operation, the two buccal roots were fractured and left in their sockets. For fifteen or twenty days after the accident, he experienced considerable pain, but at the expiration of this period, it had entirely subsided. About two months after, however, it was again experienced, and although the gums had grown over the roots, they were sore to the touch, and soon began to assume a bulbous form, gradually increasing in size, until at the expiration of twelve months, when we saw the patient, the tumor had attained the size of a black walnut, and was attached by a broad base. As it was situated immediately over the fractured roots which had been left in their sockets, we advised the removal of the tumor previously to attempting their extraction. To this he most positively refused, but readily consented to the removal of the roots. In the performance of this operation, about one third of the base was cut away, and the remaining part of the tumor sloughed off in a few days.

Mr. Fox relates the case of a lady who had an enlargement of the gums that almost entirely filled up one side of her mouth. She first applied to Sir Astley Cooper, who sent her to Mr. F. to have several decayed roots, around the tumor, extracted, before he should attempt its extirpation. The fangs being imbedded in the gums, the excrescence was much lacerated in their removal; afterwards it became placid, assumed a dark

color, and in a short time sloughed off. Thus a perfect cure was effected without any other operation, than that of the extraction of the decayed roots.

This tumor, it would seem, partook somewhat of a fungoid character, and excrescences of this description are usually more difficult to cure than those which consist of a mere simple growth of the gums, like the one first noticed. Although they sometimes spontaneously disappear, on the removal of the exciting causes, yet, in most cases, extirpation becomes necessary, and even this, when not performed in the most perfect manner, is not always successful. After the removal of one, another has been known to spring up in its place; and thus several have sometimes appeared in immediate succession.

Mr. Hunter attributes the disposition of a tissue to re-produce excrescences of this kind, to a scirrhous tendency of the parts from which they originate, but a tumor will rarely re-appear, if the diseased structure be completely removed.

Mr. Fox recommends that excrescences of this sort should be extirpated by means of ligature with the assurance that when they are thus removed, a second operation is seldom necessary. Excision is often attended with profuse and obstinate hemorrhage, and, on this account, the operation recommended by Mr. F. is preferable, when its performance is practicable. The bases of some tumors, however, are so broad, that a ligature cannot be applied sufficiently low to include their whole structure. In such cases we must resort to excision, and if the hemorrhage cannot be stopped by compresses, the actual cautery may be employed.

Mr. Hunter in treating of morbid growths of soft parts, observes: "Arteries going to increased parts are themselves increased, and have not the contractile power of a sound artery:" hence, when wounded, they bleed more freely than those that are in a healthy state.

The removal of excrescences of the gums by means of ligatures, not being attended with so much hemorrhage, and also usually extirminating them more effectually than excision, determined Mr. Fox in his choice of this mode of operating. In treating of this subject, he remarks: "I determined, some years

since, that if any case of this kind should ever come under my care, I would attempt their removal by means of ligatures. The first case in which I was consulted, was a lady of about forty years of age, who had several of the teeth on the right side of the upper jaw extracted when she was a young woman; about five years before I saw her, the gums covering the jaw where the teeth had been situated, appeared to be thicker than before; they gradually increased in size until a very large tumor was formed; it had now become so large as to affect the speech, and, in other respects, was extremely troublesome.

"The lady was very desirous to have it removed; to effect which, without incurring the danger of hemorrhage, I employed ligatures, close to the jaw-bone, through the substance of the tumor, half of which was then included in each ligature. The ligatures were tied just tight enough to stop the circulation; the next day there was a great deal of inflammation, which subsided in proportion as the ligature began to produce ulceration, which on the fourth day was very considerable; new ligatures were then applied; on the sixth day these were removed, and others introduced; on the eighth, one ligature came away, leaving the tumor hanging only by a small peduncle; this being cut through with a lancet, the whole was removed.

Even when the base is large, the tumor may be often successfully removed by passing a needle, armed with a double ligature, through it, close to the bone, and tying it on each side sufficiently tight to cut off the circulation between it and the general system; and it should be reapplied as often as it comes away, until the tumor has sloughed off, when the place should be touched with diluted nitrous acid or with a solution of *nitrate of silver*.

Cartilaginous excrescences of the gums and alveolar processes are comparatively of rare occurrence, and are more difficult to remove than fungous tumors, or those which consist merely of a preternatural growth of the gums. The hardness of their substance is such, that, in many cases, their removal by ligature is impracticable, and extirpation with the knife is, also, sometimes, exceedingly difficult and tedious. Besides, the operation of excision is often attended by obstinate hemorrhage.

Ambrose Parè, with no small self-gratulation, talks of having removed them when they were so large that they came out of the mouth, giving a most hideous appearance to the face, and when no other surgeon dared to undertake their cure, because, of the lividity of their color. "This lividity," says he, "I did not fear, but I had the boldness to cut and even to cauterize the tumors until the disease was entirely cured."*

Jourdain, in speaking of cartilaginous excrescences, remarks: "About thirty-six years ago, I was called, with Allertius Baringue, surgeon, to see a woman that had a tumor of a large size situated on the gum of the molar teeth. It occasioned her mouth to be drawn to the opposite side of her face when she was seized with spasms. We advised her not to delay too long in having it removed; to this she would not consent, but, in a short time, finding that the excrescence increased so fast, and in such a manner, that it hindered her from taking food, she changed her mind. The tumor was embraced with a brass wire, which we tightened every day. The excrescence, receiving nothing now to augment its growth, fell, and upon examination, we found that it was altogether cartilaginous."†

Dr. Fitch quotes a case from Luzitanous, in which the operation for the removal of the tumor was followed by a fatal hemorrhage. The tumor is described as being about half the size of a hen's egg, exhaling a fetid odor, and being very painful. He also mentions a case of a somewhat similar character, that came under his own observation. "The tumor occupied the space of the four incisor teeth of the upper jaw. The teeth were all carious. I extracted them. The tumor had four fistulous openings, which ran in the direction of each tooth, and which furnished to each a fetid humor. With the actual cautery well heated in fire and double-edged, I made but one wound of the four fistulous openings; I touched the bone that was carious, which was repeated several times in the space of three months. In proportion as the exfoliations were made, the tumor diminished. The patient was cured near the end of the fourth month."‡

* *Lib.* chap. viii, v. 1, p. 188. † *Jourdain*, vol. 2, p. 334.
‡ *Fitch's Dental Surgery*, p. 237.

When the base of the tumor is very broad, and the bone beneath carious, as in the case described by Dr. Fitch, the actual cautery is, without doubt, the surest remedy, because it is obvious that until the diseased bone is exfoliated a cure can never be effected. But under no other circumstances is the use of it advisable.

Tumors originating in the alveolar processes or periosteum, are generally of an osteo-sarcomatous, or cartilaginous character. The following is the only case of the kind that has ever come under the author's observation. The subject was a gentleman of between thirty-five and forty years of age. It was about the size of a partridge egg, and attached to the outer wall of the alveolus of the second superior right molar, by a base not larger than a five cent piece. On the back part of the tumor, there was a small fistulous opening, from which an ichorous humor was discharged. The second molar was much decayed, and, on being removed, two of its fangs were found slightly enlarged by exostosis. Having made a circular incision round the tumor, extending to the bone, he attempted to remove it with a knife, but was prevented from doing so by its great hardness. The character of the excrescence was now ascertained. Accordingly, he cut through the alveolar wall on each side, and then, by means of excising forceps, removed it, together with the wall of the alveolus to which it was attached. On examination, it was found to consist of cartilage, interspersed with small patches of bone.

Mr. Bell has given two cases of a very similar character. One of them, however, he says, had no connection with the alveolar processes, and the other succeeded to an attack of the tooth-ache which had lasted several months.

A case of an osteo-sarcomatous tumor, occasioned by diseased teeth, is recorded by Bordenave. Sir Astley Cooper gives the history of two cases of a like nature. In one the tumor originated in the alveolar cavities, and as it increased, displaced the teeth; in the other case, he informs us, the tumor was produced by diseased teeth. Dr. Gibson, also, mentions a case of osteo-sarcomatous tumor, which, "according to the patient's account, first appeared seven months before," (the time he first

saw her,) "in the form of a small lump, seated in the gum above the canine tooth."

In the treatment of tumors originating from the gums, or alveolar processes, or from both, much depends on their character and the constitutional symptoms accompanying them. Some may be entirely removed, as we have before stated, by simply extracting a decayed tooth or root; others will require extirpation, and, in some instances, even this will not avail. In short, the treatment should be varied to suit the respective circumstances of the case.

It sometimes happens, when an operation has been performed successfully, so far as regards the local disease, that the lungs or some other vital organ, becomes affected. To prevent this, it is often necessary to get up, by means of a seton, an artificial excitement in some neighboring part. Without this precaution, the life of the patient would often be put in as great danger as that from which it has escaped by the removal of the local disease.

On the extirpation of fungous exostosis, or osteo-sarcoma, Sir Astley Cooper observes: "The operation, after constitutional means have been employed, and the continuance of these means after the operation, hold out the chief hopes of safety; for amputation without these, will do no more than avert the blow for a season."

These remarks will be found applicable to the treatment of the same description of disease, in whatever part of the body it may be situated. The constitutional symptoms should never be disregarded.

If it were necessary, the author might give the history of several interesting cases of tumor of the gums which he has treated since the publication of the first edition of this work, but enough has been said upon this part of the subject to serve as a guide in the management of cases of this sort.

CHAPTER SIXTH.

ALVEOLAR ABSCESS.

As most of the phenomena attending the formation of alveolar abscess, were noticed in the chapter on tooth-ache, it will not be necessary, in this place, to dwell upon them at much length. The periosteum of a tooth having become the seat of acute inflammation, it suppurates at the extremity of the root, and plastic lymph is at the same time effused. This is condensed into a sac or cyst, which closely embraces the root near its apex, and as suppuration goes on, pus is formed in its centre. The inflammation, in the meantime, having extended to the gums and neighboring parts, they swell and become painful, and as the pus accumulates in the sac, it distends and presses upon the surrounding walls of the alveolus, which, by a sort of chemico-vital process, are gradually broken down. By this means, an opening is ultimately made through one side of the socket, when the pus, coming in contact with the investing soft structures, presses upon them and causes their absorption. Thus an outlet is affected for the escape of the accumulated matter.

The opening which gives egress to the pus, is usually in the gum opposite to the extremity of the root, but the matter may escape from some other and more remote point. It may make for itself an opening through the cheek, through the base of the lower jaw, and be discharged externally; or it may pass up into the maxillary sinus, or through the nasal plates of the superior maxilla, or form a passage between the two plates of the bone, and escape from the centre of the roof of the mouth.

The formation of an abscess in the alveolus of an inferior dens sapientiæ, is sometimes attended by inflammation and swelling of the tonsils and of the muscles of the cheek and neck. The author has known trismus to result from this cause.

The pain attending the formation of alveolar abscess, is deep seated, throbbing, and often so excruciating as to be almost insupportable. But as soon as suppuration takes place, it loses its severity, and with the escape of the pus, ceases altogether, or very nearly, but the tooth, from the thickened condition of the alveolo-dental periosteum, particularly at the apex of the root, often remains sore and sensitive to the touch for several days. The energies of the disease, however, having been expended, the secretion of pus, in the majority of cases, wholly ceases, and the opening in the gums closes. But from the increased susceptibility in the alveolo-dental periosteum to morbid impression, occasioned by the presence of a tooth deprived of a very large portion, at least, of its vitality, a recurrence of the inflammation is liable to take place, when pus will be again formed, and the passage for its escape re-established. But the pain attending any subsequent attack, is never so severe as in the first instance.

There are some cases, however, in which the inflammation, instead of subsiding altogether, degenerates into a chronic form. In this case, the sac at the extremity of the root continues to secrete pus, though the quantity is usually very small, and the opening in the gums remains unclosed.

Fig. 121. Fig. 122.



In the extraction of a tooth which has given rise to the formation of an abscess, the sac is often brought away with it. Two teeth taken from the upper jaw, one a cuspidatus, and the other a first molar, are represented in the accompanying cuts, Figs. 121 and 122, where this had happened. In the case of the molar, the sac is attached to the palatine root. Both of these teeth were extracted previously to the formation of an external opening for the escape of the matter.

The time required for the formation of alveolar abscess, varies from four to ten or fifteen days, according to the violence of the inflammation. But a collection of pus may be detected by its fluctuation under the finger, if applied to the tumefied

gum, one or two days before an external opening is spontaneously formed for its escape.

The inflammation and pain attending the formation of abscess in the socket of a tooth, often give rise to general febrile symptoms, head-ache and constipation of the bowels.

CAUSES.

The immediate cause of alveolar abscess, is, inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum, and this may result from inflammation and suppuration of the lining membrane and pulp, or from an accumulation of purulent matter at the extremity of the root, the egress of which, through the natural opening, having been prevented. It may also be produced by mechanical violence, or the irritation of a dead tooth.

TREATMENT.

The treatment of alveolar abscess, should be preventive rather than curative, for it rarely happens, after it has occurred, that the integrity of the parts is so perfectly restored, as to prevent a recurrence of the affection. Although the scretion of pus may cease for a time, and the opening in the gums become obliterated, the tooth being deprived of a large portion of its vitality, is liable, whenever the excitability of the alveolo-dental periosteum is increased by any derangement of the general system, to give rise to a recurrence of the disease. The formation of abscess, therefore, should, if possible, be prevented by the use of saline cathartics, the application of leeches to the gums, and a cooling regimen. By prompt antiphlogistic treatment the inflammation may sometimes be arrested. But should these means fail to prevent the formation of pus, the tooth, unless its retention is called for by some peculiar necessity, should at once be removed. If, however, as is often the case, the patient will not submit to the operation, the escape of the pus through the gum should be promoted by warm fomentations to the mouth. As soon as fluctuation can be perceived by applying the finger to the tumefied gum, an opening should be made with a sharp lancet for

the escape of the matter. After this has discharged itself, the swelling of the gums and neighboring parts, soon subside.

The application of fomentations and emolient poultices externally, are rarely productive of any advantage, and may do harm by promoting the discharge of matter through the cheek or lower part of the face. When this occurs, a depression with puckering of the skin is apt to remain after the escape of pus through the opening ceases and the orifice has closed, causing great disfiguration to the face. A very singular case of fistulous opening through the external integuments is mentioned by Mr. Thomas Bell. It had resulted from an abscess in the socket of the right inferior dens sapientiæ, and the discharge of matter had been kept up for two years before he saw the patient. "At this time," says Mr. B., "a funnel-shaped depression existed in the skin, which could be seen to the depth of nearly three-quarters of an inch, and a small probe could be passed through it into the sac of the abscess, underneath the root of the tooth. The abscess had now remained open for two years, during the latter of which, the parts had been in the state I have described. I removed the tooth, and, as I anticipated, no farther secretion of pus took place; but so perfectly had the communication been established, that, when the gum healed, it left, by its contraction, a fistulous opening, through which a portion of any fluid received into the mouth passed readily to the outside of the cheek; and I could, with care, introduce a fine probe completely through the passage. So free, in fact, was the communication, that some of the hairs of the whiskers, with which the external portion of the depression was filled, grew through the internal opening, and appeared in the mouth.

"I passed a very fine knife, resembling the couching needle, through it, and removed, as perfectly as possible, a circular portion of the parietes of the tube towards the gum; but failed in this, and several other attempts to produce a union. It was, therefore, resolved that the whole parietes of the depression should be removed, extending the incision as far internally as possible; and the integuments thus brought together as a simple wound. In consequence, however, of the suppuration of a small gland in the immediate neighborhood, the operation was

deferred until that should have been dispersed, and it, therefore, remains at present, in the state in which I have described it."

It rarely happens, however, that anything more is necessary for the cure of the external opening than the extraction of the tooth which had given rise to the formation of the abscess. The author has been consulted in many cases, and has never found it necessary to resort to other means, but should the external opening remain, the walls of the tube and depression may be removed in the manner as just described by Mr. Bell.

The formation of an abscess in the alveolus of a lower wisdom tooth, is sometimes productive of very serious and even alarming consequences. The following is one of several cases of the kind which have fallen under the observation of the author.

In 1832, he was sent for in great haste to visit a physician, Dr. E., who resided thirty miles in the country. The doctor had been attacked two weeks before with severe pain in the left dens sapientiæ of the lower jaw. At the expiration of three or four days, a physician was called in who made attempts to extract the tooth.

The inflammation now extended rapidly to the fauces, tonsils and muscles of the jaw and face. Obstructed deglutition and intractable fever soon supervened. Repeated blood-letting, cathartics, and fomentations to the face were resorted to with little effect. His respiration was difficult and the muscles of his jaws soon became so rigid and firmly contracted that his mouth could not be opened.

This was the condition of the patient when the author first saw him, which was the morning of the day following the one on which he was sent for. In addition to the treatment which had previously been pursued, an injection with two grains of emetic tartar was administered. About seven o'clock in the evening, the fever was succeeded by alternate paroxysms of cold and heat. An effort was now made to force open his mouth, with a wooden wedge. This was partially successful, but his teeth could not be forced asunder sufficiently to admit of the introduction of the smallest sized tooth-forceps. But while his jaws were thus partially separated, he attempted to swallow some warm tea; in the effort, an abscess bursted and discharged

nearly a table-spoonful of pus from his mouth, and it was supposed that nearly double that quantity passed down into his stomach. This gave him immediate relief, but it was not until about three o'clock in the afternoon of the next day that his jaws could be forced apart sufficiently to permit the extraction of the tooth which had caused the trouble. To the roots of this, which were united, there was a sac about the size of a large pea, filled with pus. The author soon after he left him was informed that he had entirely recovered.

The following is the most singular case of alveolar abscess which has ever fallen under the observation of the writer: The subject was a lady of about thirty years of age. She had been troubled with a dripping of pus from behind the curtain of the palate for about twelve months, and becoming somewhat alarmed at its continuance, she called the attention of her family physician, Prof. Bond, to it, who, after having carefully examined the case, endeavored to ascertain the place from whence the matter came. He soon satisfied himself that it was from the socket of a diseased tooth, and after passing his finger around on the gums covering the superior alveolar border, discovered a protuberance over the root of each upper central incisor, nearly as large as a hazel-nut. This tended to confirm the opinion which he had formed with regard to the place from whence the matter came, and he requested us to visit the lady with him, which we did on the following day. On examining the case, we advised the immediate removal of the affected teeth, and the more strongly, as they were found to be in a necrosed condition.

The lady readily consented to the operation, which was performed on the following day. The discharge of matter from behind the curtain of the palate immediately ceased, and the patient was thus relieved from an affection which had been a source of great annoyance to her. The pus from the abscess, in this case, instead of passing out through the nasal plates of the superior maxilla, passed back over the roof of the mouth, and escaped in the manner as described."*

*Vide addition by the author to American edition of "*The Natural History and Diseases of the Human Teeth*," by Joseph Fox, pp. 282-3.

Since the publication of the fourth edition of this work, the author was consulted in a case of a similar character to the one last noticed. The pus, however, had escaped from the socket of a first superior molar, to about the centre of the palatine arch, thence passed up into the posterior nares and was discharged from behind the velum palati.

Inflammation of the investing membrane of the roots of an inferior dens sapientiæ may produce equally serious effects, without occasioning the formation of an abscess in the alveolus. The eruption of these teeth are, sometimes, attended with like consequences. The irritation has, in some instances, extended to the lungs and produced consumption.

The occurrence of alveolar abscess in the socket of a temporary tooth, is often followed by exfoliation of the sockets of several teeth, and sometimes of considerable portions of the jaw-bone, seriously injuring the rudiments of the permanent teeth, and sometimes causing their destruction. The author saw a case, a few years since, in which an abscess of the alveolus of the first lower temporary molar, had occasioned exfoliation of the sockets of a cuspidatus and of two molars. About one-half of the alveolar cells of the two bicuspids and the cuspidatus of the second set, were also exfoliated—thus leaving their imperfectly formed crowns entirely exposed.

When the inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum results from inflammation of the pulp and lining membrane, the formation of an abscess may be prevented by the prompt destruction of the latter with arsenious acid, cobalt or chloride of zinc. If an attempt is to be made to secure the preservation of the tooth, this should be done, as the chances of success are always greater previously to the formation of an abscess, than afterwards. But for a description of the method of procedure in a case of this kind, the reader is referred to the chapter on filling the pulp-cavities and roots of teeth.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

NECROSIS AND EXFOLIATION OF THE ALVEOLAR PROCESSES.

THE alveolar processes as well as other osseous structures are liable to be attacked by necrosis. When their connection with the periosteum—the source from whence they derive their nourishment and vitality—is destroyed, death follows as a necessary consequence. The loss of vitality may be confined to the socket of a single tooth, but more frequently it extends to several, and sometimes to the entire alveolar border, occasionally including a part or the whole of the jaw. It may occur in either jaw, but it is more liable to take place in the lower than the upper. When it is confined to the alveoli, the dead part is never replaced with new bone, but examples are on record, of the regeneration of a part, and even the whole of the lower jaw. It is, however, denied by some, that the loss of any portion of this bone is ever replaced with true osseous structure.

When one or more of the sockets of the teeth lose their vitality, nature exerts all her energies to separate them from the living bone, a process technically termed *exfoliation*, and is supposed by some to consist in a sort of suppurative inflammation, but there is good reason to believe it is effected by the action of a corrosive fluid poured out from the fungous granulations of the living bone in immediate contact with the necrosed parts. During the process of exfoliation, thin acrid matter is discharged from one or more fistulous openings through the gums or from between them and the neck of the teeth, and this investing structure having lost its connection with the necrosed bone, becomes soft and spongy and assumes a dark purple appearance. It is preternaturally sensitive to the touch and bleeds from the most trifling injury.

In the admirable work of Mr. Fox on the Natural History and Diseases of the Teeth, there are two engravings of exfoliated alveolar processes.

The first represents the alveoli of a central and lateral incisor, and that of the left cuspidatus, with a portion of the maxilla, extending about five-eighths of an inch above the apex of the roots of the last mentioned tooth. The subject of this case was a gentleman, whose left lateral incisor became carious; inflammation and pain ensued, together with swelling of the gums and lip. Instead of consulting a physician, he applied poultices to his face, until suppuration in the alveolus took place, causing the formation of an external opening through the gums for the discharge of the matter. After his mouth had remained for some time in this condition, he applied to Mr. Fox, who, upon examination, found that not only the decayed tooth had become loose, but also one on each side of it. The first he extracted, and discovered that its alveolus, from the destruction of its periosteum, was quite rough. The adjoining teeth still continuing loose, were, in a few weeks, removed, and the slight force that was applied, brought with them the alveolar processes of the whole of the three teeth, and also a considerable portion of the jaw-bone. The other engraving represents an inferior molar and two bicuspids, with their sockets and a very large piece of jaw-bone. The necrosis and exfoliation in this case, as in the other, was produced by alveolar abscess.

The author has met with several very similar cases, though all were not produced by the same cause, and he has several specimens in his possession, two of which were presented him by his late brother, Dr. John Harris.

Since the publication of the fourth edition of this work, the author has met with two cases of necrosis and exfoliation of the alveolar processes, which are worthy of special notice. The subject of the first case, was a gentleman of a strumous habit, about thirty years of age, and the necrosis and exfoliation extended to the sockets of all the teeth in the upper jaw. In May, 1851, he had the nerve destroyed in the second bicuspid, on the right side of the superior maxillary. We believe it was afterwards removed, and the pulp-cavity and root filled. About

six weeks after, as nearly as we could ascertain, the socket of the tooth became slightly painful, but as his suffering was not constant, he supposed it would soon cease. The pain ultimately, however, began to increase, and by the latter part of the following September was so severe, and attended by so much constitutional disturbance, he was induced to consult a physician. After having been under medical treatment for about two weeks, the author was requested by the medical attendant to see him. The affected tooth was found, upon examination, to be loose, and its socket in a necrosed condition. Inflammation had extended to every part of the alveolar border; the gums were very much swollen, and nearly all the teeth sensitive to the touch. As the patient was laboring under considerable cerebral derangement, and as no advantage could be derived from the removal of the tooth at this time, it was deemed advisable to let it remain until exfoliation of the necrosed socket should take place.

Without going into a detailed description of the local and constitutional treatment which was subsequently pursued, it will be sufficient to state, that necrosis extended to the sockets of all the other teeth, except those of the second and third molars on each side of the mouth. In the course of about two months, twelve teeth, together with their exfoliated sockets, and several large pieces of the maxillary bone were removed. It was hoped the disease would stop here, but in three or four weeks, the four remaining molars became very sore to the touch, and as purulent matter began to be discharged from their sockets, it became necessary to remove them. Several small pieces of bone were exfoliated after the last operation, but at the expiration of about four months from this time, his mouth was sufficiently restored to enable him to wear a temporary set of artificial teeth.

The subject of the second case, was a lady of a cachectic habit, about thirty-five years of age, and the necrosis resulted from inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum, occasioned by irritation produced by the roots of the four upper incisors, upon

Fig. 123.



which artificial teeth had been placed. These, however, had been removed some two or three weeks before the author saw the patient. At this time the necrosis had extended not only to the sockets of these teeth, but also up to the nasal crest of the maxillary bone, and the process of exfoliation had already proceeded so far that he was enabled to remove the entire piece—the appearance of which is represented in Fig. 123. In July, 1852, a few weeks after the removal of this piece, he again saw the patient, and on examination, found a large portion of the palatine plate of the bone in a necrosed state, but the process of separation had not yet proceeded far enough to enable him to remove it.

Fig. 124.



The accompanying engraving, made from a drawing furnished the author by Dr. Maynard of Washington City, represents a case of necrosis and exfoliation of a portion of the outer wall of the alveolar ridge, and, as a consequence, the protrusion of the roots of the teeth on one side of the mouth. Dr. M. says, the only facts which he has been able to procure in relation to this case, "are contained in the patient's statement, 'that in 1818, he took a cold,which settled in his upper jaw, and a large piece of the jaw-bone came away.' The cast," says Dr. M., "from which the drawing was made, was taken in 1840—at which time I cut off the apices of several fangs which projected from the gums."

CAUSES.

The immediate cause of necrosis is the death of the periosteum, occasioned by inflammation. The causes of this, as has already been shown, are, in a large majority of the cases, dental irritation. Necrosis of the alveolar processes occurs very frequently while the system is under the influence of mercurial medicines, and during bilious and inflammatory fevers, and certain other constitutional diseases, as syphilis, small pox, &c. It may also result from mechanical injuries.

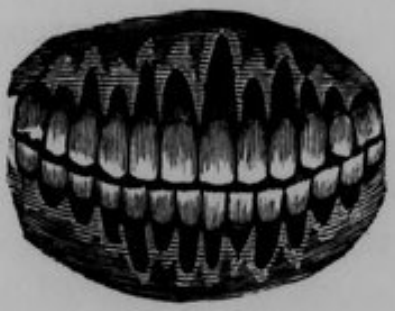
TREATMENT.

In the treatment of cases of this kind, little can be done. So soon, however, as the dead portions of bone become separated from the living, and can be easily removed, they should be taken away with a pair of forceps. To correct the offensive odor, and disagreeable taste occasioned by the constant discharge of fetid matter, a wash of diluted chloride of soda, or of the tinct. of myrrh may be employed. For any other purpose than this, we have not been able to perceive that local applications were of any advantage. Should constitutional symptoms supervene, tonics and a generous diet may be recommended.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

GRADUAL DESTRUCTION OF THE ALVEOLAR PROCESSES.

Fig. 125.



While treating of inflammation and tumefaction of the gums, the author adverted to the wasting of the sockets of the teeth, and he then took occasion to express a doubt that such operation of the economy ever manifested itself in the absence of all local disease.

It is always accompanied by a slight increase of redness, tumefaction and ulatrophia or shrinking of the edges of the gums, but the diseased action here is so inconsiderable as to attract but little attention. It is also attended by a slight discharge of puriform matter from between the margins of the gums and the teeth, but the quantity is so small that it usually escapes observation. The alveolo-dental periosteum participates also in the diseased action, but this is so slightly affected that the teeth often remain quite firmly articulated after the wasting of their sockets has proceeded so far as to expose more than half of each of their roots. Indeed the affection is so closely allied to chronic inflammation and tumefaction of the gums as scarcely to deserve separate consideration.

The progress of the disease is usually so slow that from ten to fifteen or twenty years are required to affect very perceptibly the stability of the teeth in their sockets. The commencement of this destructive process is usually first observed around the cuspid teeth; but sometimes it makes its first appearance on the alveoli of the palatine roots of the first and second upper molars, and occasionally it goes on here for years before it affects the sockets of any of the other teeth.

The teeth after their roots have become partially exposed, as might naturally be supposed, are more susceptible to impressions of heat and cold and more easily affected by acids, but this is about the only manifest inconvenience experienced from the disease, until they begin to loosen in their sockets.

In Fig. 125 is represented a case in which the roots of the teeth have become considerably exposed by the gradual wasting of their sockets.

CAUSES.

The cause of this peculiar affection has never been very satisfactorily explained. Some have supposed that, inasmuch as it occurs most frequently in persons of advanced age, that it results from a decline of the vital powers of the body independently of local causes. But, as it is often met with in middle aged persons whose constitutional health is unimpaired, we doubt the correctness of the opinion. The teeth, in all the cases which have come under our observation, whether in middle-aged or very old persons, indicated, whatever may have been the state of the general health at the time, an excellent innate constitution. In every instance these organs were possessed of great density, and this fact is particularly noticed by Mr. Fox, who says:

"In a majority of cases, in which this disease occurs, the teeth are perfectly sound, and from numerous observations, we think we may venture to assert, that persons who have had several of their teeth affected with caries in the earlier part of life, are not liable to lose, by an absorption of their sockets, those which remain sound; but, where the teeth have not been affected with caries in the early part of life, persons, as they approach fifty years of age, and often much earlier, have their teeth become loose from absorption, or a wasting of the alveolar process."

Now it is evident that teeth endowed with the power of resisting the action of the causes of decay, to which all teeth are more or less exposed, to so late a period of life, must be possessed of extreme density, and necessarily, a correspondingly low degree of vitality. In view of this fact, we have been led to

believe, that the teeth themselves act, to some extent, as mechanical irritants to the more highly vitalized parts with which they are immediately connected, causing an increase of vascular action in the periosteum of the thin edges of the alveoli and margin of the gums. This abnormal condition cannot, we believe, be traced to any other cause, and the existence of it evidently gives rise to the secretion of purulent matter observed between the edges of the gums and teeth. But whether this be true or not, it is doubtless to the corrosive action of this purulent matter, that the gradual destruction of the alveoli is attributable.

We were for a long time inclined to ascribe the increase of vascular action in the edges of the gums and alveolo-dental periosteum to irritation produced by the pressure of the teeth against the intermediary walls of the alveoli, but having met with many cases where the teeth were not crowded, we were induced to enter into a more thorough examination of the cause, and the foregoing is the only conclusion at which we have been able to arrive.

TREATMENT.

From what has been said concerning the cause of this affection, it is obvious that a cure cannot be affected. The secretion of the purulent matter, upon the chemical action of which the destruction of the alveoli manifestly depends, being caused by disease in the alveolo-dental periosteum and edges of the gums, arising from the physical condition of the teeth, the most we can hope to accomplish is, to retard its progress. This can only be done by cleaning the teeth frequently and thoroughly, using the precaution each time to remove the corrosive matter from between the edges of the gums and teeth. For this purpose a brush with elastic bristles should be used, and much benefit will be derived by passing floss silk several times a day up and down between the teeth.

CHAPTER NINTH.

DISPLACEMENT OF THE TEETH BY A DEPOSIT OF BONE IN THEIR SOCKETS.

A TOOTH is sometimes slowly forced from its place by a deposit of bony matter in the bottom or on the side of the socket. Two, or even three teeth may be gradually displaced by exostosis of the alveoli at the same time. The deposition usually proceeds so slowly that one or two years are required to effect a very perceptible change in the situation of a tooth. The upper central incisors are more frequently affected than any of the other teeth, and the osseous deposit occurs oftener at the bottom than on the parietes of the alveoli. In the first case, the tooth is gradually forced from the socket, and in the other, it is either pressed against one of the adjoining teeth or out of the arch. Irregularity in the arrangement of the teeth, is, in this manner, sometimes produced, especially, when more than one socket is affected at the same time. The central incisors are sometimes forced apart; at other times, they are forced against each other, and caused to overlap. The deposition of bone, however, being generally confined to the bottom of the sockets, the teeth are more frequently thrust from their alveolar cavities, and when this occurs with a person whose upper and lower teeth strike plumb upon each other, it occasions much inconvenience; for, the elongated tooth must either be thrown from the circle of the other teeth, or, by striking its antagonist, prevent the jaws from coming together.

CAUSES.

So little is known concerning the cause of exostosis of the sockets of the teeth, that it may seem almost useless to attempt an explanation of it. That it results from irritation of the lin-

ing membrane, is very generally believed, but the cause of this does not seem to be so well understood. We have thought that it might sometimes be produced by pressure on the bottom of the alveolus, especially when the extremity is nearly as large as any other part of the root of the tooth. But the susceptibility of the lining membrane to morbid impressions may sometimes be so great that the pressure of a very conical root may be sufficient to produce this effect, or, it may be produced by the pressure of a tooth which possesses only a very low degree of vitality. A diseased state of the gums can have no agency in the production of the exostosis, for it most frequently occurs in individuals whose gums are perfectly healthy; and if it were the result of any constitutional tendency, all the teeth would be as likely to be affected by it, as those we have mentioned.

TREATMENT.

When the exostosis is on the side of the alveolar cavity, the tooth cannot be restored to its natural position, but when it is in the bottom of the socket, the elongated organ may from time to time, as it is forced from the socket, be filed off even with the other teeth, but in doing this care should be taken not to jar it. This will remove the deformity and prevent its displacement by the antagonizing tooth. By this simple operation, repeated as occasion may require, it may be preserved for years, and rendered almost as useful as any of the other teeth.

PART FIFTH.

DISEASES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS,

AND

THEIR TREATMENT.

PART FIFTH.

CHAPTER FIRST.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

It was not until the knowledge of anatomy had made considerable progress, that the existence of this cavity was known. Casserius, an anatomist of Padua, who flourished during the latter part of the sixteenth and early part of the seventeenth centuries, is said to have been the first to discover it; but no correct description of it was given, until about the middle of the latter, and the credit of this belongs to Nathaniel Highmore, author of a treatise on anatomy, published in 1651.* Hence its name, "*antrum highmorianum.*"

This cavity is subject to some of the most formidable and dangerous diseases the medical or surgical practitioner is ever called upon to treat; and yet there are few diseases incident to the human body, that have not received more attention from writers on pathology and therapeutics than these. Diseases are sometimes here met with, over which neither the surgeon nor physician can exercise any control, and whose progress is only arrested with that of the life of the unfortunate sufferer.

All of the diseases to which the antrum maxillare is subject, however, are not of so dangerous a character; some are very simple and easily cured, but, even those which are regarded as the least dangerous, and that yield most readily to treatment, when instituted during their incipient or earlier stages, often, if

* This work is entitled "*Corporis Humani Desquisitio Anatomico.*"

neglected, or if improperly treated, assume a new and so aggravated a form, as to bid defiance to the skill of the physician and surgeon. While, on the one hand, the most simple affections of this cavity, may, by neglect or improper treatment, ultimately become incurable; those on the other, which are considered the most malignant and dangerous from their inception, might, we have no doubt, by timely and judicious treatment, be effectually and radically removed.

The form which the disease puts on, is determined by the state of the constitutional health or some specific tendency of the general system, and we can readily imagine, that a cause which, in one person, would give rise to simple inflammation of the lining membrane, or mucous engorgement of the sinus, would, in another, produce an ill-conditioned ulcer, fungous hæmatodes, or osteo-sarcoma. Simple inflammation and mucous engorgement not unfrequently cause caries and exfoliations of its surrounding osseous tissues, and, in some instances, even the destruction of the life of the patient.

The importance of early attention to these diseases is very apparent, and this is the more necessary, as it is often difficult, and sometimes even impossible, to determine the character of the malady, until it has progressed so far as to have involved, to a greater or less extent, the neighboring parts; when, if it has not become incurable, its removal is, at least, rendered less easy of accomplishment. It may, therefore, be safely assumed, that in a very large majority of the cases of disease of the maxillary sinus, the danger to be apprehended, results more from neglect, than any necessarily fatal character of the malady, so that in forming a prognosis, the circumstances to be considered, are the state of the constitutional health, the progress made by the affection, and the nature of the injury inflicted by it upon the surrounding tissues. If the general health is not so much impaired as to prevent its restoration by the employment of proper remedies, and the neighboring structures have not become implicated, the prognosis will be favorable; but if the functional operations of the body have become very much deranged, and the bones of the face and nose seriously affected, the combined resources both of medicine and surgery will prove unavailing.

In young and middle aged subjects of good constitutions, a morbid action may exist in the antrum for years, without giving rise to any very alarming symptoms, while the same species of affection in another less healthy, would rapidly extend and degenerate into a form of disease so malignant as to threaten the speedy destruction of the life of the patient. Medical history abounds with examples of this kind, and they conclusively establish, that the state of the general health and habit of body, whatever may have been the primitive characteristics of the malady, ultimately determine its malignancy; and in the treatment of affections of this cavity, as well as other local diseases of the body, these should not be overlooked.

Independently of the danger arising from the local affection, diseases of the antrum are, for the most part, very loathsome, and subject the patient to great annoyance. They change the qualities of the secretions and cause them to exhale a very nauseating and fetid odor. This, in many instances, is almost insufferable to the patient, and when it is considered that they must have egress through some opening, and when prevented from escaping through the natural one into the nose, they pass through an artificial one formed by art, or effected by their own disorganizing qualities, through the cheek, alveolar border or palatine arch—causing the patient great inconvenience, and subjecting him to much annoyance.

The occurrence of disease in this cavity is often very insidious. It not unfrequently happens that it exists for weeks and even months before its existence is suspected—the slight uneasiness being attributed to some morbid condition of the teeth or gums, and the symptoms attendant upon one description of affection of this cavity, are often so similar to those that accompany another, that it is impossible to determine its true character until it has made considerable progress.

The morbid affections of the maxillary sinus are, for the most part, similar to those of the nasal fossæ. There is, however, a form of disease which seems to be peculiar to this cavity, viz. mucous engorgement. DESCHAMPS mentions two, dropsy and purulent accumulations;* the first of these, properly speaking, is

*Vide *Traite des Maladies des Fosses Nazales et le leurs Sinus;* p. 226.

never met with in this cavity, and authors who have enumerated it among its diseases, have evidently mistaken mucous engorgement for it. The fluids that accumulate are of a mucous or muco-purulent character, except when they are the result of the disorganization of some of the surrounding parts: then they are sanious.

The most simple form of disease that occurs here, is inflammation of its lining membrane, and this in most instances may be said to precede all others. It often subsides spontaneously, but when it continues for a long time, is apt to become chronic, and it then not unfrequently gives rise to other and more formidable kinds of disease. When unattended by any other morbid affection, either local or constitutional, it is easily cured.

A purulent condition of the fluids of the antrum is a very common affection, but is seldom met with in persons of good constitutions. It seems to be dependent upon a bad habit of body and inflammation of the pituitary membrane of the sinus, which last results more frequently from dental irritation than any other cause. This condition of the secretions, sometimes gives rise to caries and exfoliation of portions of the surrounding bone, and to fistulous ulcers; but when dependent upon no other local cause than simple inflammation of the mucous membrane, it is seldom that such effects result. When complicated with other morbid conditions of the cavity, they are not unfrequent.

All purulent conditions of the secretions of the pituitary membrane, are by some denominated abscess. The name, however, as is justly remarked by Mr. Thos. Bell, is improper. Abscess is a different affection, and very seldom occurs here; yet, instances of it have been met with at the extremities of the roots of teeth which had perforated the sinus; and it sometimes happens that when an abscess is seated in the alveolus of a superior molar, the matter, instead of making for itself a passage through the socket of the tooth on either side, escapes into this cavity, and, finally, with its secretions, through the nasal opening. Mr. Bell describes a case of abscess seated in the upper part of the antrum; but this, as he himself states, is the only one of the kind on record.

Ulceration of the lining membrane is an affection less frequently met with. It is rarely, if ever, idiopathic, but seems rather to be dependent upon some other local malady or some specific constitutional vice. Scorbutic and scrofulous dispositions, and those affected with a venereal taint, are more liable to be affected with ulceration of this membrane than persons of sound constitutions. Consequently local remedies are seldom adequate to its cure. It is almost always complicated with fungi of the membrane and caries of the walls of the sinus, and when neglected, it sometimes takes on a cancerous form and becomes incurable.

Next in the order of arrangement, which we propose to adopt, is caries of its walls. This, though always complicated with one or more forms of diseased action, seems, nevertheless, to be worthy of separate consideration. Like ulceration of the lining membrane, it is an effect of some one or more affections. It may result from accumulation of the secretions of the sinus, ulceration, or from tumors.

The occurrence of fungous and other kinds of tumor is less frequent than any of the preceding affections; yet this cavity is not exempt from them, and they constitute the most dangerous description of diseases to which the superior maxilla is subject. Although it is probable, in their incipient stage, they might in nearly every instance be radically removed, it is seldom they are cured after they have attained a very large size, and have implicated in their morbid action, to a considerable extent, the circumjacent tissues. They have, however, been successfully extirpated even after they had acquired great volume, and implicated to such an extent the surrounding parts, as to have rendered necessary the removal of the whole of the superior maxillary bone. They usually grow with great rapidity, and when not radically removed, are generally soon reproduced.

Besides these, other varieties of disease are occasionally met with here; and the antrum is liable to injuries, from blows and other kinds of mechanical violence; from the introduction of insects and foreign bodies; but of these, it is not necessary to speak in this place, as they will hereafter come up for special consideration.

The diseases of the maxillary sinus, are supposed by some to be dependent upon certain specific constitutional vices, the obliteration of the opening of this cavity into the nose and to dental irritation. That all of these may, at times, be concerned in their production, is more than probable.

The effects exerted upon this cavity by a bad habit of body or constitutional vice, are not such as many seem to suppose. They do not amount to perceptible manifestations of disease; but only consist in an increase of susceptibility of the tissues of which it is composed to morbid impressions; and when an unhealthy action is lighted up in it, a more aggravated, and not unfrequently different form of disease, than that which would otherwise have been produced, occurs.

Thus it may be seen, that disease of the maxillary sinus is dependent upon some other exciting cause than a particular disposition or vice of the general system; and yet, without this, no morbid effects would be produced; or if produced, would be of a different and less aggravated character. Any disposition or vice of body, which weakens the vital energies of the system, increases the susceptibility, or, what in medical language it would be more proper to term, *excitability* of all its parts—those of this cavity equally with the rest. There are various kinds which have this effect: as, for example, the scorbutic, scrofulous, venereal, mercurial, &c., each of which may influence the character of the morbid action excited in it, in a manner peculiar to itself, or similar to that which might be exercised by another, and cause it to assume a greater or less degree of malignancy, according as the functional operations of the body generally are more or less enervated by it.

This seems to be the way in which a bad habit of body is capable of affecting the maxillary sinus. It is predisposing, but not an exciting, cause of disease; and it is important that this distinction should be borne in mind. The one should never be confounded with the other, because an error of this sort, might, and would, in many instances, lead to the adoption of incorrect views concerning the therapeutical indications of the disease.

The writer might enlarge upon this part of the subjeet, but it

is not necessary to do so, inasmuch as he will have occasion to advert to it hereafter.

Inflammation and ulceration of the pituitary membrane of the nose, sometimes extend themselves to the maxillary sinus, but a morbid action is not so frequently excited in this cavity, by an unhealthy condition of the nose, as the intimate relationship subsisting between the two, might lead some to believe. It is seldom that both are affected at the same time. Hence we infer, that, although lined by one common membrane, the propagation of disease from one to the other, is an occurrence which rarely happens.

The obliteration of the opening of this cavity is sometimes caused by disease in the nose, and when this happens, it is followed by mucous engorgement of the sinus, inflammation of its lining membrane, distension of its osseous walls, and not unfrequently by other and more complicated forms of disease. But the closing of this opening is oftener an effect than a cause of disease in this cavity, and it generally re-establishes itself without any assistance of art, after the cure of the affection which caused it.

If all the circumstances connected with the history of the diseases under consideration could be ascertained, we think it would be found that these affections are more frequently induced by a morbid condition of the teeth, gums and alveolar processes, than any other cause. There are no sources of irritation to which this cavity is so much and so often exposed, as that of the dental organism. It is separated from the apices of the roots of the superior molars and bicuspids only by a very thin plate of bone, and it is sometimes even penetrated by them, so that it could scarcely be otherwise than that aggravated and protracted disease in the teeth and alveoli beneath it, should exert an unhealthy influence upon it. The pain occasioned by diseased teeth, is often very severe, sometimes almost excruciating, and the inflammation excited by them in the alveolo-dental periostea and gums, frequently extends itself to the whole of one side of the face. It could hardly be possible, therefore, for this cavity to escape. Alveolar abscess, and sometimes necrosis and exfoliation of the socket of the affected tooth,

result from the inflammation thus lighted up. It often happens, that the gums and alveolar periosteum are affected for years with chronic inflammation, and other morbid affections.

If, in addition to these facts, other proofs be necessary to establish the agency of dental and alveolar irritation in the production of disease in the maxillary sinus, they may be had. Many of the affections here met with, are often cured by the removal of diseased teeth after other remedies have been employed in vain, and that, without even perforating the antrum. This would not be the case, if the irritation arising from them, did not extend to this cavity, and if the disease in it were not dependent upon the irritation produced by them.

Most writers on these affections agree in ascribing them to a morbid condition of the teeth and alveoli. There are some, however, who, though they admit that dental irritation may perhaps occasionally give rise to them, seem, nevertheless, to attribute their occurrence in the majority of instances to other causes, such as irregular exposure to cold, blows upon the face, and certain constitutional diseases.

We shall now proceed to the consideration of the different affections of this cavity, under their respective and appropriate heads.

CHAPTER SECOND.

INFLAMMATION OF THE LINING MEMBRANE OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

INFLAMMATION, when not complicated with any other morbid affection, is the most simple form of disease to which the pituitary membrane of the antrum maxillare is subject. As it precedes and accompanies all others, it will be proper to offer a few remarks upon it, before entering upon the consideration of those of a more aggravated nature.

Shielded, as it is in this cavity from most of the acrid and irritating agents to which it is exposed in the nasal fossæ and some other cavities of the body, it would rarely be affected with inflammation, were it not that it is frequently acted upon by morbid excitants, the immediate influence of which seldom extends beyond the alveolar border and face.

Inflammation of this membrane, when not complicated with any general morbid tendency, or constitutional predisposition, seldom gives rise to any other form of diseased action; and it usually subsides spontaneously on the removal of the cause that induced it. In good constitutions, it is less subject to inflammation, and, consequently, to any other description of morbid action, than those in whom there exists some vice of body, or unhealthy predisposition. Febrile and gastric affections, eruptive diseases, such as measles, small-pox, &c., syphilis, and excessive and protracted use of mercurial medicines, a scorbutic or scrofulous diathesis of the general system, and, in short, every thing that has a tendency to enervate the vital powers of the body, increases its irritability.

When in a healthy condition, it secretes a slightly glutinous, transparent and inodorous fluid, by which it is constantly lubricated, but inflammation changes its secretions; it causes them

to become vitiated; at first, to be less abundant, afterwards to be secreted in larger quantities than usual, to be more serous, and so acrid as sometimes to irritate the membrane of the nose over which they pass after having escaped from the antrum. It also causes them to exhale an odor more or less offensive, according as the inflammation is severe or mild. It moreover gives rise to a thickening of the membrane, and, sometimes to an obliteration of the nasal opening. This last rarely occurs, but when it does happen, an accumulation of the secretions and other morbid phenomena, of which we shall hereafter treat, result from it as a necessary consequence.

If at any time during the continuance of the inflammation, the patient is attacked with severe constitutional disease, the local affection will be aggravated, and sometimes assume a different character.

The inflammation, when long continued, degenerates into a chronic form, and is sometimes kept up for several years, without giving rise to any other unpleasant effects, than occasional paroxysms of a dull and seemingly deep-seated pain in the face, and a vitiated condition of the fluids of this cavity. The slightly fetid odor which they exhale, ceases to be annoying or even perceptible to the patient, when he becomes accustomed to it.

SYMPTOMS.

The symptoms by which this affection is characterized, though not always precisely the same, are, nevertheless, for the most part, very similar. Boyer describes them to be severe, fixed, and deep-seated pain under the cheek, extending from the alveolar border to the lower part of the orbit, local heat, pulsation, and sometimes fever. He, however, tells us that these symptoms are not always present, and that the disease sometimes exists when it is not suspected. Other affections of the face and superior maxillary, may be mistaken for this, and this for others: but that inflammation should exist without being attended with pain or any other signs indicative of its presence, is scarcely probable.

Deschamps distinguishes the symptoms from those of other affections of this cavity, by "a dull, heavy pain in the region of it," which he says, "becomes sharp and lancinating," and extends from the alveolar arch to the frontal sinus. The disease goes on without interruption, increasing until the superior maxilla of the affected side is more or less involved. This malady, he tells us, cannot be confounded with any other, if there is no external visible cause; it differs, he says, from a retention of mucus, by being painful at the commencement, and by not being accompanied with swelling of the bones; he distinguishes it from polypus, as that causes no pain; and from cancer, which occasions pain of a different kind. "Suppuration and ulcers have peculiar signs which cannot be confounded with those of inflammation." Pain in the molar and bicuspid teeth, accompanied by a sense of fluctuation in the parts, he seems to regard as a very certain indication of inflammation, and, especially, when joined to the other symptoms. "If an external cause is discovered, it," he says, "will furnish a certain diagnosis;" he also mentions fever and head-ache as almost invariable accompaniments.

The inflammation, if not subdued by appropriate remedies, after having continued for a length of time, gradually assumes a chronic form; the pain then begins to diminish, and is less constant; it becomes more dull, and is principally confined to the region of the antrum. The teeth of the affected side cease to ache, or ache only at times, but still remain sensitive to the touch. The mucous membrane of the nostril next the diseased sinus, is often tender and slightly inflamed, and if the other one be closed in the morning, or after two or three hours sleep, by pressing upon it with the thumb or one of the fingers, and a violent expiration be made through it, a thin watery fluid, of a slightly fetid odor will be discharged, and pain will be experienced in the region of this cavity.

CAUSES.

All morbid conditions of the teeth and gums, that give rise to irritation in the alveolar periosteal tissue, may be regarded

as among the most frequent of its exciting causes. Of the affections of the teeth that do this, caries, necrosis and exostosis may be mentioned; also, loose teeth, and the roots of such as have been either fractured in an attempt at extraction, or by a blow or fall, and left in their sockets; or that have remained after the destruction of their crowns by decay. It sometimes happens, too, that inflammation is excited in this membrane by fractured alveoli; but when an accident of this sort occurs, the detached portions of bone are generally soon thrown off by the operations of the economy, and the cause being removed, the inflammation immediately subsides. Not so with the roots of the teeth. They often remain concealed in their sockets for years, except they be removed by art. Nature, it is true, makes an effort to expel them from the jaw, but this is accomplished only by a slow and very tedious process, and not, in many instances, until they have given rise to some serious affection. But, of the deleterious effects that result from roots of teeth in the alveoli, it is not necessary now to speak; as extraneous bodies, they are always productive of more or less irritation. We might also mention exposure to sudden transitions of temperature, and certain constitutional diseases, as among the causes which occasionally give rise to inflammation of this membrane.

TREATMENT.

The curative indications of inflammation of the lining membrane of the antrum are simple, and for the most part, similar to those of inflammation in other parts of the body. Bleeding from the arm, saline purgatives, and fomentations to the face, and other antiphlogistic measures may be resorted to with advantage. In many cases, great benefit will be derived from the application of leeches to the cheek, as recommended by Mr. Thos. Bell. We have known the most decided advantage to result from their employment. When the disease is dependent, as in most instances it is, upon an unhealthy condition of the alveolar processes, the first thing to be done, is to remove all such teeth, or roots of teeth, as are productive of the least irritation, for, while any local sources of irritation are permitted

to remain, neither topical or general bleeding, or any other treatment, will be of permanent advantage.

This affection as is remarked by Boyer, would be of little consequence, were it not that it is liable to give rise to other and more dangerous forms of disease, such, for instance, as a purulent condition of the secretions of this cavity or engorgement. It should never, therefore, be permitted to continue, but should be as speedily arrested as possible; and for the accomplishment of this, the means here pointed out, will, if timely and properly applied, be found fully adequate.

CHAPTER THIRD.

PURULENT CONDITION OF THE SECRETIONS AND ENGORGEMENT OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

A PURULENT condition of the secretions of the maxillary sinus and mucous engorgement, are, indiscriminately, though very improperly, denominated by most writers on the affections of this cavity, abscess. To this, neither bears the slightest resemblance. Deschamps treats of the former under the name of suppuration, and the latter dropsy. In speaking of the first, he tells us, "if after the time of the inflammation has passed, the surrounding parts cease to be painful, while the affection still continues to cause pain in the antrum, and the fever, though diminished, occurs at irregular intervals, and if the inflammation is followed by a pulsating pain, we will have reason to suppose that an abscess has formed in the sinus; and," he continues, "all doubts will be removed, if on the patient's inclining his head to the opposite side, matter is discharged into the nostrils, or if some tubercles are formed near the outer angle of the eye, or alveolar border, which last happens more frequently; and, finally, if the purulent matter, not finding any opening through which to evacuate itself, distends the sinus to such an extent as to form a tumor outwardly upon the cheek." In short, all the symptoms which he mentions as belonging to the disease, are those accompanying the one under consideration. The matter, he says, is of a "putrid serous consistency."

Bordenave has fallen into a similar error. He terms an altered state of these secretions, suppuration of the membrane, and tells us that inflammation is not necessary to it. He seems to have confounded in alveolar abscess those cases where the matter, instead of evacuating itself as it ordinarily does, by an

opening which it makes for its exit through the alveolus and gum into the mouth, escapes into the antrum, with abscess of that cavity. Again, he asserts that the disease (suppuration as he calls it) may be independent of the surrounding parts, and although ordinarily implicated with an altered condition of them, he affirms, it is sometimes the effect of disease primarily seated in this cavity.*

There is no doubt that a purulent condition of the fluids of this cavity is often complicated with ulceration of the lining membrane, but that the affection is at all analogous to abscess or suppuration, its very nature and situation is sufficient to disprove. "A reference to the structure of the antrum," says Mr. Bell, "would appear to be sufficient to point out the improbability, to say the least, of the occurrence of abscess in such a situation. That a mucous membrane covering, in a thin layer, the whole internal surface of such a cavity, should become the seat of all the consecutive steps of true abscess, is a statement bearing on the face of it an obvious absurdity."† Notwithstanding the seeming improbability of such an occurrence, and it is certainly one that very rarely happens, abscess does, nevertheless, sometimes seat itself in this cavity; but, it is a different affection altogether from that usually treated of under that name. We have already adverted to a case narrated by Mr. B., a description of which, we intend hereafter to give.

When complicated with ulceration of the mucous membrane—and it is probable that a purulent condition of its secretions, in most instances, is thus complicated—the affection is precisely analogous to ozena, and, by many of the older writers, is designated by that name. Mr. Bell describes it, and very properly too, as being similar to gonorrhea—both diseases equally consisting of an altered secretion; in the one, of the pituitary membrane, and in the other of the mucous lining of the urethra, which, in neither instance, possesses any of the characteristics of abscess, though the matter in both is purulent.‡

* Vide *Memoirs de l'Academie Royale de Chirurg.*, vol. 12, p. 8, 12mo.

† *Anat. Phys. and Diseases of the Teeth*, p. 253.

‡ *Anat. Phys. and Diseases of the Teeth*, p. 254.

It has been before stated that the obliteration of the nasal opening was more frequently an effect than a cause of disease in the maxillary sinus; it does, however, sometimes become closed from other causes than an unhealthy condition of this cavity, and when this happens, engorgement of the sinus is the inevitable consequence. The fluids thus accumulated are not always at first purulent. They may become so, by retention in the cavity, and, when the closing of the opening is the result of previous disease in the antrum, the secretions are more or less altered from the very first.

The accumulation of the secretions of the antrum, whether in a healthy or purulent state, is a constant source of irritation to the lining membrane, and the pressure which they ultimately exert upon the surrounding walls, causes a new form of diseased action to be set up, which not unfrequently involves all the bones of the face as well as those of the base of the cranium in disease. When prevented from escaping through the nasal opening, they eventually make a passage for their escape. This is sometimes effected through the cheek, at other times beneath it, just above the alveolar ridge, or through the palatine arch or alveoli down by the sides of the roots of one or more of the teeth, and thus establish a fistula, from which fetid matter will be almost constantly discharged. From openings of this sort, the matter is sometimes discharged for years, while the disease in the antrum, very frequently, does not seem to undergo any apparent change. At other times the membrane ulcerates and the bony walls become carious.

A purulent condition of the mucous fluids of this cavity, independently of caries of the bone, or even of simple fistulous openings, is an exceedingly troublesome and unpleasant affection. The odor from the matter is of itself, often very annoying even to the patient, and when the secretions are retained for some days in the sinus before they are evacuated, the fetor is sometimes almost insufferable.

In good constitutions, the secretions of the antrum are not so liable to become purulent, though they be confined for a long time in the cavity. It is only in scrofulous, scorbutic, or debilitated habits that they are liable to become thus altered. Inflam-

mation of the lining membrane (the immediate or proximate cause) may exist for years without giving rise to it. The differences in the effects produced upon them, and the surrounding parts, by inflammation of this membrane, is owing to the differences in the state of the constitutional health of those affected by it.

Where a puriform state of the secretions is complicated with ulceration of the membrane, the matter will have mixed with it a greater or less quantity of flocculi, sometimes of so firm a consistence, as to block up the nasal opening, and prevent its exit. Mr. Thos. Bell says, he has seen more than one case in which a considerable accumulation had taken place in the antrum, accompanied by the usual indications of this affection, (muco-purulent engorgement of the sinus,) when a sudden discharge of the contents into the nose took place, "in consequence of the pressure having overcome the resistance which had thus been offered to its escape."* Cases of a very similar nature have fallen under our observation, the history of some of which may be given in the course of this chapter. The formation of these flocculi rarely cease, except with the cure of the ulcers of the membrane. They give rise to considerable irritation, and their presence always constitutes an obstacle to the cure. They are usually easily removed by injections.

The pituitary membrane of the antrum when in a healthy state, secretes, as we have before stated, a transparent, slightly glutinous and inodorous fluid, which is poured out only in sufficient quantity to lubricate the cavity. But no sooner is inflammation excited in the membrane, than its secretions become more abundant, and, at first thinner, afterwards thicker and more glutinous.† Their color and consistence are not always the same. Instead of being transparent, they sometimes have a dirty opaque appearance; at other times they assume a greenish, whitish or yellowish color, and in some instances they bear a considerable resemblance to pus, which, it has been conjectured, might be owing to a suppuration of some of the mucous follicles and a mixture of pus with its secretions. Mr. Thomas Bell, however,

* Vide *Anat. Phys. and Diseases of the Teeth*, p. 258.
† Vide *Maladies Chirugicale*, tom. vi, p. 140.

inclines to the opinion that it is attributable to an "alteration simply" of the secretions of the cavity. But their color and consistence, are determined by the degree of inflammation, the length of time it has existed, the state of the health of the lining membrane, and that of the surrounding osseous walls, the egress which the matter has from the sinus, and the general habit of the body.

Affections of this sort, are more common to young subjects than to middle aged ones, or persons in advanced life. An eminent French writer says, that of three individuals affected with dropsy (mucous engorgement) the oldest was not twenty years of age.* Although these affections are more common to young persons than individuals of advanced life, they are by no means confined to the former. Debilitated habits of every age are subject to them.

SYMPTOMS.

The diagnoses of the several affections of the antrum, are so much alike, that it is often difficult to distinguish those that belong to one from those attendant upon another. The symptoms of mucous engorgement and purulent accumulations, however, are generally such, as will enable the practitioner to distinguish, with considerable certainty, these affections from others that are here met with. They are always preceded by inflammation of the lining membrane: a description of the signs of which, having already been given, need not be repeated. Omitting these, we at once proceed to mention those by which they are accompanied.

In speaking of the symptoms which more particularly belong to a purulent condition of the secretions of the antrum, Deschamps says, the affection may be distinguished by a dull heavy pain, extending along the alveolar border. Upon this symptom alone, little reliance can be placed, as it is always present in chronic inflammation. In addition to this, he mentions the presence of decayed teeth, soreness in those that are sound,

*Vide *Traite des Malades Chirurgicales et des Operations qui leur conviennent*, tom. vi, p. 139.

and on the patient's inclining his head to the side opposite the one affected, the discharge of fetid matter from the nose. These, are very conclusive indications of purulent effusions in this cavity. Bordenave, after enumerating the symptoms indicative of inflammation, mentions the following as belonging to the affection of which we are now speaking, viz. dull and constant pain in the sinus, extending from the maxillary fossæ to the orbit; a discharge of fetid matter from the nose, when the patient inclines his head to the opposite side, or when the nose is blown from the nostril of the affected side.* These symptoms are mentioned by almost every writer upon the subject, as indicative of a purulent condition of the secretions of the maxillary sinus.

The diagnoses of engorgement, differ materially from those which denote simply a purulent condition of the mucous secretions. The pain, instead of being dull and heavy, as just described, becomes acute, and a distressing sense of fullness and weight is felt in the cheek, accompanied by redness and tumefaction of the integuments covering the antrum.† The nasal opening having become closed, the fluids of the cavity gradually accumulate until they fill it, when, finding no egress, they press upon and distend the surrounding osseous wall, causing those parts which are the thinnest ultimately to give way. The effects are generally first observable anteriorly beneath the malar eminence, where a smooth hard tumor presents itself, covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth. But this is not always the point which first gives way, the sinus sometimes bursts into the orbit, at other times outwardly through the cheek, or through the palatine arch. The long continued pressure thus exerted upon the bony walls of this cavity, often causes them to become softened, by the destruction of their calcareous molecules.

The tumor, which is at first hard, in a short time becomes so soft as readily to yield to pressure. A distension, Deschamps says, may be distinguished from other diseases that affect the

* Vide *Memoirs de l'Academie Royale de Chirurgie*, 12mo, tom. 12, p. 10.

† Vide *Bell on the Teeth*, p. 256, see also *Maladies des Fosses Nazales*, p. 228.

skin or intermediate structure between it and the bone, by the uniformity or regularity of the tumor, its firmness at the commencement, the slowness with which it progresses, and, above all, by the natural appearance of the skin, and the absence of pain when pressure is made upon the tumor. An obliteration of the nasal opening, he says, may be suspected by the dryness of the nostril of the affected side, the mucous membrane of which becomes thickened, and the cavity contracted; inflammation and sponginess of the gums, loosening, and sometimes, (in consequence of the destruction of their sockets,) displacement of the teeth, may also be mentioned as occasional accompaniments of engorgement of this cavity.

CAUSES.

Inflammation of the mucous membrane, is the cause of a purulent condition of the secretions of the maxillary sinus, and this arises more frequently from alveolo-dental irritation, than from any particular habit of body or constitutionl disturbance. Engorgement results from the obliteration of the nasal opening, and this, in the case of altered secretion, is usually caused by inflammation and thickening of the lining membrane.

TREATMENT.

The curative indications of muco-purulent secretion and engorgement of the maxillary sinus are, 1st, If the nasal opening be closed, the evacuation of the retained matter; 2dly, The removal of all local and exciting causes of irritation; 3dly, and lastly, the restoration of the lining membrane.

For the fulfilment of the first, an opening must be made into the antrum, and this should be effected in that part which will afford the most easy exit to the retained matter; but as it regards the several methods that have been proposed for the accomplishment of this object, practitioners differ; before we proceed further, it may not be amiss to notice some of the various methods that have been adopted.

Dr. Drake, an English anatomist, and author of a work en-

titled "*Anthropologia Nova*," has the credit of being the first to propose a plan for the evacuation of accumulated fluids from this cavity, and the method adopted by him for effecting this object, consists in the extraction of a molar tooth, and the perforation of the sinus through the alveolus of one of its roots. This method of procedure, however, is said by some to have been inserted into Drake's Anatomy by Dr. Cowper, an eminent anatomist and surgeon.* Having never seen any evidence touching the correctness of this conjecture, we suppose its truth is, probably, somewhat questionable. M. Gûnz says, the credit belongs to John Henry Meibomius, who, a long time before, proposed a very similar method of treating these affections.† Henry Meibomius, many years after the death of his father, John Henry, proposed, for the evacuation of accumulated fluids in the antrum, the extraction of one of several teeth.‡ But the perforation of the maxillary sinus through the alveolus of a molar tooth, is said not to be the most ancient method. Molinetti, as early as the year 1675, describes an opening made through the cheek into the antrum, the wall of which, after having been exposed by a crucial incision through the integuments covering it, was penetrated with a trephine. And the perforation of this cavity through the alveolus of a superior molar, is an operation which, according to Velpeau, was performed by Zwinger, a long time before it was performed by Meibomius; and Vanuessen says, Ruysch extracted several molars and cauterized their sockets, for the destruction of a polypus, until an opening was made into the antrum, large enough to admit the finger. Drake, according to Bordenave, seems, nevertheless, to be entitled to the credit of having been the first to perforate the maxillary sinus through the alveolus of a molar tooth. We are also informed by the same author that Cowper treated a case of maxillary ozena, which had caused a large quantity of ichorous and fetid matter to be discharged through the nose, by extracting the first molar, and perforat-

* *Heister's Surgery*, note to chapter 72, p. 445.

† Vide *Mem. de l'Acad. Royale de Chirurg.*, 12mo, vol. xii, p. 12.

‡ Vide *Discurs. de Abscessibus Internis*, Dresd. 1718, p. 114, and *la Dissertation d'Gunz.*

ing the antrum through the alveolus with an instrument suited to the purpose.

It is not at all probable that Meibomius was the first to propose the perforation of the antrum through the alveolus of a molar tooth, for his researches were not published until 1718, twenty-one years after the publication of Drake's System of Anatomy, and, besides, he regarded the perforation of this cavity as a dangerous operation, and, on that account, confined himself simply to the extraction of a tooth. Saint Yves, says Velpeau, treated with success a person affected with fistula, the floor of whose orbit had been destroyed by the removal of a tooth.

With regard to the tooth most proper to be extracted, authors differ. Cheseldon preferred the first or second molar, Junker recommends the extraction of the first or second bicuspid, and if a fistula had formed, to enlarge it instead of perforating the floor of the antrum. It is at present pretty generally conceded that the second molar, it being directly beneath the most dependent part of the cavity, is the most suitable tooth to be removed. If this be sound, the first molar, dens sapientiæ, or either of the bicuspids, if carious, should be extracted in its stead, and, in fact, none of the teeth in an unhealthy condition should be permitted to remain.

An opening having been effected through the alveolus of a tooth in the antrum, it should be kept open until the health of the cavity is restored. For this purpose, sounds and bougies adapted to the purpose have been introduced. Heuerman, recommends the employment of a small canula, which is also preferred by Bordenave and Ritchter, the latter of whom says, it should be kept closed to prevent particles of food from getting into the sinus. But, whether a canula or bougie be introduced into the opening, it should be so secured as to prevent it from coming out or passing into the antrum. Deschamps recommends that it be fastened to one of the adjoining teeth by means of a silk or metallic ligature.

Lamorier, an eminent surgeon of Montpellier, recommended perforating the antrum immediately above the first molar, or rather between it and the malar bone. In this, he seems to have

been influenced by the consideration that the wall of the cavity here, presents the least thickness, and that this is the most dependent part of the sinus. If a fistulous opening had previously formed in some other place in the mouth, he did not always deem it necessary to make another. His method of operating is as follows: The jaws being closed, the commissure of the lips are drawn outwards and slightly upwards with a curved instrument, called a speculum; this done, the gum is incised across the malar apophysis, or maxillo-labial sulcus, and the bone made bare, which is next pierced with a spear-pointed punch. The opening is afterwards enlarged if found necessary.

Desault is of the opinion that the opening should be made through the canine fossa, beneath the upper lip, and for that purpose, after having laid bare the bone, he employs a sharp triangular and a blunt pointed perforator, which he invented for the operation. Runge, says Velpeau, used nothing but a scalpel. Mr. Charles Bell invented a trephine for that purpose, but this, it is thought, does not possess any advantage over the instruments employed by Desault and Runge. In case of fistula in the cheek from the antrum, Ruffel advises the insertion of a trocar, to be carried through the gum, so as to form a counter opening. Through this, in a case which he treated, he passed a seton, and it remained six weeks; at the expiration of this time, a cure was accomplished. This practice has been followed by Callisen, Zang, Busch, Henkle, Bertrandi, Faubert and others. Callisen is of the opinion that when the tumor points in the palatine arch and fluctuation is felt, the artificial opening should be formed there. Gooch, in a case which he treated, advised the perforation of the antrum through the nasal surface, and fixing in the opening a canula of lead. We are also informed by the same author, that Acrel, after having operated in the manner proposed by Cowper, inserted a second canula into the sinus through a fistulous opening formed in the nose. The method attributed to Wienhold, consists in penetrating the sinus from the upper and external part of the canine fossa, with the instrument directed obliquely downwards and outwards, so as to avoid the branches of the infra-orbital nerve; and then placing in the opening thus made a little lint. Wein-

hold directs, that when the antrum has no other opening, the instrument should be carried entirely through the palatine arch, and then by means of a curved needle and thread, he introduces a roll of lint, saturated or covered with some appropriate medicine, and this, he designs to act as a seton.

Velpeau says, the perforation is effected "in the point of election or of necessity. The first varies according to the ideas of the operator. The circumstances, on the contrary, determine the second. In cases of abscess, dropsy, fistula, and ulceration, the operation is almost always performed in the place of election. Then, provided one of the molar teeth be unsound, it must be extracted, together with the adjoining tooth; the gum is then to be cut down to the bone, externally, internally, behind and before, forming a kind of square flap, and to be completely detached from the surrounding tissues; after this, the alveoli are to be perforated with the instruments of Desault, and an opening made large enough to admit the finger into the sinus." For the evacuation simply of purulent mucus, or accumulated fluids, we believe with Boyer, that the opening should always be made from beneath; and we are the more convinced of the importance of giving the alveolus of an extracted tooth the preference, from the consideration that it is to the irritation produced by some one or more of these organs, that this affection is attributable. Even though a fistula may have been formed above the alveolar ridge, beneath the cheek, or in the palatine arch, we should not neglect to extract such teeth, whether carious or sound, as may be productive of irritation. It may not always in such cases be necessary to perforate the sinus from the socket of a tooth, though the cure, in most instances, is expedited by it.

Jourdain, an eminent French dentist, and graduate in surgery, instead of seeking egress for matter accumulated in the maxillary sinus, by any of these methods, proposed, in a memoir presented to the Academy in 1765, to probe the cavity by its natural opening, and then by suitable injections to restore it to health. The Academy gave this proposition its attention; it was carefully and minutely discussed. The practicability of obtaining entrance into the sinus in this way was called in ques-

tion; it was contended that the difficulties presented by the peculiar structure of the parts were such that they could seldom be overcome. The practice has been wholly abandoned.

When the natural opening is closed, the first indication, as has been stated, is the evacuation of the matter, and for this purpose, a perforation should be made into the sinus, and the most proper place for effecting this, it has been shown, is through the alveolar cavity of the second molar.* It may, however be penetrated from that of either of the other molars or bicuspids.

The perforations, after the extraction of the tooth, is made with a straight trocar, which will be found much more convenient than those usually employed for the purpose. The point of the instrument, after having been introduced into the alveolus, through which it is intended to make the opening, should be pressed against its bottom in the direction towards the centre of the antrum. With the handle of the instrument in the hand of the operator, a few rotary motions will suffice to pierce the intervening plate of bone. If the first opening be not sufficiently large, its dimensions may be increased to the necessary size, by means of a spear-pointed instrument. In introducing the trocar, care should be taken to prevent a too sudden entrance of the instrument into the cavity. Without this precaution, it might be suddenly forced against the opposite wall. The entrance is usually attended with a momentary severe pain, and the withdrawal of the instrument followed by a sudden gush of fetid mucus.

It is not always necessary to perforate the floor of the antrum after the extraction of a tooth; it occasionally happens, as has already been remarked, that some of the alveolar cavities communicate with it.

An opening having thus been effected, it should be prevented from closing, until a healthy action is established in the lining membrane, and for this purpose, a bougie, or leaden or silver canula may be inserted into the opening and secured in the manner previously noticed, to one of the adjacent teeth. It should, however, be removed for the evacuation of the secretions of the

* Vide *Anat. Phys. and Diseases of the Teeth*, p. 261.

antrum at least twice a day. The establishing of an opening at the base or most dependent part of the sinus, will, in those cases where a fistula has been previously formed, in most instances, be followed by its speedy restoration. Having proceeded thus far, the cure will be aided by the employment of such general remedies as may be indicated by the state of the constitutional health, and for the reduction of the local inflammation, leeches to the gums and cheek will be found serviceable. The antrum should, in the meantime, be injected with, at first some mild or bland fluid, and afterwards with gently stimulating liquids. Diluted port wine, a weak solution of the sulphate of zinc, and rose water, and also that of copper and rose water, have been recommended. Diluted tinct. of myrrh, may sometimes be advantageously employed, and when the membrane is ulcerated, a solution of the nitrate of silver, will be highly serviceable. For correcting the fetor of the secretions, a weak solution of the chloride of soda or lime, may be injected into the antrum.

In cases of muco-purulent secretion simply, a weak decoction of galls may be injected into the sinus with advantage.

Injections of a too stimulating nature are sometimes employed. This should be carefully guarded against, by making them at first weak, and afterwards increasing their strength as occasion may require; but if symptoms of a violent character are by this means produced, they should be combated by leeches to the gums and fomentations to the cheek.

But, dependent as these affections in most instances are, upon local irritants, greater reliance is to be placed on their removal and giving vent to the acrid puriform fluids, than to any therapeutical effects exerted upon the cavity by injections. As adjuvants, they are serviceable, but a cure cannot be effected, while the exciting cause remains unremoved. This opinion is sustained by the result of the treatment in the two following cases.

Case 1st. Mr. W. S——, æt. twenty-four years, of a full habit, and slightly disposed to scorbutis, applied to us in the spring of 1839, to obtain our opinion with regard to an affection of his left antrum. It had existed for nearly a year, and the

floor of the sinus had been perforated through the alveolus of the second molar, which had been previously extracted. Injections, first, of diluted tinct. of myrrh, and afterwards of a solution of the sulphate of zinc, diluted port wine, &c., &c., had been used regularly once or twice a day for eight months; but still, the matter discharged, whenever the opening was unclosed, was exceedingly fetid. It had a thick muddy appearance, and turned silver black almost immediately on being brought in contact with it.

Before the antrum was perforated from beneath, this fetid matter was discharged from the nose, which, at first, had induced the belief that the affection was ozena. The heavy pain daily felt in the cheek, and the occasional sudden discharges of purulent matter from the left nostril, when lying upon his right side, led his medical attendant to suspect that the disease was seated in the maxillary sinus, and for the purpose of introducing what he conceived to be the proper remedies, perforated the floor through the alveolus of the second molar, as just stated. The operation was immediately followed by a discharge of fetid purulent matter.

The use of injections, although persisted in for so long a time, were not productive of any permanent benefit, and the patient almost despaired of a cure. His teeth had been examined, but as none in the left side of the upper jaw appeared to be affected with caries, they were not suspected of having any agency in the production of the disease. On examining his mouth, we perceived, although the teeth were free from decay, that they were, nevertheless, coated with tartar. His gums were inflammed and tumefied; their edges around the bicuspids, the first molar and dens sapientiæ, were ulcerated, and the alveoli so much wasted that the teeth were considerably loosened, and sensitive to the touch.

Such being the condition of his teeth, gums and alveoli, the cause of the affection in the antrum was apparent. That it resulted from irritation produced by the first and third molars, we felt fully convinced, and advised their immediate extraction. To this operation, as a dernier resort, he reluctantly submitted. Four weeks after their removal, the secretions of the antrum

ceased to be offensive, and the opening through the alveolus of the second molar was permitted to close. The injections that had been previously employed, were continued, but as they had not, previously to the removal of the teeth, exerted any curative effect upon the affection, it is not fair to presume that they did subsequently. It was, therefore, evidently, to the extraction of the teeth, that the restoration of the cavity was attributable.

Case 2d. In the summer of 1840, Mr. B., of a strumous habit, æt. nineteen, applied to us for advice, concerning an affection of the right maxillary sinus, which had troubled him for several months. He informed us that nearly a year before, he had broken the crown of one of his teeth, (the second bicuspid of the affected side,) and that a few weeks after he was seized with severe throbbing pain in its alveolus. This gradually extended to his cheek, but in the course of a few days it abated in intensity, though the pain never entirely subsided. About four weeks after the attack, he began occasionally to discharge a glairy and exceedingly fetid mucus from the right nasal cavity. This continued for several weeks, when it nearly ceased, and similar matter was discharged through the root of the tooth that had at first caused the disturbance, which by this time had become funneled up to its apex, so that a probe could be passed through it into the antrum, from which cavity the matter seemed to come. To prevent the matter from discharging itself continually into his mouth, he kept the canal in the root plugged with raw cotton, which he removed two or three times a day to give vent to the accumulated purulent mucus.

Persuaded that the disease of the antrum had resulted from inflammation excited in the alveolus of the second bicuspid by the decayed root that was in it, and the abscess had, in consesequence, formed and discharged itself into the sinus, the indication of cure was too obvious to be mistaken. It consisted in the removal of this local irritant, and to this operation he readily submitted. The muco-purulent discharge, without other treatment, soon ceased, the opening through the alveolus closed in about ten days, and he has since remained well.

In the foregoing case, the cure was affected without the use of injections of any kind, and simply by the removal of the root of one tooth, the second bicuspid, which had caused the disease.

The particulars of the following case are obtained from "Observations of Bordenave on the Diseases of the Maxillary Sinus,"* a paper embodying reports of forty highly interesting cases.

Case 3d. "In 1756," says our author, "I was consulted by a lady whose right cheek was tumefied. About a month previous she had experienced acute pain under the orbit of the affected side; and she had felt a pulsation and heat in the interior of the sinus, and the maxillary bone was slightly elevated. These signs determined me to propose the extraction of the third molar tooth,† and the perforation of the antrum through the alveolus. The operation was followed by a discharge of purulent matter, the sinus was afterwards injected, the maxilla gradually reduced itself, and a cure was effected in about two months."

Although injections were employed in the above case, it was, no doubt, to the giving vent to the matter contained in the antrum the cure was attributable. As it regards the cause that gave rise to the affection in the first instance, not a single word is said. It might have resulted from inflammation, lighted up in the socket of one or more teeth, and propagated from thence to the mucous membrane of this cavity, or from inflammation produced by some other cause, and a consequent obliteration of the nasal opening.

The following brief statement is taken from the history of a case narrated by Fauchard.‡

Case 4th. The child of M. Galois, æt. twelve years, whose first right superior molar was decayed, had a tumor situated anteriorly upon the upper jaw of the same side, extending up to the orbit. M. Fauchard, supposing this tumor, which was about the size of a small egg, had been caused by the carious tooth in question, determined on its extraction as the only means of effecting a speedy and certain cure, and the result

* *Mem. de l'Acad. Royale de Chirurg.*, vol. xii, obs. 3, p. 10.

† The bicuspids are called by most French writers, molars, and by the "third molar tooth," he means the one which we call the first.

‡ *Le Chirurgien Dentiste*, tom. i, obs. 8, p. 483.

proved his opinion correct. The removal of the tooth was followed by a large quantity of yellow serous matter, which, on examination was found to have escaped from the antrum. The tumor disappeared soon after the discharge of the matter, and a complete cure was effected.

Bordenave, in noticing the foregoing case, does not believe that the tumor communicated with the maxillary sinus, for the reason that the matter escaped through the alveolus of the first molar immediately after its extraction. He, however, admits that the acumen and knowledge of Fauchard, are such as to have prevented deception in the case. Admitting, then, the statement to be correct, and surely the circumstance mentioned by Bordenave does not in the least tend to invalidate it, for it is of frequent occurrence, a cure is effected simply by the removal of a decayed tooth, to the irritation produced by which, the disease was undeniably attributable. The two following cases are described at length by the last named author in the "Memoirs de l'Academie Royale de Chirurgie.*

Case 5th. A woman in 1731, had the first superior molar, the crown of which had been destroyed by caries, extracted. Not many days after the operation, she was attacked with a pain in the upper jaw, which extended from the maxillary fossa to the orbit. The pain was so great as to deprive her of rest, but there was no tumefaction of the cheek or gums. An opening through the alveolus into the sinus was discovered, into which a probe was introduced by a surgeon. The withdrawal of this was followed by a discharge of yellow fetid matter. M. Lamourier, who was afterwards consulted, removed from the opening a tooth that had been thrust into the antrum and prevented the egress of the matter, which, by its retention, had become purulent. Injections were employed, a part of which, at the expiration of thirty days, escaped from the nasal opening. A perfect cure was soon after effected.

In this case, the affection of the sinus, was evidently the result of the injury inflicted upon the socket of the first superior molar, in an attempt at the extraction of the tooth. Inflamma-

*Vide vol. xii, 12mo. *Observations* 5 and 6, pp. 12 and 19.

tion was excited by this and the presence of the tooth that had been thrust into the antrum, which extended itself to the lining membrane of this cavity, and caused a temporary obliteration of the nasal opening, so that to effect a cure it was necessary to obtain free vent for the retained matter. In restoring a healthy action to the mucous membrane of the cavity, the injections may have been serviceable.

Case 6th. A girl, æt. twenty-six years, in having a decayed and painful superior dens sapientiæ on the right side extracted, the tooth was broken and all the roots but one were left in their sockets. These caused an abscess to form, and this was followed, for a short time, by a subsidence of the pain, which, however, soon returned, and a dull heavy sensation was felt in the antrum of the affected side. From thence the pain extended to the eye and ear. The gums at length became tumefied, and the pain less constant; the patient, although five teeth were in the mean time extracted, remained in this condition for five years. At this time, 1756, M. Beaupreau, who was consulted, found on examination, that the gums, where the first tooth had been extracted, had not entirely united, and a small tubercle had formed, from which a fluid of a bad smell and reddish color was discharging itself. He introduced a probe into the fistulous hole of the tubercle, which after having overcome some obstacle that at first impeded its passage, penetrated the antrum. The opening was enlarged and mercurial water applied to the carious bone, but it soon closed and the pain which had ceased, returned. Injections were resorted to. These discharged themselves in part through the nasal opening, and the patient continued in this way until an exfoliation of the bone took place, when a cure was effected.

The cause of the disease in this, as in the preceding cases, was alveolo-dental irritation, and a cure would at once have been accomplished by the removal of the roots of the tooth that had been left in their sockets, as was proven by the fact, that it was not until they were thrown off with their exfoliated alveoli, that it was effected.

In alluding to these and similar cases, Bordenave concludes there are not many cases where the extraction of teeth simply,

will suffice to effect a cure. The inference, to say the least of it, is unfair, for in the case last given, it was to the presence of the roots of a tooth, that had been fractured in an attempt to extract it, and left in their sockets, that the affection was attributable, and we have good reason to believe, that the cure was wholly owing to their removal.

The history of the following exceedingly interesting case, which was communicated to the Faculty of Medicine, by Professor Dubois, is contained in the 8th number of their bulletin, for the year '13, and also in Boyer's works on Surgical Diseases.

Case 7th. Upon a child between seven and eight years old, at the base of the ascending apophysis of the superior maxillary bone, a small hard round tumor of the size of a walnut, was perceived by its parents. About a year after, the child fell upon its face, and caused a considerable discharge of matter from its nose, at the same time bruising the tumor. No other injury was produced, and the tumor did not increase perceptibly in size, from the eighth to the fifteenth year. During the next year, however, it sensibly augmented, and from the sixteenth to the eighteenth year, it attained so great a volume that the floor of the orbit was elevated, which caused a diminution in the size of the eye, and restricted the motions of the eyelids. The arch of the palate was depressed and the nasal fossa almost closed. The nose was forced to the right side at the upper part of the tumor, and there was a considerable elevation beneath the suborbital fossa. The skin below the inferior eyelid was of a violet red color, and very tense. The upper lip was elevated, and the gums on the left side protruded beyond those on the other side of the arch. Respiration was painful, and the patient spoke with difficulty. Sleep was laborious, and mastication was attended with pain. "In this state," says M. Boyer, "he was seen by M. Dubois, September 1st, 1802, but as he was not able to determine on the proper operation, M. Sabatier, M. Peletan and himself were called in. It was the opinion of all, that there was a fungous tumor of the antrum, and for the removal of this, M. Dubois was requested to make choice of his own method of operating.

A fluctuation was felt behind the upper lip, and this deter-

mined M. Dubois to commence the operation by making an incision there. This was followed by a discharge of a large quantity of a glairy lymphatic substance. Through this opening a sound was introduced into the antrum, and to M. Dubois' suprise, this cavity contained no tumor, but upon moving the sound about, it struck upon a hard substance, in the most elevated part of the sinus, which, on being removed, proved to be a canine tooth. Preparatory, however, to its extraction, two incisors and one molar were removed and their alveoli cut away. Injections were afterwards employed and the patient was soon restored to health.

It is not necessary to stop to inquire how this tooth got into the antrum; aberrations of this sort in the growth of the teeth are frequently met with, and some precisely similar instances have already been referred to.*

In all the cases which have as yet been noticed, the affection was traceable to local irritation, and in all, except the last, it had originated in the alveolar ridge. The following case of muco-purulent engorgement may be thought by some to have been occasioned by a different cause. Yet, there are circumstances connected with the history of even this case, that go to justify the belief, if the teeth had been in a healthy condition the affection would not have been produced.

Case 8th. Mr. G——, a laborer, æt. about thirty, of a decidedly scorbutic habit, applied in the spring of 1834, to an eminent medical gentleman of Baltimore, to obtain his advice concerning an affection of the left side of his face, under which he had been laboring for several months. The physician to whom he applied, after having examined the case, came to the conclusion, that it was mucous engorgement of the maxillary sinus, and requested him to call upon us, and have one of his molar teeth extracted, and the floor of the antrum through its alveolus pierced. He at the same time desired, that if his opinion in regard to the nature of the disease proved to be correct, we should take charge of the case altogether. On examining his mouth, we discovered that nearly all the teeth of both jaws,

* Vide *Mem. de l'Academie de Chirurg.*, vol. v, Mem. 257.

the gums and alveoli were extensively diseased, and, on inquiry, obained from him the following statement with regard to the commencement and progress of the affection.

About six months previous to this time, having been exposed, while pursuing his ordinary avocations, to very inclement and several sudden changes of weather, he contracted a severe cold; in consequence of which, he was confined to his bed for several days; during this time, he was twice bled, took two cathartics, and other medicines.

The disease at first concentrated itself in his head, face, and jaws, which, at the expiration of eight or ten days, was subdued by the above treatment, with the exception of the pain in his left cheek, and soreness in the superior teeth of the same side. The pain in his cheek, although not constant, still continued; the nasal cavity of that side ceased to be supplied with its usual secretion, the teeth became more sensitive to the touch, and, finally, at the end of four months, a slight protuberance of the cheek was observable, accompanied by a tumor upon the left side of the palatine arch, which, when we first saw him, had attained to half the size of a black walnut, and it was by the fluctuation felt here, the physician whom he first consulted, was induced to suspect the true nature of the disease.

Acting under the direction of the medical gentleman in whose care the patient had placed himself, we extracted the second left superior molar, and through its alveolus penetrated the antrum by means of a straight trocar, after the withdrawal of which, a large quantity of glairy, fetid mucous fluid was discharged. The perforation was kept open by means of a bougie, secured with a silk ligature to an adjoining tooth, as recommended by Deschamps, and the antrum injected three times a day. At first, simply with rose water, to which a small quantity of sulphate of zinc was afterwards added. By this treatment, the lining membrane of the antrum, at the expiration of five weeks, was restored to health, and the secretions that escaped through the perforation, no longer exhaled a fetid odor.

The patient, not experiencing any inconvenience, withdrew the bougie, and allowed the aperture to close. In about two months, he again presented himself to the author, similarly af-

fected as when he first saw him. He now extracted the first superior left molar, and perforated the antrum through the alveolus, and a quantity of fetid mucous fluid was again discharged; the dens sapientiæ, and the first and second bicuspids of the affected side, which were carious, were also extracted. Injections of sulphate of zinc and rose water, diluted tincture of myrrh, diluted port wine, and a decoction of nut galls, were alternately employed for three months, at the expiration of which time, the nasal opening, which had been previously closed, was re-established, and a perfect cure effected.

The condition of the teeth in the case just narrated, may not be thought to have exerted any agency in the production of the affection of the antrum, but there are circumstances connected with its progress that would seem to justify a different conclusion.

The presence of decayed teeth beneath the sinus, may not only have contributed to aggravate the morbid action lighted up by the cold which he had taken, but may also have caused it to locate itself in this cavity; and the fact that the inflammation of the lining membrane and the obliteration of the nasal opening continued until they were removed would, at least, seem to warrant such an inference. That the injections were beneficial, we do not doubt, but that the cure was effected by them, no one, we think, will dare to affirm. We are far from believing the presence of the decayed teeth was the sole cause of the disease of the antrum; that they contributed to, and protracted it, we cannot hesitate to believe, and but for the increased excitability, and, perhaps actual inflammation, induced in the mucous membrane, by the exposure of the patient to inclement and sudden transitions of weather, it is probable the sinus would never have become affected. We think it not unlikely that, notwithstanding the disturbance which may have been originated in it by this cause, no very serious or lasting morbid effect would have been produced, if the teeth and alveoli had been in a perfectly healthy condition.

The particulars of the following highly interesting case were communicated to the author by Dr. L. Roper, dentist, of Philadelphia, in a conversation which he had with him in 1845.

CASE 9th. Miss M——, a young lady from the West Indies, of about fourteen years of age, had a fistulous opening beneath the right orbit, communicating with the maxillary sinus. By means of a probe introduced through the opening into this cavity, the apices of the roots of the first superior molar could be distinctly felt.

Medical aid was sought at an early stage of the disease, but as no permanent benefit resulted from the treatment adopted, the young lady, at the expiration of nine months, was brought by her father to Philadelphia, and in the spring of 1831, placed under the care of the late Dr. Physick; who, suspecting the affection of the antrum had resulted from, and was still kept up by, irritation, produced by the first superior molar of the affected side, which was considerably decayed, directed her to be taken to Dr. Roper, who, concurring with him in opinion, at once extracted the carious tooth. The operation was followed by the immediate discharge of a large quantity of thick, muddy, and greenish matter. The fistula under the orbit soon closed, and without further treatment, a perfect cure was accomplished in the course of a few weeks.

The foregoing are all the particulars which we could obtain concerning this interesting case. We have no doubt if all the circumstances connected with its early history were known, it would be found to have resulted from inflammation of the lining membrane of the antrum, caused by irritation in the socket of the tooth which was extracted. This opinion is sustained by the facts, that this tooth was affected with caries, and that its removal was followed by the immediate cure of the disease.

In Bordenave's collection of cases of disease of the maxillary sinus, published in the Memoirs of the Royal Academy of Surgery, there are several examples similar to the one just narrated. We subjoin a description of the two following:

CASE 10th. A servant of the count of Maurepes had been afflicted for six months with a fistula upon the left cheek, a little below the orbit, which penetrated the maxillary sinus, caused by the spontaneous opening of an abscess. The third and fourth molars, (which are the first and second according as the teeth are now designated,) both of which were considerably decayed,

were extracted by M. Hevin. As there were no openings through the alveoli, he perforated one with a trocar; this opening gave vent to a great quantity of putrid sanies, and did not close for more than a year after it was made. The fistula of the cheek healed in about ten days.

CASE 11th. In 1717, a soldier of the regiment of Bassigny, who had for a long time a fistula in his cheek penetrating into the maxillary sinus, was treated for it at the Hotel Dieu, of Montpelier. The matter settling near the orifice of the fistula, prevented it from closing. M. Lamourier, on examining the mouth of the soldier, perceived that the second superior molar was decayed; this he extracted and profited by the alveolar cavity, in opening the base of the sinus. The fistula of the cheek was by this means cured in a few days, but the counter opening was not immediately permitted to close.

In cases of fistula resulting simply from engorgement of the sinus, the treatment, as has been shown by the result of that in the foregoing cases, consists in the formation of a counter opening, which should always be affected at the most dependent part of the cavity, and in the removal of all sources of local irritation. Injections should also be employed.

In the cases thus far presented, we have selected such as were not complicated with abscesses, ulceration of the lining membrane, or caries of the surrounding osseous walls; but to the existence of the two last, the affections, on which we have been treating, often give rise. We will not extend our remarks further upon mucous engorgement and a purulent condition of the secretions of this cavity. The next form of disease on which we propose to speak, is abscess—an affection, differing in all its characteristics from those thus far treated.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

ABSCESS OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THE formation of an abscess in any other part of the maxillary sinus than at the extremity of the root of a tooth which has penetrated the cavity, is exceedingly rare. There are but two well authenticated cases in which it has happened, so far as we have been able to ascertain, on record. One of these is described by Mr. Thomas Bell,* and the other by Bordenave.† The abscess in both instances was seated in the upper part of the antrum, beneath the orbit. But as we shall have occasion to refer to these cases again, it is not necessary to say more concerning them at this time.

Dr. Hullihen, in a well written article in the American Journal of Dental Science,‡ contends that abscess of the antrum, as well as alveolar, consists in the effusion of pus, formed in the pulp cavity of a tooth, "between the bone and lining membrane." That this view of the subject is incorrect, is proven by the fact, that abscesses are almost as frequently formed in the sockets of dead teeth as living ones. The matter from alveolar abscess, in those cases where the plate of bone intervening between the extremity of the root or roots of a superior molar or bicuspid, as the case may be, being thinner than the osseous walls surrounding it or them, often escapes through it into this cavity, after having first, as Dr. H. justly remarks, effused itself between the bone and lining membrane. In this case, it cannot properly be termed an abscess of the antrum. Although the matter escapes into this cavity, and it, in consequence, be-

* Vide Anatomy, Physiology and Diseases of the Teeth.

† Vide *Mem. de l'Acad. Royale de Chirurg.*, vol. 12, ed. 12mo. obs. xi, p. 31.

‡ Vide vol. ii, p. 179.

comes involved in disease, yet the disease having originated in the alveolus of a tooth, which is still its principal seat, is, in the strictest sense of the term, an alveolar abscess. It not unfrequently happens that pus from an abscess, formed in the socket of a superior molar, discharges itself into this cavity, and escapes through the nasal opening for months and sometimes for years. The pulp may suppurate, and the matter be confined in the cavity of the tooth for a long time, or be discharged through a decayed opening in the crown, communicating with the internal cavity, without causing alveolar abscess. The purulent matter contained in the sac at the extremity of the root of a tooth, is not always formed, as Dr. H. supposes, in the cavity of the organ. The quantity of pus discharged from an alveolar abscess is oftentimes greater than that which could be formed by the suppuration of the soft tissues contained within the cavity of a tooth, and, besides, after this matter has been once discharged, it cannot again be reproduced here, and, consequently, any matter which may afterwards accumulate in the cavity of the tooth, must be secreted by the soft parts about the extremity of its root or roots. Again, abscesses often form at the extremities of the roots of the teeth, after their internal cavities have been filled up to their very apices. The alveolo-dental membrane at the apex of the root of a tooth, around the nerve cord, are more vascular, and are endowed with greater nervous sensibility, than at any other part, consequently, the inflammatory action here is always the greatest, and it is here that suppuration first takes place.

The apices of the roots of the first and second superior molars, when they do not actually perforate the floor of the antrum, are often above its level, and covered by only a very thin shell or cap of bone, and hence, in case of an abscess in one of these, although strictly alveolar, the matter is more liable to make for itself a passage into this cavity, than through the gum into the mouth. When this happens, it gives rise to inflammation of the lining membrane, and causes its secretions to become more or less vitiated, and often leads to an erroneous opinion concerning the real nature of the disease.

It is only when the root of a tooth actually penetrates the

floor of the antrum, or the tubercle at its apex is actually situated in it, that the abscess can properly be said to be of this cavity. When the root of the tooth does penetrate it, the tubercle, although formed at its apex around the nerve cord, as it is commonly called, is between the lining membrane and periosteal tissue, both of which, in the immediate vicinity, become directly involved in the inflammation, and this sometimes extends to every part of the cavity, causing, in some instances, an obliteration of the nasal opening. This, however, does not often occur, but when it does, is followed by engorgement of the sinus, and, occasionally, by ulceration of its lining membrane, and disease in the surrounding bone.

It is sometimes the case, that the plate of bone intervening between the extremity of the root of a tooth, around which a tubercle has formed, and the antrum, is destroyed, and the tubercle, instead of being wholly confined within the alveolus, is forced up, as it enlarges, almost entirely into this cavity. The inflammation, after having attained a certain height, is succeeded by suppuration, and the secretion of pus goes on until the sac bursts, when the matter is discharged, and, mixing with the mucous secretions of this cavity, ultimately escapes with them through the nasal opening into the nose.

As it regards the morbid effects produced upon the lining membrane and surrounding bony parietes of the antrum, by an abscess of this kind, it is of little consequence whether it be formed in it, if the matter be discharged there, or in the alveolus of the tooth that gave rise to it. The effects are about the same in one case as in the other. If the general health of the patient be good, and the natural opening of the sinus remain pervious, they seldom assume an alarming character; under other and less favorable circumstances, the most dangerous and aggravated forms of disease may result from an abscess seated in either place.

SYMPTOMS.

In the incipient or forming stages of abscess of the maxillary sinus, the symptoms are similar to those that characterize inflammation of the lining membrane of this cavity, or violent in-

flammatory tooth-ache. The pain is generally most severe in the upper part of the alveolar ridge, above some one of the molar or bicuspid teeth. From thence, it often extends to the lower part of the orbit, ear, temple, muscles of the cheek and scalp. It is more or less constant, and a throbbing is felt high up in the alveolar border beneath the cheek. If the abscess is seated at the apex of the root of a tooth, this organ will appear slightly elongated and sore to the touch; the cheek, in most instances, is a little tumefied, and more or less flushed.

The pain, after having continued for several days, is succeeded by suppuration, when it immediately subsides. Slight paroxysms of cold and heat are now felt, and if the natural opening of the antrum is not closed, purulent matter will be occasionally discharged.

If the abscess is seated in any other part than the base of the antrum, the symptoms may differ in some respects from the foregoing. If purulent matter, or mucus mixed with pus, be discharged from the nostril of the affected side, when the patient inclines his head to the opposite one, or makes a sudden and forcible expiration through it, while the other is closed, the existence of abscess in this cavity, will be very conclusively indicated.

The abscess having burst, pus will be discharged from time to time, for several days, which will escape through the nasal opening, with hardened flocculi or other foreign matter, and then it will cease altogether or very nearly so. The disease, however, if the irritant which gave rise to it still remains, is by no means cured. A recurrence of it is liable to take place every time the patient takes cold, when all the symptoms just described will be again experienced, and each succeeding attack leaves the parts implicated in the morbid diathesis thus lighted up, in a more unhealthy condition, and as a consequence more susceptible of being acted upon by morbid irritants. Suppuration, also, at each successive attack takes place, and the pus gradually assumes a worse character.

CAUSES.

It will not be necessary to say much concerning the causes of abscess of the antrum. It is sufficient to state, they are the same as those of tooth-ache, namely, inflammation of the alveolo-dental periostea and inflammation of the lining membrane of this cavity. It is to the presence of one or other, or both of these that it is attibutable. These may be excited by caries of the teeth, or a dead or loose tooth, or a blow upon the cheek, and by exposure to sudden changes of weather. Other causes may sometimes be concerned, but the foregoing are the principal, and all which it is necessary to enumerate.

TREATMENT.

In the cure of abscess of the maxillary sinus, as well as that of a muco-purulent condition of its secretions or engorgement, the first and most important indication to be fulfilled, is to obtain a vent for the matter from the inferior part of the cavity. The best method of doing this has before been described, and it is unnecessary to recapitulate the directions already given for the accomplishment of this object.

The formation of abscess might, however, in almost every instance be prevented by the timely adoption of proper treatment. On the occurrence of a severe, deep seated and throbbing pain in the upper part of the alveolar ridge or just above it in the region of the antrum, such as has been described as attending the formation of abscess in this cavity or that of the alveolus of a superior molar; or if the tooth directly beneath the place where it was first felt, be considerably decayed, or its lining membrane exposed; or if it be dead, loose, or the socket much diseased, it should be immediately extracted. By this simple operation, the formation of abscess not only in the socket but also in the antrum, may, in almost every instance, be prevented.

The curative indications, if the abscess is of recent formation, and has resulted from the presence of a diseased tooth, are similar to the preventive. The first thing to be done is to remove

the tooth that caused it, and if this operation is not delayed too long, it, in most instances, will be all that is necessary to effect a cure. In addition to this, Dr. Hullihen recommends the perforation of the antrum;* but in those cases where the abscess has formed at the apex of the root of a molar, this is not necessary; because in all such cases, the alveolus communicates with this cavity, so that on the removal of the tooth, there will be a sufficiently large opening into it; besides, the tubercle or sac, although situated within the sinus, is, in nearly every instance, brought away with the tooth.

When the abscess has been of long standing, and the lining membrane of the antrum become seriously affected, in addition to the removal of the tooth, other treatment will have to be resorted to. The opening into the antrum, if necessary, should be enlarged, and it should be prevented from closing until the health of the lining membrane is restored; and for the promotion of this, injections, such as have been already recommended, will be found serviceable.

In cases of simple abscess of the antrum, seated at the apex of the root of a superior molar, we have never found it necessary to adopt any other treatment than the foregoing. It may, however, in some instances, be necessary to remove more than one tooth.

Case 12th. Miss E. M.——, æt. seventeen, of a scrofulous habit, was placed under our care in the spring of 1837, for the purpose of obtaining relief from a severe, deep-seated pain in her right cheek, apparently a little above the first superior molar, and which was supposed to result from a diseased condition of several teeth on that side of the upper maxillary. The pain, although very severe, seldom lasted more than three or four days She had experienced several attacks—the first about eighteen months before we saw her, and its subsidence, every time was followed by occasional discharges of purulent matter from the nostril of the affected side. These discharges, at first continued only for three or four days, but they lasted longer after each successive attack, and became more acrid and offensive.

* *American Journal of Dental Science*, vol. ii, p. 182.

Three days previously to our seeing her, she had an attack, and the inflammation at the time nearly reached a crisis. Her cheek was slightly swollen and considerably flushed, and an exceedingly painful throbbing sensation was felt in the region of the malar apophysis. We directed four leeches to be applied to the gum beneath the cheek, fomentations to the face, and pediluvium before going to bed.

The next day we saw her, and the pain had nearly subsided, but there was considerable inflammation and sponginess in the gums around the superior bicuspid and molar teeth. The first molar was very sensitive to the touch. The morning of the second day after we saw her, matter resembling pus, and of a fetid odor, was discharged from the nose. Believing that this came from an abscess in the antrum, caused by the presence of the first superior molar, we advised the immediate removal of this tooth, to which, after considerable persuasion she submitted. As we had suspected, this proved to be the tooth which had occasioned the mischief. At the extremity of its two outer fangs, which were almost in contact, was a tubercle the size of a large pea, and there was an opening into the antrum through which a small goose-quill could be passed. A considerable quantity of bloody mucous matter, streaked with pus, immediately escaped. The importance of having several other decayed teeth removed was urged, though not as necessary to the cure of the affection to which she had been subject, but she would not submit to the operation.

Three weeks after the extraction of the tooth, we again saw her, and was informed that she had not since experienced any pain; the alveolus had closed, but a glairy fetid matter was occasionally discharged from her right nostril. The alveolus was re-opened by cutting away the fleshy granulation that had filled it and a small quantity of matter such as we have just described, came away. Injections were now employed of diluted tincture of myrrh and rose water, with a small quantity of sulphate of zinc. The opening was prevented from closing, and the use of the injections persisted in for three or four weeks, when the bougie was left out. The opening soon closed, and in the course of ten or twelve days, a glairy fetid matter was again occasionally

discharged from the nostril of the affected side, again a vent was procured for it through the socket of the tooth which had been extracted. This was now kept open for five or six weeks, when it, for a third time, was permitted to close, and for two weeks there were no signs of a return of the discharge of fetid glairy mucus from the nostril; at the expiration of fifteen or sixteen days it became apparent that the mucous membrane of the antrum was not restored; its secretions again became fetid. Suspecting that the diseased condition of the teeth, gums, and alveolar processes beneath the cavity exerted a morbid influence upon it, we, a second time, urged the removal of the first bicuspid, and the second and third molars, which were all so much decayed as to render their restoration out of the question. With much persuasion the consent of the patient was obtained, and the teeth were at once extracted.

Four weeks after, the secretions of the antrum had become healthy, and they have since remained so.

The morbid condition of the mucous membrane of the antrum, although in this case, it, no doubt, resulted from the abscess formed at the apices of two of the roots of the tooth first extracted, was subsequently kept up, by the irritation of the alveolo-dental membranes, occasioned by the other decayed teeth.

Before we conclude our remarks upon abscess of this cavity, we will give the history of one case to which allusion has before been made. The following detailed statement of it we quote from Mr. Bell's treatise on the teeth.

Case 13th. "Mary B——, aged eighteen, of an unhealthy and somewhat strumous aspect, of languid disposition, and of retiring and timid habits, came under my care on the 3rd of January, 1817, in consequence of severe and continued pain on the left side of the face, of a dull heavy character, and apparently deep-seated; but occasionally darting in acute paroxysms, across the face towards the nose. The cheek was swollen, and the palate somewhat enlarged. About a year before the first superior molar of that side had been extracted on account of severe pain in the face, but without producing any relief, and the pain was consequently attributed to rheumatism, from which complaint she had long suffered to a great degree, in the shoul-

der, hip, and other joints, and for which she had been under the care of many medical practitioners, both in London and Bath, having been sent to the latter place for the use of the waters. When I first saw her, the general health was much deranged: the stomach, bowels, and liver performed their functions very imperfectly; and the uterus partook of the general sluggishness of the system, menstruation being almost wholly suppressed, and the periods only indicated by increased indisposition, and especially by an exacerbation of the pain in the face.

"No discharge had taken place from the nose, but, from the nature and situation of the pain, the direction of its paroxysms, the enlargement of the cheek and palate, and from an occasional trifling discharge of pus from the alveolus of the tooth which had been extracted, I could not doubt that the antrum was the seat of the disease. On examining the teeth, I found that the second bicuspid also was diseased, and as it had at times occasioned considerable pain, I extracted it with the view of removing every possible source of irritation.

"Six leeches were ordered to be applied to the face, and afterward the continued application of a cold lotion. Medicines were also administered with reference to the general health, both as regarded the digestive and uterine functions; and on January 7, I determined on puncturing the antrum. I consequently introduced the trocar through the anterior alveolar cavity of the first molar, and found that when the instrument came in contact with the lining membrane, the most acute pain was produced, indicating the existence of a high degree of inflammation in that structure. On withdrawing the trocar, when the antrum was freely opened, I was surprised, and a little disappointed at finding that not the smallest discharge made its appearance. There was a small quantity of glairy mucus, but nothing more. I introduced the blunt end of a probe, and found that the opening was quite free; but on passing it upwards towards the orbit, its passage was resisted by a firm elastic substance, which gave the impression that a solid tumor existed in the upper part of this cavity, and which produced intolerable pain, on being pressed with the probe. I now in-

jected some tepid water, and found that the nasal opening was pervious, as the water passed freely into the nose. As the operation had produced a considerable increase of pain, and as the parts appeared a good deal inflamed, I ordered six leeches to be applied, the bowels to be freely opened, and an opiate to be taken at night.

"January 9. The pain has been extremely severe ever since the operation, with scarcely any mitigation, excepting for a few hours after the application of the leeches. A probe now introduced into the antrum, met with similar resistance, but much nearer the orifice than before, proving that the tumor had increased; and on injecting warm water, it no longer passed into the nose. The leeches, the aperient, and the opiate were repeated.

"January 11. The pain has continued without cessation, and no sleep has been produced by the opium. The inflammation is not, apparently, reduced. Pulse one hundred, small and feeble. The palate is a little enlarged, but not more so than might be accounted for, by the thickening of the integuments by inflammation. I could now distinctly feel with a probe, that the tumor was not only increased in size, but that it had become softer, yielding in some measure to pressure, and conveying the impression that it contained fluid. I therefore introduced a sharp pointed instrument, which, with a little force, pierced the tumor, and a gush of pus instantly took place, with immediate relief to the symptoms.

"Here, then, was the sac containing pus, existing doubtless as a distinct cyst, the result of inflammation in the membrane; for it is scarcely probable that the membrane itself had become separated from its attachment by the formation of pus between it and the bone. That the former was the true situation of the disease, may be inferred from the fact that no subsequent caries of the bone took place, which would, undoubtedly, have been the case, had the matter been formed in contact with the bone; and it could scarcely have been produced between the mucous membrane and the periosteum, as these two structures, though essentially distinct from each other, are inseparably connected.

"The pus continued to be discharged for a day or two, and

then entirely ceased. In passing the probe a week after the former operation, I found the same resistance as before, and in the same situation; the cyst was again punctured, and again the pus was discharged. This alternation of the repletion and evacuation of the cyst regularly recurred for a considerable time, but the opening into the nose did not again become stopped. The general health, however, in the meanwhile, improved, and the pain in the face was greatly diminished, returning only, with any degree of violence, when the cyst was full.

"At length the repeated perforation of the sac, followed by the use of strong astringent injections, and aided by the remedies that were directed to the state of the general health, restored the antrum to a healthy condition; the menstrual disturbance was by degrees entirely obviated, and the stomach at the same time assumed its healthy function; but it was two years from the time when I first saw her before she had recovered her health, which at the best was never robust."

There is a case described by Bordenave, which, in many respects, is similar to the foregoing, but having adopted a different treatment, the cure was more tardy. It was ultimately, however, effected. For the particulars of the case, the reader is referred to a Dissertation of the author on the diseases of this cavity, page 86.

Finally, that abscess does occasionally form in other parts of this cavity than the base, is conclusively proven by the cases described by Bell and Bordenave. It is true, these are the only ones of which we have any account, nevertheless, they establish the fact that it is possible for them to occur in any part of the sinus.

CHAPTER FIFTH.

ULCERATION OF THE LINING MEMBRANE OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THIS is not an idiopathic affection. It is always, we believe, symptomatic of some other morbid condition of the mucous membrane of this cavity, and often gives rise to some of the worst and most aggravated forms of disease, that are ever met with. It is not a simple disease, but is complicated with the one that caused it, and often with some other to which it has given rise. We shall treat of it, however, as a separate affection. Its attacks are preceded by a purulent condition of the fluids of the antrum, and are often followed by fungi, and sometimes by caries of the surrounding osseous walls. The membrane covering the floor of the cavity, is usually first attacked; ulcers having formed here, they generally soon extend to other parts of the sinus.

Ulcers of the maxillary sinus present as great a variety of character as do those of other parts of the body. Their nature is determined by the state of the constitutional health and the causes that produce them. It is not necessary to go into a minute description of the various kinds of ulcers that occur in this cavity. It will be sufficient to state that the following varieties have been met with: namely, the simple, or those resulting from mechanical injury; the fungous, scorbutic, venereal, cancerous, gangrenous, scrofulous, inveterate, carious, &c.

In the simpler species of ulcer, the matter is of a thick consistence and nearly white, but as the disease increases in malignancy, it becomes thinner and varies in appearance from transparent to a dirty brown, yellow or black.

SYMPTOMS.

Many of the signs attendant upon ulceration of the mucous membrane of the maxillary sinus, are similar to some that accompany other affections of this cavity; as, for example, deep-seated heavy pain in the cheek; occasional escape of matter into the nose, &c. In addition to constant pain in the region of the antrum, the following may be mentioned as signs indicative of ulcers of this cavity. The escape of fetid sanies into the nose on the patient's inclining his head to the opposite side, or through an opening which it has itself effected, or that has been formed by art for its escape. Also, the traversing of the ulcer from the anterior through the bony walls of the cavity and external soft parts. An opening of this sort may be effected through the cheek, near, or even into, the orbit, which last has often happened; at other times, it is effected through the canine fossa or palatine arch. Moreover the matter escaping from the sinus, often has flocculi mixed with it, which is never the case in simple muco-purulent secretion of the sinus. These flocculi sometimes choke up the natural opening of the cavity and cause its secretions, together with those of the ulcers, to accumulate, and distend its osseous walls until they ultimately give way, or an opening is formed for their escape. It occasionally happens that the flocculi that have gotten into the nasal opening, and thus prevented the egress of the fluid secreted here, after choking up this conduit for a long while, suddenly give way, and permit the matter to pass into the nose.

When the ulcer is of a fungous character, the matter secreted by it is thin, and of a dark brown or blackish color, and has mixed with it blood and pus.* It is, says Deschamps, slightly painful, and can only be distinguished from other ulcers by the introduction of the bougie into the sinus; and, like polypus, it is capable of spreading and penetrating every opening that will give it passage; but, in consequence of its being of a softer consistence, it makes less impression upon the surrounding parts.

* *Maladies des Fosses Nazales*, sec. 2, art. vi, p. 263.

If the ulcer be of a cancerous nature, the pain will be sharp and lancinating, and affect the whole of the side of the face; the matter will be serous, very fetid, and streaked with blood. If it is discharged through the natural opening into the nose, it will cause the pituitary membrane of the nasal cavity of the affected side to become exceedingly irritable, sensitive to the touch, and to ulcerate. The bones of the affected side of the face soon become softened or carious, the teeth loosen, the external soft parts inflame, and ultimately ulcerate; openings are formed into the sinus, fever of a low grade supervenes, and ultimate death closes the scene.

CAUSES.

A degenerated or altered state of the secretions of this cavity, is said to be the most common cause of ulcers in it.* This may be an exciting cause, and it may be one of the most frequent exciting causes, but were it not favored by constitutional predisposition, it would seldom give rise to them. Local irritation, whether produced by an altered condition of the fluids of this cavity, or by the presence of decayed or dead teeth, the roots of teeth, or a blow upon the cheek, may be, and, doubtless, is, the exciting cause of ulcers in the mucous membrane of this cavity. This, however, in a subject of good constitutional health, would have to be very severe and continue for a long time, to result in ulceration, and even then, a cure would soon be effected by the restorative powers of the economy. It is only in bad habits, or debilitated constitutions, that malignant ulcers are met with in the maxillary sinus.

Deschamps, although he acknowledges that diseased teeth often exercise a morbid influence upon this cavity, and that the apices of the roots of these organs are sometimes in contact with its mucous or lining membrane, seems nevertheless to doubt that they have any agency in the production of ulcers. His reasoning upon the subject, is far from satisfactory. While he admits, that by the contact and adhesion of the dental periosteum and

* *Maladies des Fosses Nazales*, sec. 2. art. vi, p. 159.

mucous membrane of this cavity, and the penetration of its floor by the roots of teeth, inflammation and ulceration may be produced, he denies that it can be positively proven. Although we may not be able to adduce positive evidence in confirmation of it, the circumstantial proofs which we have, are so clear and strong, that no candid inquirer can for a single moment doubt that the disease in question, when favored by a bad habit of body, often results from dental or alveolar irritation. In reply to the question which he a little further on propounds, "How can the extraction of a tooth be of service in the subduction of inflammation of the mucous membrane with which the dental periosteum is only simply in contact?"* We answer, by this operation, a constant source of irritation may be, and often is, removed. Ulcers having absolutely formed, a cure cannot always be effected by the removal simply of the exciting cause.

TREATMENT.

As in the case of mucous engorgement of this cavity, the first indication of cure is to give egress to the purulent matter, and in this, as in the other affection, the opening should be formed at the most dependent part of the sinus; and this should be effected, in the manner as before described, through the alveolar border, or rather alveolus of a molar tooth. It should be made large enough to admit the little finger, and if there be any teeth so much affected as to be productive of irritation to the parts subjacent to the antrum, they should be removed.

Free egress for the matter having been obtained, and all local irritants removed, the antrum should be injected from time to time, with gently stimulating and detersive fluids. This, in cases of simple ulcer, if the constitutional health is not seriously impaired, will often, as is proven by the result of the treatment detailed in the history of the following case, be all that is necessary to effect a cure.

Case 14th. Mrs. R——, æt. about twenty-five years, of a scrofulous habit, having been affected for several months with a pain in her left cheek, which at times was very severe, and

* *Maladies des Fosses Nazales*, sec. 2, art. vi, p. 259.

supposing it might be connected with her teeth, applied to us, in the winter of 1836, for the purpose, if possible, of obtaining relief. She informed us that she had been several times temporarily relieved by a sudden discharge of matter from the nostril of the affected side, after sneezing, and once after a violent expiration through this cavity of the nose, while the other was closed. We at once suspected the disease to be ulceration of the mucous membrane of the antrum, and a purulent condition of its secretions.

On examining her mouth, we found the most of her teeth more or less affected with caries. The crowns of the first and second superior molars of the left side were nearly destroyed, and over the roots of the second, externally, was a fistula, from which matter had, at times, been discharged for several years. This communicated with an abscess, partly between the apices of its three roots; and, as neither this nor the first molar was of any service, their restoration being wholly impracticable, and, as both obviously exercised a morbid influence upon the neighboring parts, we advised their removal. To this operation she readily submitted, and it having been performed, we perforated the antrum through the socket of the second tooth, by means of a suitable trocar. The withdrawal of the instrument was followed by the discharge of more than a table-spoonful of thickened fetid mucus, streaked with blood and pus. The opening was enlarged to about the size of a goose-quill, and the sinus injected with tepid water and the tincture of myrrh. The opening was prevented from closing by means of a bougie prepared for the purpose. Whenever this was removed during the first eight or ten days, a small quantity of whitish pus was discharged with the mucous secretions of the cavity. The injections were continued for about four weeks, and at the expiration of this time, as the secretions of the antrum had ceased to be offensive, and were no longer mixed with pus, the bougie was left out and the opening permitted to close. A complete cure was effected.

If the ulcer is of a fungous nature, the employment of escharotics, and sometimes even the actual cautery becomes necessary; this last should be repeated until the fungi are completely de-

stroyed. With regard, however, to the employment of escharotics, such as the nitrate of silver, blue vitriol, &c., for the purpose of destroying luxuriant granulations in ulcers, Sir E. Home is of the opinion it is better to combine them with some other substance, so as to prevent them from immediately destroying the granulations. He believes when this is done, the surface of the ulcer underneath, is more liable to reproduce them, than when they are removed by absorption, and it is for this reason he prefers, in the employment of caustics, to mix them with other substances, so that they shall only exercise a strong stimulating effect, and thus cause the granulations to be gradually removed by the action of the absorbents.

The surface of the ulcer should, if practicable, be kept clean by means of dossils of dry lint or pledgets spread with some simple ointment. The treatment of ulcers of this cavity, is usually attended with more difficulty, on account of their concealed situation, than those of most other parts of the body Among other things, Deschamps recommends injections of a decoction of quinine. In many cases a lotion of sulphate of zinc may be used with advantage. The remedies to be employed in the treatment of ulcers of the maxillary sinus, as in the treatment of ulcers of other parts, should be varied to suit the indications of each particular case. In debilitated subjects tonics, as quinine and preparations of steel, are often serviceable. There are some cases in which mercurials are beneficial. Strict attention should always be paid to the regimen of the patient, and such general treatment adopted as may be best calculated to restore the constitutional health, for upon this, the cure of the local affection often depends.

If the ulcer is of an irritable nature, warm fomentations, (conveyed to the interior of the antrum by means of a properly constructed funnel,) of a decoction of poppy heads, chamomile flowers or the leaves of hemlock, will often prove beneficial in soothing the pain. Tincture of myrrh, diluted, or a decoction of walnut leaves may be advantageously employed as injections in cases of indolent ulcers—the last of which, is recommended as an application to ulcers of this character in other parts of the body by Hunezawsky, and both of which are favorably spoken

of by Sir E. Home. This last named writer recommends "diluted sulphuric acid and the juice of the powder of different species of pepper in a recent state;" also nitrous acid diluted with water. The unguentum hydrargyri nitrate, mixed with lard, the ceratum resinæ, and the unguentum elemi, mixed with the balsam of turpentine, are also recommended. The application of ointment to ulcers of this cavity is always attended with inconvenience.

Many of the ulcers of the maxillary sinus are regarded as incurable, as for example, such as are of a cancerous nature, and ulcerated fungous hematodes. Although the resources of surgery have hitherto, in most instances, proved inadequate to the cure of these formidable diseases, nevertheless, they should be put in requisition, and we should endeavor to combat them by every means in our power. Deschamps says, the interior of the antrum should be exposed at the commencement of the disease. He recommends the formation of a large opening, if the alveolar ridge be healthy, above it, if not, through it. As much of the cavity as possible should be exposed. This done, he directs, if there is a cancerous tumor, that it be as thoroughly extirpated by means of a curved and flat bistoury or curved scissors as possible. All that may have escaped removal by this means, he says, should be touched with the actual cautery. These, are the only remedies "to be employed when the membrane is in a state of cancerous ulceration." The surgeon, he adds, "should destroy the parts in such a way as to leave only the osseous surfaces, and he should pay some attention to these bony parts, which, also, he should carefully cauterize." The disease having been thus removed, the surrounding osseous walls which have been cauterized will soon exfoliate, when a chance for a cure will be afforded, and of which, if the neighboring parts have not been too extensively invaded, nature will avail herself. The administration of soothing and anodyne medicines are also directed. Arsenic has been employed with advantage as an external remedy in ulcers of this kind.

The following case of fungous ulcer, complicated with alteration of the walls of the sinus, is taken from Bordenave's collection of observations on the diseases of this cavity, in the Me-

moirs of the Royal Academy of Surgery. Although the history of the case, in its translation, is somewhat abridged, yet no important fact connected with it is omitted.

Case 15th. The subject of this case was a woman twenty-six years of age; who having exposed herself, while in a critical state of health, to cold air, was, in 1759, attacked with acute pains in the left side of her upper jaw; in the alveolar ridge of which were the roots of several decayed teeth. The following day her jaw was swollen, and although the pain ceased in a few days, the swelling still continued, without any change in the appearance of the skin; nevertheless, her face was deformed in shape. The orbitary apophysis of the maxillary bone became elevated, and the substance of the bone softened. The interior of the nose was affected and the opening of the sinus into this cavity was closed. The matter collected in the antrum began to escape, twenty-two days after the attack, through the alveoli.

In January, 1761, the symptoms becoming more aggravated, she went to Paris for medical aid. M. Beaupreau was consulted, and on examining the affected parts, determined on the extraction of the decayed teeth, which were considerably broken. They, however, adhered so firmly to the alveolar cavities that he could not move them without shaking their sockets. This deterred him from proceeding with the operation as he had begun, and he resolved to remove the whole of the alveolar border with a bistoury, from the lateral incisor to the first molar, and in this way remove the teeth with the bone. This done, he made a section of the bone, which had become softened, with a pair of scissors, in the direction of the cuspidatus. The antrum was much dilated; its membrane fungous and ulcerated. He then treated it with detersive injections, adhesive dossils, covered with digestives, composed of the oil of turpentine. In addition to these, mercurial ointment and red precipitate were used. Alterative pills and beverages clarified with cress, were also prescribed; this treatment was successful, for, five days after it had been commenced, the tumor had perceptibly diminished, the pus became of a better quality and less in quantity. At the expiration of two months the discharge became mucous. Injections of lime water, at first strong, and afterwards milder,

were used. The natural opening was closed, and continuing impervious, an opening through the base of the sinus was preserved. At the expiration of two months the parts had recovered, and the general health of the patient was restored.

The medical treatment in the foregoing case was very proper; it accorded with the curative indications of the disease, but the surgical, evidently involved a greater sacrifice of substance than was absolutely called for. The extraction of teeth was not, however, as well understood at that time as at present, and it was to the want of proper knowledge and skill in this department of surgery, that the removal of so considerable a portion of the alveolar ridge was had recourse to. It is often necessary to make a very large opening into the sinus, but it is seldom requisite to make one as large as the one made in this instance; although nearly the same treatment was adopted in a case of a somewhat similar nature by Bourdet, the practice is nevertheless objectionable. When the subjacent bone and alveolar border are in a carious or necrosed state, their removal would be proper, and there are diseases that occur in this cavity which render the operation necessary, but in neither of the cases just noticed, were the bones carious, nor was the nature of the disease such as to require so large an opening. In the first case, the outer wall of the sinus, as would seem from the description given, was softened, but in the other, Bourdet says the bones were not diseased.

It sometimes happens when the inferior opening is very large, it never closes, and when the natural opening becomes obliterated, it is requisite to preserve one through the alveolar ridge; in either of these cases the employment of an obturator is necessary to prevent particles of food and extraneous matter from getting into the sinus. Of these we shall hereafter speak.

The history of many highly interesting cases of ulceration of the mucous membrane of this cavity, might be introduced, but as this form of diseased action is so often complicated with caries, necrosis and other alterations of its osseous walls, we have thought it would be as well to reserve them until we treat of those affections; which we shall now proceed to do.

CHAPTER SIXTH.

CARIES, NECROSIS AND SOFTENING OF THE BONY PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THE bony parietes of this cavity, and sometimes the whole of the subjacent alveolar border, and that of the superior maxillary; the nasal, palatine and orbital bones, as well as some that belong to the base of the cranium and the malar bone, are involved in caries or necrosis. Mollities ossium, though rarely occurring in the alveolar ridge, frequently affects the walls of the sinus. Caries may affect a considerable portion of both for a long time, without completely destroying the vitality of the diseased parts. During its continuance a fetid sanies is discharged from one or more fistulous openings through some part of the cheek, alveoli, gums, palatine arch, or into the sinus, and from thence through the natural opening into the nose. The disease eventually terminates in the decomposition and death of the parts affected, and then by an operation of the economy, they are separated from the living bone and thrown off, or in other words, are exfoliated. Although caries ultimately causes the death of the bone affected by it, it does not always precede the destruction of vitality. The occurrence of necrosis, therefore, although it may result as a consequence of caries, is not necessarily dependent upon it.

When the parietes of the antrum or alveoli are affected by necrosis, the soft parts in contact with the diseased or dead bone, inflame, ulcerate and discharge a fetid ichorous matter. The gums sometimes become gangrenous and slough. The destruction of the vitality of the osseous parts often progresses very slowly, and thus, piece after piece is exfoliated, until the disease is arrested.

Besides these affections, it not unfrequently happens that the osseous parietes of the antrum, are so softened as to be easily bent. This alteration of the bone, as well as the others just noticed, are, in nearly every instance, preceded by some other affection of this cavity.

The annoyance occasioned by caries and necrosis of the bony walls of this cavity or of the alveoli, to the unhappy patient, is very great. The fetor of the sanies is sometimes almost insufferable; and this matter often excoriates and inflames the parts with which it comes in contact to such a degree, as to cause them to become exceedingly sensitive and not unfrequently to ulcerate.

SYMPTOMS.

It is sometimes difficult to distinguish caries and necrosis of the bony parietes of the antrum from some of the other diseases of this cavity. They, therefore, often exist for a long time without being suspected. The signs that indicate mollities ossium, or softness of the walls of the antrum, are such, as not to be easily mistaken for those of any other affection. In this disease, the walls of the sinus yield to pressure, and regain their former shape when the pressure is removed. Its existence, therefore, may always be known by these signs, and as these are sufficient, it is not necessary to enumerate any of the others by which it is characterized. Caries and necrosis not being so easily detected, often make considerable progress before their existence is ascertained. The fetor and appearance of the matter discharged do not always furnish a diagnosis that can be relied upon, inasmuch as some of the diseases that occur here cause its secretions to become equally as offensive as the sanies resulting from caries or necrosis, and not unlike it in appearance. Their existence may in most instances be inferred, from the discharge of a dark-colored fetid sanies. The exfoliation of pieces of bone will set all doubt at rest.

Caries or necrosis may often be detected by perforating the antrum and exposing the denuded or diseased bone; or when there is an external opening, by probing it. In this way any

loose or dead bone may be felt with the instrument; and the diagnosis in either case will be satisfactory.

When caries or necrosis is situated in the alveolar border, or floor of the antrum, its existence can be more readily ascertained. The occurrence of either in the alveolar ridge, causes the gums to inflame; to assume a dark purple or livid appearance; to separate from the sockets of the teeth, and frequently to slough in large pieces and expose the caried or necrosed bone. When situated in the floor of the antrum, the rough denuded bone may be easily felt with a probe or stilet, introduced through the fistula in the gums or alveolus of a tooth from which the matter is discharged.

The pain accompanying these affections does not constitute a diagnosis of much importance, since this does not belong to the osseous tissue, but to the soft parts that cover it.

CAUSES.

Caries, necrosis and other alterations of the osseous walls of the maxillary sinus are thought by some to result, very frequently, from certain specific or constitutional vices; such, for example, as the venereal, scorbutic, scrofulous, cancerous, &c., independently of any previous morbid condition of the soft parts. We have yet to be convinced, that disease ever occurs in an osseous tissue, except in the teeth, while the soft parts in contact with it are in a healthy state. We are of the opinion, therefore, that the contrary supposition is gratuitous. A bad habit of body or constitutional vice may, perhaps, increase the susceptibility of the bony tissues of the body to morbid impressions, but we do not believe that it ever gives rise, independently of the condition of the soft parts with which they are connected, to actual disease in them.

The immediate cause of caries and necrosis of the osseous walls of the antrum maxillare is suppurative inflammation, or the destruction of their periosteum; which may result from a purulent condition of the secretions of the mucous membrane, engorgement, abscess, from the presence of foreign bodies, tumors, a blow upon the cheek or from other kinds of mechanical vio-

lence. They may also arise from the irritation produced by diseased teeth.* The pressure of incarcerated fluids, may, perhaps, be regarded as the most frequent cause; and from this, too, results some of the most aggravated forms of disease that ever attack the maxillary sinus.

A morbid action kept up in the periosteum for a long time, by ulceration of the lining membrane, or any other aggravated form of disease in the sinus, or neighboring soft parts, is apt, especially in bad habits, to give rise to caries of the bone, but when the inflammation is so severe as to cause the immediate destruction of the periosteal tissue, necrosis at once takes place.

The softening of the bone, seems to be the result of the action of some solvent fluid upon it, capable of decomposing or breaking down its calcareous molecules. Although inflammation and ulceration are always present, and appear necessary to the exudation of this fluid, its production, nevertheless, seems to be dependent upon some peculiar state or habit of body.

TREATMENT.

Complicated, as are most frequently, caries, necrosis and other alterations of the osseous walls of the maxillary sinus, with other affections of this cavity, their cure is often difficult and generally tedious. The first indication to be fulfilled, however, in their treatment, as in the case of engorgement, and of a mucopurulent condition of the secretions, is to obtain free egress for any fluids which may have accumulated here. This may be effected in the manner as before described, by the extraction of a molar or bicuspid, and the perforation of the base of the cavity through its socket. In addition to this, if the disease of the osseous tissue is complicated with any other affection of the sinus, the means necessary for the cure of the disease with which it is complicated, should at once be employed. It is not necessary here to describe the treatment of the other diseases

* Fouchard says, he saw, in the Anatomical Museum of the University of Copenhagen, caries of the bones of the face, produced by a molar tooth, the crown of which having turned outwards, had penetrated the maxillary sinus. *Mem. de l'Academie de Chirurg.*, vol. v, Mem. 257.

of this cavity, inasmuch as that has already or will hereafter be done.

Deschamps, in treating upon the affections of the osseous walls of this cavity, after stating that the perforation or opening in it should be large enough to expose the seat of the disease, recommends the employment of detersive and stimulating injections, a decoction of quinine, tinct. of myrrh and aloes, &c. These last, he says, may be introduced as injections, or by means of pledgets moistened in them. He also directs the cavity to be "cleared of all foreign matter which may have obtained admission into it." This treatment, having a tendency to promote a healthy action in the lining membrane, will often be all that is required. It should be continued until the caried or necrosed bone has exfoliated, and the secretions of the antrum cease to exhale an offensive odor. The dead bone, however, having exfoliated, a cure is generally soon effected.

It sometimes happens that the disease of the bone has been produced by some very malignant and incurable affection of the soft parts. In this case, the resources of art will, of course, prove unavailing. When the disease of the bone has extended itself to the greater part of the superior maxillary and the bones with which it is connected, as, for example, the nasal, palatine, orbital, &c., the most that can be hoped for, from the skill of the physician, is a palliation of the symptoms. Art, in such cases, can seldom effect a cure. There are other cases in which it can only retard the progress of the disease, or assist nature in her efforts to separate the dead from the living bone.

It is impossible to lay down rules for the treatment of alterations of the walls of the maxillary sinus, from which it will not be necessary occasionally to deviate. It will be sufficient to state, that in those cases, where they are extensively involved in caries or necrosis, it will be proper, in addition to perforating the base of the sinus, if by this means the dead bone cannot be so exposed as to enable the surgeon to detach it from the living, to cut away the whole of the alveolar border beneath the cavity, or to penetrate the sinus above it, or even, as

Deschamps recommends, "through the cheek itself, whether there be an ulcer penetrating these parts or not." Having, by this means, exposed the necrosed bone, it should be carefully detached from that which is sound, and removed.

The character which the affections of this cavity put on, being determined by the state of the constitutional health, or some particular vice of body, it often becomes necessary, in their treatment, to have recourse to general remedies. If the subject is of a scrofulous or scorbutic habit, or is affected with any specific constitutional vice, such remedies as are indicated by the affection of the general system should be employed.

Although the character and malignancy of the disease are determined by the state of the constitutional health, or disposition of body, its occurrence seems to be dependent upon local irritation. Its continuance, in many instances, results from this; and the cure, in cases of this kind, soon follows the removal of the cause that gave rise to it. In a case, the history of which we are now about to detail, an example of this sort is furnished.

Case 16th. L. S——, a maiden lady of about thirty years of age, of a scorbutic habit, had been affected with pain in her left cheek and alveolar ridge of the same side, for nearly two years; which, at times, had been almost insupportable. Nearly all her teeth were affected with caries, and from between the necks of several, on the left side in the superior maxillary, and gums, fetid sanies had been exuding for two or three months. Her appetite had become greatly impaired, and a tumor half the size of a black walnut, having formed upon the palatine arch of the affected side, she became alarmed, and in the fall of 1840, came from her residence on the Eastern Shore of Maryland, to Baltimore, in pursuit of medical aid. She applied to Professor T. E. Bond, who, after investigating her case, and satisfying himself that the affection of the face was the result of the diseased condition of her teeth, advised her to place herself under our care, which she did on the following day.

The sockets of four of the teeth of the affected side, in the superior maxillary, were, on examination, found to be in a necrosed condition, as was also a part of the palatine bone of the same side. The gums around these teeth had separated from

the alveolar processes, and had a dark livid appearance. A thin dark colored, ichorous matter, which, when brought in contact with silver, almost instantly turned it black, was constantly exuding from between them and the necks of the teeth. The left nostril was dry, and the opening from the sinus had evidently closed. An exceedingly fetid matter had been discharged from it during the early stages of the disease. The tumor on the left side of the arch of the palate was soft and elastic. When pressed, dark colored sanies was discharged from the alveoli, and it then, for a time, disappeared.

The alveolar processes being in a necrosed and loose condition, it was with some difficulty we succeeded in removing the bicuspids, and the first and second superior molars of the left side, without bringing their sockets with them. The operation was followed by the discharge of a considerable quantity of fetid sanies; and, in a few days, the alveoli having become completely detached from the sound bone, we removed them, together with a part of the floor of the antrum. The opening thus formed into the antrum was large enough to admit the end of the fore-finger. Several small pieces of bone were afterwards exfoliated, from where the teeth had been extracted, and three pieces from the left side of the palatine arch.

Without any other treatment, the place from which the teeth and alveoli had been removed, except the opening that communicated with the maxillary sinus, had, in about seven weeks, become entirely covered with firm and healthy granulations. From the opening into the antrum, fetid matter was still discharged. This became less and less offensive, until at the expiration of six or eight weeks more, the opening into the nose having become re-established, it lost its fetid odor, and the aperture at the base of the sinus soon after closed.

Thus, in a little more than three months, a complete cure was effected. The patient left the city in the following spring. and we have not since heard from her.

The following case is taken from Bordenave's Observations on the Diseases of the Antrum Maxillare, as published in the Memoirs of the Royal Academy of Surgery. Although, in

the translation as here presented, it is considerably abridged, no important fact connected with it has been omitted.*

CASE 17th. A man, whose right superior maxillary, at the upper part, had been swollen for about three months, had, at the same time a soft tumor on the interior of the palate, which, on being pressed, caused matter to be discharged from the nostril of that side. These affections, together with tumefaction of the gums, looseness of several of the teeth, and a fetid breath, induced M. Planque, under whose care the patient was placed, to suspect suppuration of the maxillary sinus, complicated with scorbutic diathesis of the general system. The molars, which only adhered to the gums, having been extracted, matter was discharged through their alveoli. A portion of the maxillary bone was now discovered to be carious, and this, in about a month, began to loosen, and a piece of about an inch and a half long, and half an inch in width, some time after exfoliated. The tumor exteriorly disappeared; the walls of the sinus approximated, and a cicatrix ultimately closed the opening.

The details of many similar cases are on record, but it would be extending the limits of this part of our work too far, to introduce them here. The history of the cases already given, will suffice to illustrate the treatment of these affections. We would, however, have given a case of mollities ossium of the walls of this cavity, had we not, while treating of ulceration of the lining membrane, quoted one in which that affection had become complicated with this.

It sometimes happens, when a very large opening has been formed through the inferior part of this cavity, that it does not always readily close. This does not often occur, except the natural opening has become obliterated. When the parts do not manifest a disposition to unite, the practice introdueed by Bordenave and Scultet, which consists in cauterizing the interior circumference of the opening, will, in most instances, prove successful. If this and all other means fail, the opening should be closed by means of an obturator of fine gold. This should be

*Another interesting case is given by Bordenave, which the author has given in his Treatise on the Diseases of the Maxillary Sinus, p. 115.

accurately fitted to the parts, and secured, by means of a broad clasp, to a molar or bicuspid tooth, and if there be none suitable on the side of the mouth to which it is to be applied, the gold should be extended to one on the opposite side. If it be necessary to replace the lost teeth with artificial ones, these may be so mounted that the plate upon which they are set, shall cover the opening into the maxillary sinus, and thus obviate the necessity of any other obturator.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

TUMORS OF THE LINING MEMBRANE AND PERIOSTEUM OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THE lining membrane and periosteal tissue of the maxillary sinus occasionally become the seat of fungous and other tumors, and, in consequence of the concealed situation of the cavity, morbid productions originating in it, often, as has been previously remarked, make considerable progress before they attract attention; hence, the efforts of art for their cure, which might otherwise frequently be successful, in most instances prove unavailing. The presence of a tumor may give rise to all the diseases to which its osseous walls are liable, as well as to most of those incident to its soft tissues. As soon as a morbid growth has filled the sinus, it, as it continues to augment in size, presses upon the lining membrane, and excites inflammation, and sometimes ulceration, causing its secretions to become vitiated. A diseased action is communicated to the periosteum of the surrounding osseous walls, it ceases to furnish them with the healthy juices which they require for their preservation; it thickens, ulcerates, and is destroyed, or exudes a corrosive fluid. The bony parietes of the sinus are softened or become affected with caries or necrosis, and one or more fistulous openings are formed through the cheek, alveoli, or palatine arch.

These are not the only effects that result from tumors situated in this cavity. As they increase in volume, after having filled the antrum, they gradually distend and displace its bony parietes; the floor of the orbit is sometimes elevated, and the eye more or less forced from its socket; the palatine arch and alveolar ridge are depressed, the teeth become loosened and drop out. When the tumor is of a soft fungous nature, it not unfre-

quently escapes through the alveoli into the mouth, and after forcing the jaws asunder to their greatest extent, protrudes from it in enormous masses. Bertrandi gives the history of a case of a polypus excrescence of the antrum, which, after having destroyed the palate, anterior part of the maxillary bone, and filled the mouth, forced itself up into the orbit, elevated its roof, pressed upon the brain, and ultimately occasioned apoplexy and death. Other similar cases are on record. Mr. Cooper says there are three specimens of diseased antrum in the museum of the London University College. The tumor in two of these had "made its way from the antrum to the brain." The third was taken from a patient of his, which had died. The tumor in this case, which was of a medullary and scirrhous character, forced itself up into the orbit, displaced the eye, and, ultimately, caused the death of the patient. The same author mentions another case, the subject of which was a boy in St. Bartholomew's Hospital, who had a tumor of the antrum, which "made its way through the orbitar plate of the frontal bone and cribriform plate of the ethmoid into the cranium," and though the portion of it that entered the brain was as large as a small orange, he says the boy was only in a comatose state about forty-eight hours previously to his death.

Tumors occupying the maxillary sinus do not always originate in its lining membrane or periosteum. They sometimes arise from the pituitary membrane of the nose, frontal sinus, or ethmoidal cells, and after having found their way into this cavity, augment in size, until they produce the effects just described. Some suppose that the morbid productions found here, originate more frequently in the cells of the ethmoid bone, than in the lining membrane of this cavity.* We are disposed to believe that this opinion is not well founded, and that it has chiefly resulted from the great liability of most kinds of tumors of the maxillary sinus, to be reproduced after having been extirpated—which is often attributable to the continuance of the cause that gave rise to them in the first instance, or to their imperfect removal. That they do, however, sometimes originate in the ethmoidal cells, there can be no question.

* Vide *Traite des Maladies de la Bouch*, t. i, p. 210.

It sometimes happens that tumors having their seat in the antrum, after having filled it, make their way into the nose, where they acquire a size equal to, or even greater than that which they had previously attained, thus dividing themselves, as it were, into two parts—one occupying the antrum, and the other, one of the nasal cavities. Occurrences of this sort are not unfrequent, and they sometimes lead to the adoption of an incorrect opinion with regard to the real seat of the disease. Thus, a polypus of the antrum is occasionally mistaken for one of the nose, and the error frequently not discovered, until an attempt is made to remove it.

The character of morbid growths in this cavity is exceedingly variable, as much so as is the state of the constitutional health of different individuals, and the causes that give rise to them. They not only vary in their appearance and structure, but they vary in their malignancy. Some are of a healthy flesh color, soft, sensitive, but not painful, and present a smooth, regular surface; others varying in their consistence from hard to soft, and in their color from a pale yellow to a deep red or purple, present a rough, irregular, and not unfrequently ulcerated surface, and are more or less sensitive to the touch. Some have their origin in the mucous membrane, and others, both in this and the periosteum. Some are attached by a broad base, and others, only by a mere peduncle.

As it regards this latter description of tumors, which are usually designated by the name of polypi, their occurrence in the maxillary sinus is questioned by some writers. Sir Benjamin Brodie does not believe that they ever form in this cavity;* and in this opinion Mr. S. Cooper fully concurs; but that they are occasionally met with here, seems, nevertheless, to be pretty conclusively established. A case described by M. Bertrandi in his treatise on Operative Surgery, page 369, has already been referred to, and Bordenave, in his observations on the diseases of the antrum maxillare, gives the history of a case treated by M. Doublet. Rusch declares that he has twice seen polypus of this cavity, and Petitt, Levrette and other writers also affirm

*Vide *London Medical Gazette*, for December, 1834, p. 850.

that they have witnessed polypi here.* The occurrence, then, of polypi in the maxillary sinus, although very rare, it must be admitted, does sometimes happen. Other descriptions of tumors are certainly more frequently met with in this cavity. Of these, some are of a simple fibrous, sarcomatous, or osteo-sarcomatous nature,† and when thoroughly extirpated, are seldom reproduced; others are of a medullary, cancerous, or carcinomatous character. These last, although originating in the mucous membrane, if long neglected, are very liable to be reproduced after their removal, and generally occasion the death of the patient.

It sometimes happens that several fungi, and from opposite and various points in this cavity, spring up. The chances of cure, when this is the case, especially if they are of a malignant character, are greatly lessened.

Tumors in the maxillary sinus seldom grow very fast during the early stages of their formation; but, as they enlarge, the neighboring parts become involved in the diseased action, and consequently furnish them with fluids less healthy in their qualities, and thus cause them to assume a character of greater malignancy, and generally to increase more rapidly in size.

SYMPTOMS.

The occurrence of tumors in the maxillary sinus is rarely accompaniad, previously to their having obtained a size sufficiently large to fill it, by symptoms differing materially from those occasioned by many of the other affections that locate themselves here. After they have filled the sinus, the indications soon become less equivocal. Swelling of the cheek, depression of the palatine arch and alveolar ridge, loosening of the superior molar teeth of the affected side, inflammation and sponginess of the gums, elevation of the floor of the orbit, and protrusion or concealment of the eye, are symptoms which result from the

* Vide *Traite des Maladies de la Bouch*, tom. 1, p. 212, *and sur cure des Polypes de la matrice, de la gorge, et du nez*, p. 253.

† Vide *Professor Reese's Appendix to Cooper's Surgical Dictionary* American edition, 1842.

presence of tumors in this cavity, but they are not peculiar to these affections alone; many of them are produced by mucous engorgement of the sinus. When to these is superadded the discharge of bloody sanies from the nose, or from one or more fistulous openings through the cheek, alveolar ridge, or palatine arch, the diagnosis will be conclusive; and the existence of a tumor in the antrum will be established beyond doubt.

There are also other signs by which the occurrence of a morbid growth in this cavity may be known; as for example—the dropping out of the superior molars of the affected side, and the protrusion of portions of the tumor through the alveoli.

The pain is seldom severe until the tumor has filled the cavity, except the excrescence is, from its inception, of a malignant character; as it augments in size and forces the walls of the sinus asunder, it becomes more and more severe. Sometimes, during the progress of the disease, it becomes almost excruciating. In a case of fungous hematodes of this cavity, which the author, a few years since, had an opportunity of witnessing, the patient was in the habit of taking upwards of two teaspoonfuls of black drop at a time, for the procurement of ease and sleep.

In addition to the foregoing symptoms, several of the affections already treated on, together with all the effects produced by them, not unfrequently result from tumors in this cavity. Inflammation and ulceration of its lining membrane, a purulent condition of its secretions, caries, necrosis, and softening of its osseous walls, seldom fail to attend some of the stages of the formation of the morbid productions under consideration. It is unnecessary to mention the symptoms peculiar to each variety of tumor, as they are given by writers on general surgery.

CAUSES.

Most writers on the affections of the maxillary sinus, are of opinion that tumors in this cavity result spontaneously, as a consequence of some specific constitutional vice, independently of local causes. We do not, however, believe that they are ever

thus originated. That a bad habit of body, or some constitutional vice is necessary to the production of the affections under consideration, we do not doubt, but that this is capable of giving rise to them in parts uninfluenced by local irritation, we think exceedingly questionable. Having, however, already expressed our views with regard to the agency exerted by particular habits of body and constitutional vices in the production of diseases in this cavity, it will not be necessary to repeat what we have before said upon this subject. It will be sufficient to remark that most, if not all of the morbid excrescences met with, result from local irritation and constitutional vices; and that both are necessary to their production.

TREATMENT.

It is only in the early stages of the formation of tumors in the maxillary sinus, that surgical treatment can be adopted with success, and even then, their entire extirpation is necessary. Without this, a speedy return of the disease may be expected. But, preparatory to the removal of the diseased structure, a large opening should be made into the antrum, so as to expose as much of it as possible; and with regard to the most proper place for effecting this, Deschamps recommends, when the alveolar ridge has been started, the removal of the first or second molar, and the perforation of the sinus through its socket with a "three-sided trocar of suitable dimensions." When the alveolar ridge and teeth are sound, he directs the opening to be made through the outer wall of the sinus above the ridge, and this, he thinks, on account of its being more direct, is preferable to the other mode. An opening may be easily effected in either way into the sinus, as its walls are generally so much softened as to offer but little resistance.

When the opening is made through the external parietes, the instrument recommended by Mr. Thomas Bell, to be employed for cutting away the bone after it has been exposed, is a "strong hooked knife," which is probably as well adapted to the purpose as any that can be used. Some surgeons employ strong curved scissors, but the hook knife we think preferable.

A free opening having been effected, a finger of the operator should be introduced, and the nature of the diseased structure ascertained. This done, he will be able to determine the proper procedure to be had recourse to for its removal. If the tumor partakes of the character of polypi, it may be seized with a pair of forceps, and torn away; if it be attached by a broad base, its extirpation will be most readily effected with a knife. But even with this, it is often exceedingly difficult to effect its total removal, so that it not unfrequently becomes necessary to employ the actual cautery; for, if any small portions be left behind, as has before been stated, a reproduction of the disease will generally very soon take place. When the disease has originated, or is seated in the periosteum, the cautery has proved to be the most effectual means of preventing its return of any that has been tried. The French surgeons have applied it with great success. Desault, in a case of fungous tumor, succeeded in effecting a cure, after three applications. The root of the disease, by the employment of this, can often be destroyed, when less effectual means would fail. But it is important when it is had recourse to, that it should have such a degree of heat, as to accomplish this object instantaneously, else the inflammation that would otherwise be excited by its application in the surrounding parts, would greatly retard, if it did not prevent, the cure. The remarks of Mr. Thomas Bell upon this subject, who says, "the white heat should be employed," are worthy of attention.

In remarking upon the bold practice of the French surgeons in the treatment of these affections, the author just quoted says, "it is worthy of our praise and imitation;" and, continues he, "the timidity which, until very lately, almost excluded the use of the actual cautery in this country, has been one cause, and that a very prevalent one, of failure in the treatment of some of these cases; but it is not so easy to account for the still more culpable dread, which has, in so many instances, prevented any attempt from being made to extirpate the disease; a degree of pusillanimity, which is at once an opprobrium on the profession and a fatal injustice to the sufferers, who, thus abandoned to the unrestrained progress of the disease, are left to perish by a

lingering and most painful process, without even an attempt being hazarded for their relief."

The foregoing comparison, instituted by Mr. Bell, between the practice of the French and English surgeons in the treatment of tumors of the maxillary sinus, is certainly correct. It is due to truth to say, that the bold practice of the former has been fully and successfully emulated by American surgeons. Dr. A. H. Stevens, Professor of Surgery in the University of New York, in 1823, in a case of fungous tumor, attached by a broad base to the lower part of the antrum, removed a large portion of the lower and anterior parts of the upper jaw. The patient recovered and is said to be living at the present time, 1844.* In 1841, Dr. J. C. Warren, of Boston, for a case of cephalomatous tumor of this cavity, removed the superior maxillary bone. This operation was also successful.† The same operation was performed soon after, and for the removal of a tumor of the antrum with success, by Dr. R. D. Mussey, of Cincinnati, Ohio,‡ and Dr. Fare, of Columbia, South Carolina, has performed the operation twice with success.

Thus it is perceived, that the disease under consideration not unfrequently calls for one of the most formidable operations in surgery, and that by it, many unfortunate sufferers have been snatched from the very jaws of death. The application of the cautery, notwithstanding, often becomes necessary to prevent a reproduction of the excrescence, and there are many cases in which it cannot be repressed by even this means. The result of the most thorough and best directed treatment depends on the state of the constitutional health and the nature of the disease. In depraved habits and shattered constitutions, if the tumor is of a carcinomatous character, a cure need never be expected.

The hemorrhage, during the operation for the removal of tumors of the antrum, is sometimes so profuse as to require very prompt and active means to arrest it. It may, generally, however, be controlled by the employment of compresses and

* Appendix to *Cooper's Surgical Dictionary*, p. 30.
† *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal* for 1842.
‡ *Western Lancet* for 1842.

suitable styptics; should these fail, the actual cautery must be had recourse to.

The history of the following cases taken promiscuously from various works, will perhaps furnish a more correct idea of the methods of treatment most proper to be pursued, than any description which could otherwise be given. The first three cases are taken from the Memoirs de l'Academie Royale de Chirurgie.*

CASE 18th. A man about thirty-five years of age, had a fleshy tumor, the size of a large pea, situated in a space formed by the decay of the first and second superior molars of the left side. This tumor caused a dull pain; it was excised, and the actual cautery applied to arrest the bleeding and destroy the remaining portions of the excrescence. It re-appeared, and three months after was double the size of the former, and impeded mastication. The two decayed teeth were loose, and the others were painful; and fetid matter escaped through the nose and mouth.

After the extraction of the two decayed teeth, M. Dubertrand, discovering that the tumor had its seat in the antrum, seized it with polypi forceps and brought the whole of it away. After the extraction of the tumor the opening through the alveolus was large enough to admit the little finger. M. Dubertrand next destroyed such portions of the alveoli and maxillary bone as were decayed. After the extirpation of the tumor, he found it necessary to introduce a plug of cotton into the antrum, to arrest the hemorrhage that followed the operation.

The secretions of the maxillary sinus ceased to exhale an unpleasant odor; in three days they became healthy, and in less than one month, the patient was restored to health, and the opening from the mouth into this cavity was closed with firm granulations.

The tumor just described was of the simplest kind, but had it not been completely eradicated, it would, doubtless, have soon re-appeared.

CASE 19th. Acoluthus reports the case of a woman thirty

* Tome 13, obs. 1, 5 and 7th, pp. 372, 387 and 424.

years of age, who, in 1693, came to Pologne in Silesia, in search of aid for a peculiar disease of the antrum, under which she was laboring. Some time after the extraction of a tooth from the left side of the upper jaw, a small tumor appeared in its alveolus, and made such progress, that in two years, it attained the size of a double fist. It occupied nearly the whole cavity of the mouth, and distended the jaw to such a degree that it was feared it would rupture it. The lower jaw was depressed, the lips could not be made to meet, and the tumor increased so fast, that in a few weeks the woman's life was despaired of—she being threatened with death from suffocation, hunger and thirst. Under these circumstances, Acoluthus determined to attempt a cure.

The tumor was very hard, and occupied the greatest part of the palatine arch; the upper teeth of the left side were in its centre. The operation was commenced by enlarging the mouth, beginning at the commissure of the lips, and passing it transversely through the cheek. This enabled Acoluthus to attack the exterior of the tumor with a curved bistoury. The excrescence was as hard as cartilage, and scarcely yielded to cutting instruments applied by a strong hand. He, however, succeeded in bringing three or four teeth, together with a portion of the superior maxillary bone. The operation as yet had extended only to the exterior half of the tumor; the other which filled the palatine fossa, he says, it was impossible to bring away. The removal of that was effected only by piece-meal, and at different times. The operation was long, laborious and very painful. The actual cautery was applied to the bleeding vessels and fungous flesh. The appearance of the patient, a few days after the operation, was such as to inspire hope for a favorable termination of the disease. The actual cautery was applied several times, and finally there were no indications of a re-appearance of the excrescence, except at the point where it had first originated. Some portions of bone were afterwards found to be carious, and the removal of these was followed by a prompt and speedy cure.

This operation is alluded to by M. Velpeau, as embracing the removal of the entire superior maxillary bone, but from the description here given of it, it would appear that only a

small portion of the bone was taken away. The alveolar ridge and anterior parietes of the sinus was all that was removed. The history of the case, however, imperfect as it is, and the result of its treatment, proves that the resources of art are adequate to the cure of many of the most formidable of the affections of this cavity, if they are not delayed too long.

Another case, taken from the memoirs of the Royal Academy of Surgery, is described by the author in his dissertation on the diseases of this cavity; for the particulars of which, the reader is referred to page 131, of that work.

Case 20th. A young lady of Picardy having been exposed to the changes of weather for three years, in attending to business which required of her to be much on horseback, experienced, at the end of the fist year, a chilly sensation in her left cheek; this increased, and her cheek became swollen, and her molar teeth of the affected side loosened and two dropped out.

The swelling of her cheek increased, and she was affected with lancinating pains in that side of her face; her breath became offensive, and she lost two more teeth. Becoming alarmed, she went to Rouen to obtain medical advice. Receiving no satisfaction, she went to Paris, and applied, November 20th, 1740, to M. Croissant de Garengeot, who found her face greatly disfigured. Her mouth, he says, was on the right side, the left side of her nose much elevated, the left cheek very large, and the upper lip of the same size greatly thickened. Bluish flesh of the size of an olive occupied the alveoli of the teeth which had dropped out, the left side of the roof of the palate was thrown inwards and resembled the exterior projection of the cheek. The anterior wall of the antrum and left nasal bone, had become softened, and the whole cavity was filled with fungous flesh.

M. Garengeot commenced the operation by seizing the bluish excrescence, which had appeared through the alveoli, with a hook and cutting it away; and he says he incised transversely, every day, from within the mouth, the buccinator muscle, and brought away part of it as well as the flesh which so much augmented the size of the jaw.

The hemorrhage was so abundant that it was impossible to

proceed further with the operation. The excrescence was rapidly reproduced after each operation; these excisions were repeated seven or eight times in six weeks, and the hemorrhage, each time, was very great. The seat of the disease was in the anterior of the sinus. The fungous flesh contained in this cavity was removed, as well also as some osseous projections.

The excrescence continuing to be reproduced, the patient no longer refused to have the actual cautery applied; the use of which was resorted to, twice a day, for eight days. The success, says M. Garengeot, which followed this treatment, was incredible. The flesh soon took on a healthy consistence, the palatine arch returned about two-thirds to its natural situation, and the bad odor of the mouth gradually disappeared.

The application of the cautery was continued, once a day, for three weeks, and the patient did nothing more than to use a slightly stimulating and astringent gargle. On the 20th of March she returned home cured.

It is very probable that had the operation in the case just described been thorough, there would have been no return of the disease, for it is evident from the description which M. Garengeot gives of the operation, that the seat of the affection was not reached until it had been repeated seven or eight times; and then, we think it very likely, not until he had recourse to the actual cautery.

The utility of the actual cautery, not only for the purpose of thoroughly destroying every remaining vestige of fungous tumors of the antrum maxillare after their removal, but also for the suppression of hemorrhage, would seem to be fully established by the result of the treatment of cases nineteen and twenty.

The employment of arsenical preparations has, in some instances, been found highly advantageous in repressing the growth of fungous excrescences. The following case is cited by Mr. Thomas Bell as an example.*

Case 21st. "James Woodly was admitted into Guy's Hospital, September 4th, 1821, for a fungous exostosis, which

* *Anat. Phys. and Diseases of the Teeth*, p. 283.

arose from the antrum maxillare, and made its way through the palate. After his admission he had the fungous removed two or three times, and a variety of caustic applications were afterwards made use of; notwithstanding which, the tumor reappeared. At length Sir A. Cooper, after having made an incision from the corner of the mouth outwards through the cheek, removed the tumor from a greater depth than had previously been effected. After this operation, the wound in the cheek readily healed, and the following strong solution of arsenic was daily applied to the part from whence the tumor had been removed.

℞ Arsenic, oxyd. alb. ʒ vi.
Potass. subcarb. q. s.
Aq. distillat. M. ft. solutio.

"The solution required to be diluted in the first instance on account of its occasioning him a good deal of pain, in a few days, however, he used it of the strength mentioned in the formula. It was applied regularly every afternoon, after which he did not take any food until the following day. At the time of its application he had a piece of oiled silk, of a horse-shoe shape, passed into the mouth, its sides being turned up to prevent the solution escaping into the mouth; his head then hanging down over a basin, a piece of sponge moderately saturated with the solution was applied to the disease upon the oiled silk, pressed against the part; such of the solution as was then pressed out, passed along the channel of the oiled silk into the basin over which the head was hanging, and the saliva escaped behind the oiled silk into the same utensil. He kept the sponge in this situation until it gave him considerable pain, when it was removed and the mouth carefully washed. He suffered great pain in his mouth during the period of cure; but the arsenic did not produce any other unpleasant symptoms. This application was continued for a few weeks, at the end of which time he was completely cured; a cavity being left in the site of the tumor, which, however, gradually became covered by a continuation of the membrane which naturally lines the palate.'

The maxillary sinus is sometimes occupied by fungous tumors, originating in the alveoli of the molar teeth, or from the roots of these teeth. The following is a case which came under the observation of the author in February, 1846:

Case 22d. Miss L——, of Baltimore, æt. twenty-two, of a bilious temperament, called to consult us in relation to the condition of her teeth, on the 10th February, 1846. On examination, the crowns of the first and second superior molars of the left side were found badly decayed, and which, from the destruction of the greater portion of their sockets, were much loosened. The gums on either side were much swollen, spongy, and had a livid appearance; from between the edges of which, whenever the teeth were touched, thin, fetid matter, occasionally streaked with blood and pus, was discharged. She complained of a sensation of fulness, and occasionally of slight pain in her left cheek. The affected molars had been troublesome and sensitive to the touch for nearly three years, resulting, as she supposed, from a severe cold, as she suffered about that time, for near two weeks, the most violent pain in these teeth. She had several times, subsequently, been urged by her friends to have these teeth removed, but the fear of pain had prevented her from submitting to the operation.

Fearing that the diseased condition of the sockets of the affected molars had extended to the antrum maxillare, and confident that the parts immediately involved could not be restored to health so long as they remained in the mouth, we advised her to have them removed. After much persuasion, she consented to the operation.

The gums being separated from the teeth, we at once grasped the first molar with a pair of forceps, and proceeded to remove it. It readily yielded to a very slight force, but the moment this was applied, a gush of blood issued from the left nostril, and the complete removal of the tooth being prevented by a fungous excrescence which had originated at the extremity of its roots, and passed up into the antrum, the true nature of the affection at once suggested itself to our mind. The tooth, after being partially removed, was liberated by cutting the excrescence.

The hemorrhage for a few minutes was profuse, but after it had partially subsided, the socket was examined, when an opening was discovered through the floor of the antrum, large enough to admit the end of the little finger—the fungous peduncle, after its separation from the roots of the tooth, having contracted, had passed up into this cavity. This was now partially explored by means of a small probe, and found to be nearly filled with a soft spongy tumor, which bled profusely from the slightest injury. Finding a portion of the floor of the antrum, back of the tooth which had just been extracted, in a necrosed condition, and partially exfoliated, we extracted the second molar, which also had a fungous excrescence upon the extremity of its roots, that passed up through an opening from its socket into this cavity, and then removed the dead bone. This occupied the space between the two teeth.

An opening was now formed through the floor of the antrum, of about an inch in length, and more than a quarter of an inch in width, which enabled us to explore the interior of the cavity more thoroughly than we had previously been able to do. The tumor, which at first had completely filled it, had, from the hemorrhage caused by the extraction of the two teeth, become so reduced in size, that we were enabled to pass a small curved probe between it and the walls of the sinus, and by this means, to satisfy ourself that it had no connection with any part of this cavity. There was no danger, therefore, to be apprehended of a reproduction of the excrescence after its removal, which was easily effected, by piece-meal, with a small sharp-pointed hook, and a narrow bladed knife.

The opening through the alveolar border, into the antrum, soon closed, and the parts, in a short time, were restored to a healthy condition.

What would have been the result, in this case, had the teeth been permitted to remain, is not difficult to conjecture. The pressure of the excrescence, as it augmented in size, would have caused a necrosis of the entire floor, if not of the walls of the antrum, which would ultimately have become detached and displaced, carrying it and the diseased teeth with them. But, in the meantime, other parts might have become involved in a worse and more unmanageable form of disease.

In the treatment of tumors of this cavity, it sometimes becomes necessary for its complete eradication to remove the entire superior maxillary bone, and the following is the method pursued by Mr. Liston in the performance of this formidable operation: The extent of the disease being accurately ascertained, the points of separation are decided upon. Supposing the malar bone involved, the instruments employed *are a pair of straight tooth forceps, a full sized bistoury, copper spatula, powerful scissors, artery forceps,* a small *saw,* and *needles* for *interrupted* and *twisted suture.*

Thus armed, he commences the operation by extracting a central incisor tooth, either on the affected side or the opposite, as the size of the tumor may require. The point of the bistoury is then carried from the external angular process of the frontal bone down to the corner of the mouth through the cheek; the incision being guided by placing the fore and middle fingers in the cavity of the mouth. A second incision is made along the zygoma, and connects with the first. The knife is now pushed through the integument to the nasal process of the superior maxilla, detaching the ala from the bone, and cutting the lip through in the middle line.

This flap is dissected up and held by an assistant; the soft parts, as the inferior oblique muscle, infra-orbitar nerve, and attached to the floor of the orbit are cut, and its contents supported by a narrow bent spatula.

The section of the bone comes next in order. This is done with the cutting forceps, dividing in succession the junction of the malar bone, the zygomatic arch, the nasal process of the superior maxilla, and then with strong scissors, after having notched the alveolar process, one blade is passed in the mouth, and the other in the nostril of the affected side, the palatine arch is cut through. At this stage the carotid artery, if necessary, is compressed. The tumor is now turned down from its bed, and the remaining attachments divided, preserving, if possible, the palatine plate of the palate bone with the velum palati. The branches of the internal maxillary being torn and stretched, may not require a ligature. The patient being now placed in a reclining posture, the cavity sponged out and examined, and all

vessels, whether bleeding or not, that are seen, secured with a ligature, and the ends cut off. The space occupied by the tumor and removed structures are filled with lint, and the edges of the wound united with either the interrupted or twisted suture. No dressing is applied—plasters, bandages, &c., being thought useless. In twenty-four hours some of the sutures are withdrawn, and plasters then applied; in forty-eight hours they are all removed, the wound at this time having adhered.

Other methods have been proposed for excision of the upper jaw. Ferguson begins his incision from the margin of the upper lip, carries it to the nostril, and along the ala to within half an inch of the inner canthus; a second incision extends from the angle of the mouth to the zygomatic process, and a third at right angles to this last, extending from the external angular process of the frontal bone towards the neck of the jaw. Gensoul lets fall a vertical incision from near the inner canthus, and divides the upper lip entirely through over the canine tooth; a transverse cut beginning and level with the nostril, extends from this last to the fore part of the lobe of the ear. A third incision commencing about half an inch to the outer side of the external canthus, is carried down almost vertically, and touching the outer extremity of the transverse incision. Two flaps are thus formed, the one superior and dissected upwards, the other inferior and turned downwards.

Professor Warren and M. Velpeau use a single incision similar in shape, and extending from the external canthus, at its temporal margin, to the angle of the mouth. From this incision a flap is dissected upwards from the surface of the bone, the ala detached from the nose, and the whole turned upwards towards the forehead. From the same incision another flap is turned downwards sufficiently to expose the malar and maxillary bones.

The use of the saw and cutting forceps, and, if necessary, the chisel and mallet, together with the securing of the arteries by ligature, and the actual cautery—in a word, the dressing of the wound in all these different methods, is nearly the same as that already described.*

* Vide Liston's Practical Surgery; Ferguson's Practical Surgery; Pancoast's Operative Surgery; Chelius' System of Surgery, and Druit's Surgeon's Vade Mecum.

There are a number of highly interesting cases of sarcomatous, carcinomatous, and other tumors of the maxillary sinus, in Jourdain's Treatise on the Surgical Diseases of the Mouth; some of which we had intended to introduce into this treatise, but apprehending that it would extend it to too great a length we have concluded to omit them. A number of equally interesting cases reported in various other works,* are for the same reason excluded.

In conclusion, we would remark, that Professor Pattison proposed in 1820, for the dispersion of fungous tumors of the maxillary sinus, tying the carotid artery. He was induced to recommend this method of treatment, from the consideration, that the "capability of action of a part, is proportioned to its vascularity," and that thus by cutting off the circulation of blood to it, the morbid growth would slough and be thrown off. He says this practice has been successful where it has been adopted in all the cases that had come to his knowledge.†

*Vide *Journal de Chirurgie*, tom. i; *Parisian Chirurgical Journal*, tom. i; *Œuvres Chir. de Desault*, par Bichat, tom. ii; *New London Med. Jour.* vol. i; *Eichorn. Diss. de Polypis in Antro Highmori. Trans. of a Society for the Improvement of Med. and Chir. Knowledge. Recuil Periodique de la Soc. de Med.* tom. ii; No. 9. *Edinburg Med. and Chir. Jour.* Nos. 83 and 84; *Traite des Maladies Chirurgicales*, tom. iv; *Traite des Maladies des Fosses Nazales; New York Jour. of Med. and Surgery; Western Lancet; Cooper's Surgical Dictionary; Benj. Bell's Surgery*, vol. iv, &c. &c.

†Vide Appendix of *Surgical Anatomy of the Head and Neck*, pp. 477–8.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

EXOSTOSIS OF THE OSSEOUS PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THE osseous walls of the maxillary sinus sometimes become the seat of bony tumors—a disease designated by medical writers by the name of exostosis. This, however, is not an affection peculiar to the bony parietes of this cavity; all of the osseous structures of the body are liable to be attacked by it.

Exostosis, like many other diseases, presents several varieties. It is divided, by some writers, into true and false, the one consisting of a tumor composed wholly of bone, or nearly so, and the other, of a tumor composed both of ossific matter and fungous flesh, or of a mere thickening of the periosteal, tissue.* Sir Astley Cooper divides exostosis into periosteal, medullary, cartilaginous and fungous. The first consists of a deposition of bony matter on "the external surface of a bone and the internal surface of its periosteum," and to both of which it firmly adheres. The second consists of "a similar formation, originating in the medullary membrane and cancellated structure of the bone;" this description of exostosis never attacks the walls of the maxillary sinus. By cartilaginous exostosis he means, "that which is preceded by the formation of cartilage, which forms the nidus for the ossific deposit." Fungous exostosis, he describes to be a tumor not so firm in its consistence as cartilage, but harder than fungous flesh, having interspersed through its substances spicula of bone, of a malignant character, and dependent upon some peculiar constitutional diathesis, and action of vessels. This species of exostosis differs but little, if at all, from osteo-sarcoma.

* Vide *Dictionnaire des Sciences Medicales*, t. xvi, p. 218.

Exostoses differ as much in shape as they do in structure. They sometimes rise abruptly from the surface of bones by a narrow and circumscribed base, projecting in large irregularly or spherically shaped masses; at other times, they rise very gradually, covering a larger surface of the affected bone, but less massy and with limits less perfectly defined. An exostosis has been known to occupy the whole extent of the surface of a bone. "The whole external surface of one of the bones of the skull was found occupied by an exostosis, while the cerebral surface of the same bone was in a natural state."* Both sides and the whole thickness of bones are occasionally affected by this disease. This is what Sir Astley Cooper calls periosteal exostosis.

This disease is said to attack some bones more frequently than others. Those of the skull, the lower jaw, sternum, humerus, radius ulna, femur, tibia and bones of the carpus are said to be the most subject to it. It also very frequently attacks the upper jaw, and none of the bones of the body, in fact, are exempt from it.

The texture of exostosis is sometimes spongy and cellular, at other times, very dense. Dr. E. Carmichael, a distinguished surgeon and physician, formerly of Fredericksburg, Virginia, described to the writer, a few years since, an exostosis of the superior maxillary, which had, a short time before, fallen under his observation, larger than a hen's egg, and as solid as ivory. Exostoses of the roots of the teeth are always hard, and instances are sometimes met with of osseous tumors upon other bones possessed of nearly an equal degree of solidity. Exostoses of this description grow less rapidly than those which are more cellular; but they sometimes acquire a very large size. It is not, however, uncommon for such, after having attained a greater or less size, to cease to grow, and "remain stationary" through life, without giving rise to any very serious or unpleasant consequences.

Exostoses sometimes attain an enormous size, and especially upon cylindrical bones; very large ones, too, are frequently

*Vide last American edition of *Cooper's Surgical Dictionary*, p. 362.

met with upon the maxillæ. The largest one, we believe, of the maxillary sinus, of which medical history furnishes any account, is exhibited upon a specimen of morbid anatomy, presented in 1767, by M. Beaupreau, to the French Academy. A description and drawing of this tumor is contained in the Memoirs of the Royal Academy of Surgery, but we have no account of the history of its formation, nor of the symptoms that resulted from it. The tumor occupies the whole of the right maxillary sinus, and several of the neighboring bones are involved in it. It is very large near its base and projects from the lower part of the orbit, forward and downward, six inches. Its largest circumference is said to be one foot. The upper part of the maxillary bone, says Bordenave, projects on the side of the orbit, and straightens the cavity; the *os unguis* is included in the mass of the tumor, and is represented as being nearly effaced. The nasal bones of the left side are displaced, and the right nostril entirely closed up, and the exostosis projects so much on the left side as to be nearly underneath the malar bone. The inferior part of the maxillary bone, says our author, is so extended near its base, that it inclines obliquely to the left, and the pterygoid apophyses of this side are larger than those of the other. The malar bone is described as being involved in the upper and external part of the exostosis, which extends to the left maxillary bone.

Exteriorly, says Bordenave, the tumor had a smooth and polished appearance, its upper part was very hard; inferiorly its substance had become thinner, was wanting in some places, and the interior of the exostosis was exposed. The substance of the bone was spongy and serous, and in appearance, not unlike pumice stone. The walls were thick, and measured in some places one inch.*

From this brief description, taken from one given of it by Bordenave, some idea may be formed of the dimensions and appearance of this enormous and most remarkable exostosis.

A case of exostosis of each antrum, is described by Sir Astley Cooper, both of which forced themselves up into the orbits,

* Vide *Memoires de l'Academie Royale de Chirurgie*, t. xiii, obs. xii, p. 412.

and pushed the eyes from their sockets. One made its way into the brain, and caused the death of the patient.*

Mr. Thomas Bell, does not believe in the occurrence of "true exostosis upon the bony parietes" of this cavity, but too many examples have presented themselves, to leave any room for doubt upon the subject. Although none may ever have fallen under his own immediate observation, there are many well authenticated cases on record—the details of some of which we shall presently give. Apart from these, we think it would be difficult to assign any sound reasons for supposing that the osseous walls of this cavity should be more exempt from the disease than other bones of the body.

SYMPTOMS.

The attacks of exostosis of the walls of the maxillary sinus, are generally so insidious, that the presence of the disease is not, for a long time, even suspected. When it results from venereal vice, Boyer says, it is preceded by acute pain, extending at first to almost every part of the affected bone, but which afterwards confines itself to the affected portion. When it is occasioned by scrofula, the same writer tells us, it is attended by a duller and less severe pain; the symptoms of exostosis resulting from causes purely local, such, for example, as a blow, are very similar.† These signs are common to the disease wherever it may be situated, and when it is seated in the maxillary sinus, they do not distinguish it from many of the other affections that occur here; for they are often produced by them, as well as by exostosis. Furthermore, the disease, not unfrequently gives rise to other symptoms which are attendant upon several of the other affections of this cavity, so that previously to the distension of its walls, it may be confounded with inflammation of the lining membrane, or sarcomatous or other tumors. After it has filled the sinus, or very considerably thickened its exterior walls, it will cause them to offer a firmer resistance to pressure, than will any of the other diseases of this cavity.

* *Surgical Essays*, part i, p. 157.

† *Traite des Maladies Chirurgicales*, t. iii, p. 545.

When, therefore, they have become distended, if they are firm and unyielding to pressure, the presence of exostosis may be inferred.

CAUSES.

There is a difference of opinion among writers on the diseases of bones, with regard to the causes of exostosis. Certain constitutional diseases, such as "scrofula and lues venerea," are thought by some to give rise to the affection. That the last of these diseases is favorable to its production, is, we believe, admitted by all; but Sir Astley Cooper declares that no evidence has yet been adduced to prove that the former is ever concerned in its production. Others impute the disease to local irritation produced by contusions, fractures, &c. It is probably dependent upon both local and constitutional causes, and that neither, independently of the other, is capable of producing it.

TREATMENT.

A variety of plans of treatment have been recommended for this disease, and Bordenave assures us it may be cured, if suitable remedies are applied before it has acquired much solidity. Assuming that it sometimes results from constitutional causes, he directs that the treatment should be commenced by the employment of such means as are indicated by the nature of the vice with which the patient may be affected. If a venereal vice be present, the use of mercurial medicines are recommended. The author last mentioned, says, he has known it to be successfully treated with mercury. Topical applications, such as fomentations and cataplasms, have also been found serviceable. Boyer advises poultices of linseed meal, and a decoction of the "leaves of henbane, and nightshade." Iodine and mercury have been employed, but not, we believe, with any decided advantage. Sir Astley Cooper thinks the best internal remedy is "oxymuriate of quicksilver, together with the compound decoction of sarsaparilla." We believe, with Boyer, that a dis-

persion of an exostosis can never be effected. Its progress may, perhaps be partially arrested, but we do not believe, as many do, that it is ever taken up by the absorbents. It is not advisable to remove an exostosis unless it continues to augment and is likely to become dangerous, or is productive of serious inconvenience.

When, therefore, the remedies which have been mentioned, after having been thoroughly tried, prove unsuccessful, the tumor should be fully exposed; first, by the dissection of the gum and other soft parts from the exterior walls of the sinus, and, secondly, by the perforation of this cavity with a trephine, or such other instrument as can be most conveniently employed. This part of the operation, though simple, should be conducted with care. If the tumor is large and attached by a very broad base, its removal will sometimes prove more difficult, yet by means of suitably constructed saws, scissors, knives, &c., it may, in most instances, be easily effected. An external wound through the cheek should always, if possible, be avoided.

The method of operating, however, will be best understood by a description of that pursued in the two following cases. The first was treated by Dr. B. A. Rodrigues, dentist, of Charleston, S. C., and reported by him for the American Journal of Medical Sciences.

Case 24th. "On the 14th of August, 1837, Charity, a servant woman of Mrs. Miller, called on me to ascertain whether I could afford her any relief in her wretched condition. She had been laboring under incessant and agonizing pain in the antrum highmorianum of the right side, which she regarded as the consequence of the impaired condition of the teeth. On this supposition, she had several of them extracted, without any appreciable abatement of her sufferings. Yet, deluded with the belief that some one of the remaining teeth was the secret agent of all she suffered, she persisted in having more extracted. Still, the evil continued, the suffering was unabated, the cause undetected; and to add to the depression of her hopes, and the aggravation of her ills, a purulent discharge oozed from the empty sockets of the affected side. She again had recourse to medical advice, hoping that this phasis of her malady might

lead to some indications that would relieve her; at least, that it might reveal its hidden sources, its condition, and its prospects of being remediable. And here, for the first time, was it suggested that the antrum was in an unsound state.

"It was at this moment, under these circumstances, that she applied to me to perform an operation, which her medical adviser declared to be indispensable. At first, I imagined it to be an abscess from the cavity from which the pus was discharged, from the strange sensations experienced, and from the greater frequency of this disease over others peculiar to this part, I inserted a trocar into the socket of the second molar, and instead of the gush of matter I had expected, the passage of the instrument was intercepted by a hard, dense, impregnable substance. The existence of an exostosis now forced itself on me. To make assurance doubly sure, I had access to several of my medical friends, among whom was Dr. Geddings. On examination of the part, the consideration of the symptoms, the obstinate nature of the disease, they concurred with me in opinion, that an exostosis was present, and that the sole indication of relief was its extirpation. Accordingly, on the 18th of August, the above gentlemen, with several others of the profession, were present when I proceeded to perform the operation. With a common scalpel, I dissected away the gum from the canine tooth to the last molar, raised the flap which it made from the alveolar process, and with a trephine opened into the cavity. Success was easier than had been anticipated, in consequence of the carious condition of the process, which was so general on the affected side, as to reach from the second incisor anteriorly to the pterygoid process posteriorly. In the loss of substance, the external parietes of the cavity shared, so that the bony tumor which filled up and occupied it, could be readily reached. The trephine was applied, the cavity enlarged, and the exostosis removed. It measured in circumference three inches, was light, and cancellated on its surface, but dense and more resisting in its more internal layers. There was little or no hemorrhage to delay the operation, or any application to arrest it. After removing every spiculum of diseased bone, and cleansing out the cavity, the flap was replaced, and to nature

was entrusted the cure. Granulations sprouted up in full luxuriance, and in the short period of four weeks, the woman was in the enjoyment of excellent health."*

That the foregoing was a case of true exostosis of the maxillary sinus, does not admit of doubt, and it is to be regretted, that more of the early history of the disease, and the circumstances connected with its development, are not known. They might, perhaps, lead to a correct explanation of the causes that gave rise to it. The presence of local irritants in the immediate vicinity of this cavity, is proven by the fact that the patient's teeth were in a diseased condition, but to what extent they may have contributed to the production of the exostosis, it is impossible to determine, since we are not furnished with any information concerning the state of her general health. She may have been affected with some constitutional vice, or peculiar habit of body, whereby the osseous structures of the system were predisposed to affections of this description, requiring only the presence of some local irritant to induce the morbid action necessary to their development. That such predisposition did exist, and that such action was excited by the irritation produced by the diseased teeth, we believe, would appear, if all the circumstances connected with the previous history of the case could be ascertained.

When the connection of the exostosis is such as to prevent its complete removal, the application of the actual cautery to any remaining portions, will prove serviceable, by causing such parts to be exfoliated. The history of a case is related by M. Bordenave, treated by M. Runge, in which a portion of the exostosis was left, and which ultimately caused the death of the patient. This would probably have been prevented had an exfoliation of the remaining diseased portions of bone been brought about by an application of the actual cautery.

Case 25th.† The subject of this case was a man 33 years of age. He had been for a long time afflicted with a tumor in the region of the right antrum. It depressed the palatine pro-

* *American Journal of Medical Science.*

† Vide *Memoires de l'Academie Royale de Chirurgie*, t. xiii, obs. xi, p. 408.

cess of the maxillary bone and the palate bone of the affected side in such a manner as to restrict the movements of the tongue, while on the other side it pressed against the floor of the orbit so as to cause a protrusion of the eye. Anteriorly, it had elevated a portion of the maxillary and malar bones which covered it, and extended to the most dependent part of the nose, whilst posteriorly it extended as far as the posterior mouth. Its effects upon the lateral parts were nearly the same as those which it had exerted upon the others.

After having exposed the anterior parietes of the antrum, M. David saw from below upwards to the uppermost part of the projection of the tumor, which was of a spherical shape, and nearly three inches in diameter, and after having elevated that part, he discovered the tumor, which was white and hard; although spongy, and bearing a strong resemblance to soft agaric, it occupied the maxillary sinus. It had changed the form of this cavity and increased its dimensions to an extraordinary degree. The greater portion of this hard osseous substance, although firmly adhering to almost every part of its bony envelop, was, by a persevering employment of various means, such as the crotchet, elevator, surgeon's rasp, &c., detached by M. David. In doing this, he inflicted some injury upon the floor of the orbit, and to some portions which still adhered to the palatine process of the maxillary bone, he applied the actual cautery, which was repeated several times.

An opening was formed by this operation four and a half inches deep, and from right to left, of more than three inches, but a cure was, notwithstanding, speedily effected by it, which, had the use of the cautery been omitted, would not perhaps have been successful.

Exostosis of the maxillary sinus often gives rise to other morbid conditions of this cavity, the remedial indications of which should be properly attended to, as should also those of any constitutional affection, vice, or habit of body that the patient may be laboring under at the time.

When the exostosis is not complicated with any other disease of the cavity, the restorative energies of nature, after its removal, will generally be all that is required to complete the cure.

CHAPTER NINTH.

WOUNDS OF THE OSSEOUS PARIETES OF THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

The walls of the maxillary sinus are sometimes fractured by blows and pierced by sharp-pointed instruments. Fauchard mentions a case, in which a canine tooth had been driven up into it.* This is an accident that rarely happens. The instance here alluded to, is, we believe, the only one on record; and as might be supposed, it was followed by severe pain, and ultimately gave rise to a tumor upon the cheek near the nose, and three fistulous openings, from which fetid matter was discharged. The sinus having been opened, and the tooth taken from it, a cure was at once effected.

It often happens when the walls of the sinus are fractured from a blow or other mechanical violence, that portions of the bone and foreign bodies are driven into the cavity, and which, remaining there, become a constant source of irritation to its lining membrane, and, not unfrequently, a hidden cause of other and more malignant forms of disease. Bordenave describes the case of a French officer, who had the walls of one of his maxillary sinuses fractured by a fragment of a bomb. Dressings were applied to the wound, but it did not heal, and upon examination sometime after by M. Allouel, several pieces of bone and a splint which nearly filled the cavity were found. These were removed, but a cure was not immediately effected; a fistulous opening still remained, and it was not until a long time after, when another splinter came away, that the external opening healed. The same writer mentions the case of a man who had a nail forced head foremost, by the discharge of a gun, into his

* *Le Chirurgien Dentiste*, tom. i, page 391.

right cheek and maxillary sinus. The opening became fistulous, and although the point of the nail was subsequently discharged, it was not until M. Faubert had removed the remaining part, that the fistula closed.

Wounds of the antrum are almost always complicated with fractures of its osseous parietes, so that the effects resulting from them are more to be dreaded than those which would be produced simply by the penetration of it with a sharp instrument.

TREATMENT.

The nature and extent of the injury inflicted, should determine the treatment most proper to be adopted for wounds of this cavity. Complicated as they in most instances are with the presence of extraneous substances, the removal of these constitutes the first, and not unfrequently, the only remedial indication. This should never be neglected. When any extraneous bodies, or portions of bone, have been forced into the sinus, they should first be all carefully removed. The external wound may next be dressed with adhesive slips so as to prevent the formation of an unsightly cicatrix. If constitutional symptoms supervene, they should be met with appropriate remedies.

The following interesting case of a wound of the maxillary sinus, inflicted with a dirk-knife, reported by R. S. Welden, student of medicine, and treated by W. H. Donne, M. D., of Louisville, Ky., is taken from the Western Journal of Medicine and Surgery.

Case 26th. "Schuti, a gardener, aged 42 years, a native of Germany, in a rencontre with an athletic man, on the 3d of May, 1840 was struck with a dirk-knife, which entered about an inch above the right superciliary arch, passed through the corresponding eyelid downwards and backwards, evacuating the humors of the eye, and penetrated the antrum. The globe of the eye was divided by a vertical incision, through which the aqueous humor escaped; the iris was extensively detached at the ciliary margin, and could be partially seen through the transparent cornea—its surface being somewhat obscured by small coagula. The hemorrhage was slight and easily con-

trolled by moderate pressure. The patient complained of intense pain in the temple and cheek of the wounded side, shooting deep into the orbit. Three points of interrupted suture were used to approximate the edges of the divided eye. Lint, saturated with laudanum and warm water, constituted the dressing.

"May 4th. Some tumefaction in the eyelid; pulse 110; tongue coated and dry; skin hot; patient had spent a very restless night. Ordered following medicine, tart. emetic, gr. i; sulph. magnesia, ʒ ss.; to be dissolved in one-half pint of water, and a table-spoonful to be taken every half-hour, until nausea is induced—after which the interval may be increased.

"May 5th. Bowels freely evacuated; pain less; skin moist; pulse 90 and soft. From this period until the wound healed—the space of three weeks—no constitutional symptoms of an untoward character occurred. The patient, however, contended that a portion of the knife-blade remained in the roof of his mouth. But, on the most careful examination, no foreign body could be detected.

"On the 10th of August, 1842, Mr. Schuti called and requested Dr. Donne to examine his mouth, stating that for six months past he had been annoyed by a rough, projecting substance, which some person had informed him was a piece of dead bone, but which he believed to be the point of the knife, that had been driven down into the bone by the violence of the blow. On looking into the mouth, a small black speck was discernible about one-half inch from the interval between the first and second molar teeth. The parts adjacent were somewhat tumefied and inflamed. Dr. Donne made several attempts to extract this body with a pair of common dissecting forceps, but found it immovably fixed in the substance of the bone. By dissecting around it with a bistoury, down to the palate process of the superior maxillary bone, he was enabled to get a firmer hold, and, with a pair of curved tooth-forceps, succeeded in removing a fragment of the blade, one and one-fourth inches in length, and three-fourths in width at the widest part; the extraction was not effected without considerable violence, and was attended with extreme suffering. The fragment came out with

an audible snap, which induced those present to suppose, at first, that it had been broken; but on inspecting its surfaces closely, they were found similarly oxydized, and, wanting the lustre which a recent fracture had presented. Upon probing the aperture through which the fragment had been extracted, no other piece could be detected. This opening would scarcely admit the curved probe which Dr. Donne passed into the antrum, in order to satisfy himself that the whole of the foreign body was removed. The next day there was a slight discharge from the aperture, though the patient has suffered very little pain since the operation."

The foregoing is certainly one of the most singular cases of which we have any account, and the most remarkable circumstance connected with it is, that no more injury should have resulted from the presence, for so long a time, in the maxillary sinus, of the portion of the blade of the knife that had been broken off. In the cases previously noticed, as reported by Bordenave, disease of the mucous membrane of the antrum, and the discharge of fetid sanies resulted from the presence of the foreign bodies in this cavity. The same effects were also produced in the case described by Fauchard, of the canine tooth which had been forced up into the antrum.

CHAPTER TENTH.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE MAXILLARY SINUS.

THAT foreign bodies are sometimes admitted into the maxillary sinus through wounds penetrating its exterior parietes, has already been shown, but that they should gain access to it in any other way, would seem almost impossible. The smallness and peculiar situation of the opening which communicates with it, is such, one would think as, would preclude the introduction of extraneous substances of any kind through it, yet they have been found here when they could not have gained admission in any other way. There are several well authenticated cases on record in which worms have been found in this cavity. The case mentioned by Bordenave in the Memoirs of the Royal Academy, of a diseased maxillary sinus, from which several worms were at different times discharged, does not prove that they obtained admission into it through the nasal opening, and thus, as some writers have conjectured, gave rise to the disease with which it was affected. In this case, a fistulous opening from the cavity, had existed for a long time previously to the discharge of the worms, and it is very probable that they introduced themselves through this opening. A cause sufficient to have produced the disease in the sinus had been operating for two years, immediately preceding its manifestation. The patient during the whole of this time was affected with pain in the superior teeth of the affected side.

Deschamps, says his colleague of la Charité Hospital, found a worm in the maxillary sinus of a soldier, whom he was dissecting, four inches long; and the same writer informs us that a similar example is furnished in the Journal of Medicine. The

particulars of a case which came under the observation of Mr. Heysham, physician of Carlisle, taken from a work entitled "Medical Commentaries," are contained in Cooper's Surgical Dictionary. The subject of this case was a strong woman, sixty years of age, who was in the habit of taking a great deal of snuff. She was affected for a number of years with severe pain in the region of the maxillary sinus, which "extended over one side of the head." She was never entirely free from this pain, but it was greater in cold than in warm weather, and for the purpose of obtaining relief she had been twice salivated, and had taken various anodyne medicines. The pain, however, instead of being mitigated by these means, became more severe. Her teeth on the affected side were all extracted, and as a last resort the maxillary sinus was perforated. This for several days did not give any relief. Injections of bark and "elixir of aloes," were thrown into it, and "on the fifth day a dead insect" of more than an inch in length, and as thick as a "common quill," was removed from this cavity.

Instances of the introduction of insects or foreign bodies of any description into the antrum, through the nasal opening, fortunately, are so exceedingly rare, that the Memoirs of Medicine do not furnish more than four or five well established examples.

The signs indicative of the presence of inseets or foreign bodies in the maxillary sinus, are so obscure, that the fact can only be ascertained by perforating the cavity and by examination of its interior. Some say that foreign bodies here cause an itching, crawling or tickling sensation in the substance of the cheek. This is an uncertain diagnosis, for such sensations are not unfrequent in the region of this cavity. That they sometimes cause great pain, is proven by the history of the case related by Mr. Heysham, the particulars of which we have just noticed.

The proper remedial indication for foreign bodies in the antrum, is, their removal. When insects are discovered here, injections of oil and tepid water are recommended. This constitutes all the treatment necessary to be employed in cases of this kind.

PART SIXTH.

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY.

PART SIXTH.

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY.

By mechanical dentistry is meant the art of constructing and applying *artificial teeth*, *artificial palates*, and *appliances for the correction of irregularity in the arrangement of the natural teeth*. But in treating upon this part of our subject, we shall, for the present, confine ourself to the first, or a description of the various methods of constructing and applying artificial teeth, reserving what we may have to say upon artificial obturators and palates for the seventh and last part of our work, and as the various appliances employed for the correction of irregularity of the teeth have already been described, it will not be necessary to refer to the subject again.

Before entering upon a description of the method of procedure in the construction of artificial substitutes for the natural teeth, and the manipulations connected therewith, we shall offer a few general remarks on the subject of such substitutes—the substances of which they are composed—the means employed for their retention in the mouth, and the surgical treatment required preparatory to their application.

CHAPTER FIRST.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

CONTRIBUTING as the teeth do to the beauty and pleasing expression of the countenance—to correct enunciation—and by the function of mastication which they assist in performing, to the health of the whole organism, it is not surprising that their loss should be considered a serious affliction, and that art should be invoked to replace such loss with artificial substitutes. So great, indeed, is the liability of the human teeth to decay, and so much neglected are the means of their preservation, that few persons reach even adult age, without losing one or more of these invaluable organs. But, happily for suffering humanity, they can now be replaced with artificial ones so closely resembling those planted in the jaws by the hand of nature, as to be readily mistaken for such, even by the most critical and practiced observer. Although there is a perfection in the works of nature that can never be equalled by art, artificial teeth can, nevertheless, be so constructed and applied, as to subserve, in the majority of cases, though not with the same convenience nor as perfectly the purposes of the natural organs.

The insertion of artificial teeth, is an operation which, though acknowledged to be of great importance and performed by every one having any pretensions to a knowledge of dentistry, is, unfortunately, but little understood by the majority of practitioners. By their improper application, the mouth may be irreparably injured. A single artificial tooth badly inserted, may cause the destruction of the two adjacent natural teeth, and, if the deficiency thus occasioned be unskillfully supplied, it may cause the loss of two more, and in this way all the teeth of the upper jaw, are, sometimes destroyed.

The utility of artificial teeth depends upon their being properly constructed, and correctly applied. As much skill and judgment are required for the practice of this, as for the practice of the other branches of the art. A knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of the mouth, and of its various pathological conditions, and therapeutical indications is as essential to the mechanical as it is to the operative dentist, and to correct information upon these subjects, should be superadded ability to execute with the nicest skill and most perfect accuracy, the various pieces of mechanism required in dental prosthesis.

There are difficulties connected with the insertion of artificial teeth which none but an experienced dentist has any idea of. Besides, those of properly constructing and applying them in such a manner, as that they may be easily removed and replaced by the patient, and, at the same time, be securely fixed in the mouth, and productive of no injury to the parts with which they are connected or associated, there are sometimes others equally difficult to overcome. For example: the loss of a tooth in one jaw, is generally followed by the gradual protrusion from its socket, of the one with which it antagonized in the other, so that if the loss of the former be replaced with a substitute of equal size, it will strike against the latter at each occlusion of the mouth, and prevent the other teeth from coming together. This tendency of the teeth in one jaw to protrude, is always in proportion to the number lost in the other; and if not soon counteracted by the replacement of the latter with artificial substitutes, it often gives rise to an obstacle to their proper application, which will require no little ingenuity and tact to overcome.

But, notwithstanding the triumphs of Mechanical Dentistry, and the high state of excellence to which it has arrived, there never was a time, when so much injury was inflicted, and suffering occasioned by artificial teeth, as at present, and resulting, too, from their bad construction and incorrect application. That such should be the case, when there are so many scientific and skillful practitioners in every city, and in many of the towns in the country, may seem strange, but the fact is nevertheless undeniable.

The information obtainable from works on mechanical dentistry, was, until recently, exceedingly limited; and it is surprising, that from the number who have written on the surgery of the teeth, this subject should have received so little attention. Fauchard, Bourdet, Angermann, Maury, Delabarre, Koecker, Lefoulon, Brown, and a few others, are all who have given it anything more than a passing notice; and the works of but few of these writers contain anything like explicit directions upon the subject. Delabarre's Mechanical Dentistry was, at the time of its publication, a work of much merit. The various methods adopted at that period, for the construction and application of artificial teeth, are accurately and minutely described in it—together with the advantages and disadvantages of each. But, however perfect the work may then have been, it does not furnish the information required upon the subject at the present day. And still more deficient in correct information are nearly all the other French works.

Among the English writers, Koecker is almost the only one, except Robinson, a more recent author, who has described correctly the principles upon which artificial teeth should be applied. His "Essay on Artificial Teeth, Obturators, and Palates," contains much useful and valuable information. It does not, however, contain a description of the various manipulations through which a dental substitute should pass, preparatory to its application; yet, to one having a knowledge of them, it is very serviceable. As the ability to properly execute a piece of dental mechanism, can only be acquired by a regular apprenticeship, Dr. K. perhaps thought that a more minute description than that which he has given, was unnecessary; but there are many practitioners, who are, in other respects competent, that have not enjoyed this advantage, or, at least, not in the mechanical department, and, consequently, it is to be regretted, that he has not entered more into detail upon the subject.

But most of the deficiencies that exist in the last named work, were supplied up to 1844, by Dr. Solyman Brown, in his series of papers on *mechanical dentistry*, published in the American Journal of Dental Science. These papers are illustrated with

numerous cuts, and constitute the best treatise upon the subject that had appeared up to the time of their publication. But numerous and important improvements have subsequently been made in this department of practice. These will all be described in their proper place.

CHAPTER SECOND.

SUBSTANCES EMPLOYED FOR ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

THERE are certain qualities, which it is highly important that artificial teeth should possess. They should be durable in their nature, and in their appearance resemble the natural organs, with which they have often to be associated.

The kinds of teeth employed, are:

1. Human teeth.
2. Teeth of neat cattle, sheep, &c.
3. Those carved from the ivory of the elephant's tusk, and the tooth of the hippopotamus.
4. Porcelain teeth.

HUMAN TEETH.

As far as it regards appearance, and in a dental substitute this is an important consideration, human teeth are preferable to any other, and when used for this purpose, they should be of the same class as those, the place of which, they are designed to supply. The crowns only are employed, and if well selected, and properly inserted, the artificial connection with the alveolar ridge cannot easily be detected.

The durability of these teeth when thus employed, depends on the density of their structure, the soundness of their enamel, and the condition of the mouth in which they are placed. If they are of a close texture, and have sound and perfect enamel, and are inserted in a healthy mouth, they will last from eight to twelve or a greater number of years. The difficulty, however, of procuring these teeth, is generally so great, it is seldom that such as we have just described, can be obtained,

and even if they could be, the mouth in four cases out of every five, in which artificial teeth are placed, is not in a healthy condition; its secretions are vitiated and of so corrosive a nature, that they often destroy them in less than four years. We have even known them to be destroyed by decay in two, and in one case in fifteen months.

A human tooth, fixed in the mouth by art, is more liable to decay than one of equal density having a vital connection with the general system, for the reason, that its osseous structure is more exposed to the action of deleterious chemical agents. But of all the animal substances employed for this purpose, human teeth are unquestionably the best. They are harder than other bone, more perfectly protected by enamel, and, consequently, more capable of resisting the action of the corrosive agents to which all artificial as well as natural teeth are exposed.

Many object to having these teeth placed in their mouth, under the belief that infectious diseases may be communicated by them. But there is no good foundation for such fear, for the purifying process to which they are previously submitted, precludes the possibility of the communication of disease through their agency. When the practice of transplanting teeth was in vogue, occurrences of this sort were not unfrequent, but since that has been discontinued, it has never happened. But, the prejudices of some against having human teeth placed in their mouths, are so strong, that it is impossible to overcome them.

The difficulty of procuring them, and the high price they command, have also induced many dentists to profit by the popular prejudice against them, and to employ other substances in their stead.

TEETH OF CATTLE.

Of the various kinds of bone employed for dental substitutes, the teeth of neat cattle, are, perhaps, after the human teeth, the best. By slightly altering their shape, they may be made to resemble very closely, the incisors of some persons, but a configuration similar to the cuspidati cannot be given to them;

and in the majority of cases they are too white and glossy to match very closely human teeth. The contrast, therefore, which they form with the natural organs should constitute, if they were in all other respects acceptable, an insuperable objection to their use. This has been too much disregarded, both by dentists and patients. Indeed, many of those who wish artificial teeth, believe they cannot have them too white or too brilliant.

There are other objections to the use of these teeth. In the first place, they are only covered anteriorly with enamel, and, in the second place, their bony structure is less dense than that of the human teeth, and consequently are more easily acted on by chemical agents. They are, therefore, less durable, seldom lasting more than from two to four years. Another objection to their use is, they can only be employed in very few cases, for their nerve cavities are so large, that by the time they are reduced to the size of the incisors, they become exposed, and by the time these fill up with ossific matter, their crowns are so much worn away that they are too short, except in cases where such teeth are required. It is seldom, therefore, that they can be used as substitutes for the natural teeth, except for the central incisors, and here, only in the fewest number of cases.

IVORY OF THE TUSKS OF THE ELEPHANT AND HIPPOPOTAMUS.

Artificial teeth made from the ivory of the tusk of the elephant and hippopotamus, has been sanctioned by usage from the earliest periods of the existence of this branch of the healing art; but we must not hence conclude that it has been approved by experience. On the contrary, of all the substances that have been used for this purpose, this is certainly the most objectionable.

The ivory of the elephant's tusk is decidedly more permeable than that obtained from the tooth of the hippopotamus. So readily does it absorb the buccal fluids that, in three or four hours after being placed in the mouth, it becomes completely penetrated with them. Consequently, it is not only liable to chemical changes, but also to become offensive, and when seve-

ral teeth, formed from it, are worn, they affect the breath to such a degree as to render it exceedingly offensive. On account of its softness, teeth are easily shaped from it, but not being covered with enamel, they soon become dark, and give to the mouth a most filthy and disgusting appearance. Fortunately, however, in the United States, elephant's ivory is rarely used for artificial teeth.

The ivory of the tusk of the hippopotamus is much firmer in its texture than that obtained from the elephant; and, as it is covered with a hard, thick enamel, teeth may be cut from it which will, at first, very much resemble the natural organs. There is, however, a peculiar *animation* about the natural teeth, which those made from this substance do not possess. These, moreover, soon change their color, assuming first a yellow, and then a dingy or bluish hue. They are also like those just mentioned, very liable to decay. We have in our possession a number of blocks of this sort, taken from the mouths of different individuals, some of which are nearly half destroyed.

But there is another objection to teeth made of this article, which, even were there no other, would be sufficient to condemn its use. It is, that they, like those formed from elephant's ivory, give to the air, returned from the lungs, an insufferably offensive odor, which cannot be corrected or prevented. They may be washed half a dozen times a day, and taken out and cleansed again at night, but it will still be grossly perceptible; and, although it may be much worse in some mouths than others, no one who wears teeth formed from this substance is entirely free from it.

To one, whose attention has never been directed to the subject, it would be astonishing to observe the effects produced upon the breath, from wearing two or three of these teeth.

PORCELAIN TEETH.

The manufacture of porcelain teeth did not for a long time promise to be of much advantage to dentistry. But by the ingenuity and indefatigable exertions of a few, they have, within

the last eighteen or twenty years, been brought to such perfection as almost to supersede every other kind of artificial teeth.

The French, with whom the invention of these teeth originated, encouraged their manufacture by favorable notices; and the rewards offered by some of the learned and scientific societies of Paris,* contributed much to bring it to perfection. They were still, however, deficient in so many particulars, that they received the approbation of very few of the profession, and then only in some special cases. It is principally to American dentists, that we are indebted for that, which the French so long labored in vain to accomplish.

A want of resemblance to the other teeth, in color, translucency, and animation, was the great objection urged against porcelain teeth; and, had not this been obviated, it would have constituted an insuperable objection to their use. Until recently, all that were manufactured had a dead opaque appearance, which rendered them easy of detection, when placed alongside of the natural teeth, and gave to the mouth a sickly aspect. But so great have been the improvements, in their manufacture, that few can now distinguish any marked difference between them and the natural organs.

Porcelain teeth are now procured at so low a price, that

* The Medical Society of Paris, regarding the manufacture of these teeth, as of great importance to the good of mankind, proposed the following questions in relation to it, and offered a medal to any one who would satisfactorily answer them.

1st Question—"Quels sont les motifs de préférence que le porcelaine mérite sur les différéntes matières animales, pour la construction des dents?

2d Question—"Quels sont les moyens les plus simples et les plus économiques à employer pour composer et colorer la pâte ainsi que l'émail, et pour les cuire?

3d Question—"Le précipité pourpre de Cassius (oxide d'or précipité par le muriate d'étain) est-il préférable à toute autre substance pour colorer les gencives au besoin? Quelle est la manière de l'employer?

4th Question—"Le platine jouit-il des prodriétés physiqus et chimiques qui le rendent plus apte que les autres métaux, à disposer les dents de manière à pouvoir être facilement réunies entre elles après la cussion?

5th Question—"Quels sont les moyens méchaniques, les plus advantageux pour monter les dents et les adjuster dans la bouche, sans nuire à la solidité des dents naturelles?"—*Traite de la Partie Mécanique de l'art du Chirurgien-Dentiste, par C. F. Delabarre*, pp. 111, 112.

no inducement on the score of economy is presented to the dentist to attempt their manufacture, and should any suppose that he can make such as will better suit the peculiarities of certain cases, than those who devote themselves exclusively to the business, we fear he will meet with sad disappointment. As it is not, therefore, essential that the practitioner of dentistry should understand the manner of manufacturing single porcelain teeth, we shall not attempt a description of the process, but refer the reader to the treatise of Audibran, Spooner, and an article on porcelain, in the author's Dictionary of Dental Science, where he will find the various articles that enter into their composition enumerated, and the method of their fabrication briefly described. Among those in the United States who are extensively engaged in the manufacture of porcelain teeth, we would mention the names of S. W. Stockton, J. Alcock, and Messrs. Jones, White & Co. The teeth manufactured by these gentlemen have been used and highly approved by nearly every dentist in America, and by many in Europe.

The advantages which mineral teeth possess over every sort of animal substance, are numerous. They can be more nicely fitted to the mouth, and worn with greater convenience. They do not absorb its secretions, and, consequently, when proper attention is paid to their cleanliness, they do not contaminate the breath, or become, in any way, offensive. Their color never changes. They are not acted on by the chemical agents found in the mouth, and hence the name *incorruptible*, which has been given them.

Such are the considerations that have induced the author to prefer them to every other kind of artificial teeth. The objections that have been urged to their use, are, a want of congeniality between them and the mouth; they being better conductors of caloric than bone, and, consequently, more liable to become cold when exposed to the air, &c.; but these have so little foundation, that, if compared with the advantages they confessedly possess, they must be regarded as unworthy of consideration.

CHAPTER THIRD.

DIFFERENT METHODS OF APPLYING ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

The methods of inserting artificial teeth are, first, on the roots of the natural teeth: Second, on a plate with clasps: Third, with spiral springs: Fourth, by atmospheric pressure. The peculiar advantages of each of these methods we shall now proceed to point out, and the cases in which they are particularly applicable.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH PLACED ON NATURAL ROOTS.

This method of inserting artificial teeth, was, until recently, on account of its simplicity, more extensively practiced than any other, and, under favorable circumstances, is, unquestionably, the best that can be adopted. If the roots on which they are placed are sound and healthy, and the back part of the jaws supplied with natural teeth, so as to prevent those with which the artificial antagonize from striking them too directly, they will subserve the purposes of the natural organs more perfectly, than any other description of dental substitute. When they are thus placed, they rest on a firm basis, and if they are properly fitted and secured, their connection with the natural roots cannot easily be detected. But, unfortunately, the incisors and cuspidati of the upper jaw, are the only teeth which it is proper to replace in this way.

The insertion of an artificial tooth on a diseased root, or on a root having a diseased socket, is always followed by injurious effects. The morbid action already existing in the root, or its socket, is aggravated by the operation, and often caused to extend to the contiguous parts, and, sometimes, even to the whole

mouth. Nor is it always proper to apply a tooth immediately after having prepared the root. If any irritation is produced by this preparatory process, the tooth should not be inserted until it has wholly subsided. The neglect of this precaution not unfrequently gives rise to inflammation of the alveolo-dental periosteum and alveolar abscess.

Although this method of inserting artificial teeth has received the sanction of the most eminent dental practitioners the world has ever produced, and is certainly the best that can be adopted for replacing the loss of the six upper front teeth; yet, on account of the facility with which the operation can be performed, it is often resorted to under the most unfavorable circumstances, and in consequence of which, has been, undeservedly, brought into discredit.

The efforts of the economy for the expulsion of the roots of the bicuspid and molar teeth, after the destruction of their lining membrane, are rarely exhibited in the case of roots of teeth occupying the anterior part of the mouth. This circumstance has led us to believe, that the roots of these teeth receive a greater amount of vitality from their investing membrane, than do the roots of those situated farther back in the mouth, and that, though the amount of living principle with which they are thus supplied, is inconsiderable, yet it is sufficient to prevent them from becoming manifestly obnoxious to their sockets.

The admission of this hypothesis can alone account for the fact to which we have just alluded, for it is well known that a dead root is always productive of injury to the surrounding parts, and that nature calls into action certain agents for its expulsion. Therefore, the insertion of a tooth on a completely dead root, is highly improper; but the fangs of the front teeth are rarely entirely deprived of vitality, and hence, after the destruction of the lining membrane, they often remain ten, fifteen, and sometimes twenty years, without very obviously affecting the adjacent parts.

The manner of preparing a root and inserting a tooth on it will hereafter be described.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH ATTACHED TO A PLATE WITH CLASPS.

This method of applying artificial teeth, is, perhaps, in favorble cases, with the exception of the one just noticed, the best that can be adopted; and, on account of its more extensive applicability, may be considered as more valuable even than that. By this means, the loss of a single tooth, or of several teeth, in either or both jaws, may be supplied. A plate may be so fitted to an aperture in the dental circle, and secured with clasps to the other teeth, as to afford a firm support to six, eight, ten, or even twelve artificial teeth.

Teeth applied in this way, when properly constructed, will last for several years, and sometimes during the life of the individual. But it is necessary to their durability, that they should be correctly arranged, accurately fitted, and substantially secured to the plate, and that the plate itself be properly adapted to the gums, and attached to teeth that are firmly fixed in their sockets.

Gold is the only metal that should be employed for making the plate and clasps; and this, for the former, should be from twenty to twenty-one carats fine, and from eighteen to nineteen for the latter. If gold of an inferior quality is used, it will be liable to be acted on by the secretions of the mouth. Platina would, perhaps, answer the purpose as well as gold; but there are so few in this country who understand working it, that the getting of it out into plate, and such other forms as are required, would be attended with much difficulty and inconvenience.

The plate should be thick enough to afford the necessary support to the teeth; but not so thick as to be clumsy or inconvenient from its weight. The clasps generally require to be about one-third or one-half thicker than the plate, and sometimes double its thickness. The gold used for this purpose, is sometimes prepared in the form of half round wire; but, in the majority of cases, it is far preferable that it should be flat, as such clasps afford a much firmer and more secure support to artificial teeth, than those which are half round; they also occasion less inconvenience to the patient, and are productive of less injury to the teeth to which they are attached.

Artificial teeth, inserted in this way, may be worn with the greatest comfort, and can be taken out and replaced, at the pleasure of the person wearing them; which, as it is important that they should be very frequently cleansed, in order to prevent the secretions of the mouth that get between the plate and gums, and the clasps and teeth to which they are attached, from becoming vitiated and irritating the soft parts, and corroding the teeth and tainting the breath, it should, on no account whatever, be neglected. Great care, therefore, should be taken to fit the clasps in such a manner as will admit of their being easily removed and replaced; and, also, that they may not exert any undue pressure upon the teeth to which they are fastened. If they press too hard upon them, they will excite inflammation in the alveolo-dental periosteum, and the gradual destruction of their sockets.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH WITH SPIRAL SPRINGS.

When attached to plates, the only difference between the method last noticed, of inserting artificial teeth, and the one now to be considered, consists in the manner of confining them in the mouth. The former is applicable in cases where there are other teeth in the mouth to which clasps may be applied—the latter is designed for confining whole sets, and parts of sets, where clasps, or any other means, cannot be conveniently employed for their retention in the mouth.

When plates are employed, the teeth are attached to them in the same manner as they are when clasps are used; but instead of being fastened in the mouth to the other teeth, they are kept in by means of spiral springs, one on each side of the artificial denture between it and the cheeks, passing from one piece to the other.

Spiral springs are often employed for confining only a lower set in the mouth, and sometimes for only parts of sets. When a number of teeth in the back part of the jaws are required, and there are no teeth in the mouth to which clasps can be applied, capable of affording sufficient support, resort to spiral springs sometimes becomes necessary. Various other kinds of springs

have been used, but none that have been tried, seem to answer the purpose as well as these. When they are of the right size, and attached in a proper manner, they afford a very sure and convenient support. They exert a constant pressure upon the artificial pieces, whether the mouth is opened or closed, They do not in the least interfere with the motions of the jaw, and, although they may at first seem awkward, a person will soon become so accustomed to them, as to be almost unconscious of their presence.

ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE, OR SUCTION METHOD OF APPLYING ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

The method last described, of confining artificial teeth in the mouth, is often inapplicable, inefficient and troublesome, especially for the upper jaw, and it is in such cases, more particularly, that the atmospheric pressure, or suction method, is valuable. It was, for a long time, thought to be applicable only for an entire upper set, because it was thought that a plate sufficiently large to afford the necessary amount of surface for the atmosphere to act upon, could not be furnished by a piece containing a smaller number of teeth. Experience, however, has proven this opinion to be incorrect. A single tooth may be mounted upon a plate presenting a surface large enough for the atmosphere to act upon for its retention in the mouth, but, when only a part of an upper set is required, it is often necessary to secure the piece by means of clasps. For a like reason, it was thought that the narrowness of the inferior alveolar ridge would preclude the application of a plate to it upon this principle, and in this opinion the author participated, but he has succeeded so perfectly in confining lower pieces by this means, that he rarely finds it necessary to employ spiral springs for double sets.

The principle on which this plan is founded, may be simply illustrated by taking two small blocks of smooth flat marble, and exhausting the air from between them—the pressure of the atmosphere on their external surfaces, will enable a person to raise the under block, by lifting the upper. In a similar manner, a gold plate, or any other substance, impervious to the at-

mosphere, and perfectly adapted to the gums, may be made to adhere to them.

The firmness of the adhesion of the plate, or base to which the teeth are attached to the gums, depends on the accuracy of its adaptation. If this is perfect, it will adhere with great tenacity, but if the plate is badly fitted, or becomes warped in soldering on the teeth, its retention will often be attended with difficulty. It is also important that the teeth should be so arranged and antagonized, that they shall strike those in the other jaw all the way around at the same instant. This is a matter that should never be overlooked, for if they meet on one side, before they come together on the other, the part of the plate or base not pressed on, will be detached, which, by admitting the air between it and the gums, will cause it to drop.

The application of artificial teeth on this principle, has been practiced for a long time;* but the plates formerly used were ivory instead of gold, and could seldom be fitted with sufficient accuracy to the mouth to exclude the air; so that, in fact, it could hardly be said that they were retained by its pressure. Unless fitted in the most perfect manner, the piece is constantly liable to drop, and the amount of substance which it is necessary to leave in it, renders it so awkward and clumsy, that a set of teeth mounted upon a base of this material can seldom be worn with much comfort or satisfaction; and, besides, ivory absorbs the fluids of the mouth so readily, that after being worn for a few weeks it becomes exceedingly offensive.

The writer has seen many sets of teeth fixed on plates, or rather on blocks of ivory, and many that were composed altogether of this substance; and, in one instance, prepared a set himself; but the objections above stated were so palpably manifest, that he determined never again to attempt the insertion of artificial teeth upon this principle. Having, however, been called upon in 1834, by a lady whom he highly esteemed,

* To the late Mr. James Gardette, of Philadelphia, belongs the honor and credit of the discovery of the practicability of applying artificial teeth upon this principle. To him, also, belongs the credit of being the first to employ clasps for the retention of dental substitutes.

for an upper set of teeth, and, finding that they could not be confined in the mouth by any other means, he was reluctantly induced, after having stated to her all the objections, to undertake their insertion. Instead, however, of using, as formerly, a plate carved from the ivory of the hippopotamus' tooth, he determined to employ one of gold. He, accordingly, made it so as to fit all the inequalities of the gums; and, after having fastened the teeth to it, in the manner to be hereafter described, placed it in the mouth; and after the air was exhausted from between it and the gums, he had the satisfaction to find that it adhered firmly, and that the teeth enabled the lady, (to use her own words,) to "speak and eat with perfect ease." These teeth have now been worn eighteen years and still continue to answer all the purposes that can be expected from artificial teeth under the most favorable circumstances.

The firmness with which teeth, applied upon this principle, can be made to adhere to the gums, and the facility with which they can be removed and replaced, renders them, in many respects, more desirable than those fixed in the mouth with clasps. But, unless judgment and proper skill are exercised in their preparation, a total failure may be expected, or at least, they will never be worn with satisfaction and advantage.

Many, in attempting to insert artificial teeth in this way, have failed of success, and, in consequence, have condemned the principle, when, in reality, the fault was attributable to some defect in the adaptation of the plate to the mouth. Many of the failures are owing to their premature insertion, for, however well the plate, upon which the teeth are fixed, may fit the gums at the time of its application, it will soon lose its adaptation, if it be applied previously to the completion of the changes in the alveolar ridge, that follow the removal of the natural teeth. When this happens, the air gets between the plate and gums, and the whole apparatus, as a natural consequence, drops; whereas, if a sufficient time is allowed for the completion of these changes, it will continue to adhere to the gums.

There are but few writers on this branch of dentistry who have even so much as adverted to this mode of applying arti-

ficial teeth. Drs. L. S. Parmly and Koecker, have each bestowed on it a passing notice. The former of these gentlemen, in alluding to the subject, thus remarks: "Where the teeth are mostly gone in both, or in either of the jaws, the method is, to form an artificial set, by first taking a mould of the risings and depressions of every point along the surface of the jaws, and then making a corresponding artificial socket for the whole. If this be accurately fitted, it will, in most cases, retain itself sufficiently firm, by its adhesion to the gums, for every purpose of speech and mastication."*

It has not, until recently, been thought expedient to apply parts of sets upon this principle, nor did we, for a long time, believe the pressure of the atmosphere and capillary attraction would give to a lower set, because of the narrowness of the alveolar ridge of the inferior maxillary, sufficient stability to render it at all serviceable, but experience has fully demonstrated its practicability.

Dr. Koecker tells us, that he has "been completely successful, in several instances, in the application of sets for the upper jaw in this manner; and says, they "should be made either with a gold plate mounted with natural or artificial teeth, or of one piece of hippopotamus' tooth."† Having already stated the objections that exist to the use of this substance, we cannot join with Dr. K. in its recommendation. At the time when we first substituted the gold plate for it, we had not seen his late work on artificial teeth, and, consequently, was not aware that metal had ever before been used.

Upon the ordinary method of applying artificial teeth on this principle, considerable improvement has been made since 1845. By constructing the plate with an air chamber or cavity, so that when the air is exhausted from between it and the parts against which it is placed, a vacuum is formed, it adheres with much greater tenacity to the gums than a base fitted simply to them.

Other methods have been resorted to for the retention of artificial teeth, but as they have long since been abandoned, a description of them is rendered unnecessary.

* *Practical Guide to the Management of the Teeth*, pp. 138–'9.
† *Koecker on Artificial Teeth*, p. 92.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

SURGICAL TREATMENT OF THE MOUTH PREPARATORY TO THE APPLICATION OF ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

THE condition of the mouth is not sufficiently regarded in the application of artificial teeth, and to the neglect of this, the evil effects that often result from their use, are frequently attributable. No artificial appliance, no matter how correct it may be in its construction and in the mode of its application, can be worn with impunity in a diseased mouth. Of this fact, every day's experience furnishes the most abundant proof. Yet there are men in the profession, so utterly regardless of their own reputation and the consequences to their patients, as to wholly disregard the condition of their mouths, and are in the constant habit of applying artificial teeth upon diseased roots and gums, before the curative process, after having extracted the natural teeth, is half completed.

The dentist, it is true, may not always be to blame for omitting to employ the means necessary for the restoration of the mouth to health. The fault, oftentimes, is with the patient. There are many, who, after being fully informed of the evil effects which must of necessity result from such injudicious practice, still insist on its adoption. But the dentist, in such cases, does wrong to yield his better informed judgment to the caprice or timidity of his patient, knowing, as he should, the lasting, pernicious consequences that must result from so doing. If he is not permitted to carry out such plan of treatment as may be necessary to put the mouth of his patient in a healthy condition, previously to the insertion of artificial teeth, he should refuse to render his services.

Dr. Koecker, in treating upon this subject says, "There is,

perhaps, not one case in a hundred, requiring artificial teeth, in which the other teeth are not more or less diseased, and the gums and alveoli, also, either primarily or secondarily, affected. The mechanical and chemical bearing of the artificial teeth upon such diseased structures, naturally becomes an additional powerful aggravating cause of disease, already in a sufficient state of excitement, even if the teeth are mechanically well contrived and inserted; if, however, they are not well constructed, and are inserted with undue means or force, or held by too great or undue pressure, or by ligatures or other pernicious means for their attachment, the morbid effects are still more aggravated, and a general state of inflammation in the gums and sockets, and particularly in the periosteum, very rapidly follows. The patient, moreover, finds it impossible to preserve the cleanliness of his mouth; and his natural teeth, as well as the artificial apparatus, in combination with the diseases of the structures, become a source of pain and trouble; and the whole mouth is rendered highly offensive and disgusting to the patient himself, as well as to others."*

The first thing, then, claiming the attention of the dentist, when applied to for artificial teeth, is to ascertain the condition of the gums and of such teeth as may be remaining in the mouth. If either or both are diseased, he should at once institute such treatment as the circumstances of the case may indicate, but as this has been described in a preceding place, it is only necessary now to refer the reader for directions upon the subject, to what is there said.

When artificial teeth are to be secured in the mouth in any other way than on roots, sufficient time should elapse, before their insertion, for the completion of all those changes that follow the treatment which is usually necessary in such cases; otherwise, instead of being worn with comfort, they will be a source of constant irritation. If they are applied too soon, they will lose their adaptation to the gums. We have now in our possession a number of parts of sets, which, from having been prematurely applied, and the changes in the shape of the

* Vide *Koecker's Essay on Artificial Teeth*, pp. 27, 28.

parts on which they rested, that followed their insertion, pressed so unequally on the gums, that their removal became absolutely necessary for the relief of the irritation and pain they occasioned. The persons from whose mouths they were taken assured us, that at the time of their insertion they fitted very accurately, and were worn for a short time without inconvenience.

It is often necessary to wait from eight to fifteen months after the removal of the natural teeth, for the completion of the changes which take place in the alveolar ridge after such operation. In the meantime, if necessary, the patient may be supplied with a temporary dental substitute.

CHAPTER FIFTH.

MANNER OF PREPARING A NATURAL ROOT AND INSERTING A PIVOT TOOTH.

PREVIOUSLY to the preparation of a natural root for the reception of an artificial tooth, the remaining teeth and gums, if diseased, should be restored to health. This done, such portion of the crown, as may not have been previously destroyed by caries, should be removed with an oval or half-round file.

The usual method of performing this part of the operation, consists in cutting the tooth about half off with a file, and then to cut it off with a pair of excising forceps. But these should not be applied until the tooth has been cut with a file on every side, nearly to the pulp cavity, and even then they should be used with great care to prevent jarring, or otherwise injuring the root. When too large a portion of the crown is broken off suddenly with the common excising forceps, the concussion is often so great as to excite inflammation in the socket of the tooth, and sometimes to shatter the root. The crown of a tooth may, however, be excised by means of a very ingeniously constructed instrument, invented by Dr. Elliot, of Montreal, without causing much concussion.

When excising forceps are used, they should be strong, so as not to spring under the pressure of the hand, and their cutting edges about an eighth of an inch wide. The instrument above alluded to, however, will be found preferable to forceps of this kind.

After the removal of the remaining portion of the crown, the nerve, if still alive, should be immediately destroyed, by introducing a silver or iron wire, or some other small sharp-pointed instrument, up to the extremity of the root, giving it, at the

same time, a quick rotary motion. It is important that the instrument used for this purpose, if it be of metal, should be soft and yielding, otherwise, any sudden motion of the head of the patient might break it off in the tooth.

Some recommend destroying the nerve by the introduction of a hot wire into the canal of the root, but as this is very liable to produce irritation in the surrounding tissues, the other method is preferable.

The nerve having been destroyed, the remainder of the operation will be unattended by pain. The root may now be filed off up to the gum and a little above its free edge, with a file such as we have before described.* The exposed extremity of the root after having been thus filed, will present a slightly arched appearance, corresponding with the festooned shape of the anterior margin of the gum.

After having completed the operation of filing, the natural canal in the root should be slightly enlarged with a burr-drill, or a broach prepared for the purpose. The canal thus formed in the root for the pivot should never exceed the sixteenth part of an inch or a line in diameter, and a quarter or three-eighths of an inch in length.

If from any peculiar constitutional susceptibility there is reason to apprehend inflammation of the alveolo-dental membrane, the tooth should not be immediately inserted. Dr. Fitch recommends filling the cavity in the root with lead, for the reason, as he believes, that this metal has a tendency to prevent the inflammation which might otherwise arise from the operation of filing. With regard to the value of this recommendation, we cannot speak with certainty, not having adopted the practice but in one or two cases. In subjects of a nervous temperament, or of a highly irritable habit of body, it may be well to recommend the use of saline aperients every other day, for a week, previously to preparing the root. Much advantage will sometimes be derived from the observance of this precaution.

But when the nerve in the root is extirpated in the manner as

*The file employod for this purpose should be of the best quality, and double or cross-cut and rather coarse than otherwise.

first described, it rarely happens that inflammation supervenes, but if a root is employed in which the lining membrane has been previously destroyed, it is almost certain to follow the operation, unless an outlet is made, by cutting a groove on the side of the pivot, or in some other way, for the escape of any matter which may form at the apex of the dead root. Dr. Maynard believes that the irritation in most cases, results from an accumulation of acrid matter in the upper part of the root, and that by filling the natural canal above the terminus of the pivot, up to the extremity of the root, it may generally be prevented. In healthy living roots from which, in the extirpation of the nerve, he has removed it throughout the whole extent of the canal, the author has frequently adopted this practice, and in most cases with success.

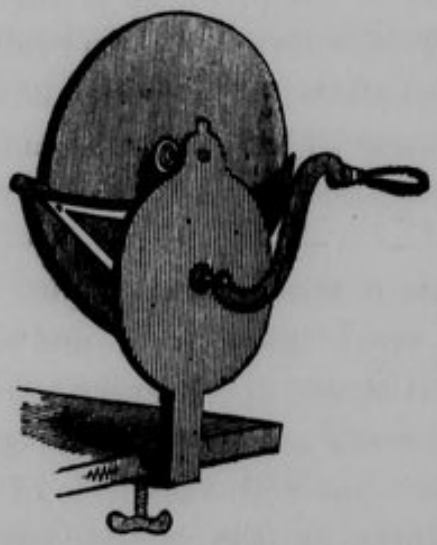
After having prepared the root in the manner as just described, an artificial crown of the right shape, color and size, should be accurately fitted to it. It should touch every part of the filed extremity of the root, and made to rest firmly upon it, and at the same time be in an exact line with the circle of the other teeth. If the tooth is only fitted to the anterior part of the root, an opening will be left between the two, posteriorly, which will serve as a lodgement for foreign matter, and the tooth will also have a less secure support. The new tooth should be so fitted, as not to press against the adjoining teeth, or strike its antagonist before the other teeth come together.

The canal in the root, and that in the artificial crown, should be directly opposite to each other. When the crown of a natural tooth is used, the proper place for the pivot is indicated by the pulp cavity, but when a porcelain tooth is employed, if great care has not been taken in its manufacture, the hole will not be in the centre.

If a porcelain tooth is used, one should be selected of the proper length, width and thickness. It should be as nearly as possible the shade of the adjoining teeth, and it would be preferable to have it even a little darker than any lighter, as in the former case the contrast would be less perceptible than in the latter. If it is necessary to make any change in the shape of the tooth, it may be readily effected on a small grindstone, or

emery or corundum wheel. A great number of grinding apparatuses have been invented for this purpose. Some are very simple in their construction, consisting of a single wheel turned with a crank, others are more complex in their arrangement: but the object may easily and readily be accomplished with any now in use. Those of the simpler construction are kept by most instrument makers, from whom they can be procured. The one represented in Fig. 126, and which may readily be secured to a table, will, perhaps, answer the purpose as well as any now in use. It occupies but little space, and, although moved by a crank, with the hand, will, if the wheel is a good one, cut away a tooth very rapidly. But for fitting porcelain teeth to plates, a wheel moved by a foot-lathe, in the manner to be hereafter described, will be found preferable to the one represented here; or, what we regard as still better, a small hand lathe, recently invented by Mr. Pratt, dentist, of Baltimore.* In the absence of a grinding wheel, a corundum slab may be used.

FIG. 126.



* The hand lathe above alluded to is thus described by Mr. Pratt: "The arbor upon which the grinding-stones are mounted has firmly placed upon it a heavy fly wheel, revolving between two columns, so constructed that any wearing of the centre or boxes may immediately be remedied by starting the set-screws attached to each. To one column is appended the crank and driving wheel, which, together with its pinion, is made with diagonal leaves, (technically, spiral gearing,) giving three revolutions of the fly wheel to one of the crank, and producing a sufficiently swift, strong and steady motion for any purpose to which such a machine can be applied in our profession.

"The base from which the columns spring, is made hollow beneath, for the reception of slips of thick woolen cloth or gum elastic, previously to securing it upon the table, for the purpose of breaking the vibration of sound, rendering the machine much stiller in motion than it would otherwise be. The rest for the hand is attached to the base, turning upon a centre, and held in position by a binding screw, nearer or farther from the running arbor, as the nature of the work may require.

"Its advantages over a common lathe are—that while its compactness and

When the crown of a natural tooth is employed, any change which it may be necessary to make in its shape, should be effected with a file. To obviate the difficulty sometimes experienced in making a perfect joint between the root and crown, Dr. E. Townsend, of Philadelphia, has recently invented two very excellent instruments, consisting of an oval and hollow file—the former fitting exactly into the latter. With the first he files the root, and with the other, the base or part of the crown to be fitted to it.

The artificial crown may be secured to the root by means of a pivot made of wood or metal, and when the latter is employed, gold or platina should be preferred, inasmuch as silver or any baser metal is liable to be oxydized by the fluids of the mouth. If wood is used, it should be of the best quality of well seasoned white hickory, as this possesses greater strength and elasticity than any other that can be procured in this country. After being reduced to near the size of the orifice of the cavity in the artificial tooth, it should be forced through a smooth hole, of the size of that, in a piece of ivory, bone, steel, or some other hard substance, for the purpose of compressing its fibres as closely together as possible. Thus prepared, one end should be forced into the cavity in the artificial crown, and the projecting part cut off about a quarter or three-eighths of an inch from the tooth, and this, after being reduced to the size of the orifice in the root, should be inserted in it; pressure should now be applied with the thumb and finger of the operator, to the tooth, and the pivot forced up into the canal of the root until the two come together. The part of the pivot going into the root, should never be so large as to require any other pressure than that which can be applied with the thumb and fore-finger, as the swelling of the wood will soon render it sufficiently tight to hold it firmly in its place. The practice of driving a pivot up with a hammer, as is often done, is a bad one. It is apt to cause inflammation and suppuration of the soft tissues about the apex of the root.

beauty render it a perfectly appropriate article for the operating room, it will do all, in the mechanical department, which can be done by an ordinary lathe—occupying only a few square inches of space."

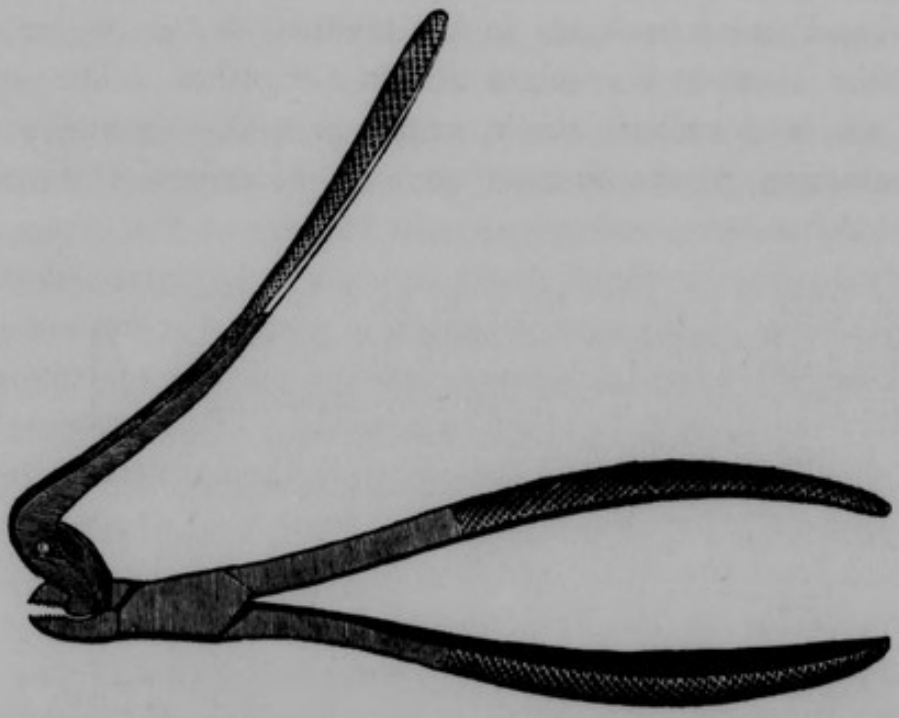
Fig. 127.



A porcelain tooth with a wood pivot, previously to insertion, presents the appearance represented in Fig. 127.

It sometimes becomes necessary to remove the artificial crown, and in doing this, the pivot often remains in the root. For the removal of this, Dr. W. H. Elliot has invented a pair of forceps which the author has found very valuable. It is shown in Fig. 128. With this instrument a pivot may be re-

Fig. 128.



moved from the root without jarring it in the least, or exerting any force upon it. The manner of applying and using the instrument will be readily understood by examining the above cut.

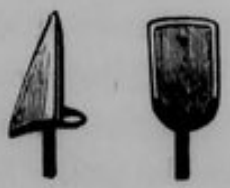
Fig. 129.



When a metallic pivot is used, the end going into the artificial crown may be fastened in either of the following ways, namely, first, by cutting a screw on it, either with a file, or by passing it through a screw plate; the cavity in the crown should next be filled with a wooden tube, and this, then, screwed into it. Second, by filling the cavity in the crown with pulverized borax, moistened with water, inserting the end of the pivot into it,

which should be large enough to fill the cavity, placing several small pieces of solder around it, and applying heat to the tooth by means of a blow-pipe and lamp until it fuses and flows down around it into the tooth. The solder, by adapting itself, when in a state of fusion, to the rough walls of the cavity in the crown of the tooth, will prevent the pivot from loosening or coming out. The latter method we consider preferable to the former. The projecting part of the pivot should be about half an inch in length, square and pointed. The cavity in the root of the tooth, which requires to be deeper for metallic than for a wood pivot, should be filled with wood, with a small hole through the centre. Into this, the end of the pivot should be introduced and forced up, in the manner as before described, until the tooth and root come firmly together. The appearance of a porcelain tooth, prepared with a metallic pivot, for insertion in the manner as just described, is shown in Fig. 129.

Fig. 130.



But when a metallic pivot is used, a plate-tooth is preferable to those which are made expressly for pivots. The manner of attaching a pivot to one of the former, is as follows: the root should be first prepared in the manner as before described; after which, an impression is taken in wax, from this, a plaster cast is made, and from the latter, metallic casts. This done, a piece of gold plate, large enough to cover the root should be swaged up between the metallic casts, a plate tooth of the proper size, shape, and color, is then fitted to the root, backed with gold, and soldered to the plate previously fitted to the root, and to the upper or convex surface of this last, and immediately beneath the canal in the root, a gold pivot is attached. But for the manner of conducting these various processes, the reader is referred to a succeeding chapter. A front and side view of a tooth thus prepared is shown in Fig. 130.

The author has occasionally been in the habit, for a number of years, of using a pivot, consisting of gold encased in a thin layer of wood. It is made in the following manner:

the gold is first made into wire of the proper size, and passed through a screw-plate. A hole is then drilled lengthwise into a piece of well seasoned hickory, as far as is required for the length of the pivot. Into this, the wire is screwed, and then cut off close up to the wood, which is reduced with a file or knife to the size of the orifice in the artificial crown, and firmly forced into it. The projecting part of the wood, to the termination of the wire, is trimmed down to the size of the tube in the root, and cut off, when the tooth is ready for insertion.

The wood prevents the gold from enlarging the cavity of the root, or that of the artificial tooth; and, at the same time, by the swelling of the wood, the pivot is firmly retained in both. The gold keeps the artificial tooth from being moved, as often happens, when a wood pivot alone is used, after it becomes saturated and softened with the juices of the mouth.

The gold employed for pivots should be eighteen carats fine, and the wood which we have found best suited to the purpose, is firm, close-grained, and well seasoned hickory. The cavity in the root should be cleansed from all extraneous matter, previously to the insertion of the tooth.

The artificial crown should be first fitted to the root with a temporary pivot of soft wood, to ascertain in what manner the permanent one should be shaped, so as to make the tooth fit, and also to avoid the necessity of removing it after it has been firmly inserted.

There is some diversity of opinion with regard to the kind of pivots that should be used. Some prefer pivots of wood, others metallic. Dr. Fitch, on this subject, observes: "The metallic pivots are far better than any other; and their only objection is, that they are apt to wear the tooth that is placed upon them, and the stump in which they are inserted; and so much so do they have this effect, that we are induced to use pivots of wood. This last has the advantage, if perfectly seasoned, of swelling in the stump, by the moisture which they abbsorb; and, in this way, become very firm. The advantages and disadvantages of the two kinds, are, perhaps, nearly balanced."

To the use of wood pivots, however, Dr. Koecker is decidedly opposed. "The pivots," says he, "should be made only of fine gold or platina; every other metal, such as brass, copper, silver, and even inferior gold, are highly objectionable, being more or less liable to corrode, and thus become injurious to the other teeth and the general health. There is, however, a practice which is still more improper, namely, the use of pivots made of wood: these pivots, after insertion, considerably expand, from the moisture of the mouth, and consequently remain perfectly firm in the roots for several years, which deceive not only the patient, but the dentist also, and induces them to consider the case very successful, until they at last find that the root is either split by the swelling of the pivot, or nearly destroyed by the rapid decay of the wood in the cavity, which by its chemical and mechanical irritation, is very apt to produce very serious inflammation, and other affections of the gums and sockets; and, not the least objection, the disagreeable breath, which must be an unavoidable concomitant of this practice."

Again, on the insertion of pivoted teeth, Dr. K. in another place, adds: "I have made it an universal rule to insert the tooth in such a manner, that the patient should be capable, after receiving the necessary instructions, to remove it, and replace it, at pleasure; for this purpose, I have found it best, and most effectual, to wind a little cotton round the pivot, which should be filed somewhat rough previous to its insertion into the fang."

The description here given of the effects arising from the use of a pivot of wood, is, perhaps, somewhat exaggerated. If it be inserted with proper care and judgment, it is no more liable to produce irritation and to effect the breath, than a gold one, wrapped with cotton, or one made of any other metal. The fact that wood pivots remain firmly in the root for several years, ought rather to be considered as a recommendation, than an objection; and with us, we must confess, it would go far towards determining our preference in their favor: for observation has taught us, that frequently removing and replacing a pivoted tooth, greatly tends to hasten the destruction of the root, and to effect the surrounding parts with disease. But a wood pivot should never be so large as to split the root by swelling.

Fig. 131.



As a general rule, not more than two roots should be prepared at one sitting, though sometimes four or even six may be prepared without incurring any risk. Fig. 131 represents the roots of the four upper incisors prepared for the reception of artificial teeth, and the teeth armed with wood pivots, ready to be inserted.

The walls of the canal in the root, when an artificial tooth is applied with any of the pivots which have as yet been described, is, of necessity, exposed to the action of the fluids of the mouth, and, consequently, are gradually softened and broken down, so that in the course of a few years, a larger pivot will be required, and this, too, after awhile, will have to be replaced with one still larger, until, finally, the root is destroyed. This destructive process proceeds more rapidly in some cases than in others, according as the root is hard or soft, and as the secretions of the mouth are in a healthy or vitiated condition.

But the action of the fluids of the mouth upon the walls of the canal may be prevented by introducing a hollow gold screw for the reception of the pivot. This effectually protects the walls of the canal in the root against the action of all corrosive agents, and a root thus prepared, will support an artificial crown more than twice as long as when prepared in the ordinary way. The operation, however, is more tedious and expensive, but it is by far more valuable. When a tooth is applied to a root thus prepared, a gold pivot of the exact size of the hollow of the screw should always be employed.

For the preparation of a root in this manner, the following is the method of procedure adopted by the author. First, the crown of the natural tooth is removed, the nerve, if alive, destroyed, and the canal in the root enlarged in the manner as before directed. Second, a screw tap slightly larger than the canal in the root is then introduced for the purpose of cutting a screw on its inner walls. Third, a screw should then be cut on a piece of hollow gold wire of the size of the screw tap, by passing it through a screw plate, but during this process the hollow

in the wire should be filled with another wire to prevent injury. This done, it should be screwed into the root about a quarter of an inch, the wire on the inside of it is then withdrawn, and the lower or protruding extremity filed off even with the root, with a very fine file. Fourth, an artificial tooth should now be selected of the right size, shape and color, and fitted to the root, after which a gold pivot is fixed in it in the manner as before directed, of the exact size of the hollow in the screw, and to the length of which, it should also correspond. Having proceeded thus far, the operation is completed by applying the tooth to the root. The pivot being of the size of the hollow in the cylindrical screw, but little pressure is required to force the one into the other.

The stability of a tooth, inserted in this manner, is as great, if the pivot be of the proper size, as one inserted by any of the other methods, and it may be removed, cleansed and replaced at the pleasure of the patient. When the walls of the canal are so much enlarged by decay as to have formed a large conical shaped cavity in the lower extremity of the root, the upper end of the hollow or cylindrical screw will only take effect. In this case the space between the lower extremity and the walls of the root, should be thoroughly filled with gold before the wire on the inside is withdrawn; after which, the tube and extruding portions of the gold should be filed off even with the root, and polished before the artificial crown is applied.

The hollow wire is made by wrapping a piece of thin gold plate round a wire of the size of that to be used for the pivots. It is then drawn through a hole in a wire-plate. The inner wire is then removed, and the seam in the other soldered. But hollow wire may be procured of the proper size at much less expense than it can be made by a dentist, and with this every practitioner should be supplied.

It sometimes happens that the natural root, instead of occupying a vertical position in the jaw, passed up obliquely, so that if the pivot connecting the artificial tooth to it be straight, the latter will either overlap one of the adjoining teeth or project fowards or point towards the interior of the mouth. To obviate this, an angle should be given to the pivot, immediately at the

point of junction between the tooth and the root. A little practice will enable the operator readily to overcome a difficulty of this description.

Again, it sometimes happens that cases are met with presenting a still more formidable difficulty; as for example, when the root is situated behind the circle of the other teeth, and to obviate which, a different kind of tooth, and an entirely different course of procedure is necessary. In a case of this sort, after having prepared the root in the manner as before described, an impression of the parts should be taken with wax, from which a plaster model may be obtained, and from this two metallic casts.

Fig. 132.



Fig. 133.



Between these last a gold plate extending just far enough back to cover the root and forward to form a line with the outer circle of the teeth. To the superior part of the plate covering the root, and directly beneath the cavity in it, a gold pivot, about three-eighths of an inch long, should be soldered, and to the anterior part of it a plate tooth of the right size, shape, and shade, should be attached. A piece of hollow wood or a hollow gold screw, as before described, is now introduced into the root, and into this the gold pivot is forced.

A side view of a porcelain tooth, mounted on a plate with a pivot, for insertion on the root, in the manner as here described, is represented in Fig. 132, and in Fig. 133 a back view is shown. It is a substitute, as will be perceived by the engraving, for the right superior central incisor.

A description of the manner of obtaining an impression with wax, plaster, &c., of procuring a plaster model, metallic casts, of fitting a plate and attaching teeth to it, and finishing a piece, will be hereafter described. It is not necessary, therefore, to dwell minutely upon this part of the subject here.

But before we proceed to do this, it will be proper to offer a few remarks on the manner of refining and alloying gold, making it into plate, springs and solder.

CHAPTER SIXTH.

MANNER OF REFINING AND ALLOYING GOLD—MAKING PLATE, CLASPS, SPRINGS, ETC., FOR ARTIFICIAL TEETH, AND SOLDER SUITABLE FOR UNITING THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF A PIECE OF DENTAL MECHANISM.

GOLD, as has already been stated, is the only metal which should be employed in connection with artificial teeth, because it is the only one capable of resisting the action of the secretions of the mouth that can be conveniently fused and worked into the various forms required for dental purposes. Platina, so far as it regards its indestructibility, or power of resisting the action of the buccal fluids, would answer as well as gold, but the heat required to fuse it, is greater than can be obtained by the means employed for melting gold, silver, and other metals; consequently, if it were used for purposes of this sort, it would be at a great sacrifice, as the scraps and filings which are removed in working it into the proper forms, would be of little value, or, at any rate, they could not readily be re-converted into plate. It would not, therefore, be a matter of much economy to substitute the use of this metal for that of gold, and so much more generally is the value of the latter known, than that of the former, that there are few who would not decidedly prefer it.

Although the manner of refining, alloying and manufacturing gold into plate, solder, &c. may not be regarded as coming properly within the province of the dental surgeon, yet, as he often experiences great difficulty in procuring them of the right quality, the author believes that a brief description of these several processes will not prove unacceptable to the members of the profession. Gold in its pure state, or when free from

alloy, is too soft and yielding to serve as a suitable basis or support for artificial teeth, and if it contains too much, or improper alloy, it will either be oxydized by the secretions of the mouth, or rendered too brittle for dental purposes. It is of the utmost importance that the gold used in connection with artificial teeth, should be of the proper fineness, and possessed of the requisite ductility. To secure these qualities, it is necessary to know the kind and quantity of metal with which it is alloyed before it is made into plate or into the forms necessary for the purposes for which it is to be employed, and when this cannot be previously ascertained, it should be first refined, and afterwards properly alloyed.

The scraps and filings removed in shaping and reducing to their proper size and form the various pieces of gold used in the construction of a piece of dental mechanism, are apt to become mixed with base metals, such as iron from the wearing of files, and, occasionally, small particles of lead, or tin. If these are melted with and permitted to remain in the gold, they will destroy its ductility, and render it unfit for a base or support to artificial teeth. The first of these metals is less objectionable than either of the others, and may always be removed, before the gold is melted, with a magnet, but to free it perfectly from the others, it will sometimes be necessary to refine it in the manner presently to be described. A two-thousandth part of tin or lead destroys the ductility of gold, and even the exposure of it to the fumes of red hot tin or lead, renders it exceedingly hard and brittle. Antimony, or bismuth, when mixed with gold, exerts upon it a very similar effect.

Platina, united with gold in certain proportions, while it has the effect of hardening the latter metal, does not materially affect its ductility, but the affinity of the alloy for oxygen is so great, that it is readily acted upon by nitric acid. But for this, the two metals combined in the proportion of fifteen parts of gold to one of platina, would form an exceedingly useful alloy for the construction of spiral springs. In consequence, however, of its great affinity for oxygen, it cannot be safely used for this purpose, as the septic (nitrous) acid of the mouth, would, in most cases, be likely, in a short time, to corrode and

destroy the springs. That this combination of these two metals should be thus easily acted on by an agent, which is incapable of acting on either, when in a separate state, may appear somewhat remarkable, but it is, nevertheless, true. The color of gold, even by the combination of this small quantity of platina with it, is rendered much whiter than when in its pure state.

In view, then, of the importance of having gold, which is to be placed in the mouth in connection with artificial teeth, of the right quality, every dentist, who has connected with his establishment a mechanical laboratory, should have the necessary fixtures for melting and working this metal into the various forms required for dental purposes. The principal of these are, a small furnace, crucibles, ingot moulds, an anvil and hammers, a rolling mill, a plate-guage, draw-plate and bench, for drawing wire, &c. These will hereafter be described.

MANNER OF REFINING GOLD.

It is not the intention of the author, in describing the manner of refining gold, to enter into a minute detail of the various methods employed for assaying this metal, but to point out, as briefly as possible, the manner of separating it from the several metals with which it is most frequently combined.

The method most frequently employed by assayers for separating gold from silver, is, to roll the alloy out into very thin plates, and put it in nitric acid, which will dissolve the most of the silver, and leave the gold behind in the form of a brown or black calx. This, by heating, will acquire the color of gold. But this method will not succeed, unless the quantity of silver be equal to two or three times that of gold. When the quantity of gold is greater than that of the silver, the most of the former may be separated from the latter, by solution in nitro-muriatic acid. But a perfect separation of the two metals will not be effected in either case. In the first, a residuum of silver will remain united with the undissolved gold, and in the second, a residuum of gold will remain with the undissolved silver. The remaining silver may be removed by melting the gold with twice its weight of sulphuret of antimony. This should be done with

a strong heat, in a covered crucible, and after the gold has been kept in a state of fusion for some thirty or forty minutes it should be poured out into an ingot mould, and separated from the antimony which will lie at the top. It may be necessary to melt it in this way two or three times, adding, each time, a less quantity of antimony; and, at the last melting, a current of air, from a pair of bellows, should be thrown upon the surface of the fused metal to evaporate the antimony, and after the vapor ceases to escape, a little refined nitrate of potassa and sub-borate of soda should be thrown into the crucible. It should then, in a few minutes, be poured out, and if it cracks in hammering or rolling, it should be again melted, and a little more nitrate of potassa and sub-borate of soda thrown on it.

There is another process for refining gold, which is employed in some of the mints, called that of cementation. It consists in first rolling the gold out into exceedingly thin plates, then placing it with a mixture of four parts of brick-dust, one of sulphate of iron, calcined to redness, and one of chloride of soda, in a crucible. A bed of this mixture, or cementing powder, should first be placed in the bottom of the crucible; the gold should then be put in and covered with it. The crucible should be covered with another crucible, the joints well luted with clay, and exposed to a heat gradually raised to a red heat, at which elevation of temperature, it should be kept from twenty to twenty-four hours. The crucible should now be removed from the fire, the top broken off, and after the latter has cooled, the gold may be separated from the cement and washed with hot water, or what is still better, boiled in hot water.*

The kind of furnace which should be employed for melting gold may be very simple, such, for example, as is used by gold and silversmiths, or the one invented by Dr. Somerby, in connection with his concentrated blow-pipe. An engraving and description of this will hereafter be given. But in the absence of either of these, a furnace similar to the one used by the Ceylonese goldsmiths may be substituted. This consists of a small low earthen pot, filled with chaff, or saw-dust, on which

*See *Chemistry of Arts*, vol. ii, pp. 545-6 and 550-1

a little charcoal fire may be made, which is excited with a small bamboo blow-pipe, about six inches long, the blast being directed through a short earthen pipe or nozzle, the end of which is placed at the bottom of the fire.* By this simple contrivance, a most intense heat, greater, it is said, than is required for melting gold or silver, may be obtained.

For separating copper, tin, lead, or zinc, from gold, the following simple method may be adopted; put the gold in a clean crucible covered with another crucible, having a small opening or hole through the top; lute the two together with clay, place them in a bed of charcoal in the furnace, ignite the coal gradually, afterwards increase the combustion by means of a current of air from a pair of bellows, such as are usually used in connection with small furnaces; after the gold has melted, throw in several small lumps of nitrate of potassa (salt-petre) and subborate of soda, (borax,) and keep it in a fused state for thirty or forty minutes, then separate the two crucibles, and pour the metal in an ingot mould of the proper size, previously warmed and well oiled. Most of the base metals will be dissipated during the process of fusion in the form of vapor, the lead escaping into the pores of the crucible. The bichloride of mercury (corrosive sublimate) is sometimes used instead of the nitrate of potassa, for the purpose of dissipating the base metals, and often with more certain and better results. If the gold cracks on being hammered or rolled, it should be melted again, and more nitrate of potassa, and sub-borate of soda thrown into it, and the inside of the crucible should be well rubbed with the latter, before the metal is put in. It is sometimes necessary to repeat this process several times, and if the gold still continues brittle, a little muriate of ammonia (sal ammoniac) should be thrown into the crucible when the gold is in a fused state, and after the vapor ceases to escape, the metal should be poured into an ingot mould, warmed and oiled as before directed. This last method of treatment will make the gold tough, and prevent it from cracking under the hammer, or while being rolled, if it be, from time to time, properly annealed.

* *Chemistry of the Arts*, vol. ii, p. 551.

To separate platina from gold, it is necessary to dissolve the alloy in a mixture of nitric and muriatic acids, and afterwards to pour in a solution of muriate of ammonia, which will cause the former metal to be precipitated. The acid should then be poured into another vessel, and the gold precipitated by pouring a solution of sulphate of iron into it.

By the foregoing methods of refining gold, sufficiently accurate results may be obtained for all useful practical purposes in mechanical dentistry, and as this is the object at which the author aims, he does not deem it necessary to go into a minute detail of the various complex processes employed for separating the several metals which are occasionally found combined with the one under consideration. The variation of an eighth or a quarter of a carat in the fineness of the gold employed in connection with artificial teeth, is not a matter of much consequence.*

* The method of procedure pursued by Dr. Elliot for refining gold is as follows: He says, "The following implements are necessary for this purpose: a small draught furnace, a quantity of fine hard-wood coal, a clean crucible, with a sheet-iron cover, a light crucible tongs, an ingot mould made of soapstone, a little nitrate of potassa, carbonate of potassa, borax and oil. The fire place of the furnace should be about ten inches in diameter, and eight or ten deep; this should be connected by means of a pipe with the chimney, so that a powerful draught may be made to pass through the coal. A blast furnace is objectionable, for the reason that the bellows burns out the coal immediately under the crucible, and it is therefore constantly dropping down, which is not the case with the draught furnace; besides, the draught furnace produces a more even fire, a quality equally indispensable.

"In preparing for a heat, the furnace should be filled about half full of coal, and after it is well ignited, it should be consolidated as much as practicable without choking the draught. The crucible containing the metal and a little borax may then be set on, and more coal placed around and over it, the door of the furnace closed, and the damper opened; it should remain in this way until the gold is perfectly fused, the coal may then be removed from over the crucible, and a bit of nitrate of potassa dropped in, in quantity equal to the size of a pea to every ounce of gold, and the crucible immediately covered with a plate of iron; more coal may then be placed over and around the crucible, and the gold kept in a fused state at a high temperature, uutil the scoria ceases to pass off, which it will do in the course of five or six minutes. The ingot mould having been previously warmed, may be placed in a convenient position for pouring, and filled about half full of lamp oil. The iron cover may be now thrown off quickly, the crucible seized with the tongs, and at the same instant another small bit of nitrate of potassa should be thrown into it, and the gold rapidly, but carefully, poured into the mould.

ALLOYING GOLD.

Gold, when in an unalloyed or pure state, as has been before stated, is too soft for a basis or support for artificial teeth, consequently, it has been found necessary to combine with it some other metal, in order to harden it. Silver and copper are the alloys most frequently employed. Many dentists prefer the former, for the reason, as they erroneously suppose, that it does not increase the liability of gold to oxydize as much as does the latter. But this opinion is neither sustained by facts nor experience. Gold, when alloyed with copper, unless reduced altogether too much for dental purposes, will resist the action of acids as effectually as when alloyed with silver, and the former renders it much harder than the latter. Besides, it renders the gold susceptible of a much higher and more beautiful finish. If, therefore, but one of these metals be used, copper may be regarded as preferable to silver, but the author is of the opinion, that two or three parts of the former, and one of the latter, con-

"The ingot always cools first at the edges, and shrinks away from the middle; on that account the mould should be a little concave on the sides, so that the shrinking will not reduce the ingot thinner in the centre than at the edges.

"Moulds of the best form will sometimes produce ingots of irregular thickness; such ingots should be brought to a uniform thickness under the hammer, using the common callipers as a guage; if this be neglected, the plate will be found imperfect at those points where the ingot was thinnest. The plate should be annealed occasionally during the process of hammering and rolling, and should be reduced about one number in thickness each time it passes between the rolls. If any lead, tin or zinc be mixed with the gold, the nitrate of potassa must be used in much larger quantities, and in that case, it is better to let the button cool in the bottom of the crucible; then break the crucible and melt it in a clean one for pouring, using borax and nitrate of potassa in very small quantities for the last melt.

"In case the subject of assay be in the form of filings or dust, a magnet should be passed through it so as to remove every particle of iron, and then, instead of melting it with borax, it should be melted first with *carbonate of potassa*, and afterwards with nitrate of potassa, in quantities proportioned to the necessities of the case as before directed; carbonate of potassa is the only flux that will bring all the small particles of metal into one mass; without it, a great portion of the gold will be found among the scoria, adhering to the sides of the crucible, in the form of small globules. The process of refining, answers equally as well for silver as gold."—*Am. Jour. Dent. Sci.*, vol. vii, pp. 71-2.

stitutes a better alloy for gold, which is to be used as a basis for artificial teeth, than either, separately from the other.

The gold employed in mechanical dentistry by most practitioners, is altogether too impure for the purpose, it being not more than from fifteen to seventeen carats fine, and sometimes it is reduced even to fourteen. When not above these standards of fineness, the buccal secretions not only corrode and discolor it but it imparts an exceedingly disagreeable taste to the mouth. The plate which is to serve as a basis for artificial teeth should never be reduced below twenty carats, and as that for the upper jaw does not require to be more than one-third or one-half as thick as that of the lower, the gold for the latter should be a little finer than that employed for the former, as it is necessary that it should be more malleable. The following standards of fineness may be regarded as the best that can be adopted for gold to be used in connection with artificial teeth.

Plate for the upper jaw, twenty carats; for the lower, twenty-one, and for clasps and wire for spiral springs, eighteen. In reducing perfectly pure, or twenty-four carat gold, to these standards, the following are the proper proportions of alloy to be employed:

1. For twenty carat gold: take 20 dwts. pure gold, 3 dwts. fine copper, and 1 dwt. silver.

2. For twenty-one carat gold: take 21 dwts. pure gold, 2 dwts. fine copper, and 1 dwt. silver.

3. For eighteen carat gold: take 18 dwts. pure gold, 5 dwts. best copper, and 1 dwt. silver.

The gold should be first melted in a clean crucible, in the manner as before described, and as soon as it has become thoroughly fused, the silver and then the copper should be thrown in, with two or three small lumps of sub-borate of soda. After keeping the whole in a fused state for some five or ten minutes, it may be poured into an ingot mould of the proper size, previously warmed and oiled as before directed. If the gold cracks during the process of hammering or rolling, it should again be melted, and a few small pieces of sub-borate of soda, with a little muriate of ammonia thrown in. In five or ten minutes, it may be again cast into an ingot.

When scraps and filings are to be converted into plate, they should first be refined in the manner as before described, and afterwards properly alloyed. This may also be necessary with all gold the quality or fineness of which is not known, but with national coins having a known fixed standard, this will not be necessary, unless they are below twenty-one or twenty carats. When they are above these standards of fineness, a sufficient amount of alloy may be added to reduce them to the one required. But as the standard of fineness of the various gold coins may not be generally known, the following table will not be unacceptable to the mechanical dentist.

FINENESS, AND VALUE PER PENNYWEIGHT, OF THE GOLD COINS OF DIFFERENT NATIONS.

	Fineness.		Value per dwt.	
	Carats.	32ds.	Dolls.	Cts.
UNITED STATES, N. A.				
Eagle, coined from 1792 to 1834,	22			94¾
" " 1834,	21	19		93
MEXICO.				
Doubloon,	20	24		89
ARGENTINE REPUBLIC, LA PLATA.				
Doubloons, coined from 1828 to 1830,	19	18		84
" " " 1830 to 1832,	20	27		89
GREAT BRITAIN.				
Guinea, coined from 1719 to 1760,	21	30		94¾
" " " 1760 to 1785,	21	31		94¾
Sovereign, " " 1817 to 1829,	21	31		94¾
" " " 1831 to 1839,	21	31		94¾
SPAIN.				
Doubloon, coined from 1733 to 1744,	21	15		92½
" " 1751,	21	25		93¾
" " 1772,	21	14		92
" " " 1786 to 1788,	20	28		89¾
" " " 1789 to 1821,	20	27		89
One-half Doubloon, " 1789 to 1808,	20	28		89½
" " " 1810 to 1824,	20	24		89
Pistoles, coined 1745,	21	26		94
" " " 1774 to 1782,	21	16		92½
Pistole, " " 1813 to 1822,	20	30		90
Escudo, " " 1809 to 1820,	21	13		87¾

	Fineness. Carats.	32ds.	Value per dwt. Dolls.	Cts.
FRANCE.				
Louis d'or, coined from 1726 to 1773,	21	17		92½
Double Louis d'or, 1744,	21	21		93½
" " " 1786 to 1792,	21	21		93½
Louis d'or, " 1786 to 1792,	21	18		93
Forty Francs,	21	18		93
Twenty Francs,	21	18		93
ITALY.				
Onzia of Sicily,	20	20		88
" " coined 1818,	23	28	1	03
20 Lire, " " 1813,	21	15		92½
Sequin of Milan,	23	24	1	02¾
Sequin of Rome,	23	29	1	03
Gold Scudo (Republic,)	20	00		86
10 Scudi, coined 1836,	21	19		93
RUSSIA.				
Imperial,	21	31		94¾
Double Rouble,	21	31		94¾
Imperial, coined from 1766 to 1781,	21	31		94¾
Ducat, " 1798,	23	08	1	00
AUSTRIA.				
Sovereign,	22	00		94¾
" coined from 1831 to 1838,	21	19		93
Ducat,	23	20	1	02
The Ducats of the German States are of the same quality of gold.				
PRUSSIA.				
Frederick d'or,	21	19		93
BADEN.				
Ten Guilders,	21	19		93
SAXONY.				
2 August d'or,	21	18		93
BELGIUM.				
Forty Francs,	21	15		92½
Sovereign,	22	00		94¾
BRUNSWICK.				
Ten Thalers, coined 1745,	21	18		93
" " " 1805 to 1838,	21	16		92½
HESSE.				
Ten Thalers,	21	11		92
DENMARK.				
2 Frederick d'or,	21	18		93
Current Ducat, 1783,	21	00		90½

	Fineness. Carats.	32ds.	Value per dwt. Dolls.	Cts.
NETHERLANDS.				
Ten Guilders,	21	19		93
SARDINIA.				
Pistoles,	21	23		93½
Forty Lire, coined from 1821 to 1831,	21	18		93
SWITZERLAND.				
Pistoles, coined 1795,	21	12		92
" " 1796,	21	19		93
" " from 1798 to 1800,	21	17		93
PORTUGAL.				
Moidore, coined 1689,	21	25		93¾
" " 1705,	22	09		96
" " from 1714 to 1826,	21	29		94¾
Johannese, " 1730,	21	28		94¾
The half Joes are of the same quality of gold.				
BOLIVIA.				
Doubloons,	20	28		89
COLUMBIA.				
Doubloons, coined from 1823 to 1836, Bogota mint,	20	28		89½
" " " 1823 to 1836, Papayan mint,	20	19		88
BRAZIL.				
Moidore,	21	31		94½
Half Joe,	21	31		94½
Doubloons of the Republic of Central America,	20	00		86
CHILI.				
Doubloons, coined from 1819 to 1834,	20	26		89
" " since 1835,	20	30		90
PERU.				
Doubloons, coined from 1826 to 1833, Lima mint,	20	26		98
" " " 1826 to 1833, Cuzco mint,	20	29		90

By referring to the foregoing table, the fineness of any gold coin may, at once, be ascertained. Most of them, as will be perceived, are a little above the standard of fineness required for gold to be used in connection with artificial teeth for the upper jaw, and many of them a little below that which should be employed with a dental substitute for the lower. Such as are too fine should be reduced to the proper standard by adding a

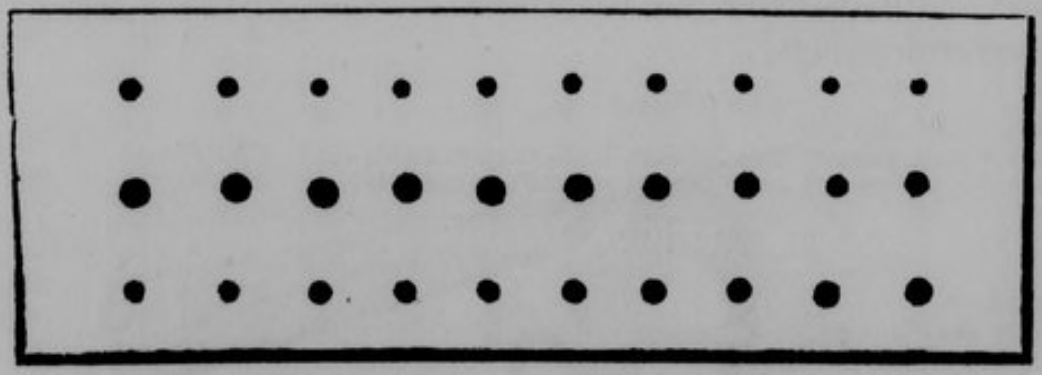
sufficient quantity of copper and silver alloy, and such as are below this standard, should be refined in the manner as before described.

When several coins of different degrees of fineness are to be melted at the same time, the mean carat and aggregate weight of the gold should be ascertained, and if it be above the standard required, a sufficient quantity of alloy should be added to reduce it, but if it be below it, it should be refined until it comes up to it.

MANNER OF MAKING SPRINGS FOR THE SUPPORT OF ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

The springs most frequently employed, at the present day, for confining artificial teeth in the mouth, are made by wind-

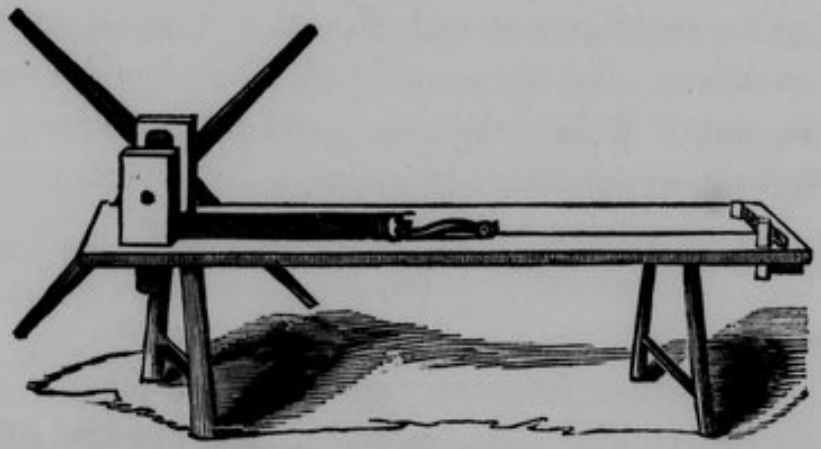
FIG. 134.



ing a small gold wire around a spindle, until a coil of sufficient length has been formed. The wire for this purpose, should never be thicker than is absolutely necessary to give to the springs the requisite degree of power, and is formed by forcing a piece of gold, alloyed as before directed, and previously forged into a small oblong shape, through a series of progressively diminishing holes in a steel plate, like the one represented in Fig. 134, until the requisite fineness is attained. For overcoming the adhesion of the particles of the metal, a machine called the draw-bench is required. See Fig. 135. The jaws of the pincers which hold the extremity of the wire, for pulling it through the successively diminishing holes in the plate, are cut on the inside like a file. While the plate is confined at one end of the bench, the pincers are attached to a band wound round a roller,

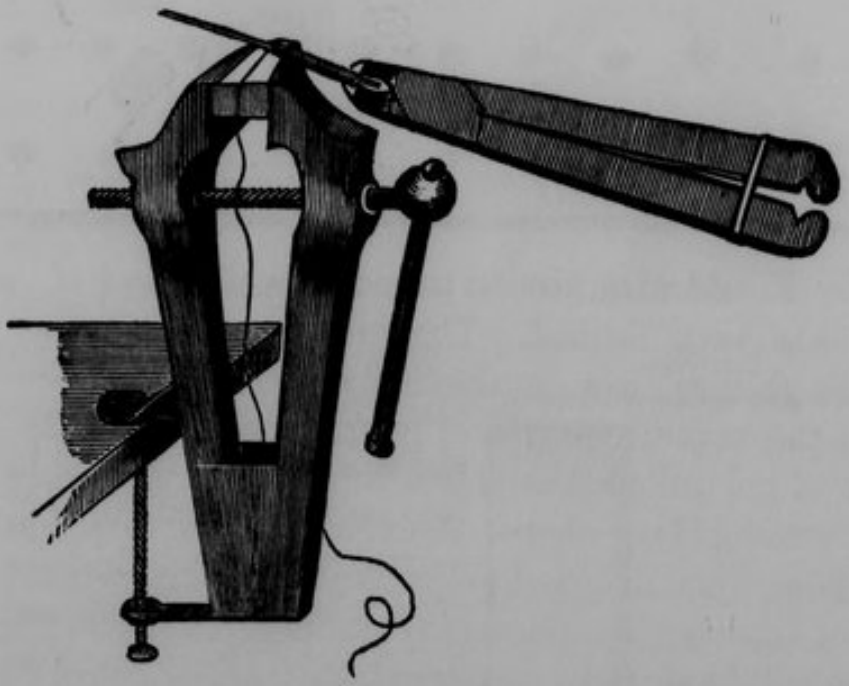
turned by a crank, at the other. After the wire has been grasped, the crank should be slowly turned, but the motion should be steady, for if it proceeds irregularly, it will cause inequali-

Fig. 135.



ties in the wire. To prevent the gold from becoming too hard and brittle, it should be frequently annealed between the successive drawings.

Fig. 136.



The simplest method of winding the wire into a spiral spring, is to secure it between two blocks of wood, held between the jaws of a small bench-vice. The upper end of the wire is then grasped in connection with a small spindle or steel-wire, the size of a small knitting-needle, six or eight inches in length, by

a hand-vice or sliding-tongs; the spindle resting on the blocks of wood is made to revolve by turning the hand-vice or sliding-tongs. By this movement the gold wire is wound firmly and closely round the steel rod or spindle. See Fig. 136.

But by means of the machine represented in Fig. 137, and invented by Dr. Howcott and Davidson, dentists, of Memphis, Tenn., the wire may be wound with much greater uniformity and accuracy. This is the most perfect contrivance ever employed for the purpose. It is simple in its construction, and the great superiority which it possesses over the other means

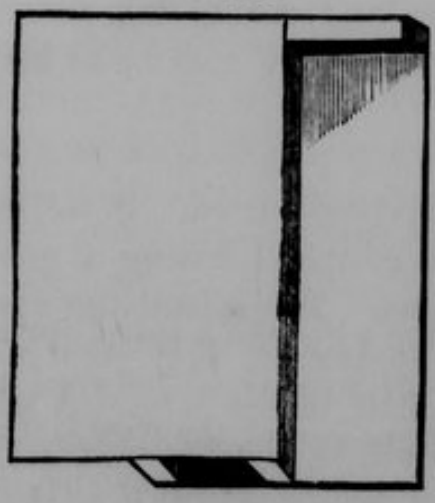
Fig. 137.



employed for winding wire, consists in the accuracy of its operation.

MANNER OF MAKING GOLD PLATE.

Fig. 138.

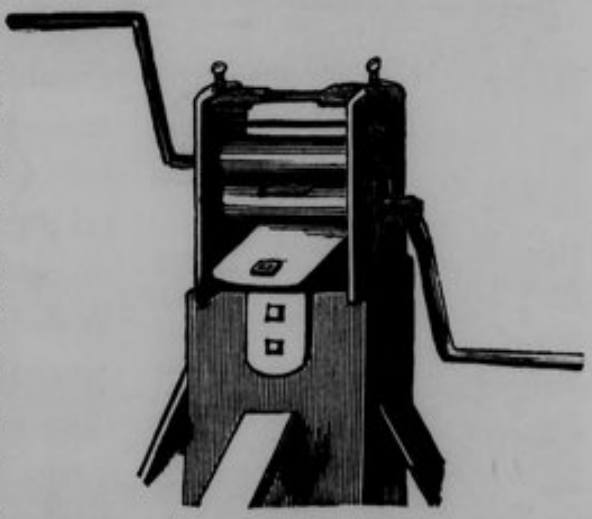


The gold after being melted in a clean crucible, well rubbed on the inside with borax, should be poured into an ingot mould of the proper length, width and thickness; then after it has become sufficiently cool, it should be placed on an anvil, and its thickness reduced to about an eighth of an inch, with a hammer of a suitable weight. It should now be well annealed by being placed

Fig. 138. A sliding ingot mould.

in the furnace, lightly covered with small pieces of charcoal and heated until every part of it becomes red. It may be necessary during the operation of hammering, to subject it once or twice to this process, to prevent the gold from cracking, and if, notwithstanding this precaution, it does crack, it should be again melted, and in addition to the borax, a little muriate of ammonia should be thrown into the crucible as soon as it becomes fused. It may then be recast into an ingot, and forged without danger of its again cracking, unless it is cooled too suddenly. In this case it will be thicker at the sides than in the centre, and in forging may become flawy. This, therefore, should be guarded against as much as possible, by cooling it gradually.

Fig. 139.

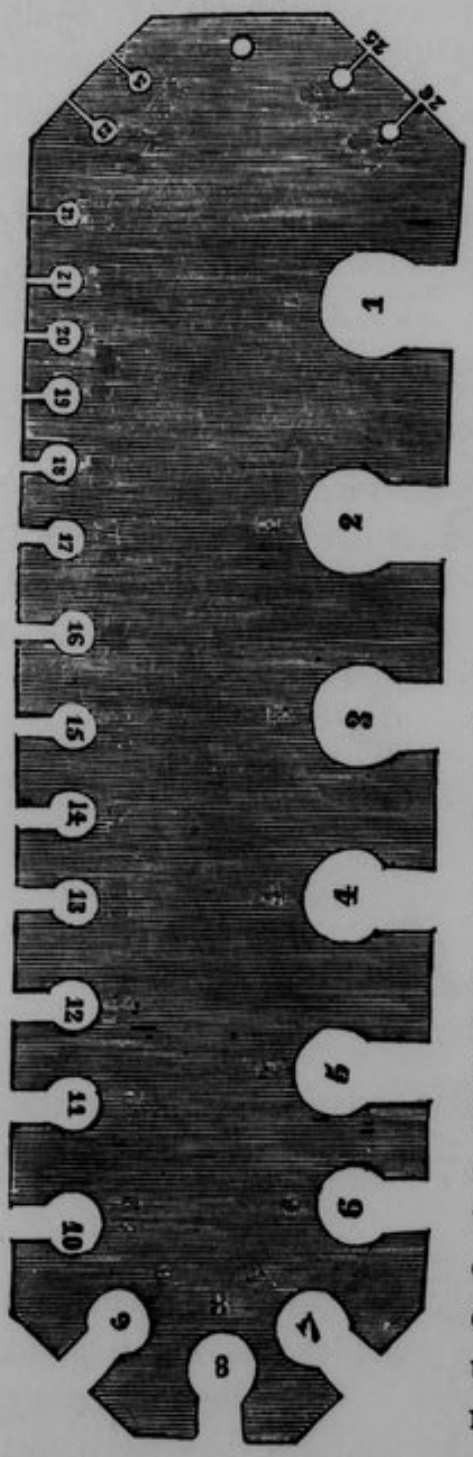


After the gold has been reduced to the thickness just mentioned, and well annealed, it may be placed between the rollers of the mill, which should previously be so adjusted, that they shall be the same distance apart at both ends, and not so near to each other as to require a great effort to force it between them. The rollers, however, should be brought a little nearer to each other every time the plate is passed between them, and during this process they should be kept well oiled, so that there may be as little friction as possible.

Rolling mills for gold are variously constructed. Some are very simple, while others are quite complex, having a great deal of machinery connected with them. The rollers also vary in length. For the gold plate used by dentists, they need not be more than three or three and a half inches long. A mill like the one represented in Fig. 139 will be found to answer the purpose as well as any that can be employed. It is worked, as may be perceived, by two cranks, one to each roller, but

fixed on opposite sides of the mill, so that two persons are required for turning them.

Fig. 140.



While the gold is being rolled, it should be frequently annealed. The thickness of the plate may be determined by a guage plate, like the one represented in Fig. 140. That which is to serve as a basis for artificial teeth for the upper jaw, should be reduced until it will fit the guage at 25 or 26; for the lower jaw, 21 or 22; for backings for the teeth, at 24; and plate for clasps, which are to serve as a support for a dental substitute, should fit at 23. It is sometimes necessary, however, to vary the thickness of the plate used for these several purposes; as, for example, when the whole alveolar border and a portion of the roof of the mouth is to be covered, it may be a little thinner than when it is to be applied only to a small surface. When very wide clasps too, are to be employed, it is not necessary that the gold should be as thick as is required for narrow ones. But these are matters which the judgment of the dentist alone can properly determine, and consequently no rules can be laid down upon this subject, from which it will not sometimes be necessary to deviate.

The guage plate represented above has only 26 numbers; some are made with from four to fourteen more.

MANNER OF MAKING GOLD SOLDER.

As is correctly remarked by Dr. W. H. Elliot, "the metals used in making gold solders, should be refined separately before weighing," for without this precaution, it would be difficult to ascertain their relative degree of fineness. This done, the gold should be placed in a clean crucible with a little borax, and as soon as it has become perfectly fused, the silver, and afterwards the copper, may be added. When all are melted, the alloy may immediately be poured into an ingot mould, previously warmed and oiled.

The process for hammering and rolling the solder is the same as that already described for gold plate.

The solder employed for uniting the various parts of a piece of dental mechanism, should be sufficiently fine to prevent it from being easily acted on by the secretions of the mouth. Either of the following recipes will be found admirably adapted to the purpose:

FINE FLOWING GOLD SOLDER.

RECIPE, No. 1.

2 dwts. 22 carat gold,
16 grs. fine silver,
12 grs. roset copper.

RECIPE, No. 2.

1 dwt. 15 grs. 22 carat gold,
16 grs. fine silver,
12 grs. roset copper.

The following makes rather finer solder than either of the above, and although it requires a little stronger blast to fuse it, it flows very beautifully.

FINE FLOWING GOLD SOLDER.

RECIPE, No. 3.

6 dwts. pure gold,
2 dwts. roset copper,
1 dwt. fine silver.

By adding two or three grains of spelter, solder, finer than that made by either of the foregoing recipes, may be employed without any increase of heat. It will also have a finer gold color, but it is apt to impart to the piece, a brassy taste, and for this reason, the author rarely uses it. Several other recipes might be added, but those already given are sufficient.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

MANNER OF OBTAINING WAX AND PLASTER OF PARIS IMPRESSIONS OF THE MOUTH, PLASTER MODELS—ALSO, METALLIC MODELS AND COUNTER-MODELS.

In the construction of a dental substitute mounted on a base, it is necessary to obtain an exact model of the parts upon which it is to rest, and to which it is to be attached, but before this can be done, a perfect impression in wax, or some other soft and yielding substance, must be procured. The manner of obtaining this we shall now proceed to describe.

MANNER OF PROCURING A WAX IMPRESSION.

Fig. 141.



Fill a frame of suitable dimensions, like the one represented in Fig. 141, made of silver or tin, with white or yellow wax, softened in warm water or by a fire, until it is of the consistency of dough or putty; then put it in the mouth with the wax facing the jaw to be supplied with artificial teeth, and press it carefully against it, covering the whole of the vacant space and the adjoining teeth as far back as it may be necessary to extend the plate. The pressure on the frame should be sufficiently great to completely imbed the teeth and the alveolar ridge in the wax. The frame should be held steadily in the hand of the operator, and the pressure applied to every

part of it alike. The wax should be pressed up against the gums on each side, with the finger, so that an exact impression may be obtained of all the depressions and protuberances of the parts on which the plate is to rest, and of the remaining teeth. On the removal of the frame and wax from the mouth the greatest precaution is necessary to prevent injuring or altering the shape of the impression.

Fig. 142.



Every dentist should be supplied with several of these frames, different in size, so that he may never be at a loss for one of the right dimensions. When an impression of only the front part of the alveolar ridge or the teeth and one side of the jaw is required, a frame like the one represented in Fig. 142, will be found most convenient, but when such are used, it is necessary to have one for each side of the jaw.

Dr. Elliot recommends that the wax-frame be "formed by being struck up between a model and counter-model, in the same way that a gum plate is fitted to the mouth."* Wax-holders, thus formed, would, doubtless, be rather more convenient than those which we have described, but, with care, an accurate impression, in most cases, can readily be obtained with either.

In several cases, however, since the publication of the second edition of this work, we have been compelled to construct a wax-holder in the manner as described by Dr. E., with which we readily succeeded in obtaining a perfect impression, after having previously made several unsuccessful attempts to procure them with the ordinary wax-holders.

After removing the impression from the mouth, oil should be applied to it with a camel's hair pencil or brush, and a wire about three-fourths of an inch long, stuck in the centre of the bottom of each cavity made in the wax by the teeth next the

* *American Journal of Dental Science*, vol. v, p. 90.

vacant space, and those to which the clasps are to be applied, to prevent the liability of the plaster teeth on the model from being broken.

Fig. 143.



The wax impression, after being prepared in this manner, will present the appearance exhibited in Fig. 143. It is scarcely necessary to add, that unless the impresssion is perfect, it will be impossible to fit a plate to the parts of the mouth to which it is to be applied with a sufficient degree of accuracy to be worn with impunity.

Dr. J. A. Cleaveland has recently contrived a set of wax-holders, admirably adapted for taking impressions, both of the upper and lower jaw. Those for the upper jaw, encase the alveolar border, and cover the roof of the mouth more perfectly than the common wax-holder, possessing the advantages of the one recommended by Dr. Elliot, without subjecting the operator to the inconvenience and loss of time of making one for each individual case. By having three holders for the upper jaw, each varying in size from the other, one will be found to fit almost any case which may occur, with sufficient accuracy for all practical purposes. For the purpose of ensuring a perfect impression in those cases where the alveolar border is very deep, the author has a hole cut through the centre of each, as seen in Fig. 144, to enable him to press the wax up against the anterior part of the roof of the mouth with his finger.

For the lower jaw, Dr. Cleaveland employs two wax holders—one for taking impressions where six or eight of the front teeth

Fig. 144.

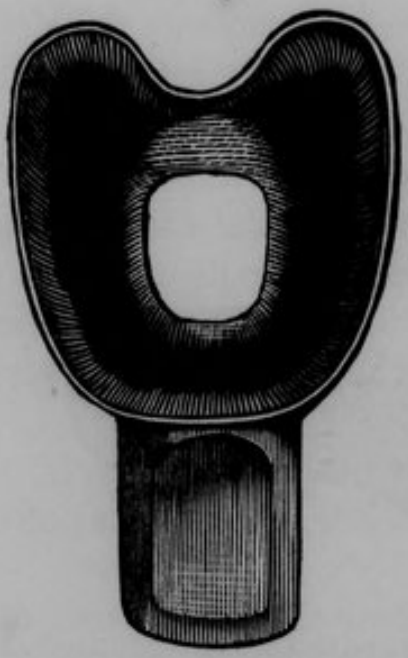
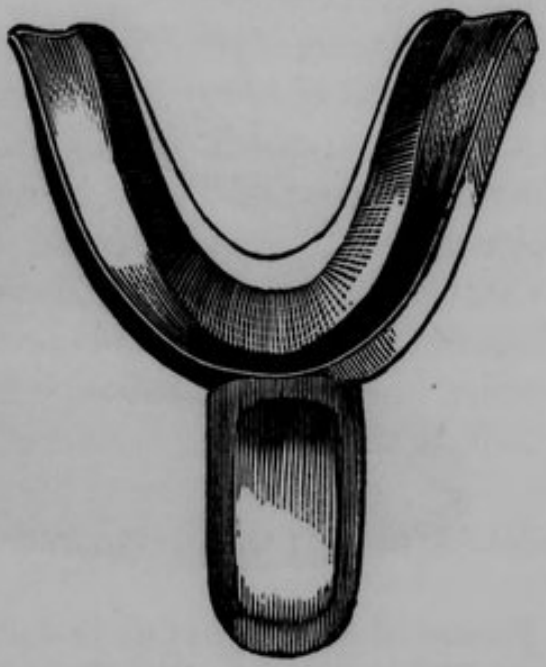
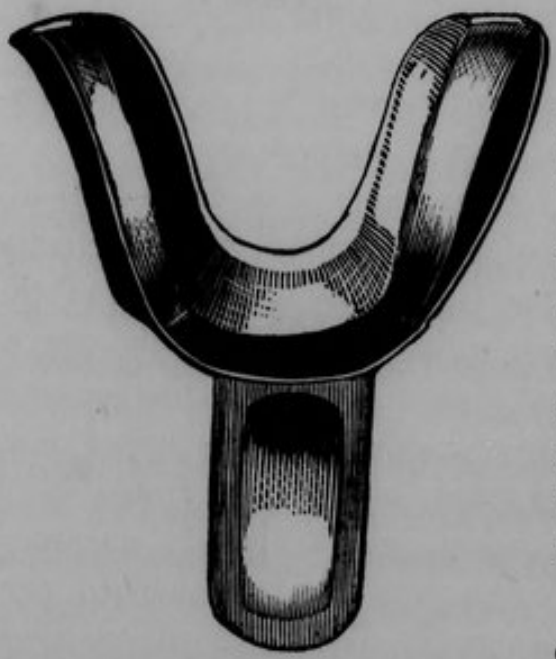


Fig. 145.



are remaining, and the other for taking impressions of the alveolar border in which there are no teeth. Each has a joint in the centre, so that it can be made wider or narrower at pleasure, to suit the size of the jaw. Without the central joint or hinge, a greater number of holders are required, three of each kind, and each differing in size from the other, will afford sufficient variety to enable the operator to take an impression of almost any jaw he may be called upon to furnish with artificial teeth.

Fig. 146.



In Fig. 145, is represented one of Dr. Cleaveland's wax-holders for taking an impression of the inferior alveolar border without teeth, and without the central joint; and in Fig. 146, is seen an engraving of one designed for the procurement of

an impression of a lower jaw in which six or eight of the front teeth are remaining. These wax-holders are manufactured and kept for sale by Messrs. Jones, White & Co., of Philadelphia and New York.

In consequence of the difficulty which is sometimes experienced in the removal of a wax impression from the mouth without injury, it was proposed, at the Sixth Annual Meeting of the American Society of Dental Surgeons, by Dr. Bridges, to substitute plaster of paris. But the use of this article, so far as the author is informed upon the subject, originated with Drs. Westcott and Dunning, and is recommended by the former, as superior, in some cases, to wax. An impression may be obtained with it, in the following manner:

MANNER OF TAKING PLASTER OF PARIS IMPRESSIONS.

Plaster of paris, gypsum or sulphate of lime, consists of 28 parts of lime; 40 of sulphuric acid, and 18 of water. When exposed to a heat of 400° Fahr. the water of the gypsum escapes. After being properly calcined and pulverized, if mixed with water to the consistence of thin batter or cream, it hardens in a few minutes, by a species of crystallization, and acquires great solidity. During the first part of the process of consolidation, it expands, by the absorption of the water, so as to fill the small depressions in any mould in which it may be poured.

But there is a great difference in the quality of plaster of paris. That used for taking impressions and models of the mouth should be of the best description, and it should be well calcined, finely pulverized and passed through a sieve previously to being used.

In taking a plaster impression of the mouth, the first thing to be done is, to place a rim of wax, previously softened in warm water, or by a fire, around the rim of a wax holder of the proper size, closing up the open ends, so that when applied, it will completely encase the alveolar ridge of the upper jaw, then to fill it with a thin batter, made of calcined plaster of paris and water, and before it begins to concrete, to put it into the mouth, and apply it to the upper alveolar border, and press it upwards, until a

sufficiently deep and accurate impression is made of the ridge, remaining teeth, if there are any, and anterior portion of the roof of the mouth. In doing this, it may be necessary to pass the fore-finger around on the outside and inside, pressing the plaster gently against the parts. An accurate impression having been obtained, it should be permitted to remain in the mouth two or three minutes, or long enough for the plaster to harden, when it may be removed. This, however, should be done with great care to prevent cracking or injuring the impression, and some difficulty is occasionally experienced in detaching it from the gums, as the suction or atmospheric pressure is often so considerable, as to make it adhere with great tenacity. When this is the case, one side should be first gently depressed, and if it cannot be readily loosened at one point, another and another may be tried until some one is made to yield; when the whole may be easily removed.

A correct plaster impression having been obtained, the edges should be smoothly trimmed, and after it has become perfectly dry, it should be oiled or varnished before it is used for the procurement of a model.

The method of obtaining a transfer of the alveolar ridge, recommended by M. Desirabode, will always, with proper care, secure the most accurate and successful results. It consists, after having obtained a metallic model and counter-model, in striking up a lead plate, trimming it to the proper size, and adjusting it with the finger to the alveolar border, until it is made to fit every part with *perfect* accuracy. It is then carefully removed, and used, instead of the original wax impression, for the procurement of a second plaster model. From this last, new metallic castings are obtained, and from which, a perfect atmospheric pressure or suction plate may be procured.*

This method of procedure was communicated to the author the latter part of the year 1849, by Dr. E. SANBORN, dentist, of Andover, Mass., and with whom it must have been original, as we do not think he had ever seen the work of Desirabode,

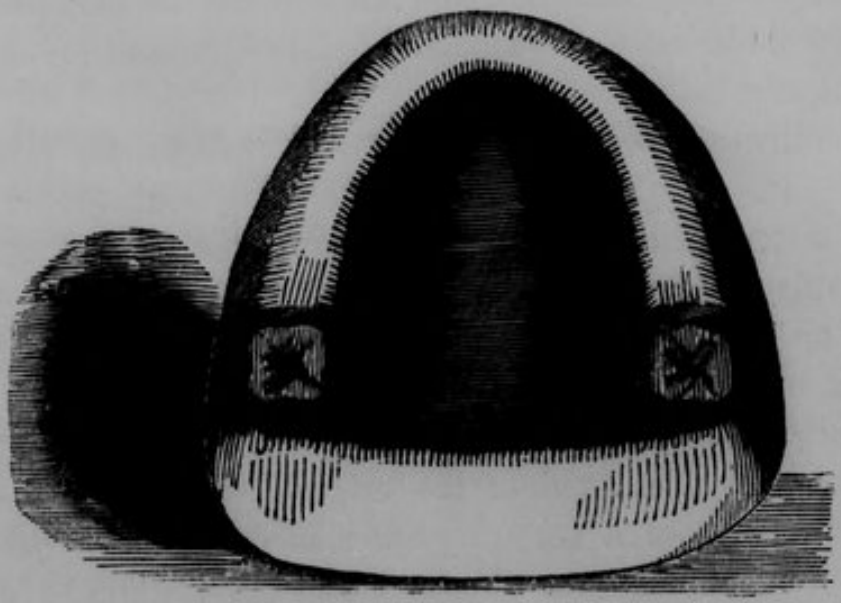
* Vide *Nauveaux Elements Complets de la Science et de l'art. Du Dentiste*, t. 2, pp. 636–7.

Dr. S., however, recommends the employment of a plate made from block tin, which is better than lead.

MANNER OF PROCURING A PLASTER MODEL.

The impression, whether taken in wax or plaster, should be oiled as before stated, then filled with a thin paste or batter made of the best calcined plaster of paris and water. This should at first be poured in while it is quite thin, and with great care, until the impressions made by the teeth, if there are any remaining in the jaw, are filled; after which, the batter may be allowed to thicken a little before the remainder of the impression is filled, and it should then be poured on until the plaster is raised an inch or an inch and a half above the impression.

Fig. 147.

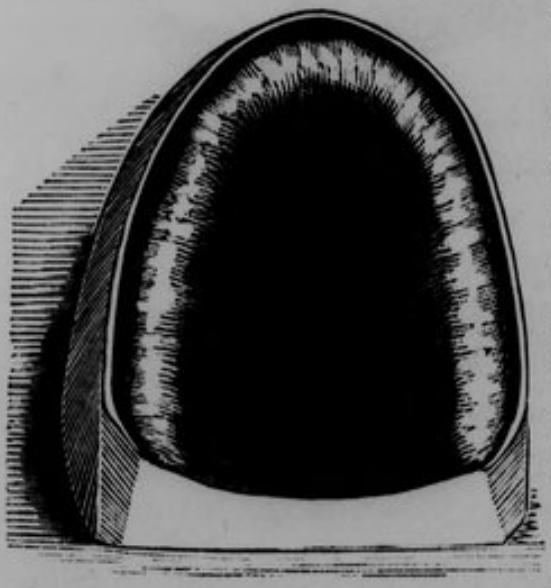


After the plaster has sufficiently hardened, it should be trimmed, and after softening the wax in warm water, or by fire, it may be removed from it. The same impression can sometimes be used a second or third time, but lest the shape of it should be altered in the removal of the model, a duplicate impression may be taken. The plaster model should be shaped with a knife, until it presents an appearance something like that

represented in Fig. 147, so that a metallic cast obtained from it may be easily withdrawn from an impression of the same or a similar material.

The model, after having been thus trimmed, should have several coats of shellac or sandarach varnish applied to it with a small brush, to give it a smooth, hard and polished surface. This will prevent the model from wearing away by use, and render it more pleasant to the touch of the hand. The sandarach varnish is preferable to the shellac, as it is more transparent, and, consequently, does not color the plaster. It may be made in the following manner: take sandarach, ʒ v, elemi, ʒ i, digest in one quart of alcohol, moderately warm, until dissolved, then add Venice turpentine, ʒ ij. This is, perhaps, as good a varnish as can be used for plaster models. It is easily prepared, but in warming the alcohol, some care is necessary to prevent it from taking fire. The sandarach should be of the most transparent quality, and washed in water before being put into the alcohol.

Fig. 148.



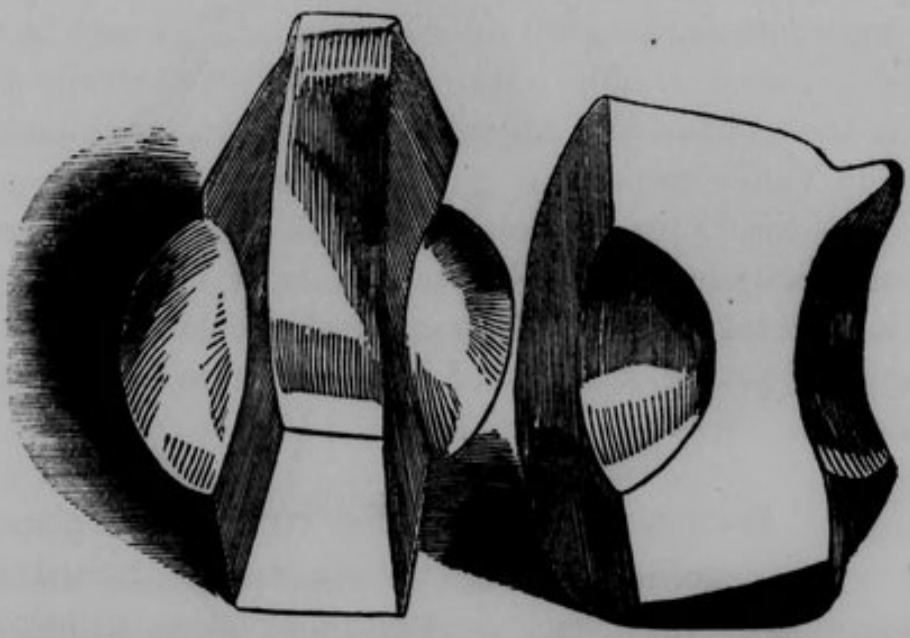
For striking up a plate with the outer edge turned up, a groove, about an eighth of an inch deep is formed around the outside of the plaster model, where it is designed that the edge of the base shall terminate on the alveolar border, by the application of yellow wax, previously softened, which is afterwards cut away with a knife until a groove of the proper shape is formed. A plaster model of the upper jaw thus prepared, is represented in Fig. 148. A plate swaged with dies, from such a model, is only used for mounting gum or block teeth. A dental substitute with a base of this kind is stronger than a simple plate and is susceptible of a more beautiful finish.

For a lower set of block teeth, the edge of the plate may be

turned up all the way round. But rimming teeth, as it is termed in mechanical dentistry, which consists in soldering a narrow strip of gold to the outer edge of the plate in such a manner as to cover the outer surface of the extremities of the teeth or edge of the blocks near the base, is, on some accounts, preferable to a plate with a turned edge. The manner of doing this, will be described in the chapter on porcelain block teeth.

It sometimes happens, when the alveolar ridge is very deep,

Fig. 149.

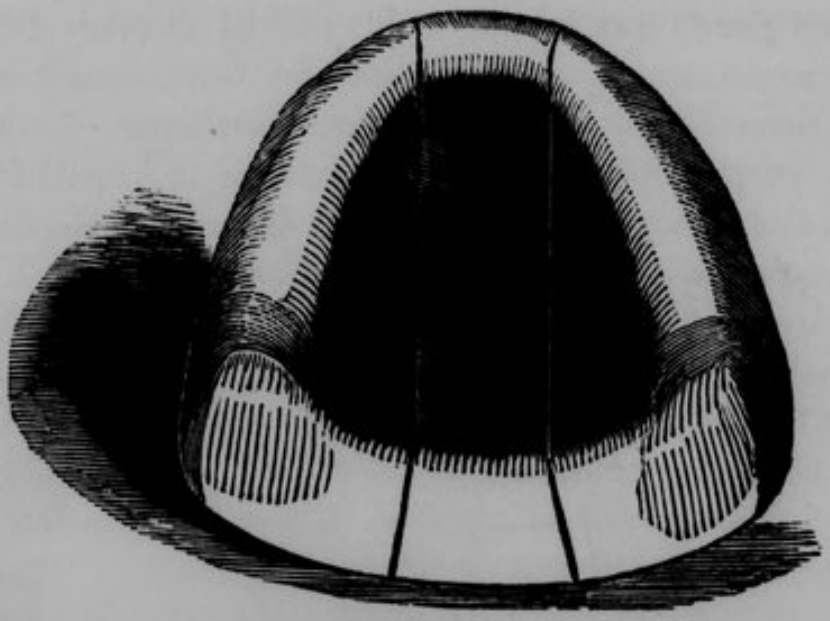


that the lower edge of the arch inclines outwardly so much as to make the span of it here considerably greater than it is a quarter or half an inch higher up. In this case, if sand be used in procuring a metallic model, it is difficult to remove the plaster without injuring the impression made in the sand. To obviate which, the plaster model should be so constructed as to consist of three pieces, or sections, in the manner as represented in Fig. 149, which, however, only shows two sections of the model. After the three are put together, in the manner as exhibited in Fig. 150, it may be pressed in the sand until a good impression is made, and afterwards removed separately.* Dr.

*Dr. G. E. Hawes of New York, has invented a moulding flask, by the use of which, the plaster model may be taken from the sand without injuring the impression. A description of this will be given when we come to treat of the manner of procuring a metallic model. When it becomes necessary to obtain metallic castings for the construction of appliances for remedying irregularity of the teeth, this flask, in many cases, is very valuable.

Westcott, we believe, was the first to introduce the use of this description of plaster model, which may be procured by first filling the wax impression with the plaster as in the manner before described; this is then removed, and about one-third from each side trimmed off, leaving the lower surface wider than the

Fig. 150.



upper. This done, it is replaced in the impression, and filled up on each side with plaster as in the first instance; after the last has consolidated, the model is trimmed in the manner as before described, and when it has become perfectly dry, varnished.

MANNER OF PROCURING A METALLIC MODEL AND COUNTER-MODEL.

Various methods have been adopted for procuring metallic models and counter-models, but the two following are all which the author deems it necessary to describe. One of these consists in pouring melted metal in an impression made in sand with the plaster model. By this means a metallic model is procured, and the female or counter-model obtained either by immersing this in, or pouring melted metal on it. The other consists in making the counter-model first, by either immersing the plaster model in, or pouring melted metal on it, and afterwards obtaining the male model by pouring melted metal in this.

When they are to be obtained by the first method, the dentist should be provided with a box about six inches square and three or four inches deep, filled with fine sand, such as is employed in brass and iron foundries. After this has been slightly dampened, the plaster model should be pressed in it to the depth of an inch or an inch and a half, leaving a portion of it unimbedded, so that, at the proper time, it may be readily removed. The sand should now be thoroughly packed on every side of the plaster model, which, after this has been done, should be gently tapped several times with some light instrument or hammer, for the purpose of starting or detaching it a little from the matrix, and then carefully removed. If the model be composed of three pieces, the middle one should be first removed, and afterwards the two others.

A shallow furrow or groove, of about an inch in length, should now be formed in the sand, on one side of the mould leading to it, and both the furrow and mould should then be encircled by a rim of sheet iron of about three inches in diameter, and an inch and a quarter in width. If, in the meantime, any particles of sand have fallen into the mould, they should be removed by blowing gently into it.

The mould being now prepared, the metal to be employed for the casting should be put in a tolerable thick wrought iron ladle, and melted either in a common fire or furnace. If brass is used, the latter will be required to melt it, but if zinc, block-tin or lead be employed, a common fire will afford sufficient heat. After the metal has become thoroughly melted, it should be poured on the inside of the ring into the furrow formed in the sand, when it will immediately flow into the mould. It is necessary to convey the melted metal into the mould in this way to prevent the liability to injury which it might sustain by pouring directly into it.

If zinc or block-tin is used, a sufficient quantity should be melted to fill nearly the whole of the ring, but if brass be employed, it will only be necessary to fill the mould in the sand. For all other purposes, either of the first will answer, but when a very thick plate is to be swaged, brass is preferable.

But if the plaster model is used in one piece, and the shape

of it is such that it cannot be drawn without dragging more or less of the sand with it, the moulding flask of Dr. G. E. Hawes, represented in Figs. 151, 152 and 153, may be employed.

Fig. 151.

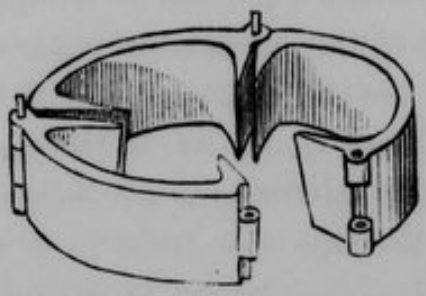


Fig. 152.

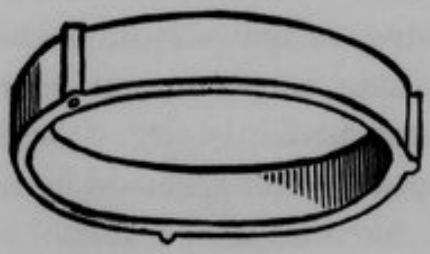
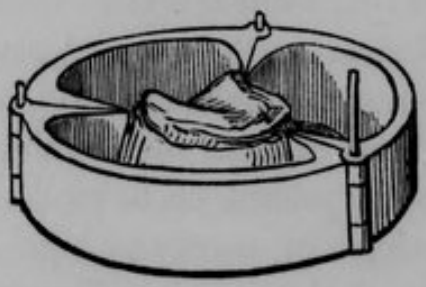


Fig. 153.



The manner of using it is thus described by Dr. C. C. Allen: "If the model be considerably smaller than the space between the flanges projecting in towards it, small slips of paper may be placed in the joint extending to the sides of the model, to part the sand when opening the flask, for the removal of the pattern. The sand may now be transferred around the pattern up to the most prominent part of the gum, and it should be finished smoothly around it, slightly descending towards the model, so as to form a thick edge of sand for the more perfect parting of the flask. The sand and face of the model must now be covered with dry pulverized charcoal, sifted evenly over the whole surface. When this is done, the upper section of the flask is placed over the lower, and carefully filled with sand. It is then raised from the lower one, which may then be parted by removing the long pin, and the model gently taken away. When closed, and the two put together again and inverted, it is ready to receive the melted metal."*

Fig. 151. The lower section of the flask, slightly opened to show joints. Fig. 152, the upper section. Fig. 153, the lower section closed, and confined by a pin, with the plaster model placed in it.

*New York Dental Recorder.

After the casting has cooled, it may be removed, or rather turned over, so that the part presenting a transcript of the plaster *model* shall be upwards, while the remainder should be buried in the sand. The casting thus placed, should be encircled by the same ring which was first employed, and if the casting be made of block-tin, it should be covered with a thin coating of whiting, mixed with water, until it is of the consistence of cream. This may be put on with a camel's-hair pencil, and after it has become perfectly dry, a sufficient quantity to fill the ring, of block-tin or lead, should be melted in the ladle as before directed, and when its temperature has become so much reduced as not to char or even discolor white paper, it may be immediately poured into it.

If the last metal be poured into the ring while it is at a higher temperature, or if the precaution of covering the exposed part of the first casting with whiting is not used, the two will be liable to unite. Even when zinc is used for the first casting, there is danger of fusing it if the metal poured on be too hot. When the last metal used requires as high or nearly as high a heat to fuse it as the first, an accident of this sort is still more liable to occur, unless great care is taken to prevent it.

The gas generated by the decomposition of the water in the sand, sometimes collects under, or diffuses itself through the metal, and renders the casting more or less imperfect. This, in most instances, may be prevented by pouring the metal slowly, or by making a small opening through it with a wire for its escape, before it has congealed.

After the last metal has cooled, the castings may be separated, and if perfect, they are ready for use.

By the second method of precedure, the use of sand is wholly dispensed with, and this, for the reason, that smoother castings may be secured by it, is, in most cases, preferable to the first. It consists in pouring fused lead into a sheet or cast iron cup or box, of about three and a half or four inches in diameter, and three inches deep, until it is half full, and immediately immersing so much of the plaster model in it as represents the shape of the alveolar ridge and remaining teeth, if the latter be left on the model, and holding it there until the lead con-

geals. It should then be removed, and the whole upper surface of the lead, including that of the mould made in it with the plaster-model, with a thin coating of whiting in the manner as before directed. After this has become perfectly dry, melted block-tin, at a temperature so low that it will not char, or even discolor white paper when dipped and held in it, should be poured on, until the cup or box is filled. When cold, the castings may be removed from the iron cup or box, and separated, when they are ready for use.

When a metallic model and counter-model are procured in the manner as last described, the plaster model should not be varnished, and as the one immersed in the melted metal is generally broken in removing it, a duplicate, varnished as before directed, should be obtained.

When it is necessary to have brass or zinc castings, they should be made in sand, as first described.

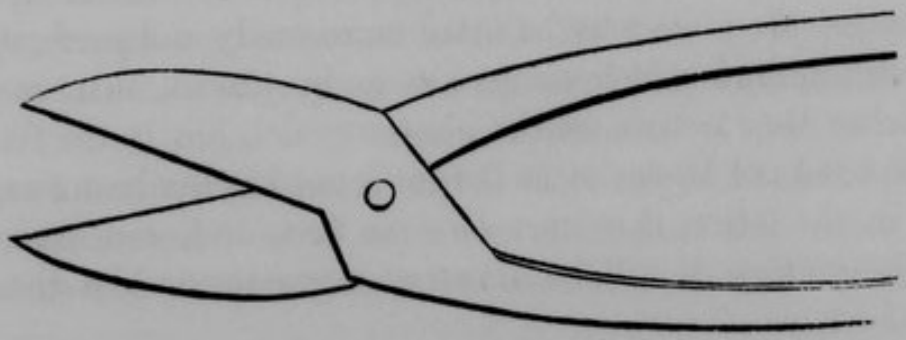
Finally, by cutting about three-fourths of the crowns of the teeth from the plaster model, before using it for obtaining metallic casts, the plate may be fitted more easily and perfectly to the teeth, around which clasps are to be placed, than can be done when they remain on the plaster model, for, in the former case, it need not be cut to fit the teeth until it has been swaged, while in the latter, this must be done first, and, consequently, in striking it up, it will be drawn to a greater or less distance from them.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

SWAGING A PLATE AND SOLDERING CLASPS TO IT.

A MODEL and counter-model having been obtained, a piece of sheet lead should be adapted to the alveolar ridge, and the dimensions of the plate marked upon it with some pointed instrument. The pattern thus described, should be cut out, laid upon a piece of gold plate of the right thickness, and its size and shape marked upon it. With a pair of strong shears, or snips, (see Fig. 154,) the portion of plate thus marked should

FIG. 154.



be cut out. It may be now annealed in the manner as before described, and then partially adjusted and fitted to the model with a hammer and pair of plate forceps; again annealed, and afterwards swaged between the metallic model and counter-model. It may be necessary to repeat this operation several times, annealing the plate each time, before a perfect adaptation can be obtained. This done, it should be filled to the exact size required, and made to fit the teeth to which it is to be clasped with perfect accuracy.

When block-tin or lead models or counter-models are used as swages for the plate, any portion of these metals which may adhere to it, should be removed before annealing, as the fusions of such portions upon its surface, by this process, will render the

gold brittle, and, in some degree, destroy its ductility. But the liability of the tin or lead to stick to the gold may be prevented by oiling the plate before it is struck up.

After fitting it to the model, it would be well to apply it to the mouth, for the purpose of ascertaining if the impression from which the model was procured is correct. It sometimes happens that this is imperfect; in which case, a new one will have to be taken, and the whole process of procuring plaster and metallic models and a counter-model, again gone through with, and hence the propriety of the precaution of trying it in the mouth before the clasps and teeth are attached. To be worn with comfort, and at the same time to subserve any valuable purpose, it is important that the plate to which artificial teeth are attached, should fit perfectly all the inequalities of the parts to which it is applied. When an unbroken series of several teeth are to be supplied, it seldom happens that much difficulty is experienced in fitting the plate, but when the loss of six or eight teeth, from different parts of the dental arch, are to be replaced, with substitutes attached to a single plate, a perfect adaptation to the various inequalities of all the parts cannot always be so easily secured.

With regard to the width of the plate, and the peculiar form and shape that should be given to it in different cases, the reader will be able to form a pretty correct idea, from the illustrations that will, hereafter, be given.

FITTING THE CLASPS.

Having fitted the plate, it should be applied to the plaster model, and the clasps adapted to the teeth—one on each side of the mouth, and here it may be proper to repeat, that the gold employed for this purpose should be about one-third or one-half thicker than the plate. It should also be as wide as the crowns of the teeth are long, or very nearly, and carefully and accurately fitted. This is necessary to secure to the piece the greatest possible amount of stability, and to prevent the clasps from acting as retractors, or exercising any undue force upon the teeth. These are precautions which should never be overlooked,

for, if they act unequally upon the teeth or as retractors, they will cause inflammation of the alveolo-dental membrane, a gradual wasting of their sockets, and ultimately the loss of the teeth.

When accurately fitted to the teeth and to the plate, they should be attached to the latter by means of a small piece of wax, or cement composed of two parts wax, and one of resin, previously softened, applied on the plate and to the inner or palatine side of each clasp. The plate and clasps thus stuck together, should be carefully removed from the plaster model, on which this union has been effected, and laid with the convex side downward on a piece of paper. A paste or batter of plaster of paris, prepared as before described, should now be poured on the upper side of the plate and clasps to the thickness of half an inch. After this has become dry, the piece may be taken from the paper, turned over, placed on charcoal, and the wax softened and removed.

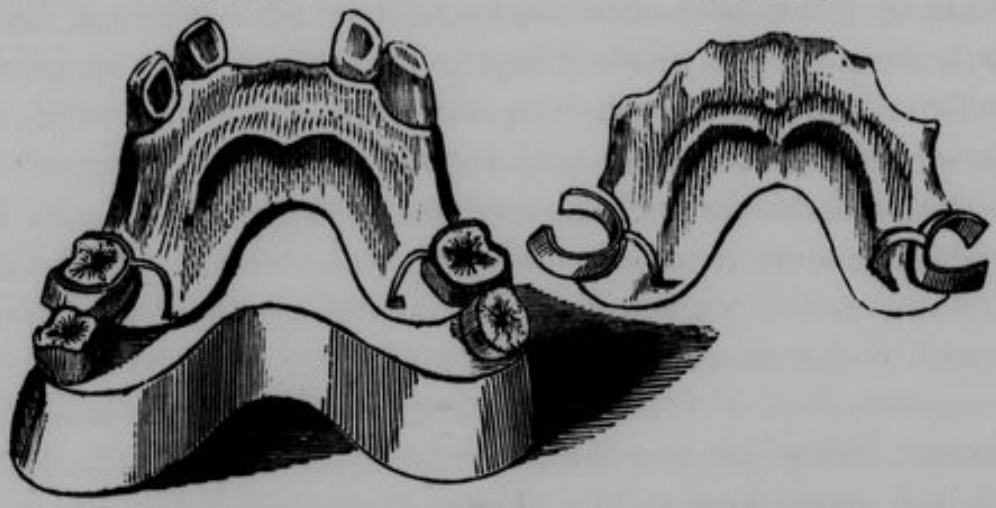
This is the usual way of fitting the clasps to the plate and preparing the piece for soldering, but when the teeth in the mouth to which these fastenings are to be applied, deviate from a vertical position, they may be fitted to them, instead of the teeth on the plaster model, and attached to the plate, as just directed, in the mouth. In this case only one can be attached at a time, and after this has been soldered, it should be opened, the piece placed back in the mouth, and the other stuck to the plate. The greatest care too will be necessary to prevent moving or altering the position of the clasp in taking the piece from the mouth.

The method adopted by Dr. Fogle for securing an accurate adaptation of the clasps is as follows :* The clasps are first fitted to the plaster model, leaving the ends straight. A narrow strip of plate, about five-eighths of an inch, is employed as the temporary fastening. One end is soldered to the lingual surface of the clasp, the plate and clasp are now both placed on the model, and the other end of the strip of plate fitted and soldered to the plate so that it forms a sort of semicircle or bow. Fig. 155

* *Amer. Jour. and Lib. Dent. Sci.*, vol. 10, p. 35.

represents the plaster model, with the plate, clasps and temporary fastenings. In Fig. 156 is seen the plate, clasps and fastenings without the model.

Fig. 155. Fig. 156.



The clasps are now only adjusted to the model, and however accurately they may have been adapted to this, it will be found on applying the plate to the mouth, that they will not fit the teeth there, but after properly adjusting them here, the temporary fastenings will hold them in the exact position in which they are placed while the piece is removed. This done, it may be placed on a piece of paper or charcoal, the concave side of the plate upwards, a batter of plaster applied, and the other steps connected with the process of permanent soldering gone through with.

In a letter to the author, published in the American Journal of Dental Science, No. 1, vol. 10, Dr. Cushman says, "In very difficult cases of adjustment, as where the clasp-teeth stand *hanging*—where you have to fasten to the second or third molars, it will be found still more advantageous to pursue this plan, viz. after soldering one end of the strip to the clasp, and having bent the other to touch the plate when on the model, put both in their proper place in the mouth; then with a sharp pointed instrument, indicate the point where the bow touches the plate, place them on the model again, adjust the end of the bow to the point marked, confine it there and solder fast."

Dr. Cushman says further, that he considers this method of

adjusting clasps so valuable that he never ventures to set clasps permanently in the simplest case by the model.*

Mr. Noble, a student of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery during the session of 1849–50, suggests a different method, which is thus described by Dr. Austin:

"Let the clasp bind upon the tooth only with sufficient firmness to keep it in its proper place. Then mix a small quantity of plaster from a lot which, by previous trial, you find requires from six to ten minutes to set; put it upon a piece of paper or sheet lead about an inch square, and just before it begins to harden, introduce it into tho mouth upon the forefinger, pressing it into gentle contact with a portion of the plate and about one-half of the clasp. It must be held there for from three to six minutes, until it is sufficiently hard to break with a sharp fracture; this point you can determine by examining the plaster left in your bowl. The plaster must then be withdrawn. Sometimes plate, clasp and plaster will be brought away together; or the plaster and clasp together, leaving the plate; or the plaster will separate, leaving both clasp and plate in the mouth. Should the plaster by any accident break, it can readily be united at the point of the fracture, without in the least altering its shape—one great advantage over wax. If the plaster adheres to the plate on withdrawal from the mouth, it must then be carefully detached, the plate replaced, and the same process repeated for the second clasp.

"Several precautions are necessary. If the clasp bind too tightly around the tooth, its ends will, when removed, spring together, and thus it will not exactly fill the original impression made in the plaster. If the part of the clasp which you design to cover with plaster be so regular in shape as to make its adjustment, when out of the mouth, uncertain, mark it with a file or by a small point of solder; this will be copied in the plaster and remove all doubt as to its definite position. If the plaster be extended over some part of the edge of the plate, it will, in the absence of any marked irregularities of surface, give a bet-

*The cuts represented in Figs. 155–6, are from a model, with a plate, clasps and temporary fastenings furnished the author by Dr. Cushman.

ter guide for its re-adaptation. Lastly, if the plaster cover too much of the clasp-tooth, it will be more liable to break on being withdrawn.

"Take now the clasps, place them each in their separate impressions in the pieces of plaster, securing them if necessary by a small piece of softened wax. Place one end of your plate in its corresponding bed in one of the plaster pieces. If proper care has been used, both clasp and plate will fit into the plaster with unerring accuracy, and of course hold the precise relation as when in the mouth. While in this position, cover the clasp and the part of the plate on its surface with fresh plaster—or plaster and sand—and when this has hardened, remove the first plaster—just as in other cases you would remove the wax—preparatory to soldering."

The author has not had any experience in either of the two last described methods, as he has always, since he has been acquainted with them, been able to secure an accurate adaptation of clasps by a simpler and less tedious process. Cases do sometimes occur, however, in which they may be resorted to with advantage.

SOLDERING CLASPS TO A PLATE.

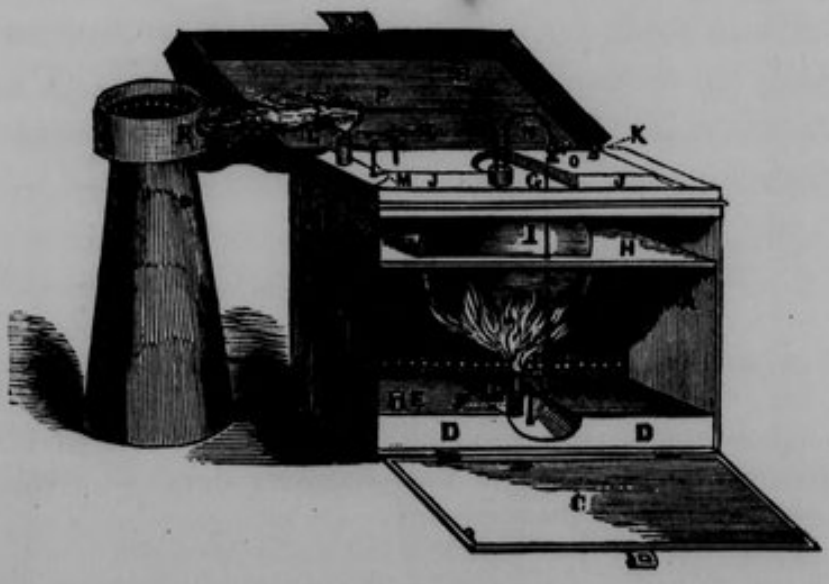
The work having been placed upon a piece of charcoal, six or eight inches square, it should be made fast either with clamps, iron pins, or a paste of plaster of paris. The edge of the plate and clasps which are in contact, should be covered with a mixture of sub-borate of soda (borax) and water, of the consistence of thin cream. This may be prepared by grinding the borax in clean soft water, on a piece of glass having a ground surface of from four to six inches in diameter, or, on a piece of slate of the same size, until the mixture attains the above mentioned consistence. Thus prepared, it should be applied to the parts which are to be united, with a camel's-hair pencil; after which several small pieces of solder made from recipe No. 1 or 3, should be placed along the line of connection between the clasps and plate.

The work is now prepared for soldering, and it is hardly ne-

cessary to observe, that this process consists in uniting the surfaces of separate pieces of metal, by melting upon each, a more fusible metal, which serves, by chemical attraction, and cohesive force, to unite or bind the pieces together, and the pieces thus united, may be of the same or dissimilar metals, but the metal by which they are to be united, must have an affinity for both. Thus, gold alloyed with silver and copper, melts more easily than the first named metal, and having an affinity for it, constitutes a proper uniting medium. The surfaces, however, of the pieces to be united, should be bright and smooth, to ensure a uniform effect of the solder upon them.

A number of ingenious contrivances have been invented for applying the heat required in soldering.

Fig. 157.



The self-acting blow-pipe invented by Dr. Jahial Parmly, of New York, is one of the best and most convenient apparatus for soldering which the author has seen. There is also a small furnace accompanying it, which is very useful for heating

Fig. 157 *a a* Side of case; *b* Top of case thrown back; *c* Front of case, united by hinge at bottom, and shown in a horizontal position; *d d* An oblong fluid vessel for reception of alcohol; *e* Vent to vessel *d d*, for introduction of fluid; *f* Burner introduced in groove of vessel *d d*; *g g* Movable extinguisher to burner *f*, and not for working the same. *h* Horizontal plate of tin for sustaining copper globe in place; *i* Copper globe; *j j* An oblong vessel for the re-

up a piece preparatory to soldering, also, for melting metal for casts, and even gold. The apparatus is arranged in a small portable japanned tin case, which may be opened and closed at pleasure, as may be seen from the representation given in Fig. 157.

Dr. W. H. Elliott, formerly of Plattsburg, New York, but now of Montreal, has added a very ingenious improvement to the self-acting-blow-pipe, and the following is a description and drawing of it, which he kindly furnished the author:—

"This ingenious contrivance, useful as it may be to the dental artist, in its simple form, is far short of what it may be rendered, simply by supplying it with a larger quantity of the supporting principle of combustion.

"The fact, that the centre of the flame of the self-acting blow-pipe, contains no oxygen, it is well known to every enlightened dentist, and may be proven by placing a rod of polished metal in the flame for a few seconds, in which case it will be seen that the surface of that portion of the rod occupying the centre of the flame does not unite with oxygen, however great the degree of heat may be; but if a jet of atmospheric air be thrown into the flame upon the rod, it will oxydize as readily as if heat-

ception of alcohol; *k* Vent to vessel *j j*, for feeding same with fluid; *l* Burner extending from fluid in *j j*; *m* Extinguisher to burner *l*; *n* Syphon extending from fluid in vessel *j j*, to near the bottom of globe *i*; *o* Stop-cock to syphon; *p* Blow-pipe from top of globe *i*; *q* A small copper trough for retaining condensed vapor that escapes from blow-pipe.

The manner of working Dr. Parmly's self-acting blow-pipe is very simple. The two vessels *d d* and *j j*, being filled with alcohol, the stop-cock *o* is closed; the mouth is then applied to the end of the blow-pipe *p* and the atmospheric air exhausted from the globe; when the stop-cock is turned, the alcohol in vessel *j* will rush through the syphon and fill the globe, should the air continue to be exhausted. For all practical purposes, the globe should be only partially filled, and the stop-cock turned so as to close the syphon. The burner *f* should be ignited, and in about five minutes, alcoholic vapor will be seen to rush out from blow-pipe *p*, when the burner *l* should be ignited. The volume of flame can be governed by the extinguishers *g* and *m*.

When the lamp is used for melting metal for castings, the metal should be placed in an iron ladle, and this latter in the furnace previously filled with charcoal, and placed in a proper position, as represented in Fig. 157, for the flame of the lamp to be thrown into it against the coal. When it is desired to melt gold, a crucible should be used instead of the iron ladle.

ed by any other means. This little experiment, proves not only the want of oxygen in the flame, but it leads to a very important

Fig. 158.

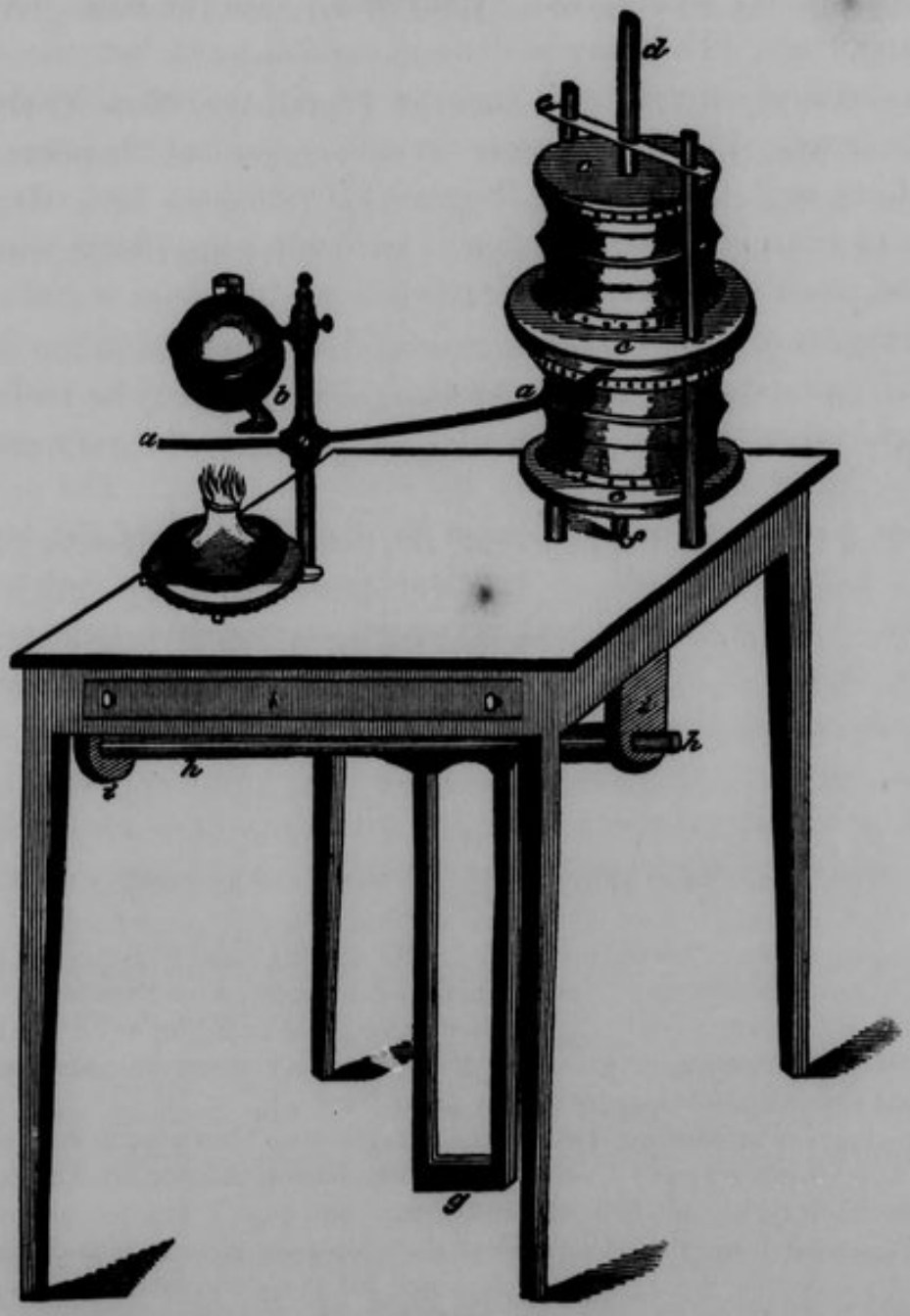


Fig. 158. *a a* Air-pipe leading from the bellows to the lamp; *b* Vapor-pipe; *c c c* A round bellows, 10 inches in diameter; *d* A rod attached to the upper movable head of the bellows and passing through cross-piece *e*, which serves to keep the head in a horizontal position; *f* A rod attached in a similar manner to the lower movable head of the bellows and passing down through the table; *g* A stirrup attached at the upper end to shaft *h h*; *i i* Support for shaft *h h*, by means of an arm projecting backwards from shaft *h h*, and attached to the lower end of rod *f*, the force is communicated from the foot of the artist to the bellows.

conclusion, that without oxygen, the burning of the vapor must be gradual and imperfect. In consideration of this fact, the writer was led to make another experiment, that of producing a more perfect combustion, by throwing into the flame one of its supporters. This may be done in several ways, but the simplest and most convenient is atmospheric air, thrown in by means of a bellows. For this purpose the exhalations of the lungs will not do as well, inasmuch as they not only contain less oxygen, but also contain a large portion of carbonic acid, which neutralizes so much of the remaining oxygen as to render it unfit for the support of combustion.

"The air-pipe must pass along by the vapor-pipe, and discharged about an inch and a half beyond it in the very centre of the flame, and in precisely the same direction. The calibre of the air-pipe at its apex, must be equal to that of the vapor-pipe; it must be made as small as possible without being enlarged at the end, as any enlargement there would derange the vapor flame; it must also be constructed of platina, as that is the only metal that will resist for any length of time, the heat of the burning vapor.

"The air-pipe appears to throw out a pale blue flame, about two inches in length, small and pointed. At the very point of this flame, the oxygen being all consumed, the greatest amount of heat is produced, and fusion of the solder takes place without oxydation; but within the blue flame, or far from it, where oxygen preponderates, oxydation of the solder goes on rapidly.

The necessary weight to be given to the bellows, can only be determined by experiment, as it depends entirely upon the force of the rest of the instrument.

"The extra heat gained by the introduction of the air-pipe, is nearly all concentrated at the apex of the blue flame, which may be brought to bear upon the point, to be soldered, while the vapor flame keeps the whole work in a state of readiness."

Dr. R. Somerby, of Louisville, Ky., has invented a furnace and blow-pipe, which every dentist would find exceedingly convenient and useful in his mechanical workshop.

By the invention of this most useful and valuable contrivance, Dr. Somerby has done the profession a great service. Solder-

ing by the ordinary method is both hurtful to the lungs, and productive of great injury to the eyes. The process of solder-

Fig. 159.

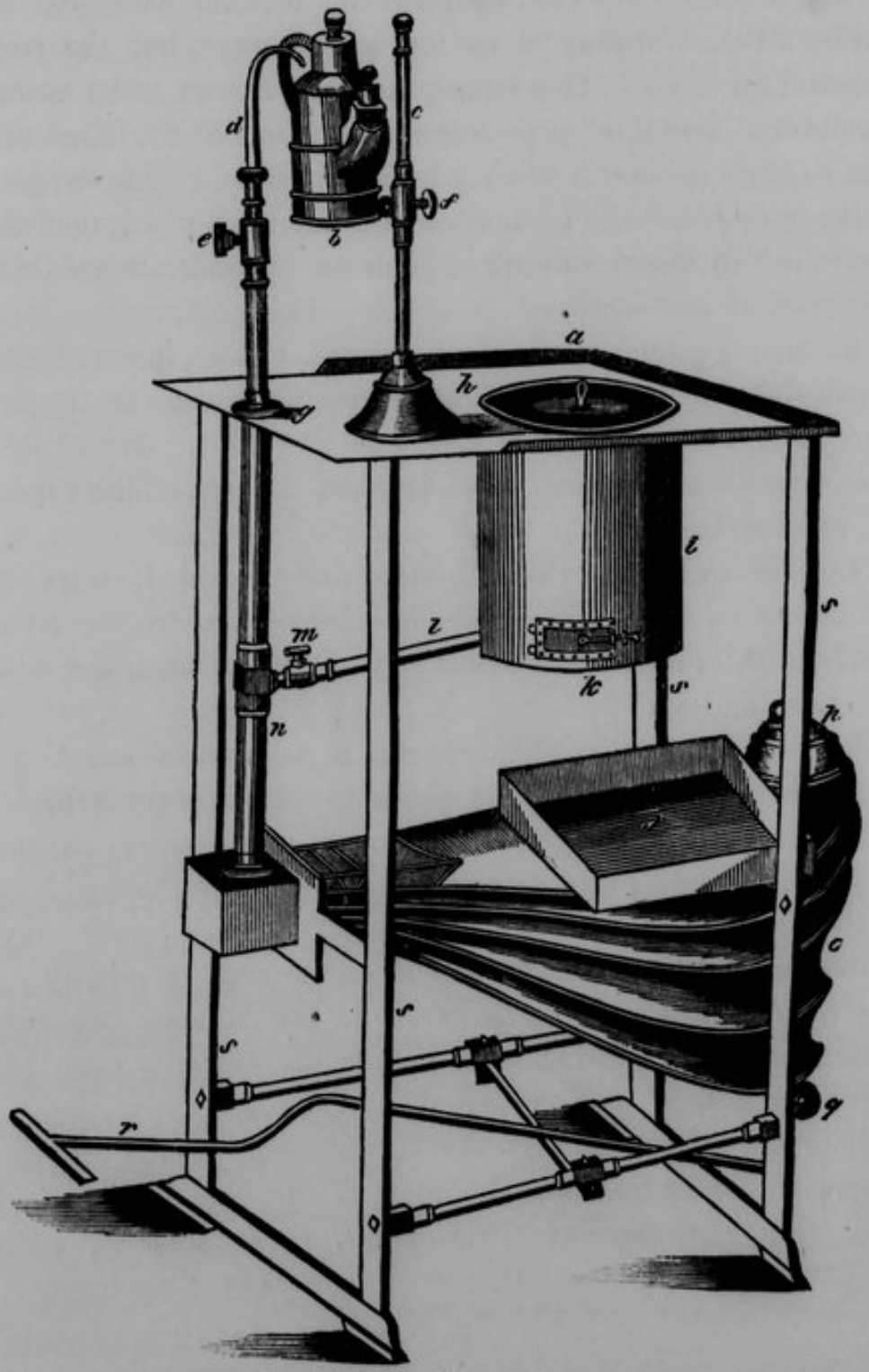
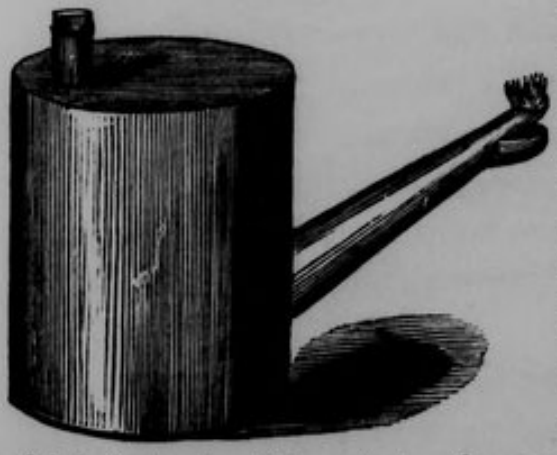


Fig. 159. *a* A perspective of Dr. R. Somerby's concentrated blow-pipe and furnace ; *b* The lamp ; *c* Lamp stand ; *d* Blow-pipe ; *e* Cock, to cut off the air from blow-pipe ; *f* Slide to raise or lower the lamp ; *g* Top of table ; *h* Cover to the furnace ; *i* The furnace ; *j* The pan to receive the ashes from the furnace ; *k* The valve at bottom of furnace ; *l* The pipe leading from the bellows to

ing is rendered by far and altogether more easy by this blow-pipe than by the usual method, and is, therefore, to those of the profession who are stationary, and occupy themselves much in mechanical dentistry, invaluable. The furnace attached to it answers all the purposes of melting gold, solder, and the metal employed for casts. The frame is made of iron, and so constructed and arranged as to occupy but little room. The smoke from the furnace may be carried off by means of a stove-pipe—the lower piece of which, however, should be so arranged that it may be raised and lowered at pleasure, and of a conical shape, so as to cover the whole of the opening into the furnace. When the furnace is used, this should be raised, and let down when it is not needed. And as useful as is this apparatus to the dentist, it is equally valuable to the chemist and mineralogist, or for any purpose requiring a steady blast from the blow-pipe or heat from a furnace.

The most common method, however, of soldering, is with an ordinary spirit or oil lamp and simple blow-pipe, but by either, considerable practice is necessary to accomplish the process with ease, and the perfection of finish, which may be put on a piece of dental mechanism, depends, in a great measure, upon the manner in which this part of the operation is performed.

Fig. 160.

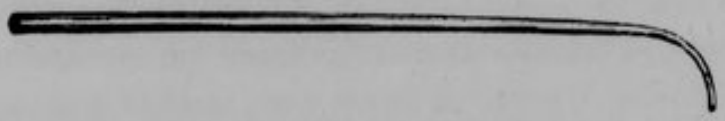


The lamp should hold at least a pint, and have a spout three or four inches long and about three-fourths of an inch in diameter. The appearance of such a lamp is exhibited in Fig. 160. The blow-pipe should be from fifteen to eighteen inches long, have a tolerably large orifice, and the end which is to be taken into the mouth should either be gilded or plated with silver. It should be curved in the manner represented in Fig. 161.

the furnace ; *m* The stop-cock to cut off the wind from furnace ; *n* The main pipe leading from the bellows to the furnace and blow-pipe ; *o* The bellows ; *p* Weight on the top of bellows ; *r* The treadle ; *s* The table legs.

When a spirit lamp is used, and the author thinks it preferable to oil, the wick should be large enough to fill the spout, to prevent the flame from extending back into the body of the lamp and causing an explosion, which is very apt to happen when this precaution is not observed. The coal containing the work

Fig. 161.



to be soldered, may be either held in the hand or in a copper or sheet iron cup held by a wooden handle. The flame of the lamp should first be thrown upon the plaster and kept there until its temperature is raised to a red heat, then directed upon the part to be soldered until it is heated to nearly a white heat, when it should be brought to a smaller focus, and kept steadily upon the part where it is desired that the solder should take effect. When this fuses and spreads itself along the line of connection between the clasp and the plate, it should be instantly removed and directed upon any other part or parts to be soldered.

If the flame be continued too long, there will be danger of melting the plate, and by an improper application of heat, the solder may be partially fused and run together, forming small globules. But a little practice will enable the student to determine the quantity of heat required and the length of time it should be continued. If the solder, after it has fused, flows in a wrong direction, the flame of the lamp should be immediately concentrated upon the point where it should take effect, when it will at once be brought to it.

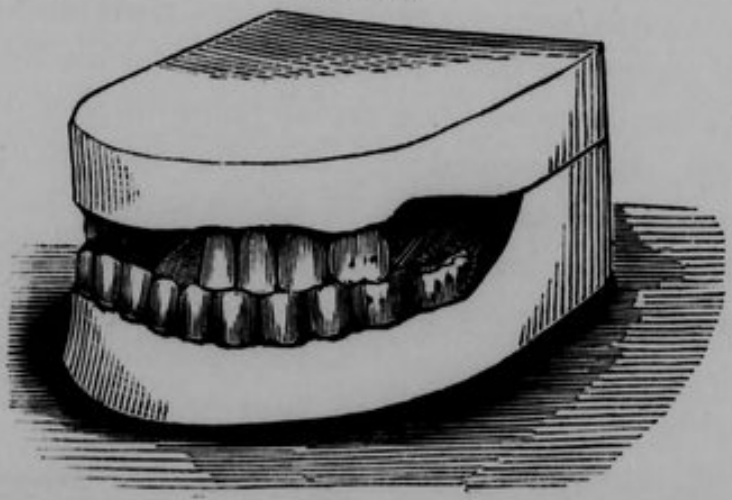
The plaster, after it has become cool, should be removed and the piece put in a mixture of equal parts of sulphuric acid and water, where it should remain long enough for the borax, which will be found adhering to the plate, to be dissolved, and for cleansing the gold. But a few minutes, however, will be required for this.

CHAPTER NINTH.

MANNER OF OBTAINING AN ANTAGONIZING MODEL.

If the model is required for antagonizing only part of an upper denture—there being natural teeth in the lower jaw that antagonize with those which remain in the upper—it may be obtained in the following manner.

Fig. 162.



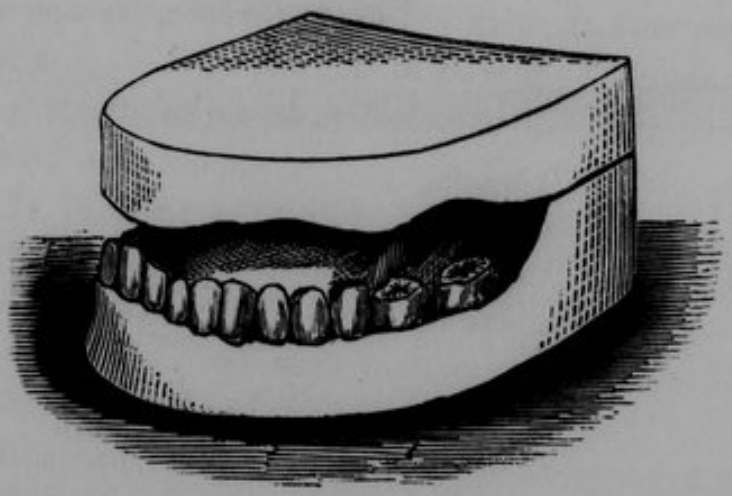
After having made the surface of the solder, uniting the plate and clasps, smooth with suitable scorpers, (scrapers,) and files, the plate should be placed in the mouth, and, if a series of artificial teeth are to be attached to it, a rim of softened bees-wax should be placed on it; the patient should then be requested to close his jaws *naturally*, imbedding the teeth of the lower jaw in it. While the mouth is thus closed, the wax on the outside of the teeth and alveolar ridge should be pressed closely against them. This done, the patient may open his mouth, when the plate and wax impression should be carefully removed and placed on a piece of paper, with the plate upwards. The upper side of the plate should now be smeared with olive oil, and filled with a thin paste made of plaster of paris, and as soon

as the plaster has become sufficiently thick, it should be applied until it is raised half an inch above the plate, and extended back of it on the paper an inch and a half or two inches. As soon as the plaster has set, it should be neatly trimmed around the edges, and on the lower surface behind the plate and wax, a deep crucial groove should be cut, or several conical depressions, three-eighths of an inch deep, excavated, to serve as moulds for the formation of corresponding ridges or protuberances on the model with which this is to antagonize. The grooves or depressions thus formed, as well as the impression made in the wax by the teeth of the lower jaw, after the plaster has become dry, should be oiled, and filled with a thin paste of plaster, and as soon as the latter has acquired sufficient consistence, it should be put on until this side is raised to a thickness equal to that of the side first filled.

By this simple contrivance, an exact representation of the manner in which the jaws meet, is had, and the most accurate and convenient antagonizing model procured that can possibly be obtained, and provided with this, the dentist is prepared to select, arrange and antagonize the teeth.

After the plaster has set, it may be trimmed as before directed. When it has become perfectly dry, the two pieces may be separated, and the wax and plate carefully removed. The model should now be varnished, and when put together will present the appearance exhibited in Fig. 162.

Fig. 163.

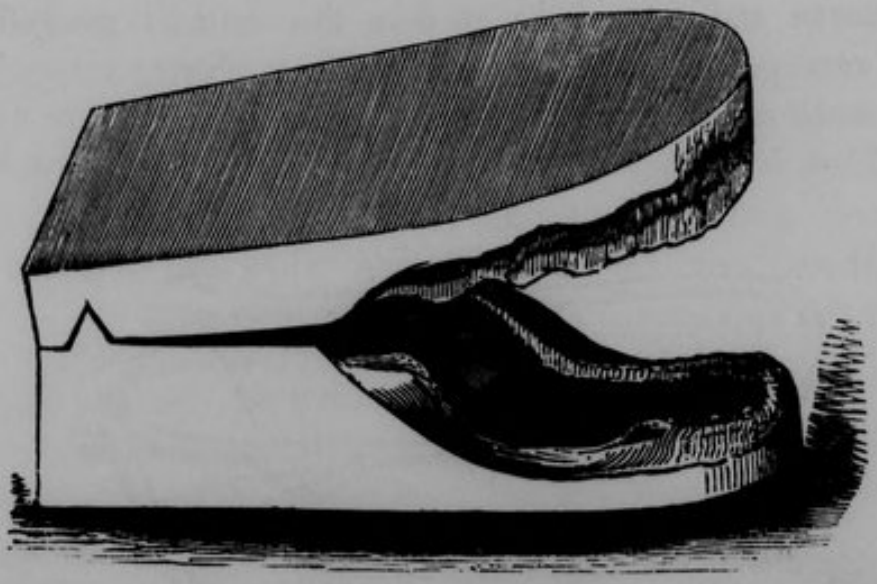


When the model is designed for antagonizing a complete up-

per denture, a piece of wood, equal in width to the length required for the artificial teeth may be passed through the wax after it has been arranged to the plate at a point corresponding with, and in the direction of, the median line. The plate may then be placed in the mouth, and the patient directed to close his jaw *naturally*, until the teeth of the lower come in contact with the wood. The mouth may now be opened, and the plate and wax impression of the lower teeth removed. This done, the plaster model may be made in the manner as before directed, and, when completed, it will present the appearance represented in Fig. 163.

An antagonizing model may also be made by adjusting a rim of wax to the plate corresponding in width to the length proposed for the artificial teeth, and cut away until all the teeth in the lower jaw touch it at the same instant. This done, the plaster is applied in the manner as before directed.

Fig. 164.

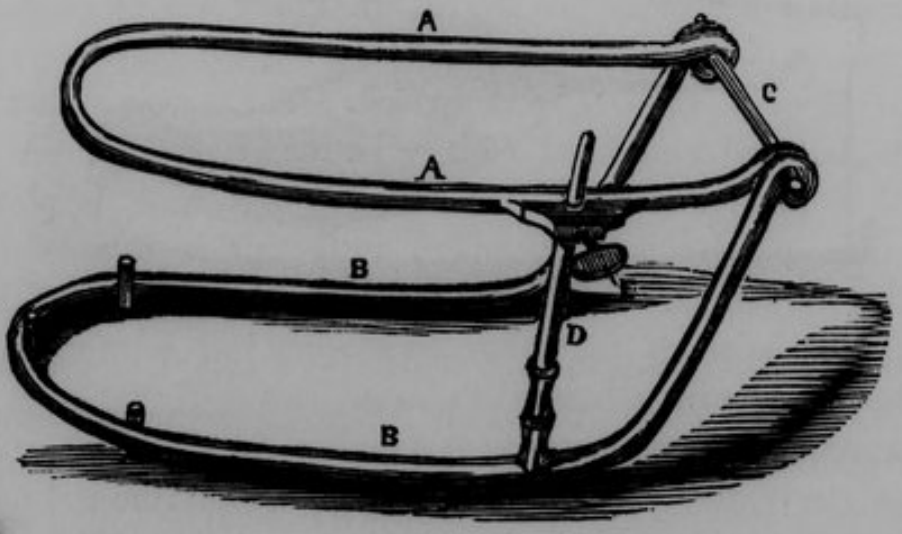


In making an antagonizing model for a complete denture, or double set of artificial teeth, the following is the usual method of procedure. After having fitted accurately both plates, a rim of soft bees-wax is placed between their convex surfaces, of about an inch and a quarter in width. A piece of soft wood, exactly corresponding in width, to the length it is designed that both the upper and lower central incisors should have, is passed through the wax between the plates, at the median line.

The whole may now be placed in the mouth of the patient, and each plate accurately adjusted to the alveolar border. The patient should next be directed to close his jaw naturally until the plates are brought in contact with the edges of the interposed piece of wood. This done, the whole may be removed from the mouth, the plates oiled, and a plaster model obtained in the manner as before described. See Fig. 164.

Another method of making an antagonizing model consists in placing a rim of wax on each plate, each corresponding in width to the length respectively designed for the teeth. The two plates are put in the mouth, the lower, first, and then the upper. The jaws are now carefully closed; and if the rims of wax touch at any one point sooner than another, the plates are removed, the wax trimmed, and this operation is repeated until the two rims of wax meet all the way round, at the same instant, and are exactly of the right width. This done, the wax is trimmed on the outside, until the proper contour is given to the cheeks and lips. The median line is now marked, the plates removed from the mouth, and the plaster antagonizing model made in the manner as before described.

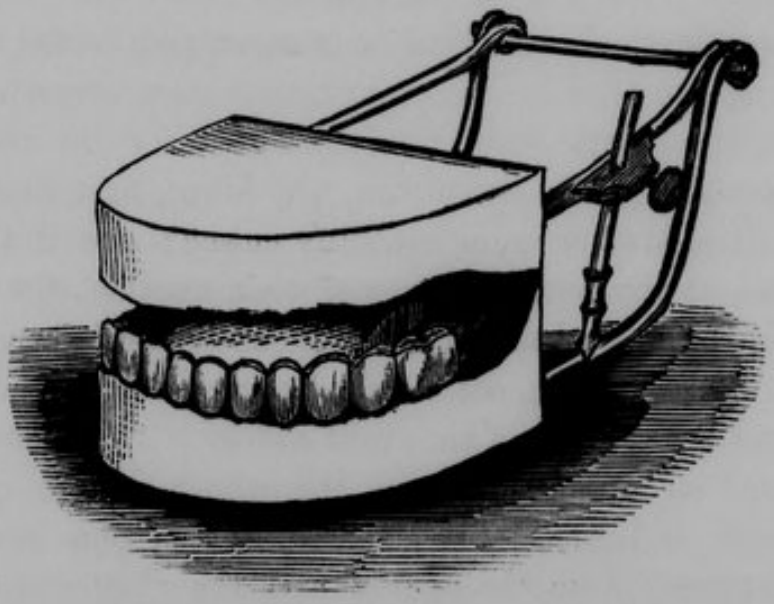
Fig. 165.



Dr. Thomas W. Evans, of Paris, has invented a very simple instrument, by means of which the extension of the plaster back

of the plates and wax is rendered unnecessary. With an antagonizing model made in this instrument, the bite may be changed at pleasure, by increasing or diminishing the length of the rod between the frame-work supporting the upper and lower parts of the model. The instrument is represented in Fig. 165.

Fig. 166.



In making an antagonizing model with this instrument, the following is the method of procedure pursued by the writer. Supposing the model to be for an upper set of teeth, a rim of wax is placed upon the plate, and all the preparatory steps gone through, as already described. The concave part of the plate is oiled and filled with a batter of plaster; the upper part of the frame-work of the instrument A A is placed on it, more plaster is then added until this is completely covered. When the plaster has set, it is turned over, so that the wax impression of the lower teeth and jaw is upwards; this is then filled with a batter of plaster, and the lower part of the frame-work of the instrument turning on the hinge rod C is placed on it, the screw being loosened so that the rod may not keep the jaws too wide apart. More plaster is added until the lower jaw of the instrument B B is imbedded in it. This done, the rod is moved until it presses against it behind the plaster, when it is made fast with the screw.

After the plaster has become hard, the jaws of the instrument are opened, the wax warmed and removed. The model will now present the appearance represented in Fig. 166. If it should be found that longer or shorter teeth are required than is indicated by the model, the width of the bite may be increased or diminished, by increasing the length of the rod between the two jaws of the instrument.

CHAPTER TENTH.

ARRANGING, FITTING, ANTAGONIZING, AND ATTACHING PORCELAIN TEETH TO A PLATE—FINISHING AND APPLYING THE PIECE.

WHERE a vacuity, requiring only one or even five or six teeth, is to be filled, it is important that the artificial should correspond in shade and color, with the natural organs, for in proportion as they are whiter or darker, will the contrast be striking. But of the two, it is better that they should be a little darker than any whiter. Their outer configuration should resemble, too, the shape of those which have been lost.

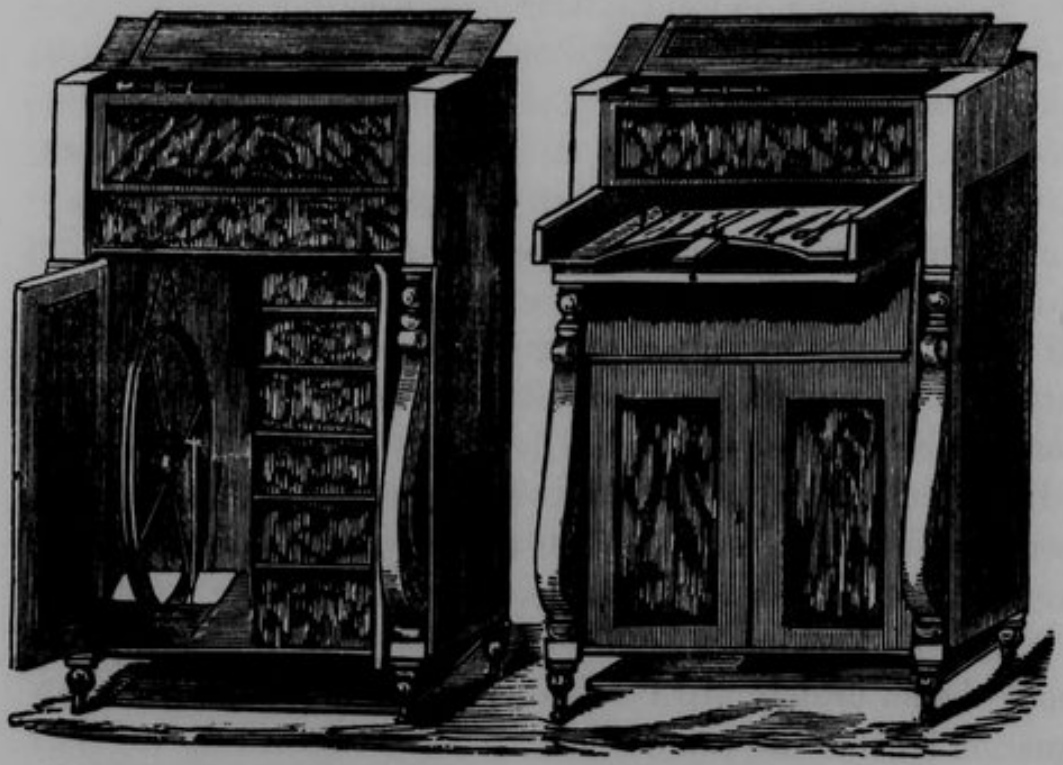
As they are selected, they should be arranged on the plate, and retained in their place by a piece of wax placed on it behind them. If they do not fit closely to the plate and gums, they should be ground on an emery or corundum wheel or small grindstone, until they do, and be so arranged as to meet the teeth with which they are intended to antagonize, at the same instant the natural teeth, that have antagonists, come together. The antagonizing models will enable the dentist to do this with the most perfect accuracy.

In arranging an entire set for the upper, or, for both jaws, the teeth should be so adjusted that the inner or palatine tubercles of the upper, shall strike the depressions in the lower, before the outer tubercles come together. This is a precaution which should be observed in antagonizing single as well as block teeth. If the outer tubercles strike first, it will spring and loosen the plate. A small space too should be left between the last tooth of the upper and of the lower jaw.

As it is often necessary to cut away a considerable portion of a tooth in order to make it fit accurately to the plate, a number of corundum wheels, or small grindstones, varying from three-

fourths of an inch to six or seven inches in diameter, are required, and these should be turned in a small foot-lathe, like the one represented in Fig. 167. Connected with the one here shown is a cabinet work-table, so arranged as to furnish every convenience required by the dentist. It is also so contrived, that it may be closed at pleasure, concealing the implements and appliances belonging to it, presenting the appearance of a beautiful piece of furniture. Fig. 167 represents it with the upper and lower parts open, exposing the mandrel on which grinding wheels and finishing brushes may be placed, according as the one or other may be needed, as also the wheel and treadle by which they are made to revolve, and several small drawers. In Fig. 168 is shown the work table, partially drawn out, and the lower part closed.

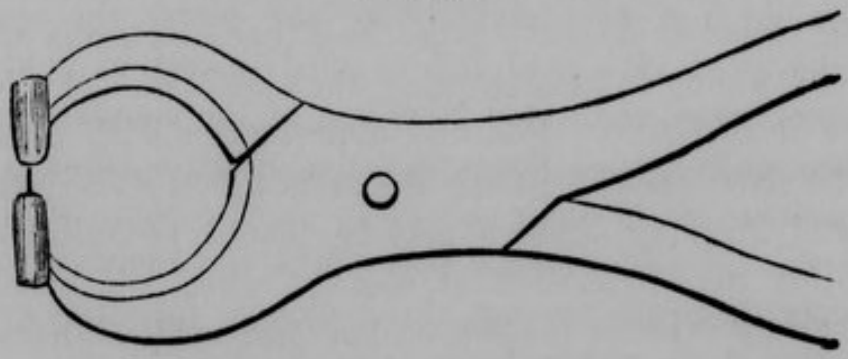
Fig. 167. Fig. 168.



After the teeth have been thus arranged and adjusted, a gold plate, large enough to cover the posterior surface of each, should be fitted to them in the following manner: Each tooth has securely fixed in the back part of it two platina rivets, for the purpose of connecting it to the backing. Each backing, there-

fore, should have two holes punched through it, by means of a pair of dentists' punch forceps, like those represented in Fig. 169, large enough to admit the rivets of the teeth, and of the

Fig. 169.



same distance from each other. After having punched one hole, however, the point for the other may be marked by placing the backing against the tooth, with the rivet nearest the coronal extremity in the hole; then, by moving the strip of gold plate two or three times to the right and left, a mark will be left upon it, which will indicate the distance the rivets are from each other. The holes on the back part of the plate should be slightly enlarged, and after placing it on the tooth, it should be made fast, by very slightly riveting, with a light hammer, the ends of the platina rivets, or bending them in opposite directions. If the ends of the platina rivets are struck up so as completely to fill the holes in the backings, it will prevent the solder from flowing in and uniting the two as firmly as it should do. The backings should be slightly hollowed before they are put on, that they may fit up closely to every part of the back of each tooth, and the plate employed for this purpose should be slightly thicker than that on which the teeth are mounted.

After the backings have been made fast to the teeth, they should be accurately fitted to the plate, and retained in their situation by the wax behind them.

The plate, with the teeth and wax on it, after the backings have been put on, should be carefully removed from the plaster model, and placed on a large piece of charcoal, using the precaution not to disturb or disarrange the teeth. A paste, made with plaster of paris and water, of the thickness of thin batter,

should next be poured around them, until the outer surface and coronal extremities are covered to the thickness of half an inch. When this has become hard, the wax may be removed from behind the teeth.

If it should be found, on the removal of the wax, that the backings do not fit accurately to the plate, the apertures should be filled with gold foil or small pieces of gold plate. This done, borax, triturated in water, in the manner as before described, until it is of the consistence of cream, should be applied with a camel's-hair pencil to all the parts where it is wished that the solder should take effect, not omitting the platina rivets that pass through the backings, for experience has proven that these cannot be made too secure.

Mr. Andrew Wilson, a dentist, of Edinburgh, adopts a different method in backing mineral teeth. He says, "After having partially fitted the tooth to the plate, take a piece of thick platina foil, as thick as can be used conveniently, and pressing it against the back of the tooth, perforate it where it is marked by the pins; then cut it into the shape of the back as wished to be, and press it as closely as possible to the back of the tooth.

"It will now be requisite to apply a little borax to the platina pins which come through the back, and placing the tooth with its face downwards upon a thin piece of pumice, covered with dry plaster of paris, put several pieces of gold, (according to the thickness required,) upon the platina back, slowly heat it, gradually raising the heat till it is considered safe to melt the gold with the blow-pipe, when, upon continuing the blast, the gold will rapidly flow over the whole platina surface, incorporating so accurately with the pins in the tooth, that I have never seen a case withdrawn when the tooth has been broken, during the whole time it has been in use here, (nearly eight years,) they always remaining firmly fixed in the backing upon the plate.

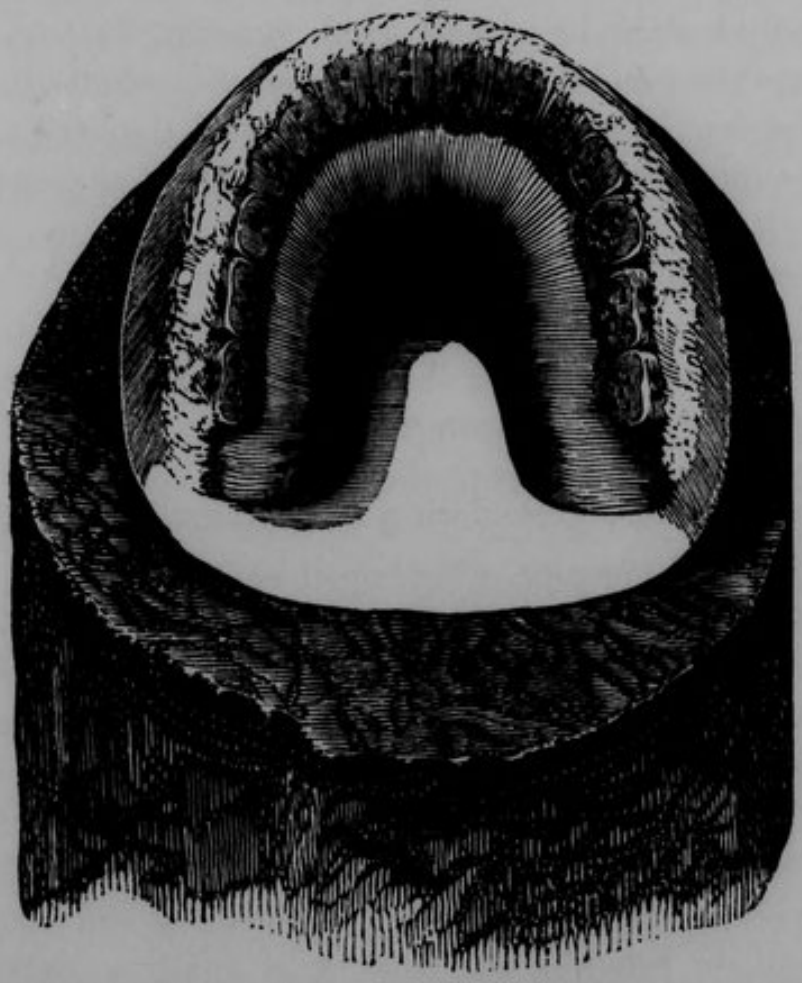
"After the backing has been run, and the tooth allowed to cool slowly, it is filed to the requisite thickness and shape, when, being closely fitted to the base, it is finally soldered to the plate," in the manner as we have already described. In arranging the teeth on the plate for soldering, Mr. Wilson says

he uses a mixture of equal parts of white sand and plaster, placing a thin strip of platina on the outside of the teeth, with a "layer of the above mixture on both sides of it, so that should the plaster crack in soldering, although it is less liable to do so than plaster alone, the platina keeps the teeth from shifting their places. The whole time occupied in heating and backing a tooth, is about half an hour, and when several are doing at once, a little longer."

Instead of using the strip of platina plate to prevent the teeth from becoming displaced, in case the plaster cracks, the author has been in the habit of using thin sheet iron.

When the surface of the plate covering the alveolar ridge is very uneven, greater accuracy may, perhaps, be secured in fitting the backings to it, by placing the plate on a piece of char-

Fig. 170.



coal, after the teeth have been arranged, ground up, antagonized and fixed to it with wax, then covering their outer or labial sur-

faces and coronal extremities with a paste or batter of plaster and fine sand, to the thickness of half an inch. After this has become dry, the wax may be warmed and removed, and the teeth taken off, one by one, backed, and then replaced. In this way the backings may be adjusted, and made to fit with the greatest exactness. A piece thus prepared, and fixed on a piece of charcoal, for soldering, is shown in Fig. 170.

After applying the borax, a number of small pieces of solder, made from recipe No. 1 or 2, should be applied immediately on the line of connection between each tooth and the plate, and one over each rivet.

In soldering the teeth to the plate, the heat should be applied by means of a large flaring flame, until the whole mass becomes red, and then by one of about half an inch in diameter, thrown immediately on the line of connection between the backing of a single tooth and the plate, and as soon as the solder flows freely here and over each rivet, it should be passed to the adjoining tooth, and so on until the process is completed. When the solder runs in a wrong direction, the heat, as before stated, should be increased at the point where it is wished that it should take effect, which will, immediately, if a sufficient amount be applied, cause it to flow in that direction.

FINISHING AND APPLYING A PLATE MOUNTED WITH PORCELAIN TEETH.

After the process of soldering is completed, the plaster, as soon as the piece has become sufficiently cool, should be carefully removed from the teeth and plate. The piece may now be placed in a glass or porcelain vessel containing a mixture of equal parts of sulphuric acid and water, and remain there until the borax, which, by the process of soldering, has lost its water of crystallization and assumed a glassy hardness, is decomposed. This process is termed by jewelers, pickling, and requires from ten minutes to half an hour for its completion, according to the strength of the acid and the quantity of vitrified borax on the plate. After this is decomposed, the acid should be washed from the piece, and any rough portions of solder on the

plate or backings carefully removed by means of suitable scrapers.

In removing the roughness which may have been occasioned by the imperfect fusion and unevenness of any of the pieces of solder, or from its flowing in a wrong direction, care should be taken not to cut away too much of the plate. After the work has been made as smooth as possible with scrapers, which should be so constructed as to be readily applied and made to act upon every part of the surface of the plate, backings of the teeth and clasps, it should be rubbed with pieces of scotch stone and water until every scratch is removed.

The piece should now be placed in a porcelain vessel containing the following mixture:

Pul. nitrate of potassa,	℥ ij.
Muriate of soda,	℥ i.
Alum,	℥ i.
Water,	℥ iv.

After boiling for half an hour in this, and the object of which is to decompose the copper in the surface of the solder, it should be boiled a few minutes in four ounces of water, and one ounce of sub. carb. soda, for the purpose of neutralizing the acid formed by the first mixture, and then washed with a brush in water.

The copper being removed from the surface of the plate, the gold will have a beautiful orange color, which it will always retain. The secretions of the mouth will not only fail to tarnish it, but it will be free from the disagreeable taste of which so many, who wear artificial teeth applied on plate, complain.

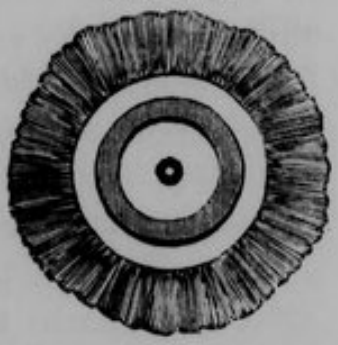
The process of finishing having been conducted thus far, it may be completed by polishing every part of the surface of the plate, backings of the teeth, and clasps, with highly tempered, and finely polished steel burnishers, or a brush-wheel, rotten-stone, and *jeweler's rouge.** If burnishers are used, they should

* *Jeweler's rouge* is made by dissolving copperas in water, filtering the solution, and adding a filtered solution of pearlash, or subcarbonate of soda, as

be frequently dipped in a mixture of water and castile soap, and in polishing, should be rubbed backwards and forwards in the same direction, until every part of the gold exhibits a high polish. Burnishers of different shapes and sizes will be required for different parts of the work.

A large piece, however, can be polished in much less time, if not more perfectly, with a revolving brush, like the one represented in Fig. 171, turned in a foot-lathe, (see Figs. 167 and 168,) than with burnishers. But, before the rotten-stone is applied to the brush, it should be lightly smeared with suet, which is done by holding a small piece against the brush while it is revolving. The rotten-stone is applied in the same manner, and with the brush thus charged, the polishing may commence, but the plate should not be exposed too long to the friction of the brush and rotten-stone, as they wear it away very rapidly. After the piece has been exposed to the action of the brush until all the fine scratches have been removed, it should be thoroughly washed with a hand-brush in soap and water, then in water, and afterwards rubbed with a piece of soft buckskin, wrapped or sewed around a small blunt-pointed piece of wood and rouge, until every part is made brilliant.

Fig. 171.



A very beautiful finish can be given to a dental substitute composed of single teeth mounted on a base, as just described, by placing a narrow collet around each tooth, and soldering it to the plate. This should be done before the teeth are united to the plate; and it may be made of gold plate or wire, but it should not come down on the teeth more than the sixteenth of an inch. It may be so arranged, as to extend from the backing on one side of each tooth, around to the same point on the other; and when the proper care is used in fitting it to the tooth, it prevents the introduction of foreign matter between it and the plate. It is to single teeth what a rimmed plate is to

long as any sediment falls. The liquor is then filtered again, and the sediment left on the filter, washed by running clean water through it, and then calcined until it is of a scarlet color.—*Chemistry of the Arts*, vol. 2, p. 529.

gum or block teeth. But when the upper part of the teeth will be exposed in speaking or laughing, it should not be applied.

In the application of teeth prepared in the manner as just described, it often becomes necessary to make some little alteration in the adaptation of the clasps. This, the operator can always effect, if they have been attached to the plate with the proper care, with a pair of common pliers, and it should be borne in mind that they should never be so applied as to prevent the patient from removing and replacing the piece at pleasure. He should be directed to do this two or three times every day, and each time, to clean the teeth to which the clasps are applied, thoroughly, and it would be well, too, for the artificial piece to be taken out every night on going to bed, and remain out until morning.

The English porcelain teeth are mounted upon a base differently from those manufactured in the United States. They are attached by means of gold wire, soldered to the plate, which pass up through the teeth, and are riveted or soldered.

A substitute for the incisors and cuspidati, thus mounted, is represented in Fig. 172, copied from the late work of Dr. James Robinson, on the teeth. This engraving will convey a sufficiently correct idea of the method of attaching the English mineral or porcelain teeth to a metallic base, to render any other description unnecessary. Metallic backings, however, riveted and soldered, in the manner as before directed, is a more secure method of attachment.

Fig. 172.



CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

MOUNTING NATURAL TEETH UPON A PLATE, OR METALLIC BASE.

NATURAL teeth may be mounted on a plate, constructed in the same manner as described for the porcelain, and secured by means of screws or rivets. The latter, however, are preferable to the former. They may also be secured in the following manner: A gold plate is to be made of the size of the space intended to be supplied with teeth, and about an eighth or sixth of an inch in width. To the inner circle of this, the flat side of a half round gold wire must be soldered, each end of it extending far enough back to form a clasp around the tooth to which it is intended to be applied. The teeth are next to be selected and fitted on the model, and then with a saw, of the thickness of the plate, a horizontal groove is cut across their posterior surfaces, so that the plate may be let into them up to the wire, which is afterwards to be made fast by means of rivets, two in each tooth. This done, all that remains is to fit the ends of the wire up close to the teeth, on each side of the vacuity, and around the ones they are designed to encompass.

This method of mounting natural teeth, however, is not so good as the one first described, yet, if it be properly done, and the mouth in which they are placed be healthy, they may answer tolerably well for a few years. Teeth inserted in this manner, however, seldom last very long, because the groove into which the plate is set, receives and retains the juices of the mouth, which will, in a short time, corrode the teeth. When teeth are mounted in the manner as first described, the secretions of the mouth, it is true, get between them and the plate but then, only one surface is exposed to their corrosive action; whereas when secured in the manner as last described three surfaces are exposed, namely, the one which rests upon the gum, and one on each side of the plate.

But the first method is preferable, for the reason that the gum is pressed upon by a broad well adapted plate, whereas, when they are fastened in the manner last described, it is pressed upon only by the ends of the teeth, which, as a necessary consequence, produce more or less irritation.

Porcelain teeth, however, having, since the late improvements made in their manufacture, almost wholly superseded the use of all other dental substitutes, it is not necessary to enter into a more minute description of the manner of mounting natural teeth on plate.

Having now described the manner of constructing a plate, attaching clasps and teeth to it, and of cleaning up and finishing the piece, we shall proceed to notice the manner in which dental substitutes applied in this way should be constructed—giving a sufficient variety of cases to enable the student to determine the proper method of procedure in any one that may be likely to present itself.

CHAPTER TWELFTH.

DENTAL SUBSTITUTES FOR SPECIAL CASES.

In supplying the loss of teeth, the ingenuity of the dentist is often taxed to its greatest extent. No two cases are precisely alike, and, therefore, no directions can be given upon the subject from which it will not often be necessary to deviate. The illustrations, however, which follow, will, we trust, from their variety, enable the practitioner to construct an efficient and useful substitute for any teeth, the loss of which he may be called upon to supply.

AN ARTIFICIAL CENTRAL INCISOR FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH ONE CLASP.

Fig. 173.



In the insertion of a central incisor on plate, the usual practice is to extend the plate back behind the teeth on each side of the mouth to the second bicuspid or first molar, and to secure it in the mouth by two clasps, but this is not always necessary; it can often be securely and firmly fixed by extending the plate back on one side, and clasping it to a single bicuspid or molar, and when applied in this maner, it is frequently worn with more comfort and satisfaction by the patient. The author has applied single teeth in this way in a large proportion of the cases he has had since 1842, and even two teeth may often be securely retained with one clasp. In extending the plate back in the mouth, it should never be fitted close around the necks of the teeth behind which it passes, for the reason that it is

liable to irritate and inflame the apices of the gums. The author, in common with other practitioners, was in the habit of doing this for many years, but observing the bad effects produced by it, he abandoned the practice many years ago, and has since, in nearly all the cases which he has had, left a space of about an eighth of an inch between the plate and the teeth which it passed, until it reached the one to which it was to be clasped. A correct idea of the manner in which a central incisor on plate should be applied, may be formed by an examination of Fig. 173. A cuspidatus or lateral incisor or bicuspid, may be applied in the same way, and if the second bicuspid or first molar is rendered unfit, by disease, to clasp to, the plate may be extended back to the second molar, or it may be even carried across the mouth, and clasped to a tooth on the opposite side.

AN ARTIFICIAL CENTRAL INCISOR MOUNTED ON A PLATE WITH TWO CLASPS.

Fig. 174.



Cases frequently occur in which it is necessary to employ two clasps for the support of a single incisor, and the accompanying cut, Fig. 174, will indicate the description of plate most proper to be used. The plate as here shown, is extended back, as may be seen, to the first molar on each side, and provided with clasps suitable for this class of teeth.

TWO ARTIFICIAL CENTRAL INCISORS FOR THE UPPEP JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH CLASPS.

In the application of the two upper central incisors on plate, two clasps, one on each side, sometimes become necessary, although they can often be securely and steadily held in their place with one. But generally two should be preferred—and in which case, the plate should be extended back, like

the one represented in Fig. 174, on each side along the alveolar ridge to the first permanent molar, but if this is defective, it may be carried to the second molar, and in case this should be so much impaired by disease as to render it unfit to be clasped to, it need not extend further back than the second or even the first bicuspid. When the teeth are gone on one side of the mouth, it should be extended back on the other and secured by two clasps on that side, as, for example, to the second bicuspid and second molar, or to any other two teeth which may offer a firmer and more secure support. Fig. 175 represents two central incisors mounted on plate and intended to be clasped to the first molar on each side of the mouth. For a similar case in the lower jaw, one clasp may be made to hold the piece.

FIG. 175.



ARTIFICIAL INCISORS AND CUSPIDATI FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE, WITH CLASPS.

FIG. 176.



The construction of the plate represented in Fig. 176, is upon precisely the same principle as the preceding, and the only difference is, that the part of the plate on which the teeth are mounted fills a larger vacancy in the alveolar arch. And, as in the former case, when the teeth on one side of the mouth are too much decayed, or are incapable of affording a secure and substantial support, even this number of teeth may be held by two clasps on one side of the mouth, and they are often applied with but one, but whenever this is done, the plate should be extended half or three-fourths of an inch back of the tooth to

which it is to be clasped. If this precaution is neglected, the piece, from its weight, by acting as a lever upon the tooth, will soon loosen it and cause it to drop.

TWO ARTIFICIAL BICUSPIDS FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH ONE CLASP.

Fig. 177.



The manner of constructing a substitute for two upper bicuspids on the same side of the mouth, is exhibited in Fig. 177, but when the adjoining first molar does not offer a suitable support for the piece, the plate should be extended back on the inside of it, and secured by a clasp to the second, and if this also is diseased, or has been removed, the plate may be carried across to the opposite side of the mouth, and secured to such teeth as may there offer the best means of support. But in this, as in other similar cases, the plate should be thick, and adapted with the most perfect accuracy to the parts on which it is to rest. If the clasp or clasps, if more than one is applied, are of the proper width, and well adapted, the teeth will be held firmly in their place, and be worn without inconvenience.

ARTIFICIAL BICUSPIDS AND FIRST MOLARS, FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH CLASPS.

Fig. 178.



The usual plan of constructing a plate for a dental substitute like the one named above, is to cover the parts of the alveolar ridge to be supplied with artificial teeth, extending the plate across immediately behind the front teeth, and confining the posterior extremities with clasps applied to the second molars. Dr. Roper, of Philadelphia, however, is of the opinion, that much greater stability may be given to the piece by using two separate plates and

connecting them together by means of a strip of thick plate passing up under the palatine arch, in the manner as shown in in Fig. 178. This method of connecting two pieces, he described to the author in 1844. It will also be found valuable for giving stability to a narrow atmospheric pressure plate for an entire upper set of teeth.

ARTIFICIAL INCISORS, CUSPIDATI AND BICUSPIDS FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE, WITH CLASPS.

Fig. 179.



When the crowns of the first molars of the upper jaw are long and well developed, and in a healthy condition, the loss of the ten anterior teeth may be replaced with an artificial substitute that will subserve the purposes of correct enunciation as well as the natural organs, and upon which mastication may be very conveniently performed. The teeth, however, should be attached to a thick and strong plate, and secured to the first molars by broad clasps. They should also be correctly and accurately antagonized, for upon this will their utility in a great measure depend. The plate, too, should extend back of the teeth to which it is clasped, and when the second molars and dentes sapientiæ are wanting, it should cover the whole of the alveolar ridge, in the manner as represented in Fig. 179, but if these still remain, it may rest upon the gums on the palatine side of them, but it should not touch them.

ARTIFICIAL INCISORS, CUSPIDATI, BICUSPIDS, FIRST RIGHT, AND FIRST AND SECOND LEFT MOLARS FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH ONE CLASP.

The dentist is sometimes called on to replace the loss of upper teeth, when there is only a single molar remaining. It

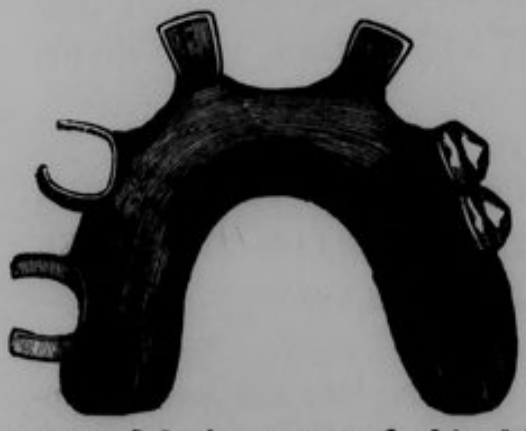
would, unquestionably, be better, in cases of this sort, to remove the remaining tooth and apply a whole upper set on the atmospheric pressure principle, but this, he is not always permitted to do. In this case, he may either apply a clasp to the remaining tooth, or, what is perhaps much better, use a cavity plate. In securing a plate sustaining so many teeth, Dr. S. Brown very judiciously directs that it should be very thin and closely fitted to the gums. The teeth, too, he says, should be thin. The author has applied upper sets of teeth in this way, which are worn without the slightest inconvenience, and that have realized his most sanguine expectations. As in the case of the description of the dental substitute last noticed, the clasp should be wide, and accurately fitted to the tooth. (See Fig. 180, in which is represented a set of teeth of this description.)

Fig. 180.



ARTIFICIAL LATERAL INCISORS, AND LEFT BICUSPIDS FOR THE UPPER JAW, MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH TWO CLASPS ON ONE SIDE.

Fig. 181.



It often happens that there are several vacuities in the alveolar ridge which the dentist is called upon to fill, and the insertion of artificial teeth in cases of this description always require more judgment and mechanical tact and skill, than in filling only a single aperture. After obtaining a plaster model, in cases of this kind, all the teeth should be re-

moved from it before metallic casts are made, and a plate swaged up over the whole ridge, and the parts of it which cover the places occupied by the remaining teeth, filed out in the manner as described in another place. The accompanying cut, however, will serve to illustrate the manner of constructing dental substitutes for all cases of this nature, but this, as may be perceived, is intended to be secured in the mouth by two clasps on one side of the alveolar ridge—all the teeth on the other having been lost.

The plate, in the case here represented, might have been extended further back, and the first and even second molar replaced, but they were dispensed with, for the reason that there were no teeth further back in the lower jaw than the second bicuspid for them to antagonize with.

CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

THE TEETH TO WHICH IT IS MOST PROPER TO APPLY CLASPS, AND THE MEANS NECESSARY TO PREVENT THE INJURY LIABLE TO RESULT FROM THEIR USE.

Before we proceed to describe the manner of applying a dental substitute with spiral springs, or upon the atmospheric pressure, or suction principle, it will be proper to offer a few remarks upon the teeth to which it is most proper to apply clasps, and the means necessary to prevent the injurious effects liable to result from their use.

Some teeth, owing to their situation in the dental arch and the shape of their crowns, offer a more desirable means of support to a dental substitute to be retained in the mouth by means of clasps than others, and in selecting those which are to be used for this purpose, the exercise of much judgment is often called for. There are many circumstances, however, which should influence the decision of the dentist in this matter. Some of these we shall presently notice.

But, as we have stated in another place, the first molars in the upper jaw, when sound and securely articulated, offer a better means of support to a dental substitute, than any of the other teeth, and when they can be as conveniently employed for this purpose, they should be preferred. Next to these teeth, the second molars, in most cases, are the best. But when neither the first nor second can be used with safety, or when they have been lost, or are so much injured by disease as to render them an insecure means of support, the second bicuspids should be employed. After the last mentioned teeth, the first bicuspids are the next best, and when from the loss or diseased

condition of these, the dentes sapientiæ, if sound, well developed and firmly articulated, may be employed.

A clasp should never be applied to a loose tooth, or to one situated in a diseased socket, or which is so much affected by caries, as to render its perfect restoration and permanent preservation impracticable, and when none but such can be had, the proper course to pursue, is, to extract every tooth in the jaw, and replace the loss of the whole with an entire upper set. The application of clasps to diseased or loose teeth, always aggravates the morbid condition of the parts, and causes the substitute which they sustain, to become a source of annoyance to the patient. Besides, such teeth can be retained in the mouth only for a short time, and when they give way, the artificial appliance becomes useless, and even while it is worn, it is not held firmly in place, but is moved up and down by the action of the lips and tongue, so that its presence can hardly escape observation from the most careless observer.

The crowns of the cuspidati being of a conical shape, are wholly unsuited for the retention of clasps, and, consequently, should never be used for this purpose, if it be possible to avoid it. There are some cases, however, in which it becomes absolutely necessary to apply clasps to them, as for example, when the loss of an incisor is to be replaced with a substitute attached to a narrow plate, and where none of the back teeth are remaining or in a condition to be used as a means of support to the plate. In this case, the clasps should be narrow, and adapted with the greatest accuracy, and this becomes the more essential, as it is necessary that they should be short to prevent being seen. They should also be applied near to the gums, but not near enough to touch and irritate them.

The incisors offer a poorer means of support for a dental substitute than any of the other teeth. It is exceedingly difficult to apply clasps to these teeth in such a manner as to retain even a single tooth with sufficient stability to be worn with any degree of comfort, yet when they are the only ones that can be used, it may sometimes be necessary to apply them even to these teeth, but only as a dernier resort.

Finally, there are many circumstances which it is necessary

to take into consideration in the selection of teeth to be used as a means of support for artificial teeth. For example, a space should never be filed between two sound molar or bicuspid teeth for the purpose of applying a clasp, if there is another tooth to which it can be applied without this operation. The liability of a tooth to decay, to which a clasp has been applied, is always greatly increased by the removal of a portion of its substance. Hence, the separation of two teeth with a file, with a view to the application of a clasp to one of them, should never be resorted to, if it be possible to avoid it.

With regard to the lower jaw, parts of sets are much less frequently called for here than in the upper, and when they are required, the use of clasps may be often dispensed with altogether. But it sometimes becomes necessary to use them, and, as a general rule, they can be more conveniently applied to the bicuspids than the molars or cuspidati. A clasp can seldom be applied, advantageously, to a lower molar.

If the injurious effects liable to result from the application of clasps to teeth, could not, in any way, be counteracted, dental substitutes, maintained in the mouth by these means, would, in the majority of cases, be productive of more injury than benefit. But, fortunately, the deleterious effects liable to result from them may, in most cases, be prevented. They are not produced, as many have erroneously supposed, by the mechanical action of the clasps upon the teeth, but by the chemical action of the secretions of the mouth, and other extraneous matter retained between the two.

The cause of this destructive action, then, being chemical, and not mechanical, the means of preventing its deleterious effects, are obvious. They consist, as we have stated in another place, in the frequent removal of the artificial teeth, and thoroughly cleansing the natural organs which are used as a means of support for them. This should be done every morning and night and after each meal. For which purpose, a brush and waxed floss silk should be employed, and the teeth rubbed until every particle of clammy and vitiated mucus and foreign matter are removed. The inner surface of the clasps, too, should be freed from all impurities, and the whole piece cleansed with a brush and water.

In the application of clasps to teeth, they should always, as we have before stated, be so constructed, that they may be removed with ease by the patient. But the effects resulting from the presence of corrosive agents are not the only deleterious ones liable to be produced by clasps. They are often fitted and applied in such a manner as to force themselves up upon the necks of the teeth and gums, causing inflammation of the latter as well as that of the alveolo-dental membrane, and, ultimately, the destruction of the alveoli and loss of the teeth. The same effects, too, are produced when they act as retractors. Hence, the necessity of guarding against such effects, by a proper adjustment of the clasps in the construction of the piece.

Lastly: it is essential that persons wearing artificial teeth, secured in the mouth by clasps, should take them out on retiring at night, place them in water, and let them remain there until morning.

CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

DOUBLE SET OF ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON PLATE WITH SPIRAL SPRINGS.

Fig. 182.



By a double set of artificial teeth, is meant a substitute for all or the greater part of the natural teeth of both jaws; and they are sometimes confined in the mouth with spiral springs, one on each side, attached at each end, to each circle of teeth. When correctly constructed, and applied under favorable circumstances, they are valuable and efficient substitutes for the natural organs, but when badly constructed, as they frequently are, and applied under unfavorable circumstances, they are productive of constant annoyance to the patient.

It often happens, that the loss of the teeth results from disease in the gums and alveolar processes, and when this happens, the latter are so much wasted and destroyed that the ridge in the lower jaw is scarcely perceptible and becomes covered with loose folds of mucous membrane. In cases of this description, the application of a dental substitute often becomes exceedingly difficult. The pressure of the apparatus is apt to cause irritation. But this difficulty may, in most cases, be obviated by using a thick plate, fitted accurately to the parts and extended back upon the coronoid processes. It should also be applied without springs.

The upper plate should be about one inch in width, and the lower as wide as the shape of the ridge will admit of its being

made, and fully twice as thick as the upper, and made from gold at least twenty-two carat fine. Twenty carat gold will do for the upper plate.

After having obtained a correct antagonizing model, the operator should place a rim of beeswax on each plate, against which he should place the teeth as he selects them, beginning with the central incisors, the upper first, then the lower, next the laterals, afterwards the cuspidati and bicuspids, and, lastly, the first and second molars—twenty-eight being the number usually employed for an artificial set.

After the teeth have been arranged, and fitted to the plates, and the gold backings put on, they may be secured with plaster, the wax removed, and the process of soldering and finishing performed in the manner as before described.

But before the teeth are soldered to the plate, the attachments for the springs should be fixed to the outer edge of the plates on each side, against the second bicuspids, or partly between them and the first molars. The description of attachments which the author prefers, so regulates the motions of the springs, that they are prevented from coming in contact with the outer surface of the alveolar ridge on the outside of the plate, or from turning out towards the cheek, and irritating the mucous membrane. Their construction is so plainly exhibited in the accompanying cut, as well as that of the eyelets and springs, that no other description is deemed necessary.

Fig. 183.



The principle upon which the springs act is exhibited in Fig. 182, by which it will be perceived the upper and lower rows of teeth are constantly, but gently pressed against the parts on which they rest.

The length of the springs must be determined by the distance of the jaws from each other when the mouth is opened. In some cases it is necessary to have them much longer than in

others. The usual length, however, is from an inch and a half to two inches.

It often happens that six or eight teeth in the front part of the mouth in the lower jaw remain healthy and firmly fixed in their sockets, after all the other teeth are lost. In this case, the lower plate should be so constructed as to cover the unoccupied portions of the alveolar ridge, and to fit its upper and inner surface behind the remaining natural teeth. This part of the plate should be strengthened by soldering to it another plate of equal or even greater thickness.

But when the lower incisors, cuspidati and two of the bicuspids are remaining, it is better to dispense with the others than encumber this part of the mouth with artificial substitutes. The upper teeth should be replaced, but not the lower, and when there are but six remaining in the inferior maxillary, it would be better to remove them and insert an entire dental apparatus, as it is exceedingly difficult and sometimes impossible to replace the others in such a way as to render them serviceable while the front part of the jaw is occupied with natural teeth.

CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON SUCTION OR ATMOSPHERIC BASES.

The engraving, Fig. 184, represents the appearance of a dental substitute for all the upper teeth, when ready for insertion, and Fig. 185 the plaster model of the alveolar ridge and roof of the mouth of the individual for whom the teeth, from which the first of these drawings was made, were intended. The only difference between teeth, applied upon this principle and with spiral springs, is, the plate in the former should be rather wider than it is necessary to have it in the latter. It should cover the whole of the outer surface of the alveolar ridge, and a considerable portion of the roof of the mouth, but it should not go as far back as most dentists are in the habit of extending it,

Fig. 184.



Fig. 185.



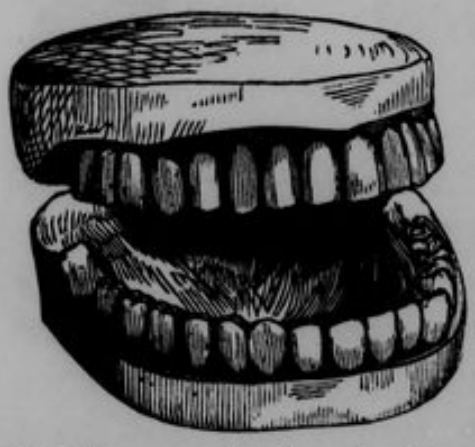
for the reason that a very wide plate cannot be as perfectly and accurately adapted to the parts as one of moderate width. Unless it be made to touch every portion of the surface of the parts which it covers, it will be constantly liable to drop. A narrow plate, well fitted, will adhere much more firmly than a very wide one, imperfectly adapted. The successful applica-

tion of artificial teeth, upon this principle, depends upon having the plate accurately fitted to the parts upon which it is to rest.

However accurately a plate may be made to fit the model, it is sometimes warped in soldering the teeth to it, destroying its adaptation and causing it to rock when placed in the mouth. When this happens, it cannot be made to adhere to the gums, and consequently cannot be worn. For the restoration of the plate, a variety of means have been proposed. The one which the writer has found most successful, consists in binding the plate to the plaster model with a fine iron wire in such a way that it shall be made to touch every part it covers; then to heat the piece to a cherry red heat with the flame of a lamp applied with a blow-pipe.

The springing of the plate in soldering on the teeth being caused by unequal expansion of the gold, it might nearly always be prevented by annealing it after the swaging has been completed. In this process, some parts of the plate are acted upon and hardened more than others, and this is the cause of its unequal expansion. It is also important that the gold placed upon the teeth should be annealed before being soldered to the plate.

Fig. 186.



In the application of a double set, on this principle, the lower plate, as we have before stated, should be as wide and long as the alveolar ridge of the inferior maxilla will admit of its being made. Fig 186 represents a dental substitute of this description in an antagonizing model of plaster of paris. The posterior extremities of the lower plate, as may be perceived, extend up about half an inch on the coronoid processes. The lower alveolar ridge of the individual, (a lady,) for whom the original was constructed, is almost wholly wanting, and each side is covered with loose folds of mucous membrane, so irritable as to prevent the patient from wearing artificial teeth applied with spiral springs. She has worn the set here

represented since 1844, without having experienced the slightest inconvenience.

In the substitution of artificial for the loss of the natural teeth, of either or both jaws, this method, when it can be advantageously adopted, and there are few cases in which it cannot be, is preferable to any other.

When the teeth are put in the mouth, the patient should be directed to exhaust the air from between the plate or plates, when a double set is applied upon this principle, and gums, which, if properly fitted, will at once cause them to adhere, though not immediately with as much tenacity as they will after having been worn a few days or weeks.

Fig. 187.



It is not always necessary to employ a very wide plate, to secure a sufficient amount of suction for its retention. When the alveolar border is tolerably deep, a comparatively narrow one may be made to adhere with very great tenacity to the gums. A narrow plate, however, is more liable to be bent, and lose its perfect adaptation to the parts than a wide one, but its liability to be injured in this way may be measurably prevented, by extending a piece across from one side to the other, under the palatine arch, in the manner as recommended by Dr. Roper for two or three teeth on each side of the jaw, and as shown in Fig. 187. In this way, great stability may be given to a plate for an upper circle of teeth, without encumbering the mouth with a plate large enough to cover the entire vault of the palate. It may also be used with great advantage in cases where it may be necessary to employ spiral springs.

In replacing the loss of the bicuspids and molars of the upper jaw with artificial substitutes, mounted upon an atmospheric or suction plate, a very great increase of stability may be given to the piece by constructing and adjusting the plate in such a manner that a narrow band shall pass in front of the alve-

olar border as is represented in Fig. 188, but it is necesssary that this should fit with the greatest accuracy to prevent irritating the gums. This method of constructing and applying

Fig. 188.



Fig. 189.



atmospheric plates was recommended to the author by Dr. G. E. Hayes, of Buffalo, N. Y. In Fig. 189, is represented a substitute for all the upper teeth, except the dentes sapientiæ, constructed upon the same principle.

Fig. 190.



In the application of one or two teeth upon this principle, it is necessary to employ a very wide plate, in order to present as much surface for the atmosphere to act upon as possible. A substitute for the two central incisors, mounted upon a single plate, to be applied upon this principle, is represented in Fig 190.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH WITH GUMS, MOUNTED ON PLATE.

Fig. 191.



The loss of the teeth is some times followed by the destruction of more or less of the alveolar border. When this happens, in furnishing a substitute for the former, it often becomes necessary for the restoration of the contour of the

face, to replace the latter; and for doing which several methods of procedure have been adopted.

When ivory was employed for artificial teeth, and as bases for the support of dental substitutes, it was carved in such a manner as to imitate the shape of the gums, and afterwards colored. But the use of this substance for purposes of this kind, has, as the author has already stated, been abandoned, or very nearly so.

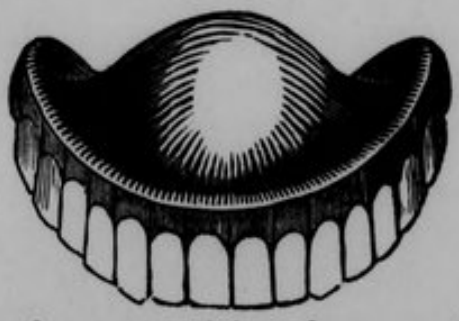
Raised plates have also been employed, and these may often be so constructed as to answer a very good purpose, but since the invention of porcelain teeth, a much better substitute for the alveolar border and gums has been used. Artificial teeth of this description may be manufactured either singly or in blocks, with a base, colored and enameled on the exterior or labial surface, forming a most excellent substitute for the alveolar border and gums, and imitating nature so closely as almost to preclude the possibility of detection. It has been customary among dentists manufacturing their own porcelain or mineral teeth, in the construction of an entire set, or a series for the same jaw, to fabricate them in blocks, but as few dentists possess the means and necessary knowledge and practical experience for doing this, and as there are some cases in which they cannot be advantageously employed, a few remarks on the use of single gum teeth may not be out of place. In a subsequent chapter, the method of making and mounting block teeth, will be described.

A little more time and tact are required in fitting the teeth to each other, and to the plate, than for the manufacture of blocks, but when properly adjusted and attached to the plate, they answer, in very many cases, almost as good a purpose, and if by any accident, one or two of the teeth are broken, they may be more easily replaced.

But in the construction of a piece composed of single teeth, it is important that the teeth should be fitted to each other and the plate in the most perfect and accurate manner, so that no lodgments may be afforded for particles of food or extraneous matter of any kind. In Fig. 191 is represented an atmospheric pressure or suction substitute for all the teeth of the upper jaw, composed of single gum teeth, mounted upon a broad

plate. In Fig. 192, is seen a representation of a set of gum teeth for the superior maxillary, mounted on a base of the same kind, with the outer edge of the plate turned down on the teeth.

Fig. 192.



It sometimes happens in the application of a substitute for all the teeth of the upper jaw upon the atmospheric principle, that the ridge is so prominent as to preclude the use of gum teeth, and to expose the plate covering the anterior part of it, whenever the mouth is opened in speaking or laughing. To obviate this, it has been recommended to cover the anterior margin of the plate and interspaces between the teeth with a tero-metallic paste, fusible at a very low temperature, and afterwards covered with gum enamel. The following formula is given by M. Delabarre for this purpose: porcelain paste 1 oz., white silex half oz., any oxyd 10 grs., and a sufficient quantity of calcined gypsum to give to it the necessary degree of fusibility. As a suitable enamel, Desirabode recommends, feldspar 2 drachms, oxyd of gold 6 grs., kaolin 6 grs. But neither of these formulas can be used on gold plate, nor in connection with American porcelain teeth, as too high a heat is required for their fusion. Drs. Hunter and Allen of Cincinnati, Ohio, however, have succeeded in making a silicious composition, which can be used on gold slightly alloyed with platina. The manner of working this will be described in a subsequent chapter.

CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH MOUNTED ON CAVITY PLATES.

It has been demonstrated by numerous experiments, that a metallic base for artificial teeth may be made to adhere to the gums with much greater tenacity by having it constructed with a cavity opening upon them, than by simply coadaptation, however accurately the plate may be made to fit. Still, in the majority of cases it may be made to adhere with sufficient tenacity for all useful and practical purposes, and, if a plate of this kind can be so applied as to secure *perfectly* the *atmospheric principle*, no advantage whatever is derived from a chamber in the plate, opening upon the gums. But this, in many cases is found to be impracticable, for the reason as stated by Dr. Dwinelle, that when the plate is applied, and an effort made to exhaust the air from between it and the gums, the latter "along the line, and behind the edge of the former, are drawn down so as to meet it," thus resisting every effort made from without to withdraw the air from the central part of the plate, so that the pressure of the atmosphere is only exerted upon a small breadth of surface, along the edge of it, where the suction is constantly liable to be disturbed in biting upon the teeth. With a view of obviating this difficulty, the idea of constructing a plate with a cavity, suggested itself to the writer as early as 1835, which he mentioned at the time to several of his professional brethren, but as the construction of the chamber which he then devised was found objectionable, he abandoned the use of it, and it was not until the early part of 1848, when he had an opportunity of seeing a cavity plate contrived by Dr. J. A. Cleveland, that he was again induced to construct a base of this sort. But we believe Dr. C. had been in the habit of constructing cavity plates

for two or three years previously to this time. Dr. W. H. Dwinelle constructed a cavity plate with an external opening and valve for exhausting the air, in the winter of 1845; and in the summer of 1847, or '48, Dr. Jahial Parmly exhibited to us a plate with a simple cavity struck into it in swaging it. Some months after, we heard, for the first time, of a cavity plate, contrived, and patented, by Mr. Gilbert, of New Haven.

The cavity in most of the plates now employed, is formed nearly in the centre, or immediately behind the alveolar ridge, but Dr. J. F. B. Flagg, a dentist of Philadelphia, has recently added two lateral cavities, which effectually prevents the plate from rocking, and gives to it increased stability.

Having premised these few remarks on the subject of cavity plates, we shall proceed to give a brief description of the manner of constructing them; beginning first, with the cavity-plate and valve of Dr. Dwinelle.

To the plaster model, a piece of wax about an eighth of an inch thick in the centre, and five-eighths in diameter, but gradually diminishing to the periphery, is placed just behind the alveolar border. With the model thus prepared, a metallic model and counter-model are obtained. A plate is then struck up in the usual way, then with a very small drill, a hole is made through the central part of the cavity, or raised part of the plate. This is next reamed out to a cone shape—the base terminating outwards, and not exceeding half a line in diameter. A piece of gold wire as large as the base of the hole is now taken, and filed down in a small jeweler's bow lathe until it nearly fits the conical hole in the plate, leaving an extension to pass up through the plate in the form of a stem. It is again placed in the lathe and ground down with powdered scotch stone and oil, until it fits the cone-shaped hole in the plate so perfectly as to render it completely air-tight; the base is then filed down to a level with the plate.

The method which Dr. Dwinelle adopted for securing this valve is as follows: We copy his own description. "Having rolled down a piece of gold to exceeding thinness, we cut out a piece in the form of a cross; at the centre where the angles met, we punctured a hole to receive the stem of the valve,

bending the four extremities downwards equally, we formed what artizans would call a spider-leg spring. Now, the valve being in its place, we placed the spring immediately over it, on the upper surface of the plate, and pressed it down—the stem of the valve passing through the hole in the centre of the spring, until it reached within about half a line of the plate; with a small pair of forceps, we then seized the stem above the spring, and by pressure, flattened it down, so as to form a kind of head, thus detaining it attached, and holding it to its place." Dr. D. states, however, that he has subsequently used a spring made of a single strip of gold, with one end attached to the plate, like a tongue to an accordeon, making a simple slit in the end of it for the reception of the stem of the valve. He also recommends that a piece of plate be soldered on the part of the chamber pierced by the hole to increase its thickness.

Fig 193. Fig. 194.



In Fig. 193 is represented an enlarged view of the valve and socket *a a* without the spring; also showing the raised part of the plate *b b*, in which the conical valve *a a* is fitted. In Fig. 194, the valve, spring and plate combined, are represented.

In exhausting the air from the cavity, and between the plate and gums, the valve is drawn down, which gives it an opportunity of escaping, but the instant it passes up to its place, its further egress, and ingress from without, is prevented.*

The next description of cavity plate which we propose to notice is the one contrived by Dr. J. A. Cleaveland, and the following is the method of procedure in its construction:

A metallic model and counter-model having been obtained, a plate is struck up covering the entire alveolar border and extending back as far as the termination of the hard palate. This done, it should be placed in the mouth, and if it be found to be accurately adapted to the parts against which it is placed, it may be removed, and a piece of half round wire of the same metal, as large as a common sized knitting needle, soldered to the lower side of the plate, immediately behind the alveolar

*Vide *Dr. Dwinelle on Cavity Plates* in No. 2, vol. x, Am. Jour. of Den. Sci.

ridge, describing a circle about the size of an American twenty-five cent piece. The plate within the circle is next removed; the plate then placed on the model, and a piece of softened beeswax, about a tenth or twelfth part of an inch in thickness, having a circumference one-fourth greater than the hole in the plate, is placed over the opening, extending a short distance beyond the wire on every side. At the periphery it is brought to a thin edge, and is much thinner in the centre than were it covers the wire surrounding the opening in the plate. A wax impression of the model, plate and wax covering the opening in it, is next taken. From this, a plaster and metallic model and counter-model are obtained. A thin plate of gold, if the first plate be of this metal, large enough to cover the wax on the first plate, is now struck up; the wax is next removed from the first plate, and the last soldered to it, when if the piece be applied to the mouth and the air exhausted, it will be found to adhere with great tenacity.

Fig. 195.



A sectional view of the cavity is represented in Fig. 195.

The principal advantage of Dr. Cleaveland's cavity-plate, is this; by the union of two plates, the liability of disturbing that portion of the base which covers the roof of the mouth, in biting against the teeth, is greatly diminished.

The base being thus prepared, the teeth may be mounted upon it in the manner described in a preceding chapter.

The simple cavity plate employed by Dr. Jahial Parmly of New York, and patented by Mr. Gilbert of New Haven, may be formed with as much ease as the ordinary plate, and in most cases, will answer as well as any other description of cavity plate. The method of procedure in forming a plate of this sort is, first, to place a piece of softened wax on the model, over the median line, immediately behind the alveolar border. In the centre it should be about the tenth part of an inch in thickness, gradually diminishing to the circumference, and about three-

fourths of an inch in diameter. With the model thus prepared an impression is made in sand, and a metallic model and counter-model procured. This done, the plate is struck up in the usual way, and the teeth arranged, fitted and attached to it, in the manner already described.

Fig. 196.



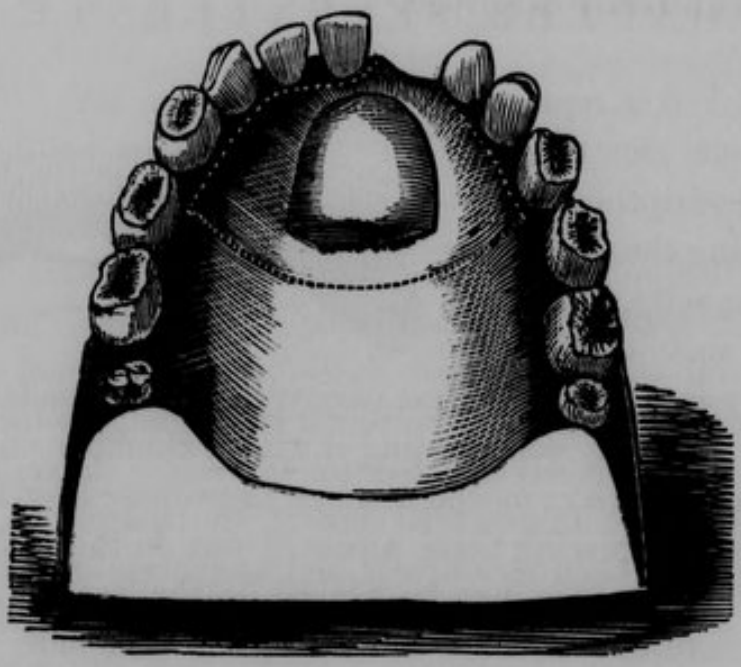
In Fig. 196 is represented a sectional view of a plate of this description. Notwithstanding the greatly increased tenacity with which a plate is made to adhere to the jaw by means of a central cavity, it may be made to adhere still more firmly by constructing it with a chamber on each side of the central cavity, in the manner as proposed by Dr. Flagg. This is done by placing three pieces of wax on the plaster model instead of one. One may be placed in the centre, as already described, and one on the alveolar ridge on each side. But this can only be done in forming a plate for the upper jaw. A plate for the lower jaw can only have lateral chambers, but these may extend forward, and even meet in front.

The remarks which we have thus far made upon cavity plates, apply to a base for a substitute for all the teeth of one jaw; but increased adhesion and stability of such pieces are not the only advantage gained by the use of this description of plate. With a cavity plate, the loss of a single tooth, or any number of teeth, may, in most cases, be replaced without the aid of clasps, and when this last means of support for artificial teeth can be dispensed with, it is important that it should be done. The deleterious effects liable to result from their use have already been noticed. So successful has the use of cavity plates been in the hands of the author, that he rarely finds it necessary to employ clasps.

The size of the plate which he employs for a single incisor, or for two or three front teeth, is indicated by the dotted line on the plaster model, as represented in Fig. 197. The size of the cavity may also be seen by the wax placed in the centre of the

circle formed by the dotted line.* When more than two or three teeth are required, a larger plate should be employed.

FIG. 197.



We have thus far only spoken of the advantages possessed by cavity plates. We shall now notice one or two of the disadvantages liable to result from their employment. In the first place, the protuberance on the lower part of the plate interferes, in some degree, with the movements of the tongue and with the articulation of words, but it becomes less and less manifest the longer the piece is worn, until ultimately the individual almost ceases to be conscious of the presence of any foreign body in his mouth. But there is another and more serious objection, and it is this: there is a constant tendency of the mucous membrane, over the cavity, to thicken and come down into it, assuming a sort of hypertrophied condition, and in some cases it has ulcerated. We have not, however, met with but two case in our own practice in which this has happened. But this morbid tendency may, in nearly every case, be prevented, by leaving the piece out of the mouth during the night; and the shallower the cavity, the less will be the liability to it.

*But the wax here represented is much thicker than is necessary. A cavity the sixteenth part of an inch in depth, will, in most cases, be found amply sufficient.

CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

PORCELAIN BLOCK TEETH.

THE perfection to which the manufacture of block teeth has now arrived, renders this description of substitute for the loss of the natural organs, in those cases where artificial gums are required, superior, in many respects, to single gum-teeth. The objections that formerly existed to their use, have, one after another, gradually disappeared before the march of improvement, which has been as actively and as successfully at work in this, as in any other department of science or art. But, more time, and close, and persevering application are necessary to obtain a thorough knowledge of this, than almost any other branch of practical dentistry. The preparation of the various materials which enter into the composition of block-teeth, requires, at least, some knowledge of chemistry, and to put these materials together after they have been prepared, and construct from them a dental substitute of this kind, demands the nicest and most skillful manipulation. The slightest error in the preparation or mixing of the materials, will often give a result entirely different from the one aimed at, and teeth made by different persons, from the same recipe, frequently differ very widely in appearance, depending on the manner in which they have been worked.

In the description which we propose to give of the manner of making and mounting block teeth, we shall begin by enumerating the materials that enter into their composition.

MATERIALS USED IN MAKING PORCELAIN BLOCK TEETH.

Porcelain teeth are composed of two portions; one is called the body or base, and the other the enamel. The body is com

posed principally of *feldspar*, *silex*, and *kaolin;* and the enamel, of *feldspar*, with a small trace of *silex*. With these, various metallic oxyds or metals, reduced to a state of minute division, are mixed, for the purpose of imparting the necessary color.

Feldspar.—This mineral occurs in a crystallized state, in the form of oblique, rhomboidal prisms, and is of a white, grey, red, brown, green, yellow, or bluish color. But the only kind suited for use in the manufacture of porcelain teeth, is the pure white, or that which is nearly white. It consists, according to Rose, of silica, 66.75; alumina, 17.50; potash, 12; lime, 1.25; and oxyd of iron, 0.75. It is found near Boston, at New Bedford, Oakham, and West Springfield, Massachusetts; near Philadelphia, Pa.; near Wilmington, Del.; at Ticonderoga, N. Y.; near Baltimore, Md.; and in various other places in the United States. But the Wilmington, Del.; Philadelphia and Boston spars are regarded as the best varieties for use in porcelain block teeth.

Previously to use, it is put in a fire in a furnace and heated nearly to a white heat, then thrown into cold water. It is now broken into small pieces, freed from impurities, and ground in a mortar or mill, to fine powder, or, until it will pass through a sieve of No. 9 bolting cloth. This is easily fused, and when mixed with silex and kaolin, diffuses itself, in baking, throughout the mass, imparting to it a semitranslucent appearance.

Silex.—Flint, quartz, and white sand are the purest varieties of silex, but for porcelain teeth the crystalline form is the best; and this is found in great abundance in various parts of the United States. It is prepared for use by heating it to a white heat, then plunging it in cold water, and afterwards reducing it to a fine powder in a quartz or wedgewood mortar.

Kaolin.—This is the Chinese name for *porcelain clay*, which is the result of the decomposition of mineral feldspar, and consists of nearly equal proportions of alumina and silica. It is of a yellowish or reddish white color when pure, and is found at Fairmount, near Philadelphia; near Wilmington, Del.; at Montonk, Vermont; on the Columbia rail road; at Washington Ct.; in Missouri; and in South Carolina.

It is prepared for use by washing in clean water. After the the coarser particles have settled to the bottom of the vessel, the water in which the finer ones are suspended is poured off into a second vessel, where it is permitted to remain until the whole of the kaolin has settled to the bottom. The water is then poured off, and the kaolin dried in the sun.

There are other varieties of clay which have been found to answer quite as well as the porcelain. That which shrinks least, is, of course, preferable. Two kinds are found near Baltimore, which shrink but very little in baking; one is of a grayish white, and the other, of a bluish white color. But less importance is attached to clay as a constituent of porcelain block teeth, at this time, than formerly. Many dispense with the use of it almost altogether.

COLORING MATERIALS.

The materials used for coloring porcelain teeth, are as we have before stated, metals in a state of minute division, or metallic oxyds mixed in certain proportions with the body or enamel, or both. The following are the principal metals and oxyds employed for this purpose.

Metals and Oxyds used.	*Color given.*
Gold in fillings and its oxyds,	Bright rose red.
Platina sponge or fillings,	Grayish blue.
Purple powder of cassius,	Rose purple.
Oxyd of titanium,	Bright yellow.
Oxyd of uranium,	Greenish yellow.
Oxyd of manganese,	Purple.
Oxyd of silver,	Lemon yellow.
Oxyd of cobalt,	Bright blue.

Of the above, the oxyds of gold, platina sponge and titanium are the most important. With these nearly every color and tint required may be obtained.

Metallic Gold.—This may be prepared for use by grinding gold in filings, or in leaf with a small quantity of spar in a

mortar or on a slab until reduced to a fine powder; or if there be any doubt with regard to its purity, the following method may be adopted. Melt in a crucible with borax, 12 parts pure silver, 4 parts gold and 1 part tin, stirring while in a fused state until the gold and silver are well mixed; it may then be poured into an ingot mould, rolled very thin and cut into small pieces, or granulated by being poured into a vessel containing water which is rapidly revolving. The whole mass is now collected, put into an evaporating dish and nitric acid poured on. When this has become completely saturated with the silver, it is poured off in a vessel containing water, and fresh acid poured on and the action continued until the whole of the silver is decomposed or dissolved, which may be known by the colorless appearance of the fumes. The pure gold remaining at the bottom of the dish is washed until completely freed from acid. A simpler method of obtaining a fine powder consists in precipitating a solulution of chloride of gold by means of protosulphate of iron; then washing the precipitate with dilute muriatic acid to remove the adhering iron, and afterwards with water to remove the acid.

Oxyd of Gold.—Dissolve gold foil or pure gold in *aqua regia*, composed of one part nitric and two parts muriatic acid; dilute the solution with water and precipitate the gold with aqua ammonia, using the precaution not to add more than is required,* then pour off the acid and wash the precipitate with warm water until it is completely freed from salt of ammonia; after which, it may be dried over a gentle fire.

Platina Sponge.—This is obtained by dissolving the metal in fillings in a mixture of one part nitric and two parts muriatic acid, diluting the solution with an equal quantity of water and precipitating the platina by means of aqua ammonia, which is afterwards separated in the form of a yellow powder, by filtering through paper. This, on being exposed to a red heat, will leave fine platinum in the form of a dark lead-colored spongy mass.

*If an excess of ammonia is added, the precipitate will be redissolved and a fulminating compound formed.

Purple Powder of Cassius.℞— No. 1. This is a compound of gold and tin, and according to Thénard, is made by dissolving the gold in a mixture of one part muriatic and two parts nitric acid, diluting the solution with water, filtering and diluting again with a very large quantity of water. The tin is dissolved in *aqua regia*, composed of one part nitric acid, two parts water, and to every pint, add one hundred and thirty grains of muriate of soda. The tin should be pure and added to the acid in small pieces, waiting for each one to be dissolved before putting in another. The operation should be conducted in a cool place, and very slowly. After it is finished, the solution is filtered, and about one hundred times its volume of water added to it.

The solution of gold is now placed in a glass vessel, and that of the tin added to it—drop by drop—stirring constantly with a glass rod, until the liquid assumes the color of port wine. When the precipitate settles to the bottom of the vessel, the liquid is poured off, and the precipitate washed and dried.

Purple Powder of Cassius.—℞ No. 2. Pure silver,* 432 grs.; gold foil, 48 grs.; pure tin foil, 36 grs. Put the gold and sil-

*Pure silver may be obtained in the following manner: Dissolve the silver in a mixture of one part nitric acid and three parts water, in a glass or porcelain vessel. The action of the acid will be expedited by applying a gentle heat. If there should not be acid enough to decompose the silver, it should be poured off when the effervescence stops, and the fumes cease to rise, and fresh acid added. When the silver is all dissolved, filter the solution through a glass funnel, into a glass or porcelain vessel. Then add a large quantity of water. Now, add to the solution of silver, a strong solution of chloride of soda, (common salt,) in hot water, until it ceases to cause a white precipitate, which is the chloride of silver.

When this precipitate has subsided to the bottom of the vessel, pour off the liquid and add fresh water, repeating this operation until the water comes off pure, and free from metallic taste. Now, dry the chloride. This done, put into a crucible two and a half times its weight of carbonate of potassa, (salt of tartar, or pearlash.) Place the crucible in a strong fire; and when the carbonate of potassa is melted, add the chloride of silver in small portions, using the precaution not to add too much at a time, as, in this case, an effervescence would take place, which would cause it to be ejected into the fire. When the chloride is all reduced, the silver will be found in the bottom of the crucible in a pure state. The heat should be great enough to melt the silver, so that it may run down to the bottom of the crucible. After cooling sufficiently to solidify the silver, the melted mass on top may be poured off, and the silver taken out and cleaned.

ver in a crucible, cover well with borax, and melt; then add the tin, and pour the melted mass immediately in cold water, to granulate it. Collect the particles, and melt and granulate again, repeating the operation two or three times, covering the metal each time with borax, and raising the heat no higher than is necessary to melt it, as the tin would be burnt out with a greater heat. The object of melting so often, is to mix the metals thoroughly together; and the vessel in which it is granulated should be wood or porcelain.

Put the metal in a porcelain evaporating dish, and add nitric acid to decompose the silver, which operation will be expedited by a gentle heat. Should the acid cease to act before the silver is all dissolved—which may be known by the fumes ceasing to rise—it should be poured off, and fresh acid added. When the silver is all decomposed, pour off the acid, leaving the precipitate behind. Put this, which is the purple cassius, in a deep glass vessel; fill it with water, and stir with a glass rod. Let it stand until the sediment subsides; then pour off the water, and add fresh, repeating the washing until the water is free from metallic taste. The purple cassius is now dried in an evaporating dish, and kept dry for use.

The nitric acid poured off contains the silver, and may be obtained in a metallic state, in the manner as described for obtaining pure silver.

Oxyd of Titanium.—This is found in nature—sometimes nearly pure, and sometimes combined with oxyd of iron. The principal ores are *sphene*, common and foliated; *rutile*, *iserine*, *menachanite*, and *octapedrite*, or *pyramidal* titanium ore. The purest varieties should be selected for use.

Oxyd of Uranium.—The prepared article, as sold by chemists, contains about two parts of the metal, and three of the oxyd, in the form of a yellow powder. It is generally used as found in nature.

Oxyd of Manganese.—This occurs abundantly in nature, and is obtained from chemists in the form of a coarse black powder.

Oxyd of Silver.—This is made by dissolving silver in nitric acid, and precipitating the silver by adding potash or soda to the solution. The liquid is then poured off—the precipitate washed with water, and dried.

Oxyd of Cobalt.—The preparation of this oxyd, is attended with much trouble, and as the quantity used in the manufacture of teeth is so small, we do not deem it necessary to describe the process, and especially as it can be obtained from most chemists. There is a preparation made from the oxyd, superior to the oxyd itself for coloring teeth. It is called in popular language the ashes of cobalt, and is made by wrapping the oxyd in blue English laid paper, and burning it in a closed crucible. This gives a more desirable tint to the enamel of a tooth than the oxyd.

COMPOSITION AND PREPARATION OF BODY.

We shall give but four recipes for body, either of which, if properly worked, will produce good teeth.

No. 1.	
Delaware spar,	12 oz.*
Silex,	2 " 5 dwt.
Kaolin,	7½ "
Titanium,	18 to 36 grs.

No. 2.	
Delaware spar,	12 oz.
Silex,	3 " 8 dwt.
Kaolin,	8 "
Baltimore clay,	4 "
Titanium,	18 to 36 grs.

No. 3.	
Delaware spar,	12 oz.
Silex,	3 "
Kaolin,	18 dwt.
Titanium,	18 to 36 grs.

No. 4.	
Delaware spar,	16 oz.
Silex,	3½ "
Kaolin,	½ "
Titanium	20 to 60 grs.

Put the titanium in a large mortar and grind until it is reduced to an impalpable powder, then add the silex and grind from one to three hours, or until there shall be no perceptible

* All of the ingredients should be weighed with Troy weights.

grit; now add the kaolin and grind from thirty minutes to an hour and a half, and lastly add the spar, little by little, and grind from forty to sixty minutes. All of the ingredients should not be ground equally fine, as the translucency of the teeth is increased by having some coarser than the rest.

The materials may be ground dry or in water. If the latter method is adopted, a sufficient quantity of water should, from time to time, be added, to form a batter of the consistence of cream, and after the grinding is completed it may be poured on a clean slab made of plaster of paris, and as soon as it acquires the consistence of stiff dough, it may be removed, and, after having been beat for twenty or thirty minutes on a marble slab, put away in an earthen jar for use. When the ingredients are ground dry, they may be mixed, a small quantity at a time, as they are needed for use. Many prefer having the materials ground in this way.

COMPOSITION AND PREPARATION OF ENAMEL.

Any of the following recipes will produce a good enamel, and among them will be found nearly every shade of color and tint required, but others may be obtained, if desired, by adding other coloring ingredients. The author, however, has not found it necessary to do so. The oxyds should be reduced to an impalpable power and thoroughly incorporated with the enamel paste.

Grayish Blue Enamel.

No. 1.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina sponge,	¼ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	½ gr.

No. 2.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina sponge,	½ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	½ gr.

Yellow Enamel.

No. 1.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium,	10 grs.
Platina sponge,	½ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	½ gr.

No. 2.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium,	14 grs.
Platina sponge,	½ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	½ gr.

No. 3.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina sponge,	¾ gr.
Oxyd of gold,	½ gr.

No. 3.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium,	16 grs.
Platina sponge,	½ gr.
Oxyd of gold.	½ gr.

No. 4.

Spar,	2 oz.
Flux,	24 grs.
Platina sponge,	½ gr.

No. 4.

Spar,	2 oz.
Flux,	20 grs.
Titanium,	10 grs.*

No. 1 of the blue and No. 3 of the yellow, will produce an enamel which will suit a larger proportion of the cases than almost any other. The coloring ingredients should be first ground very fine with five or six dwts. of the spar, when the remainder of the spar should be added a little at a time, and ground from thirty to forty minutes.

The coloring ingredients for the following recipes are prepared by being ground very fine with spar.

Platina Coloring.

Platina sponge,	1 dwt. 12 grs.
Boston spar,	1 oz.

Titanium Coloring.

Titanium,	7 dwt. 12 grs.
Boston spar,	1 oz.

Greyish Blue Enamel.

No. 1.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina coloring	12 grs.
Titanium coloring,	2 oz.

No. 2.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina coloring,	1 dwt.
Titanium coloring,	2½ grs.

No. 3.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Platina coloring,	1 dwt. 12 grs.
Titanium coloring,	3 grs.

Yellow Enamel.

No. 1.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium coloring,	1 dwt.
Platina coloring,	2 grs.

No. 2.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium coloring,	2 dwts.
Platina coloring,	2½ grs.

No. 3.

Boston spar,	2 oz.
Titanium coloring,	3 dwts.
Platina coloring,	3 grs.

The above are ground separately until the coloring ingredients are thoroughly incorporated with the spar. By grinding

* The proportion of coloring ingredients may be increased or diminished, according to the color wanted. A sufficient variety of shades for most cases, will be obtained from the recipes which we have given.

the spar too fine, the life-like appearance and beauty of the enamel will be destroyed.

The manner of preparing the coloring ingredients for the following recipe, is as follows:

Platina Coloring.—Platina sponge, 1 dwt., 12 grs.; Boston spar, 1 oz. 2½ dwt., mix and grind very fine.

Gold Mixture.—Dissolve eight grains, pure gold in *aqua regia*, then stir in twelve and a half dwts. very finely ground spar. When nearly dry form it into a ball, and fuse it on a slide in a furnace. After which pulverize it coarsely and keep it for use.

Grayish Blue Enamel. No. 1.		*Yellow Enamel.* No. 1.	
Boston spar,	2 oz.	Boston spar,	2 oz.
Prepared platina sponge,	2 dwt.	Titanium,	16 grs.
Gold mixture,	4 grs.	Prepared platina sponge,	8 grs.
		Gold mixture,	2 dwt. 10 grs.

For the yellow enamel, first grind the titanium and platina sponge very fine, then add the gold mixture, which should also be ground fine; after which add the spar and grind until the coloring ingredients are thoroughly incorporated with it.*

Gum enamel is made with a frit, colored either with metallic gold in a state of minute division, its oxyd, or purple cassius and spar. Besides the coloring ingredients, gum enamel frit is composed of a flux, made especially for the purpose, and spar. We shall first describe the manner of making the flux.

Flux.—Silex, 4 oz.; glass of borax,† 1 oz.; sal tartar, 1 oz.; mix and grind to an impalpable powder; then pack it in the

*In all but one of the foregoing recipes, the Boston spar is mentioned, and for the reason, that it fuses at a somewhat lower temperature than the Delaware, which the author has designated as the kind to be used in the recipes for the body. There are two or three kinds of spar obtained near Philadelphia, very similar to the Delaware. Enamels made from any of the recipes here given may be used on any of the bodies.

†Glass of borax is made by putting the pure crystals in a clean light colored crucible; then place the crucible in a fire free from smoke, and let it remain until the borax assumes a transparent, glassy appearance. Now pour it on a clean marble slab, and when cold, pulverize and keep it in a well stopped bottle to prevent it from absorbing the moisture from the air.

bottom of a clean, light-colored crucible. Cover this with a piece of slide, previously fitted into the top, and lute with kaolin or clay. Now place the crucible in a strong anthracite fire, free from smoke, and let it remain until the mass is completely fused, which will require from an hour and a half to two hours and a half, depending on the strength of the fire.

When cold, break the crucible, and remove every particle from the flux; which, if it has not become stained by coloring matter in the crucible, will be a transparent glass. If any portion has become discolored, this should be broken off, and the remainder pulverized, and kept dry for use.*

Gum Frit, No. 1.—Metallic gold in a state of minute division or its oxyd, 16 grs.; flux, 175 grs.; spar, 700 grs.

Put the above in a mortar, and grind until it is reduced to an impalpable powder, which will require from five to eight hours constant labor, then pack it in a light colored crucible washed inside with a thin batter of very finely pulverized silex, and outside with kaolin; now fit to the top of the crucible a piece of slab, and lute it down with kaolin, place it near a fire, and when dry, put it in a strong anthracite fire, free from smoke, in a furnace, where it must remain until it is fused, which will require from an hour and a half to two hours, then remove it, and when cold, break the crucible and grind off the silex. This done, it may be broken and ground until it will pass through a sieve, No. 9 bolting cloth.

Gum Frit, No. 2.—Purple cassius, 8 grs.; flux, 175 grs.; spar, 700 grs. Reduce the purple cassius, in a mortar, to an impalpable powder, then add the flux, little by little, grinding each time to a very fine powder. Now add the spar, a small quantity at a time, reducing each parcel to a very fine powder, and the whole to the utmost degree of fineness. To do this properly, will require from six to eight hours constant labor, and unless the mixing and levigation are conducted in a right manner, the resulting color will be unsatisfactory.

After having reduced the mass to the proper fineness, select the whitest sand crucible that can be obtained, fit a piece of

* Flint glass is sometimes used for a flux.

slide to the top, as a cover. Now cover the interval surface of the crucible with a paste made from finely pulverized quartz, putting it on with the finger. This done, pack the frit into it in a dry state, then put the cover on and lute tight with kaolin. Now put an external coating of quartz on the crucible; then bury it in a strong anthracite fire, and let it remain until the contents are perfectly fused. The time required to do this, will vary according to the size of the crucible and the strength of the fire. When the frit is completely fused, the crucible may be removed from the fire, and when cold, break it and remove every particle of foreign matter. Then pulverize until it will pass through a sieve of No. 9 bolting cloth.*

Gum Enamel.

No. 1.		No. 2.	
Frit, No. 1,	3 dwts.	Frit, No. 2,	3 dwts.
Spar,	9 to 12 dwts.	Spar,	3 to 18 dwts.

The spar should be coarsely ground, in order to give the gum a granular appearance, and the quantity of frit may be increased or diminished until the right color is produced. It should, therefore, be tried on test pieces of body before being applied to a practical piece. Frit made at different times will produce different results. The gum enamel, No. 2, is designed particularly for body No. 4, and enamel No. 4, but may be used on any of the other bodies, and with any of the other enamels.

Having enumerated the materials which enter into the composition of the body, enamel and gum, and described the manner of preparing and mixing them for use, we shall proceed to notice the method of making and mounting the teeth. We shall begin by describing the manner of obtaining an antagonizing model for a set for the upper jaw, and of making the matrix for moulding the body preparatory to carving the teeth.

* For a number of the foregoing recipes, we are indebted to the liberality of several professional friends, whose skill in this department of dentistry is unsurpassed.

ANTAGONIZING MODEL FOR AN UPPER SET OF BLOCK TEETH.

The method of procedure for obtaining an antagonizing model for block teeth is similar to the one described in a preceding chapter, and one made for this purpose will answer for any other kind of dental substitute. A rim of softened yellow wax, about half an inch thick, is placed upon the lower or convex surface of the plate. This is then adjusted in the mouth, and the patient requested to close his teeth in the wax with sufficient force to make an indentation in it an eighth of an inch deep. The piece is now taken from the mouth, the wax carefully removed, and another rim, corresponding in width to the length required for the artificial teeth, fitted to the plate, which is again placed in the mouth, and the patient requested to close his teeth gently upon the wax. If all do not touch the lower edge of it at the same instant, it should be trimmed off until they do. The exterior surface of the wax should also be cut away until it describes the proper arch for the buccal and labial surfaces of the artificial teeth and restores to the lips and cheeks their natural contour. This done, the patient is again requested to close his teeth upon the edge of the wax with just sufficient force to leave the imprint of each tooth.

The plate is now taken from the mouth, laid aside, and the wax first employed, placed upon a piece of pasteboard or paper, with the side in which the teeth were partially imbedded, upwards. The exposed portion and indentations are smeared with oil. A batter of plaster of paris is next poured on it, filling the impressions made by the teeth, and running down an inch and a half behind it on the paper, and the whole raised to a level of half an inch above the wax. As soon as the plaster has consolidated sufficiently, the edges should be trimmed off, and a crucial groove, or two or three conical depressions made in the lower surface behind the wax, which may now be softened and carefully removed, using the precaution not to break the ends of the teeth. This done, the model is placed upon a piece of paper with the teeth upwards, and the rim of wax last used, still attached to the plate, is adjusted to the teeth in such a

manner that the point of each shall enter the imprint made by the natural organs the last time they were closed against it. The upper surface of the plate and model having been previously smeared with oil, batter of plaster of paris is poured on the two for the formation of the other part of the antagonizer. When the plaster has congealed sufficiently, the two pieces are separated, and the plate and wax carefully removed, to be used for the formation of a matrix, in which to mould the body preparatory to carving.

MANNER OF MAKING A MATRIX FOR MOULDING THE BODY PREPARATORY TO CARVING THE TEETH.

Having obtained an antagonizing model, the inside of the wax should be cut away until it presents the appearance represented in Fig. 198. It is left a little thicker than the artificial teeth

FIG. 198.

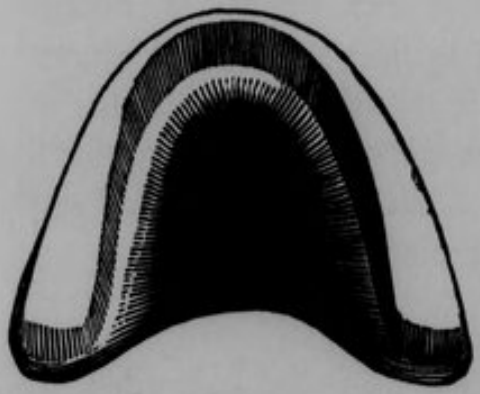
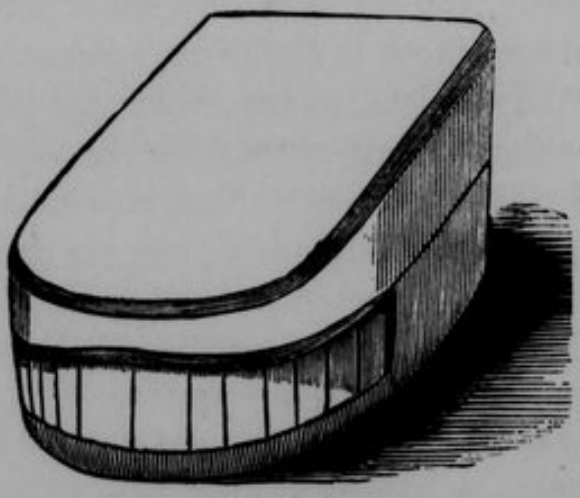


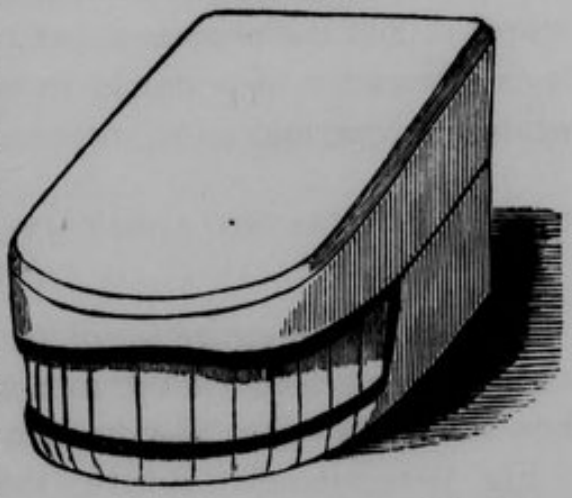
FIG. 199.



will be, allowance having been made for shrinkage in the baking, and also for the removal of a small portion in carving, especially from the part from which the incisors and cuspids will be formed. The plate and wax are now returned to the upper part of the antagonizing model, and the exposed surfaces of both smeared with oil; then a thick batter of plaster of paris is poured on in the manner as described for making the upper part of the antagonizing model. As soon as the plaster has hardened sufficiently, the edges are trimmed to the wax, the matrix separated, and the lower part of the antagonizing model applied. Verti-

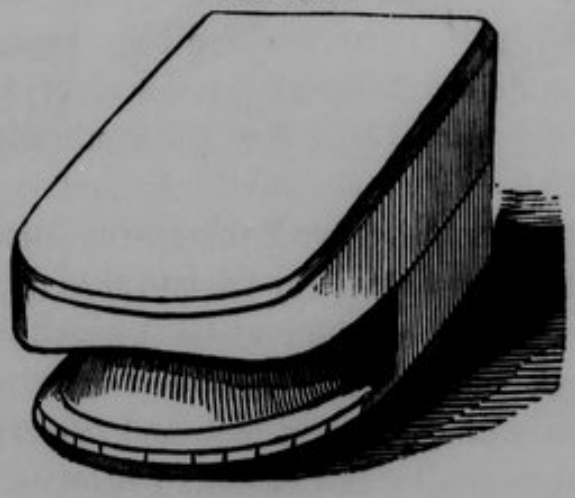
cal lines are now made across the wax, to indicate the width required for the artificial teeth. See Fig. 199. This done, the antagonizing part of the model is removed, the lower part of the matrix applied and the lines in the wax continued across the edge of it, to serve as a guide for marking the width of the teeth preparatory to carving. See Fig. 200.

Fig. 200.



The two parts are again separated and the plaster cut away from the surface in contact with the wax of the lower piece, forming an open space between it and the edge of the wax equal in width to about one-tenth or twelfth of that of the latter. The matrix will now present the appearance when the two parts are put together, represented in Fig. 200. The object of this space is to provide for the shrinkage in the length of the teeth, consequently its width should correspond with the amount which the paste for the body shrinks in baking. Body made from the first recipe which we have given shrinks a little more than one made from the second, and one from this a little more than one from the third.

Fig. 201.



Having proceeded thus far, the wax may be removed, and a coat of varnish applied to each part of the matrix. The appearance of the two pieces when put together is shown in Fig. 201. The antagonizing model and matrix, as will be perceived from the foregoing description, consist of but three pieces. By this simple contrivance, the artist will be able to adapt the coronal extremities of the artificial teeth to the opposing natural organs, with the most perfect accuracy, as he can at any moment remove the lower part of the matrix and apply the antagonizing part of the model to his work.

Some dentists are in the habit of first carving the teeth in wax, and making the matrix to consist of five pieces; one upper and one lower, and three for the sides and front. In this, the teeth are roughly moulded. But they afterwards require trimming, and it is quite as easy, and much more expeditious to carve them from the porcelain paste in the first instance. One who is skilled in the business, can carve a double set, after having moulded the body in matrices like the one we have described, in an hour and a half or two hours.

MOULDING AND CARVING.

A block for an entire set of teeth for the upper or lower jaw shrinks so much in baking, as not only to destroy its adaptation to the plate, but also the proper relationship of the artificial to the natural teeth. But this difficulty may be measurably obviated by making three blocks, a central for the incisors and cuspids, and two lateral for the bicuspids and molars. Some are in the habit of making four, but with a good body, three are all that are required. The central should be made first.

If the composition for the body has been ground in a dry state, as much as may be needed at any one time, may be put in a mortar, and a sufficient quantity of clean water poured on to form it into a thick batter, stirring it until thoroughly mixed. It should then be poured on a slab of plaster of paris, as before directed, for the absorption of the surplus water, and afterwards beat for a few minutes on a marble or porphyry slab. Thus prepared, the matrix, after having been well oiled, may be filled with the paste, patting it with the fingers for a minute or two, for the purpose of driving out the confined air.

As soon as the water has evaporated sufficiently, the paste protruding from the matrix may be trimmed off, the lower part of the mould loosened, but kept in place, and the width of the incisors and cuspidati marked with the point of a small carving knife upon the body, the notches across the edge of the lower part of the mould serving as a guide for this part of the operation. The teeth, however, should be a little wider than the spaces between the notches or marks on the matrix, so that

each cuspidatus will occupy one-third of the space indicated for the first bicuspid, this being about the amount which the front or central block will shrink in baking.

After marking the width, the outline of the labial surfaces may be traced, and the carving commenced, copying nature as closely as possible. The teeth may be separated by drawing a thread, held in a small bow, between them. The antagonizing part of the mould may be applied from time to time, to enable the artist to determine the amount required to be taken from the palatine surfaces. In conducting this part of the work, a great deal of tact is required, as the slightest touch, or accident, will break the block; the body, in this state, being exceedingly tender and brittle. If it should, at any time, become too dry, it may be moistened by applying a little water with the point of the carving-knife, or a small camel's-hair pencil. The portion back of the cuspid teeth, is, of course, cut off, and may be put with the body not used.

Having completed the front block, it may be loosened from the plate, by gently tapping the part of the matrix to which it is attached, and then removed and placed upon pulverized silex, on a slide. This done, the matrix may be refilled with paste, and the side blocks carved, making the first bicuspids to occupy about one-third of the spaces marked on the matrix for the cuspidati, and these, in like manner, are removed and placed near the central block, on the slide.

The only instruments required for carving are two or three small knives shaped something like the blade of a thumb lancet, but more pointed and smaller.

CRUCING, OR BISCUITING

As soon as the blocks have become thoroughly dry, they may be put in the muffle of a furnace, previously heated, and subjected to a bright red heat, which will be sufficient to agglutinate the particles of the composition, but not to vitrify the body. This is called *crucing*, or *biscuiting*, and is sometimes done in a charcoal fire, in a small open furnace, the blocks, in this case, having been first placed on a little pulverized silex, in a crucible. But it is most readily effected in a muffle furnace.

If the carving has been roughly executed, the shape of the teeth may be easily altered, and any rough places removed after the blocks have been cooled. They can now be handled without incurring much risk of breaking.

INSERTION OF THE PLATINA PINS.

Fig. 202.



Several methods of attaching blocks to a plate have been adopted, but the one which affords the greatest permanence and stability to the work, consists in soldering a band to platina pins inserted in the backs behind the teeth, and afterwards to the plate. These pins are sometimes put in before the blocks are cruced, but as the teeth are so exceedingly frail at this time, it is better to defer it until they have been subjected to this process. The manner of inserting them is very simple, and consists in drilling two small holes in the block behind each tooth, immersing the block suddenly in water, and inserting a pin, flattened at the end in each hole. The space around them should be filled with the composition of the body mixed with water, to about the consistence of thin cream. This may be applied with a small camel's-hair pencil, or with the point of a carving knife. The pins should pass from half to two-thirds of the way through the block, and be about an eighth of an inch apart, one placed above the other. The blocks for a set for the upper jaw are represented in Fig. 202.

ENAMELING.

The enamel when applied should be of the consistence of cream, and if the teeth are to have a uniform color, it will only be necessary to use two kinds, one for the teeth and one for the gum. But in the majority of cases, three kinds are needed, a grayish blue for the lower part of the crowns, yellowish near the gum, and rose red for the gum. The teeth should be well cleaned before the enamel is put on. The gum-color should be

applied first, then the yellow, and lastly the grayish blue, and the best method of putting it on is with a small camel's-hair brush. It should be of uniform thickness and it should come down a little below the ends of the incisors and cuspidati, so as to give them the translucency peculiar to the natural teeth. A thin coating may also be applied to the grinding surfaces of the molars and bicuspids. It is not required on the palatine surfaces. In applying the gum-color, care should be taken to prevent it from coming down on the teeth, and at the same time to have it form a well defined edge. The grayish blue should overlap the yellow, blending the two tints in such a manner as to render it impossibile to tell where the one begins or the other terminates.

The enamel having been applied, the blocks should be carefully placed on a bed of silex on the slide, and when perfectly dry, they may be put in the furnace.

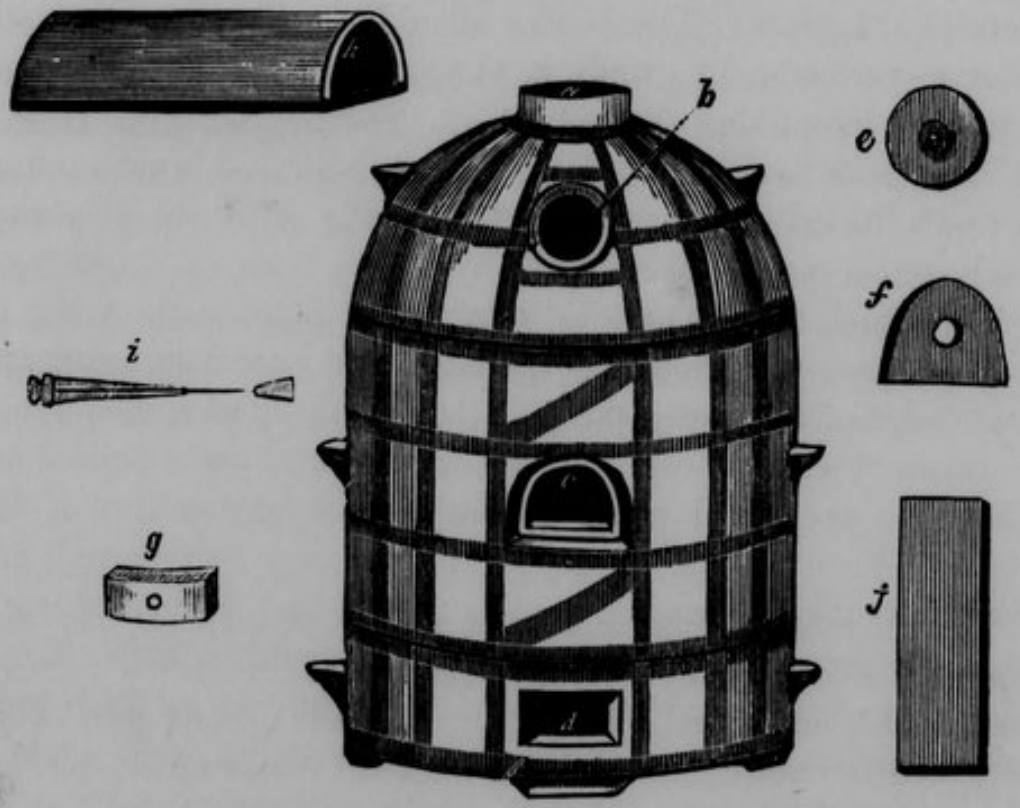
FIRING AND BAKING.

This is usually done in a small muffle furnace, like the one represented in Fig. 203, though some dentists have a furnace constructed somewhat differently. A clear, strong fire, made of the hardest anthracite coal, is required for baking the blocks. It is first kindled with charcoal, and after this has become thoroughly ignited, the anthracite is added, a little at a time, until the furnace is full. As the muffle, at the high temperature required for fusing the blocks, and under the weight of the coal above, is liable to sink down in the centre, it should be supported with a rester underneath, made of fire-brick clay. The anthracite coal, after it has settled and become thoroughly ignited, should be two or three inches deep on the top of the muffle, and the opening through which the fuel is introduced, closed.

Thus heated, the slide may be carefully introduced into the muffle of the furnace, the opening closed, and the door luted with fire clay. Some dentists use a test piece, consisting of a small piece of the paste used for the body, with a little enamel on one side of it, fixed to the end of a platina wire, projecting from the inner extremity of a plug made of fire clay,

and fitting a hole in the centre of the door of the muffle. By withdrawing this, the progress of the baking can be ascertained. The use of it is not necessary, especially to one experienced in this business. Most persons are in the habit of opening the door of the muffle, and partially withdrawing the slide, when

Fig. 203.



they think the blocks have baked sufficiently. When the enamel has become fused, and run smoothly over the surfaces to which it was applied, the process has been carried far enough. The upper stopper may now be removed, the draft of air cut off from the fire by closing the door to the ash-pit, and the furnace permitted to cool. When the combustion has ceased, and the temperature become so much reduced as to permit of the introduction of the hand into the muffle, the slide may be removed. If it is taken out before the furnace has cooled sufficiently, the teeth will be very liable to crack under the blow-pipe.

Fig. 203. A muffle furnace; *a* Collar for the smoke-pipe; *b* The opening through which the fuel is introduced; *c* The muffle-door; *d* The ash-pit door; *e* Stopper for the opening *b*; *f* Stopper for closing the opening to the muffle; *g* Stopper for the opening to the ash-pit; *h* Muffle; *i* Stopper with platina wire and test; *j* Slide.

FITTING AND ATTACHING THE BLOCKS TO THE PLATE.

The adaptation of the blocks to the base is, often, more or less impaired by the shrinkage which takes place in baking, and as it is important that they should fit with the nicest accuracy, it frequently becomes necessary to grind them before attaching them to the plate. The blocks should also be fitted to each other so perfectly, by grinding, as to render the line of union scarcely perceptible.

The blocks having been fitted to the plate, and to each other, and so adjusted as to antagonize properly with the opposing teeth, which may be ascertained by trying them in the antagonizing model, they should be retained in place with a rim of softened beeswax, applied to the labial and buccal surfaces, and outer edge of the base; the plate behind the blocks, should then be smeared with oil, and a batter of plaster of paris poured on, filling the arch, and covering the coronal extremities of the teeth. When this has hardened, the wax may be removed, and the blocks taken from and applied to the base without disturbing their proper relationship. A strip of gold, a little thinner than that used for the base, about an eighth of an inch wide, and long enough to extend from the posterior palatine angle of the hindmost block on one side, around to the same point on the other. This should be slightly grooved, and accurately fitted to the plate along the outer edge of the blocks, with the grooved side towards them. This done, the plate may be marked, with a sharp pointed steel instrument, on the outside of this rim. The plaster and blocks may now be removed, the strip of gold confined in its place by wrapping the plate with fine iron wire. It should then be soldered at three or four different points, and afterwards all the way round to the plate.

The blocks may now be separated from the plaster, adjusted to the plate, and held in place partly by the rim just soldered to it, and partly by a rim of wax placed against their buccal and labial surfaces. The next thing to be done, is to apply a strip of gold from a quarter to three-eighths of an inch in width, and of the thickness of the plate, to the palatine surface of each

block. A pattern for each of these linings is first made by applying sheet lead or tin to the block, which, as it is pressed against it, is perforated by the platina pins. It is then trimmed to the proper size, and fitted accurately to the base. This is placed upon gold plate, and a piece of the same size and shape cut from it. The perforations in the pattern indicate the points at which the holes are to be punched through the plate. When these are made, it is applied and fitted tightly to the block, and the platina pins bent a little to one side to hold it firmly in place. These are then cut or filed off nearly up to the plate, the block returned to its place on the base, and to which the lining should be made to fit with the most perfect accuracy, as well, also, as to the end of the lining of the adjoining block.

All the linings having been applied and the blocks adjusted to the base, a rim of wax may be put on the inside to keep the teeth in place while the outer rim is removed. The piece may now be put in plaster or a mixture of equal parts of plaster and fine sand, or coarsely pulverized quartz or asbestos, in the manner as directed in another chapter; this done, a mixture of finely ground borax and water is applied along the line of connection between the linings of the three blocks, the linings and plate, and the posterior extremity of the lining of each block and the outer rim of gold, as well as around each platina pin; to all of which places solder should be applied. The work is now ready for soldering and as this process has been described in another place it is not necessary to repeat what has already been said upon the subject. The process of finishing is also the same as that for a set of single teeth mounted upon plate.

Fig. 204.

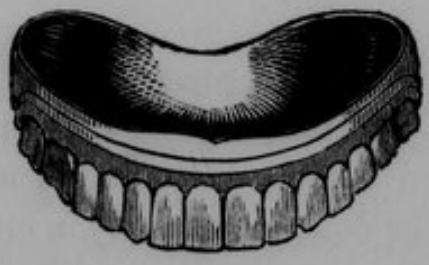
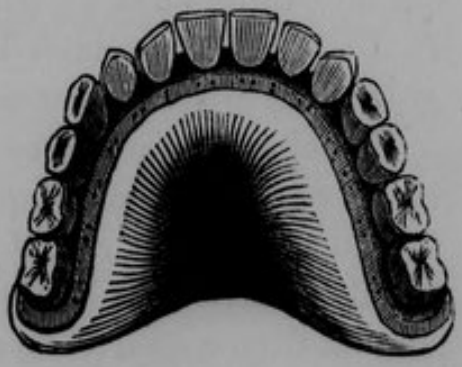


Fig. 205.



The above cuts represent a front and palatine view of a set of

block teeth mounted on a metallic base for the upper jaw. The rim on the outside around the upper edge of the block is not always put on, but it adds very much to the strength and beauty of the piece, and also to its cleanliness, if fitted up tightly, as it always should be, to the block.

There are two other methods of attaching blocks to a plate. One consists in making vertical holes through the blocks, one for each tooth after they have been cruced. A gold pin is passed through each tooth and riveted on the upper side of the plate; or, first soldered to the plate, and riveted on the grinding surfaces of the molars and bicuspids and the palatine surfaces of the incisors and cuspidati. The other method consists in soldering pins to the plate which pass half or two-thirds of the way through the teeth. But, according to the observations and experience of the author, the first is the most substantial method, and, therefore, we have not thought it necessary to give a detailed description of either of the others.

In making a double set of block teeth, the two matrices are made one with the upper and the other with the lower parts of the antagonizing model which should be made with two rims of wax, one representing the upper and the other the lower teeth. The lines marked on the wax to indicate the width of the teeth should be so arranged as to represent the relationship which the upper and lower teeth sustain to each other when the jaws are closed.

NOTE.—The originals of nearly all the illustrations in the foregoing chapter were made for the author by Mr. M. D. French, a student of his, and for which courtesy he takes pleasure in acknowledging his indebtedness.

CHAPTER EIGHTEENTH.

SINGLE PORCELAIN TEETH MOUNTED ON A METALLIC BASE, WITH CONTINUOUS ARTIFICIAL GUMS.

The above method of mounting porcelain teeth has been introduced into practice, in the United State, subsequently to the publication of the fourth edition of this work. It was done almost simultaneously by Dr. William M. Hunter and Professor John Allen, both of Cincinnati, Ohio, and both claiming priority. But the idea of uniting porcelain teeth to a metallic base, by means of a fusible silicious composition, originated in France, where the principle has been practiced since about the year 1820. The composition employed there, however, judging from specimens which we have seen, cannot be used in connection with teeth containing as large a proportion of feldspar as those manufactured in this country. But Drs. Allen and Hunter have each succeeded in making such a compound. We are not fully satisfied, however, that teeth can be united to a base with it, independently of other means of attachment, so securely, as to prevent the liability of their being broken off by mastication. But, irrespective of any advantage that may be derived from it, as a connecting medium, it may prove to be of great practical value for the formation of artificial gums, uniting single teeth to each other, and to the base on which they are mounted.

The act of masticating with artificial teeth necessarily springs the plate, more or less, to which they are attached; and this, it is thought by some, will cause the gum to crack and scale off. But, so far as we have been able to ascertain, this has not oc-

curred very frequently, and when it does happen, the injury, it is said, can be easily repaired, by replacing the loss with the composition and fusing it to the fractured edges of the remaining portions, and to the plate. This removes a very serious objection to the use of the silicious compound; and if we can obtain, by this method of mounting artificial teeth, the requisite strength and durability, it is certainly one of the best which has been introduced to the notice of the dental profession. The advantages arising from it are obvious. By uniting the teeth to each other, near their base, and to the plate, the cleanliness of the substitute is more perfectly secured, as all the openings beneath and around them, are completely closed, excluding the secretions of the mouth and particles of alimentary substances, which, by finding lodgment in these places, would soon become putrid, and impart to the breath an offensive odor. In this respect, they are fully equal to the most perfectly mounted block teeth, and the labor of putting up a set of the former can be performed in half the time required for making and mounting a set of the latter. The gum is continuous, without seam or crack, from one side to the other; and a person who can mount single teeth well, can acquire a knowledge of this method, with proper instruction, in two or three days.

Through the courtesy of Dr. Hunter, whose efforts to perfect a composition for the purpose have been untiring, we are enabled to furnish our readers with his formulas, together with the method which he pursues in working them. The spirit of liberality which he has manifested in making known the result of his researches—researches which have occupied so considerable a portion of his time, for several years, whether the improvement shall stand the test of future experience or not, is worthy of the highest praise.

The composition employed by Dr. Hunter may be used on gold plate, such as is used for block teeth, and may be applied to full sets of teeth, or parts of sets. It may also be used on platina, or gold reduced to twenty or twenty-two carats, by alloying it with platina. But, says Dr. Hunter, "as the work on platina presents fewer difficulties to the beginner, it would be well to gain experience upon that kind of metal, before attempting its application on gold bases."

The materials employed by Dr. Hunter in his compositions, are: silex, fused spar, calcined borax, caustic potash, and asbestos. The silex and spar should be of the clearest and best quality, and ground very fine. The asbestos should be freed from talc and other foreign substances, and reduced to a fine powder.

Two compounds are employed. One is termed the *base*, and the other, *gum enamel*, and for the latter, three recipes are given. The following are Dr. Hunter's formulas:

"*Base.*—Take flux*, 1 oz.; asbestos, 2 oz.; grind together very fine, completely intermixing. Add granulated body,† 1½ oz.; and mix with a spatula to prevent grinding the granules of body any finer.

"*Gum Enamels.*—No. 1. Flux, 1 oz.; fused spar, 1 oz.; English rose, 40 grains. Grind the English rose extremely fine in a mortar, and gradually add the flux and then the fused spar, grinding until the ingredients are thoroughly incorporated. Cut down a large Hessian crucible so that it will slide into the muffle of a furnace, line with silex and kaolin each one part, put in the material and draw up the heat on it in a muffle to the point of *vitrification*, not *fusion*, and withdraw from the muffle. The result will be a red cake of enamel which will easily leave the crucible, which after removing any adhering kaolin, is to be broken down and ground tolerably fine. It may now be tested and then (if of too strong a color) tempered by the addition of covering. This is the gum which flows at the lowest heat, and is never used when it is expected to solder.

*The flux used by Dr. Hunter is composed of silex, 8 oz.; calcined borax, 4 oz.; caustic potassa, 1 oz. The potassa is first ground fine in a wedgewood mortar, and the other materials gradually added until they are thoroughly mixed. "Line a Hessian crucible (as white as can be got) with pure kaolin, fill with the mass, and lute on a cover of a piece of fire-clay slab, with the same. Expose to a clear strong fire in a furnace with coke fuel, for about half an hour or until it is fused into a transparent glass, which should be clear and free from stain of any kind. This is broke and ground until it will pass through a bolting sieve.

†This may be made of hard porcelain, fine China or wedgewood, but Dr. Hunter uses spar, 3 oz.; silex, 1½ oz.; kaolin, ½ oz.; completely fused. "Break and grind so that it will pass through a wire sieve No. 50, and again sift off the fine particles which pass through No. 10 bolting cloth," which leaves it in grains about the size of the finest gunpowder.

"No. 2. Flux, 1 oz.; fused spar, 2 oz.; English rose, 60 grains. Treat the same as No. 1. This is a gum intermediate, and is used upon platina plates.

"No. 3. Flux, 1 oz.; fused spar, 3 oz.; English rose, 80 grains. Treat as the above. The gum is used in making pieces intended to be soldered on, either in full arches or in the sections known as *block work*. It is not necessary to grind very fine in preparing the above formulas for application.

"*Covering*.—What is termed covering, is the same as the formulas for gum, *minus* the English rose, and is made without any coloring whatever when it is used for tempering the above gums which are too highly colored, and which may be done by adding, according to circumstances, from 1 part of covering to 2 of gum, to 3 of covering to 1 of gum, thus procuring the desired shade. When it is to be used for covering the base prior to applying the gum, it may be colored with titanium, using from two to five grains to the ounce.

"*Investient*.—Take two measures of white quartz sand, mix with one measure of plaster of paris, mixing with just enough water to make the mass plastic, and apply quickly. The slab on which the piece is set should be saturated with water to keep the material from setting too soon, and that it may unite with it.

"*Cement*.—Wax, 1 oz.; resin 2 oz. The proportions of this will vary according to the weather; it should be strong enough to hold the teeth firmly, and yet brittle enough to chip away freely when cold. A little experience will enable any one to prepare it properly.

"Platina, as usually applied, I think objectionable, wanting stiffness; my method of using it is similar to that proposed by Delabarre, but possessing greater strength than even his method, and by it, a base can be made as light as a good gold plate got up in the ordinary way. I first strike a very thin plate to the cast, and cut out a piece the size of the desired chamber, taking care not to extend it forward to embrace the palatal artery. Add wax to the plate for the depth of cavity, diminishing it neatly as it approaches the alveolar ridge. Cement this plate to the cast, and take another metallic cast, strike another thin

plate over the whole, and solder throughout with an alloy, of gold twenty-two parts, platina two parts, or with pure gold. The chamber thus formed is precisely the same as "Cleaveland's Patent Plate," but the space *between the plates*, for which he obtained his patent, is subsequently filled up, leaving a cavity resembling Gilbert's, but with a sharper edge when so desired. This space is filled up with base and enamel, and gives great stiffness without the ugly protrusion of the struck chamber. The plate thus formed assimilates much more closely to the palatal dome, not interfering with pronunciation; another great advantage gained by it is the impossibility of warping. I say *impossibility*, because I have submitted plates so constructed to the severest tests, and never had them to warp. It is well to rivet the two plates together, before proceeding to solder, especially gold plates, and to bring the heat carefully upon them; once prepared, there is no danger of change in the succeeding manipulations. I strike up the lower plate with a band on the labial edge, about one-sixteenth of an inch wide. This I do by trimming the wax impression before taking the plaster cast, or by building a ridge of wax on the plaster cast before taking the metal casts. Should the band (or turned edge) flare out too much, it may readily be bent in with a pair of pliers, etc. This style of work should not be applied, except where the absorption may be said to be complete.

"After the plates are perfectly adapted to the mouth, place wax upon each, which trim to the proper outline as regards length and contour of countenance, marking the proper occlusion of the jaws and the median line. These waxen outlines are called the *drafts*, and are carefully removed from the mouth, and an articulator taken by which to arrange the teeth.

"When the absorption is considerable, and the plate in consequence is rather flat, it is necessary to solder a band or rim along the line where the upper draft meets the plate, about one-sixteenth or one-eighth of an inch wide, and fitting up against the outline of the draft. When the ridge is still prominent, the block will not of course be brought out against the lip so much, and a wire may be soldered on instead of the wider band. I think one or the other necessary, as it gives it a

thick edge to the block, rendering it far less liable to crack off than if it were reduced to a sharp angle; it also allows the edge of the plate to be bent in against the gum, or away from it, as circumstances may require, and afford in many cases a far better support for the plates than can be given to one in which the band is *struck up*, or the edge turned over with pliers, where the block must extend to the edge of the plate. Some few cases do occur, when the band may be struck as far back as the bicuspids with advantage, and some in the lower jaw, where it is necessary to solder on the band, but this is not the general practice.

"The upper teeth are first arranged on the plate antagonizing with the lower draft, supported by wax or cement, or both. Then remove the lower draft and arrange the lower teeth, so that the coaptation of the cutting edges of the teeth shall be perfect as desired. The patient may now be called in again, and any change in the arrangement made to gratify his or her taste or whim. Now place the plates, with the teeth thereon, on their respective casts, oil the cast below the plate and apply plaster of paris over the edge and face of the teeth and down on the cast, say an inch below the edge of the plate. This will hold them firmly in their place while you remove the wax and cement from the inside, and fit and rivet backs to the teeth. When backed, cut the plaster through in two or more places, and remove. Clean the plate by heating. Cut the plaster, so that while it will enable you to give each tooth its proper position, you can readily remove it from the teeth when they are cemented to the plate. Adjust the sections of plaster and the teeth in their proper positions. The plaster may be held by a piece of soft wire. Cement the teeth to the plate, and strengthen the cement by laying slips of wood half an inch long along the joint and against the teeth. (I generally use the matches which are so plenty about the laboratory.) Remove the sections of plaster, being careful not to displace any of the teeth. If it be intended to cover the strap with enamel, you should solder a wire after backing, and previous to replacing the teeth, along the plate parallel with the bottom of the straps, and about one-eighth or one-fourth of an inch from them.

"The teeth are now backed and cemented to the plate, and present an open space between the plate and the teeth, which is to be filled up with the base, using it quite wet to fill up the small interstices, filling in the rest as *hard and dry as possible.* Fill the cavity *between* the plates in the same manner, and oil the edge. Oil the surface of the base, envelop in the investient, (precisely as you would put an ordinary job into plaster and sand for soldering,) and set on a fire-clay slab previously saturated with water. When hard, chip away the cement, cooling it if necesary with ice, until it is perfectly clean. Along the joints place scraps and filings of platina very freely, and cover all the surface you wish to enamel with coarse filings, holding them to their place by borax, ground fine with water. Apply pure gold as a solder quite freely, say two dwts. or more to a single set. Put in a muffle, and bring up a gradual heat until the gold flows *freely*, which heat is all that will be needed for the base; withdraw and cool in a muffle. Remove the investient, and fill up all crevices and interstices not already filled, with covering No. 2; cover the straps and base with the same, about as thick as a dime, and cover this with gum No. 2, about half that thickness. At the same time enamel the base in the chamber, and cover with thick soft paper. Set the plate down on the investient on a slab, with the edges of the teeth up. Fuse in a muffle, and the work is completed. Blemishes may occur in the gum from a want of skill in the manipulation; should such be the case, remedy by applying gum No. 1.

"Should the patient object to the use of platina as a base, the work can be made as above on an alloy of gold and platina 20 carats fine, and soldered with pure gold, etc., as above. In all cases, however, where it is used, the upper plate should be made as I have described above, but with platina, any kind of plate can be used.

"*Ordinary Alloy.* Blocks may be made and soldered to the ordinary plate, if the absorption is sufficient to require much gum, without any platina. Arrange the teeth on wax, on the plate, fill out the desired outline of gum, and apply plaster quarter of an inch thick over the face of the teeth, wax and cast. When hard, cut it into sections, (cutting between the canines and

bicuspids,) remove the wax from the plate and teeth, bind the sections of the plaster mould, thus made, to their places with a wire, oil its surface and that of the plate, fill in the space beneath the teeth with the base, wet at first, but towards the last, as hard and dry as possible, and thoroughly compacted. Trim to the desired outline on the inside, oil the base, and fill the whole palatal space with investient, supporting the block on its lingual side. Remove the plaster mould, and cut through the block, with a very thin blade, between the canines and bicuspids. Take the whole job off of the plate, and set on a fire-clay slab with investient, the edges of the teeth down; bring up the heat in a muffle to the melting point of pure gold. When cold, cover and gum with No. 3, gum and covering.

"Another mode is, to back the sections with a continuous strap, (using only the lower pin,) fill in the base from the front, use covering and gum No. 3, and finish at one heat. When the blocks are placed upon the plate, the other pin is used to fasten the gold back, which is soldered to it, and the platina half back; neither of these backs need be very heavy, as soldering the two together, gives great strength and stiffness. Very delicate block work can be made in this way, and it is applicable, also, where a few teeth only are needed.

"A very pretty method, where a section of two or four teeth (incisors) is needed, and only a thin flange of gum, is to fit gum teeth into the space, unite by the lower platina with a continuous back, and unite the joint with gum No. 3. A tooth left ungummed by the manufacturer, would be best for the purpose. The same may be applied to blocks for a full arch, remembering not to depend entirely upon platina backs.

"The method I prefer for full arches on ordinary plate, is to take a ribbon of platina, a little wider than the intended base, and of the length of the arch, cut it nearly through in five places, viz. between the front incisors, between the lateral incisors and canines, and between the bicuspids. Adapt it to the form of the alveolar ridge, with a hammer and pliers, and swage on the plate along where the teeth are to be set. Solder up the joints with pure gold, and proceed to back the teeth, &c., as before; making preparations for fastening, and removing

the slip of platina from the gold plate, before enveloping in the investient, when proceed as before.

"When the teeth are arranged, insert four platina tubes about one line in diameter, two between the molars and two between the cuspidati and bicuspids, and solder to the platina base. These are designed, after the teeth are finished, to be the means of fastening to the gold plate, either by riveting in the usual way, or by soldering pins to the gold plate passing up through the tubes, fastening with sulphur or wooden dowels. By these methods we are enabled to readily remove the block and repair it, should it meet with any accident, and also in case absorption should go on, to restrike the plate, or to lengthen the teeth. The rim should be put on the gold plate after the block is finished, it gives great additional strength and a beautiful finish.

"*Memoranda.*—In preparing material, always grind dry, and the most scrupulous cleanliness should attend all of the manipulations. In all cases where heat is applied to an article in this system, it should be raised gradually from the bottom of the muffle, and never run into a heat. Where it is desired to lengthen any of the teeth, either incisors or masticators, or to mend a broken tooth, it may be done with *covering*, properly colored with platina, cobalt or titanium.

"In preparing a piece of work, wash it with great care, using a stiff brush and pulverized pumice stone. Bake over a slow fire to expel all moisture, and wash again, when it will be ready for any new application of the enamel. Absorption, occurring after a case has been some time worn, by allowing the jaws to close nearer, causes the lower jaw to come forward and drive the upper set out of the mouth. By putting the covering on the grinding surface of the back teeth in sufficient quantities to make up the desired length, the coaptation of the denture will be restored, and with it the original usefulness.

"Any alloy, containing copper or silver, should not be used for solder or plate, if it is intended to fuse a gum over the lingual side of the teeth, as it will surely stain the gum. Simple platina backs alone, do not possess the requisite stiffness, and should always be covered on platina with the enamel, and on

gold with another gold back. In backing the teeth, lap the backs or neatly join them up as far as the lower pin, in the tooth, and higher if admissible, and in soldering be sure to have the joint so made *perfectly soldered.*"

The composition employed by professor Allen, for the base, consists of silex, 2 oz.; flint glass, 1 oz.; borax, 1 oz.; wedgewood, 1½ oz.; asbestos, 2 drachms; feldspar, 2 drachms; kaolin, 1 drachm; intermixed or underlaid with scraps of gold or platina. For the enamel, he employs feldspar, ½ oz.; white glass, 1 oz; and oxyd of gold, 1½ grs.; which gives it the gum color. After arranging the teeth upon the plate in the ordinary way the base is put on in a plastic state. A mixture of plaster and asbestos is then applied to the teeth, the wax from the inside removed, and more of the cement put on. When perfectly dry, the piece is subjected to a sufficiently high heat in the furnace to fuse the composition. It is then taken out, cooled slowly, the plaster and asbestos removed, the gum enamel applied, and,the piece returned to the furnace. When the gum has fused sufficiently, it is removed and cooled as before.

It will be perceived from the above that the formulas of Dr. Allen's composition,* do not differ very greatly from those of Dr. Hunter, and when treated in the same way, produce a very similar result. Judging from specimens of work made with each which we have seen, we believe that one is as strong and durable as the other. The author has had no experience in this method of mounting teeth, and, consequently, cannot speak as decidedly with regard to its value as he could wish. Indeed, teeth mounted with these compositions have not, in his opinion, been used sufficiently long to enable any one to pronounce very positively upon their durability.

* Professor Allen has secured to himself the exclusive benefit of his improvement by letters patent, but grants to such members of the profession as desire to use it, the privilege of doing so, together with the necessary practical instruction, for what he conceives to be a fair remuneration.

CHAPTER NINETEENTH.

ARTIFICIAL TEETH SECURED IN A BASE OF TIN.

Tin has been occasionally employed as a base for artificial teeth, by a few dentists, since 1849, and Dr. William A. Royce, dentist, of Newburg, New York, used it in one case, as early as 1836.* The author has had no experience in the use of tin for this purpose; but from a set of teeth for the lower jaw, which he saw, in 1850, put up by Dr. G. E. Hawes, of New York, he believes it may be employed in many cases, with advantage. In supplying the loss of the natural teeth in the inferior maxillary, with an artificial substitute, the stability and usefulness of the piece often depends, in a considerable degree, upon its weight; and if the employment of tin as a base for artificial teeth is admissible under any circumstances, it is in cases of this sort. When used in sufficient quantity, it affords as secure a support for artificial teeth as a plate of gold of the thickness ordinarily employed; and when properly covered with gold, can impart no unpleasant taste.

Dr. E. G. Hawes, to whom we are indebted for nearly all the information we possess upon the subject, says, in vol. 1, No. 1, New Series American Journal of Dental Science, "from extensive experiments and inquiry, notwithstanding the objections urged against it, I am still of opinion that pure tin gilded, or without gilding upon a thin gold plate, may be used in all cases of whole or fractional under sets of artificial teeth, with more comfort and advantage to the patient, and with less expense and labor to the operator, than is possible with the use of

* Vide *American Journal of Dental Science*, vol. 1, No. 1, new series

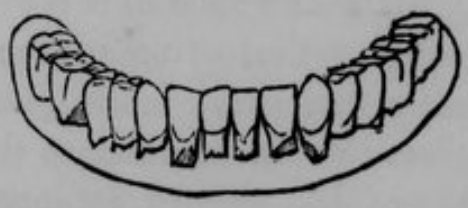
gold, alone." The article from which this quotation is made, was published in October, 1850; and in a letter addressed to the author in October, 1852, he says, "I have, as yet, no occasion to change my views, in regard to the value of pure tin as a base for lower sets of teeth, when weight is the desideratum." Dr. Royce has employed tin in connection with gold plates, for upper as well as lower sets of teeth; but, for the former, the use of it must be regarded as objectionable, as it would unnecessarily increase the weight and bulk of the piece, and render it more cumbersome to the mouth.

When tin is used for a fractional set of teeth for the lower jaw—as, for example, for the molars and bicuspids of both sides—a thin plate of gold should also be employed. This is first struck up in the usual way, strengthening that part which passes behind the incisors and cuspidati, by soldering to it another piece of plate or broad half round wire. The plate being properly adjusted, wax is placed on it, and cut to the proper curve and height. The teeth are then selected, arranged upon the wax, and antagonized, leaving a space between them, and the plate to be filled with the tin. A thick batter of plaster and sand is now placed on the outside of the teeth. When this is dry, the wax is taken off, the teeth removed, one at a time, and a thick backing of gold put on each, bending the platina pins over the gold. The backings may be soldered to the plate in the usual way, or with tin and the soldering iron. In the latter case, a sufficient quantity of tin should be applied to cover the backings, and platina pins, imitating, as nearly as practicable, the original shape of the inside of the alveolar border. This done, the plaster is removed, and a sufficient quantity of tin applied on the outside to fill the spaces between the teeth and the plate, and to restore the loss occasioned by the destruction of the alveolar ridge. The tin is melted and made to flow to the proper place with a soldering iron. This is afterwards trimmed, burnished, and a coating of gold applied by means of the electro-galvanic process.

For a whole lower set, the base may be cast. In this case, metallic castings and plates are dispensed with. The following is the method of procedure recommended by Dr. Hawes:

First procure a cast from a wax or other impression in the usual way, made of plaster, having a large proportion of sand incorporated with it. To this, as thick a plate of tin as can be accurately fitted to it with a burnisher, is adjusted and trimmed to the proper size. Wax is then placed upon it and the teeth selected, arranged and antagonized in the manner as directed in another chapter, leaving a space between them and the plate of about the sixteenth of an inch. Backings to the teeth are not required, but the platina pins should be made to diverge, and the ends of the teeth next to the plate broken or ground off. The teeth when arranged upon the plate will present an appearance something like that represented in Fig. 206.

Fig. 206.



Having proceeded thus far, wax is placed around the lower part of the teeth and between them and the plate, imbedding the ragged fractured extremities of of the former in it. It is now carved to represent the shape of the gums, giving it the proper fullness, as seen in Fig. 207, which appearance the piece will have when finished. The platina pins should be so low in the teeth as to be covered by the wax after the carving is completed. Teeth made expressly for the purpose would be preferable to those commonly employed.

Fig. 207.



When the process of carving the wax is completed, oil the plaster model or cast, then place the teeth and wax upon it and cover them thickly with a batter of plaster and sand. When the plaster has become dry or has thoroughly consolidated, separate the mould, and remove the tin plate and wax, leaving the teeth partially imbedded and secured in the upper part of the matrix, with the parts covered with the wax only, exposed, as shown in Fig. 208.

Several holes are now made through one part of the mould at such points as will not interfere with the finishing of the work, for the introduction of the melted tin and for the escape of the

air. The mould or matrix thus prepared is represented in Fig. 209, with the two parts put together.

Fig. 208.

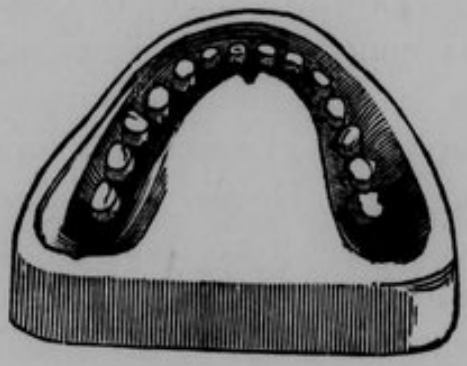
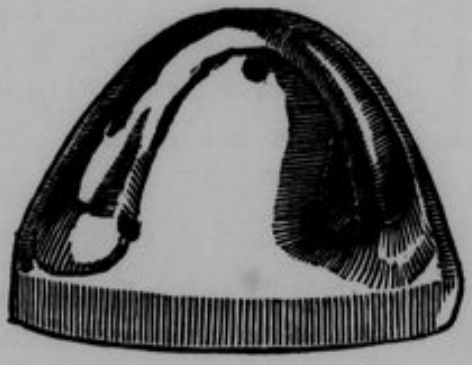


Fig. 209.



A flux of muriate of zinc is now applied to the platina pins, the matrix closed and bound firmly together with iron wire; it is then heated to a temperature equal to that of melted tin. Pure tin, melted, but not having a temperature very much above the melting point, is now poured into the mould through the holes prepared for its reception. After it has cooled sufficiently, the matrix may be separated, and the asperities of the tin removed with a file. Every part of the surface of the base may then be rubbed with sand paper, and afterwards finely polished. The same neatness of finish is required as when the base is made of gold. When gum teeth are employed the tin can only be cast on the inside and beneath the teeth.

Before gilding, the piece should be worn a few days to ascertain if the adjustment is perfect, as any future alteration would deface the base and render a second coating of gold necessary. The adaptation being correct, the tin should be thoroughly cleansed for the removal of all grease and other foreign matter. This should be done first with alkaline solutions, and afterwards with water. It should now be freed from moisture and thoroughly polished with prepared chalk and a soft brush. This done, wash in water for the removal of all extraneous matter, and then place the piece in a "gilding solution." Dr. Hawes directs, that during this process "the teeth should be removed two or three times and burnished, both to give solidity to the deposit" and to remedy any imperfections that may be discovered. The piece is finished, after a sufficiently thick coating of gold

has been deposited on the tin base, with a burnisher. Unless care is used in gilding, the gold will be removed from the tin in burnishing. From two to five dwts. of gold may be deposited upon a single base.

So far as the taste of the metal is concerned, Dr. C. O. Crosby, dentist, of New Haven, is of the opinion, from experiments which he has made, that pure tin is less objectionable, without a covering of gold, than eighteen carat gold, in connection with solder composed of copper, silver and gold. He also states that he has never found a person who could not wear teeth with a tin base. But from our knowledge of the properties of tin, we would think that when a base of this metal is employed, it should be thickly plated with gold.*

*It may be inferred from our remarks at the commencement of this chapter, that Dr. Royce was the first to employ tin as a base for artificial teeth. It has occurred to us since writing it that there is a set of artificial teeth for the lower jaw in the Museum of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, mounted on a base of this description, which were made sometime previously to 1820, by the late Dr. Edward Hudson, of Philadelphia. They were presented to the author, for the above named institution, by Dr. E. Townsend, of Philadelphia. The piece, from the decayed condition of the teeth, which are crowns of human teeth, must have been worn a number of years, and yet, the base was not affected by the action of the secretions of the mouth.

PART SEVENTH.

DISEASES AND DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS.

PART SEVENTH.

DISEASES AND DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS.

ALTHOUGH the treatment of the diseases of the palatine organs belongs more properly to the province of general medicine, than to the specialty to which the present treatise is chiefly devoted; yet, inasmuch as the surgeon dentist is often called upon to remedy the defects that sometimes result from them, it is important that he should have, at least, some general knowledge of the morbid phenomena that are liable to be developed in these parts. But in treating of these diseases, it is not the intention of the author to enter into a minute description of their pathology or therapeutical indications. His principal object is, to notice the defects resulting either from the changes of structure to which they are liable to give rise, or from malformation, and to point out the means by which they are remedied.

The defects of the palatine organs may be divided into *accidental* and *congenital*. The first, as has been just intimated, are caused by a pathological change of structure. The second, are the result of malformation or imperfect development of the parts. But from whatever cause they may be produced, their effects upon the voice, speech, mastication and deglutition are the same. These functions are all impaired by them, in proportion to their nature and extent. When they extend so far as to cause a complete division of the hard and soft structures, distinct utterance is wholly destroyed, and the acts of mastication and deglutition are greatly impaired and always performed with difficulty.

When the loss of substance is the result of disease, and extends so far as to establish a communication between the mouth and nasal fossæ, the defect can seldom be remedied in any other way than by means of an artificial obturator; and even when it is congenital, though the aid of surgery may very often be successfully invoked, the resources of art, in the majority of cases, will be required. When the defect is confined to the vault of the palate, and consists of a simple opening between the mouth and nasal cavities, these resources may always be successfully applied, and even when the loss of substance extends to the soft palate and anterior part of the alveolar ridge, a mechanical appliance may be so constructed, as to restore, in a great degree, the functions dependent upon the presence and integrity of the natural parts.

CHAPTER FIRST.

DISEASES OF THE PALATE.

In common with other parts of the body, the palate sometimes becomes the seat of various morbid phenomena, but the occurrence of disease here, is generally the result of constitutional causes, such as certain depraved habits of body. It is, perhaps, more frequently induced by secondary syphilis than any other cause, and when it is, its ravages are often truly deplorable. It may, however, result from the immoderate and protracted use of mercurial medicine, or from a scorbutic, cancerous, scrofulous or rickety diathesis of the general system. Among the diseases liable to attack the palate, are tumors, caries and necrosis of the bones, ulceration of the mucous membrane, and inflammation, elongation and ulceration of the uvula. In consulting writers on the diseases of the palate, the author has been able to find but few who have treated on them at much length, and for the information which he has been able to obtain upon the subject, except that which he has derived from his own limited observations, he is principally indebted to Jourdain and Boyer. The first of these authors has devoted, in the first volume of his treatise on the surgical diseases of the mouth, about one hundred and forty pages to the affections under consideration.

TUMORS OF THE PALATE.

Tumors of the palate are less frequent in their occurrence than morbid growths from the gums and alveolar processes, but they are as variable in their appearance and character as are those which originate from other parts of the mouth. Sometimes they originate from the mucous membrane, at other times from the periosteal tissue. Sometimes they are attached by a broad

base; at other times by a very narrow one. Some have a smooth surface, a whitish and pale red color, and a firm fleshy texture. These generally grow very slowly, and are seldom of a malignant character. Others have an uneven surface, are soft and vascular, of a purple color, and bleed from the slightest injury.

The last are of a more malignant nature, and frequently have a cancerous tendency. They are also more sensitive to the touch and more painful. The first are seldom attended with much pain, and are less dangerous. In forming a prognosis, therefore, it is necessary to distinguish between those which are simple, and those which are of a malignant or cancerous nature.

Tumors of the palate, as well as those of other parts of the mouth, are always productive of annoyance and inconvenience to the patient in proportion to their size and the malignancy of their character. They impede, and, sometimes, destroy the functions of mastication, and render those of speech and deglutition exceedingly difficult and imperfect.

A more minute description of tumors of the palate is deemed unnecessary, since that which has been given, in a preceding part of the work, of the morbid productions of the gums and alveolar processes, will, for the most part, be found as applicable to the one as the other. But with regard to the peculiar pathological characteristics and nosological classification of the various kinds of tumors, it has constituted no part of the design of the author to attempt a description of them. He could not do this without extending the limits of this part of his work to too great a length : therefere, for information upon these subjects, the reader is referred to works on general medicine and surgery.

CAUSES.

Concerning the causes of tumors of the palate, as well as those of other parts of the body, there exists some diversity of opinion. Some authors believe that they are attributable in all cases to a peculiar or specific constitutional vice, as venereal, scorbutic, cancerous, scrofulous, &c., while others think

they may occur in individuals in whom no such habit or vice exists. That the character of the tumor is determined by the habit of body or constitutional tendency of the individual is a question, we believe, which, at present, admits of little doubt, though some exciting cause may be necessary to the commencement of the disease. Local irritation, no doubt, is the immediate or exciting cause of the various morbid productions of the palate, but this, unless favored by some specific or peculiar constitutional tendency or cachectic habit of body, would not be likely to give rise to their growth. Thus, while the former would seem to be the exciting cause, the character assumed by the disease, as has been just stated, is evidently determined by the latter.

Every habit of body or tendency to any particular form of diseased action may be regarded, too, as having a susceptibility to morbid impressions peculiar to itself. Hence, an irritant which, in one case, might not be productive of any appreciable disturbance, might, in another, give rise to a morbid growth of a more or less malignant character—according to the habit of body or constitutional tendency of the individual.

The irritation produced by dead, loose, and diseased teeth, ulcers of the mucous membrane and necrosed bone, are, perhaps, among the most common of the exciting causes. Some may, perhaps, be disposed to question the agency of dental irritation in the production of a morbid growth from the palate, but the fact is too well established to admit of doubt. Many well authenticated cases are on record which conclusively prove that diseased teeth are capable of exerting a morbid influence upon these parts. M. GUYARD,* reports the case of a woman forty years of age, who had a cancerous excrescence of the palate, caused by the irritation produced by the superior incisors, and numerous examples of tumor and other diseases of the palate, resulting from the presence of diseased teeth, are given by Jourdain and other authors.†

But there are other causes, such for example as salivary cal-

* Vide *Journal de Med.* tome xix, p. 361.

† Vide *Traité des Maladies Chirurgicale de la Bouche.*

culus, mucous engorgement of the maxillary sinus, acrid saliva, and mechanical injuries from blows, and hard substances taken into the mouth. Roche and Sanson, in their Theory and Practice of Medicine and Surgery, say, that "from the irritation produced by syphilitic ulcers, carcinomatous tumors nearly always follow."*

TREATMENT.

Although tumors of the palate may sometimes disappear spontaneously on the removal of the exciting cause, the proper curative indication consists in their entire extirpation. When they are attached by a small base, this may be easily effected with a pair of scissors properly curved at their points, or by means of a ligature in the manner as directed for the removal of similar tumors of the gums. But when they are attached by a broad base, a curved bistoury is the most convenient instrument that can be employed, and sometimes it may be necessary to have two, a right and a left, or one for each side.

Boyer describes an operation which he performed for the removal of a hard, white, indolent tumor, of the size of a large nut, situated a little behind the middle of the palate, and which had occasioned the patient, who was a lady, no other inconvenience than an unpleasant sensation during mastication and deglutition. He excised the tumor with a bistoury, curved so as to fit exactly the vault of the palate, which he had made for the purpose. After having removed the tumor, he destroyed the membrane from which it had originated, with a rasp. The hemorrhage was suppressed with vinegar and water and pledgets of lint. The wound soon healed, and at the expiration of eight years, there were no signs of a reproduction of the disease.†

In the removal of tumors from the palate, as well as from other parts of the body, no portion should be left; as, in this

* Vide *Nouveaux Elements de Pathologie Medico-Chirurgicale, ou précis Théorique et Pratique de Médicine et Chirurgie*, tome 4, p. 1011.

† *Traitē des Maladies Chirurgicale et des Operations, qui leur Conviennent :* tome 6, p. 449.

event, a reproduction of the disease would be likely to occur, and more especially if it be of a malignant character. The operation should be performed, too, before the tumor has acquired great size, or implicated in the diseased action, to a considerable extent, the neighboring structures.

There is always great danger when the morbid production is of a cancerous nature, however perfectly it may be removed, of its reproduction; to guard against this, as far as possible, the application of the actual cautery is recommended by many surgeons, not only for the purpose of causing an exfoliation of a portion of the superjacent bone, but also to arrest the hemorrhage which generally attends operations of this sort. Boyer, who says he has performed the operation for the removal of tumors from the palate several times, frankly admits that he has never been successful where they were of a malignant character. But, notwithstanding the great liability there is of a reproduction of most morbid growths, this does not always happen, as is well attested by many cases on record, and from which it may be well to cite three or four.

Pierre Guyard reports in the Journal de Médecine, vol. xix, p. 361, and to which reference has before been made, the case of a woman, forty years of age, who had a cancerous excrescence of the palate, of many years standing, which weighed nine ounces. This excrescence was extirpated, and the patient restored to health.

The case of a man, forty years of age, affected with so large a tumor of the palate that he could take no nourishment, except in a fluid state, is reported by VARNER. In this case, it was of a cartilaginous character, interspersed with osseous points, and the operation for its removal was also successful.*

Jourdain describes the case of a man, who, from the irritation produced by the roots of several decayed teeth, had a swelling of the upper lip and nose, and a tumor of the palate of the size of a pigeon's egg. A fistula, traversing the alveolar and maxillary border, extended from the superior lateral incisor to the first molar of the same side, from which a large quantity of

*Vide *Traité des Maladies Chirurgicale de la Bouche*, t. 1, p. 427.

matter was discharged. The teeth being troublesome, were removed. The discharge of matter soon ceased. He next removed the tumor from the palate, which exposed a portion of necrosed bone; this exfoliated in a few days, leaving an opening into the nose of the size of a large quill, through which fluids, taken into the mouth, readily passed. By the application of caustics, the sides of the opening were caused to granulate, and in six weeks it had entirely healed.

The same author mentions the case of a lady who had a tumor of the palate, caused by erysipelas. The last named disease having extended to the lips, nose and vault of the palate, caused in the last mentioned place an ulceration, from the centre of which grew a small fungous tumor. This was removed, and a portion of the bone, which was exposed, was found to be in a necrosed and partially exfoliated condition. This was extracted with an excavator, and, under proper treatment, the patient soon recovered.

In presenting the foregoing cases, the author has not thought it necessory to give any thing more than the important facts connected with each. A full translation of the reports would occupy more space than he wishes to devote to this particular subject.

It is seldom that the operation for the removal of tumors of the palate are followed by as favorable results as furnished by the foregoing cases. If it were necessary, many examples of tumors of the palate, attended with fatal effects, might be cited. Jourdain mentions one given by M. PLATER, of a cancerous tumor of the palate, caused by ulceration of the throat and uvula.

Both before and after the operation, such general or constitutional treatment as may be indicated by the habit of body or vice under which the patient may be laboring, should be adopted. If of a scorbutic or scrofulous habit, or affected with a syphilitic disease, suitable remedies should be prescribed, and when practicable, such local irritants as may have acted as exciting causes should be removed.

CARIES AND NECROSIS OF THE BONES OF THE PALATE, AND ULCERATION OF THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE.

The bones of the palate sometimes become the seat of caries and necrosis, causing ulceration of the subjacent soft parts, and the destruction of a greater or less portion of the structures which separate the cavities of the mouth and nose. Although these effects are of more frequent occurrence than tumors, they are less dangerous in their consequences. Commencing with inflammation and suppuration of the periosteal tissue, caries, and necrosis of the bones, accompanied by ulceration of the subjacent mucous membrane, soon supervene, and, ultimately, exfoliation takes place, when an opening of greater or less size, between the buccal and nasal cavities, is established.

During the progress of the disease, fetid sanies is continually discharged from one or more fistulous openings, into the mouth, and sometimes into the cavities of the nose, rendering the condition of the unhappy sufferer exceedingly loathsome and distressing. The progress of the disease is often slow, continuing, not unfrequently, for weeks, months, and in some cases, even years, destroying all the pleasures of life, and rendering existence itself a burden. A case of this kind was recently introduced into the infirmary of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, which will be noticed at some length, when the author comes to treat of the means employed for remedying defects of the palatine organs.

Dr. B. B. Brown, surgeon dentist, formerly of St. Louis, Missouri, describes a very interesting case of the destruction of a large portion of the palate plates of the superior maxillary and palate bones, accompaniad by the loss of the left lateral and central incisors.*

The ravages of caries and ulceration of the palate are sometimes so great that the palatine bones, the palate plates of the superior maxillary, the vomer, turbinated and nasal bones,

* Vide *Am. Jour. Dent. Sci.*, vol. 6, p. 236.

together with the velum and uvula, are entirely destroyed, but when they are thus extensive, they are seldom arrested, except with the life of the patient.

The ulcerative process of the soft parts, when resulting from caries of the bones, frequently extends to the pituitary membrane, lining the floor of the nasal fossæ. A case of this kind, and to which the author will hereafter have occasion to refer, is related by Jourdain.

But ulceration of the mucous membrane, lining the vault of the palate, often occurs while the superjacent bones are in a healthy condition. It is frequently caused by inflammation and ulceration of the velum and uvula, whether resulting as an effect of secondary syphilis or from malignant ozena produced by other causes. But, from whatever cause the ulceration is produced, it may ultimately give rise to caries and necrosis of the bones.

CAUSES.

As in the case of tumors of the palate, caries, necrosis, and ulceration of these parts are the result of local irritation and certain habits of body, or constitutional vices. The immediate or exciting cause is local irritation, but the extent of the effects resulting from such irritation is, as we have frequently stated before, in proportion to the susceptibility of the body to morbid impressions. The local irritants are the same as those which have been already mentioned, namely, dead and loose teeth, roots of teeth, salivary calculus, mechanical injuries, acrid humors, &c. The case of a lady of irreproachable character, is related by Jourdain, in whom a scratch on the palate with a fish-bone, caused a tumor, which suppurated and degenerated into an ulcer with hard elevated edges and a fungus in the middle.* A case, in which effects similar to these, and produced by the same cause, was mentioned to the author in 1849, by a dentist of Baltimore. Local irritation, unquestionably, has much to do in the production of the diseases under consideration—more than

* Vide *Traite des Maladies Chirurgicale de la Bouche*, tom. 1, p. 407.

many seem to imagine or are willing to admit. Most writers are of the opinion that they are wholly caused by some constitutional vice, and nearly always by the venereal, but that this opinion, to some extent, at least, is erroneous, will be fully proven by some facts which will be presented when we come to speak of the treatment of these affections.

TREATMENT.

In the treatment of caries of the bones of the palate, it is important to ascertain if the patient be laboring under any constitutional vice which may have contributed to the disease, and the local irritants concerned in giving rise to it. If the inflammation from which it results, is caused by mechanical irritaton, the irritants should, at once, be removed. If decayed, dead, or loose teeth be suspected as having had any agency in its production, they should be immediately extracted, but so long as any portions of decayed or necrosed bone remains, it is needless to say, the ulcerations or fistulous openings in the soft parts cannot be healed. These, as soon as they have become sufficiently exfoliated, should be detached and removed, but in doing this it may be necessary to increase the size of the external opening. During the process of exfoliation, the mouth should be frequently gargled with astringent and detergent lotions, for the purpose of neutralizing the odor of the offensive matter which is continually discharging.

Suitable constitutional remedies should, at the same time, be prescribed. As in the case of tumors, if the patient be laboring under a scorbutic, scrofulous or venereal diathesis of the general system, the indications should be properly fulfilled. But before instituting any general treatment, we should be well assured that our diagnosis is correct. A venereal vice is sometimes suspected when none exists, as is shown by the following brief summary of the history of a case related by Jourdain.

The subject of this case, was a man who had a swelling which occupied the whole of the left side of the vault of the palate, from which there had been a fistulous opening for a long time. The edges were hard and indurated. Venereal vice was sus-

pected as the cause, and for which disease, treatment was proposed, but the patient not being willing to submit, Jourdain was consulted, who advised the removal of the roots of three or four teeth in the vicinity of the disease. This operation was performed and the fistulous opening at the same time enlarged, when the bone was found to be in a carious condition, but with little other treatment a complete cure was soon effected.*

That the effects resulting from dental irritation may extend to the palate, is shown by the following particulars of a case taken from the history of one given by the same author.

A man called upon Jourdain for advice, in relation to a tumor of the vault of his palate. Upon examination, a sensible fluctuation was perceived; on being pressed, fetid pus escaped from a small fistulous opening between the right lateral incisor and canine tooth, and also from the socket of the second bicuspid, which had been extracted a short time before. The opening from the alveolus of this tooth communicated with the first mentioned fistule and the disease in the palate. Notwithstanding these two outlets for the escape of the matter, it increased in the palate. Various means were resorted to for the cure of the disease, but without success. The nasal fossæ, by the accumulation of matter, were partially closed, the alveoli of the lateral incisor, cuspidatus and first bicuspid became necrosed, the teeth loosened, and were extracted. The alveoli exfoliated, the tumor of the palate was opened, when the bones of the palate and maxillary alveolar borders were found in a necrosed and partially exfoliated state. These were removed without much difficulty, and left an opening through to the pituitary membrane which lined the floor of the nasal fossæ. These portions of bone having been removed, the parts soon healed.†

That the caries in the two last cases was caused by dental irritation, there can be no question, and that it often results from this cause, we have not the least doubt. In the last case, it is probable that the second bicuspid of the affected side, was

* Vide *Traite des Maladies Chirurgicale de le Bouche*, tom. i, p. 406.
† Ibid. tome 1, p. 397

not extracted until an abscess had formed at the extremity of its root, and that the matter, instead of escaping externally, had effected a passage through the inner wall of the alveolus and thence between the palate plate of the superior maxillary and mucous membrane to near the median line, where it had accumulated, produced the tumor mentioned by Jourdain, and ultimately made a passage for its escape between the lateral incisor and cuspidatus. Several cases, followed by very similar effects, have fallen under the immediaie observation of the author.

But when favored by a cachectic habit of body or venereal vice, the effects are more destructive, and in this case, local treatment will not suffice.

Ulceration of the palatine mucous membrane may occur without caries of the subjacent bone; it may result as a consequence of ulceration or other disease of the velum or uvula, or from some mechanical injury inflicted upon the parts. When it is of a simple nature, cooling and astringent gargles, preceded by mild aperients, will generally suffice for its cure. If dependent upon a specific constitutional tendency or vice, appropriate general remedies should be employed. But with regard to the treatment of ulcers of the palate, we shall have occasion to speak when we come to treat of the diseases of the velum and uvula.

INFLAMMATION AND ULCERATION OF THE VELUM AND UVULA.

The velum palati and uvula sometimes become the seat of inflammation, accompanied by pain, increased redness, difficult deglutition and articulation of speech. Most frequently it terminates in resolution, but sometimes in ulceration, and at other times in gangrene. When resolution is the termination, it gradually subsides, after having continued for a greater or less length of time. When by ulceration, one or more white or ash colored spots appear upon the velum and uvula, after it has continued for a certain period, and when by gangrene the part, after having assumed a dark purple or almost black color, sloughs. This latter termination, fortunately, rarely happens.

As a consequence of the inflammation, the uvula sometimes becomes tumefied and elongated; at other times it becomes elongated when there is no apparent tumefaction. In the latter case, it is vulgarly termed a "falling of the palate." Most frequently when it is elongated, its thickness is at the same time increased. In this case there is an increase of redness, but when there is elongation, without an increase of size, resulting simply from relaxation of the part, its color, instead of being heightened, is often diminished, presenting a whitish or semi-transparent appearance. This description of elongation is termed serous tumefaction of the uvula. It is seldom accompanied by pain.

When the uvula becomes so much elongated as to rest upon the tongue, it causes irritation, difficult deglutition, oftentimes a sense of suffocation, the frequent expulsion of mucus from the throat, and sometimes a disagreeable cough.

Ulcers of various kinds sometimes attack these parts, though they are less subject to them than are the other parts of the mouth, fauces and tonsils. Sometimes the ulcers are of a simple nature, at other times they are aphthous, scrofulous, scorbutic, venereal or cancerous, according to the specific poison or diathesis which has given rise to them. When the ulcer is not dependent upon constitutional causes, it is termed a simple ulcer, and is nothing more than a granulating sore which secretes healthy purulent matter.

Aphthous ulcers at first appear in the form of whitish or transparent vesicles, which break, and are ultimately transformed into ulcers, either surrounded by a slightly elevated edge of a reddish color, or spread and unite with each other. The former are termed *discrete*, and the latter *confluent*, aphthæ. But ulcers of this kind generally appear in other parts of the mouth and fauces before they attack the velum and uvula of the palate.

The velum and uvula are, perhaps, more subject to venereal than to any other kind of ulcers. The characteristics of these are, sometimes, very similar to ulcers which result from some other specific constitutional vice, and their character can only be positively determined by ascertaining all the other circumstances connected with the history of the case. They are gene-

rally preceded by ulceration of the throat, dull heavy pain, especially at night, increased redness of the parts, swelling of the uvula, and difficult deglutition. They usually have a whitish, dirty gray, or ash colored appearance, with slightly elevated and irregular margins, and secrete a thin ichorous matter of a very fetid odor. The surrounding parts are preternaturally red, and sometimes present an almost purple appearance. At other times the ulcers appear in the form of aphthous specks, followed by sloughing of the surrounding parts. Sometimes the ulcers attack the posterior side of the velum and uvula first, where they commit extensive ravages before they appear anteriorly. From these parts they often extend to the vault of the palate, but more frequently, when they appear here, the periosteal tissue and bones are diseased before ulceration shows itself in the mucous membrane.

Ulcers of the velum and uvula sometimes result as a consequence of a protracted and immoderate use of mercury. When they result from this cause, they are preceded by a copperish taste in the mouth; increased flow and viscidity of the saliva; tumefaction and increased sensibility of the gums, looseness of the teeth; a peculiarly disagreeable odor of the breath, general debility and emaciation, and sometimes diarrhea. The gums, edges of the tongue, mucous membrane about the angles of the jaws, inner surface of the cheeks, and throat, ulcerate before the velum and uvula are attacked.

The velum and uvula are sometimes the seat of other bad conditioned ulcers, such as the cancerous, scrofulous, &c.

CAUSES.

Inflammation of the velum and uvula most frequently result from irregular exposure to cold and moisture, though it may sometimes be produced by local irritation, as mechanical injury, acidity of the gastric and buccal fluids. Ulceration of the parts may result from the same causes, but the character which the ulcer assumes is determined by the habit of body, or peculiar diathesis of the general system. Elongation of the uvula is

caused either by inflammation and general enlargement, relaxation of the parts, or serous infiltration of its apex.

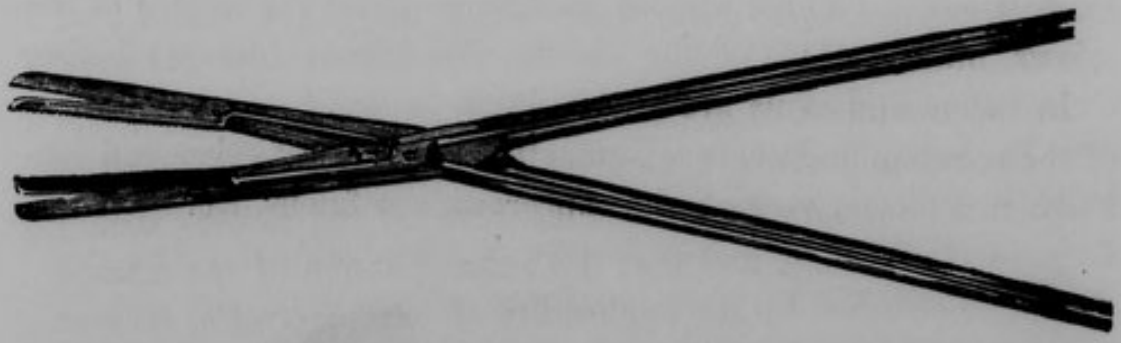
TREATMENT.

For simple inflammation of the velum and uvula, unaccompanied by fever or other general constitutional effects, little else will be required than gargling the throat with an infusion of capsicum, sweetened with honey. When the inflammation is severe, and the vessels have the appearance of being distended, advantage may be derived from scarifying the parts.

But when the uvula is so much elongated as to rest upon the tongue, and cause a sensation of suffocation or a troublesome cough, if it does not yield to exciting and astringent gargles, it may become advisable to remove a portion of it.

For this operation, though an exceedingly simple one, a variety of instruments have been invented. The best, however, which the author has seen, is the one invented a few years ago by Dr. S. P. Hullihen, of Wheeling, Va. This instrument, although very simple in its construction, is an exceedingly use-

FIG. 210.



ful one, for, at the same time it cuts the uvula, it secures the excised extremity, and prevents it from falling.

The construction of this instrument, and the manner of using it, are so very simple, that the accompanying engraving will supersede the necessity of any description.*

For a simple ulcer of the velum or uvula, no other treatment

*An engraving and description of Dr. Hullihen's uvula scissors is contained in vol. 7, No. 3, of Am. Jour. and Lib. of Dental Science.

will be required than to gargle the throat occasionally with some gently stimulating and astringent lotion; the one recommended for inflammation of these parts, may generally be employed with advantage.

In the treatment of venereal or syphilitic ulcers of the velum and uvula, little advantage will be obtained from local remedies. They can only be cured by appropriate constitutional treatment, such as is prescribed in works on general medicine and surgery. To these, therefore, the reader is referred for information upon this subject.

In cases of mercurial ulcers, it is desirable that two or three liquid evacuations from the bowels should be procured daily. For this purpose, sulphate of magnesia or sublimed sulphur should be administered night and morning. The mouth should, at the same time, be gargled six or eight times a day with some gently astringent lotion. A weak solution of the sulphate of zinc, or alumina, sweetened with honey, may sometimes be advantageously employed, but more benefit, perhaps, will be derived from the use of a solution of the chloride of lime. When the pain is so severe as to prevent rest, opium should be prescribed. The diet of the patient, for the most part, should consist of farinaceous substances, and after the ulcers have began to heal, milk, light soups, &c., may be recommended.

In the treatment of scirrhous and other ill-conditioned ulcers of the velum and uvula, dependent upon some cachectic habit of body, it is necessary that the constitutional indications should be properly fulfilled, and that the vitiated action of the disease should be changed by the application of local irritants, such as caustics. The application of the actual cautery has been found more efficient in changing the condition of ulcers of this sort, and exciting a healthy action in them, than any other means which have been employed.

For cancerous ulcers, it has been found necessary to remove a greater or less portion of the velum and uvula, and even this operation has seldom proved successful; for the disease, after a greater or less length of time, has reappeared in some of the neighboring parts.

CHAPTER SECOND.

DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS.

THE nature and extent of the defects of the palatine organs are various. They sometimes consist of a simple perforation of the vault of the palate; this may be either in the centre, or on either side of the median line. At other times, the loss of substance extends to the entire vault and velum. Nor is the loss always confined to these parts; it sometimes extends to the anterior part of the alveolar border, and a portion of the upper lip, constituting what is usually termed hare-lip.

The defects of the palatine organs, as we have before stated, may be divided into accidental and congenital. The first, we have said, results from accidental causes—the second from malformation of the parts.

ACCIDENTAL DEFECTS.

Accidental lesions of the palatine organs are divided by M. Delabarre into three species. The first consists in perforations of the vault of the palate; the second, in perforations of the velum, and the third, in the destruction of the entire vault of the palate, or of a great portion of it. To this last, might also be added the destruction of the whole, or a large portion of the velum, as well as of the vomer, part of the alveolar border and turbinated bones.*

It has also been remarked, that lesions of the palate and velum, resulting from disease, differ from congenital defects. The first most frequently perforate the side of the palatine vault, and communicate with only one nostril, whereas, the latter, as will presently be seen, occupies the centre of the arch, and penetrates both of the nasal cavities.

* Vide *Traité de la Partiè Mécanique de l'Art du Chirurgien Dentiste*, t. 1, p. 294.

The causes of accidental lesions or defects of the palate and velum, have already been treated of, and the manner of remedying them will hereafter be described.

CONGENITAL DEFECTS.

Congenital defects of the palate occupy the median line or palatine raphæ, and consist in a division of the osseous and soft textures, of greater or less extent. This division is sometimes confined to the vault of the palate; at other times the velum, anterior part of the alveolar arch and upper lip participate. It forms a communication with both nostrils, and when the malformation extends to the alveolar border, and upper lip, which is divided vertically in one, and sometimes in two places, it gives to the mouth a most disagreeable aspect. But hare-lip is sometimes met with when there is no imperfection of the osseous structures, and imperfections are often met with here when the lip is perfect. In some cases the cleft or fissure is more than three-fourths of an inch wide throughout the whole extent of the palate and velum, accompanied by an absence of the whole of that portion of the alveolar border which should be occupied by the four incisors; at other times the alveolar arch is divided in two places, leaving a portion between the lateral and central incisors, or one lateral and one central, after projecting more or less, and thus very greatly increasing the deformity. Although a double hare-lip, with two divisions of the alveolar border, is seldom met with without some defect of the palatine organs, cases do occasionally occur. Dr. Sims, a skillful and ingenious surgeon, of Montgomery, Ala., describes a most interesting case of this kind, in vol. 5th, page 51, of the American Journal of Dental Science.

Congenital defects of the palate are sometimes accompanied by more or less deformity of the sides of the alveolar arch, and of the teeth. Sometimes the sides of the alveolar ridge are forced too far apart, and at other times they are too near each other, while the teeth are either too large or too small, with imperfectly developed roots, and, generally of a soft texture.

Want of coaptation, resulting from defect of formation in the palatine plates of the maxillary and palatine bones, are the cause of congenital deficiencies of the parts in question. But that such malformation should occur here while all the other parts of the body are well developed, is wholly inexplicable, though not more strange than that other organs, as the hands, feet, &c. should be deformed, while these parts are perfect. What it is that interferes with the laws that govern the development and growth of the organs of the body during intra-uterine existence, is a mystery which physiology has not yet been able fully to unravel.

Thus it is seen, that the defects of the palatine organs which result from malformation, present as much diversity of character as do those which are produced by disease, or other accidental causes. Mr. Stearns of London, in a very able and highly interesting paper, published in the London Lancet, on "Congenital Fissure of the Palate," in noticing their various anatomical peculiarities divides them into three classes.

The first class embraces all the cases in which the fissure extends through the velum, palate, and maxillary bones, to the alveolar border, and, sometimes, "through the whole extent of the median symphysis." This form of fissure is the most extensive, and justly regarded as the worst, "is usually complicated with hare-lip."

In the second class the bones of the palate are, "apparently entire, though the concavity of the arch may be somewhat greater than usual, and the fissure" extend a short distance into their "posterior margin." The lesion, in this case, is almost wholly confined to the velum palati.

The third class embraces those cases in which the fissure is confined to the soft parts, extending, perhaps, only a short distance up into the uvula. This form of fissure is, probably, less frequently met with than either of the preceding.

FUNCTIONAL DISTURBANCES, RESULTING FROM DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS.

The principal effects resulting from an absence of a portion of the palatine organs, are, as we have before stated, an im-

pairment of the functions of mastication, deglutition and speech. Distinct utterance is sometimes wholly destroyed, and mastication and deglutition are often so much embarrassed as to be performed only with great difficulty. These effects are always in proportion to the extent of the separation or deficiency of the parts. But in noticing the effects which result from an absence of a portion of the palatine organs, we shall first speak of those which are produced upon the functions of mastication and deglutition.

Although the simple act of triturating the food, may not be materially impeded by the absence of a portion, however extensive, of the palatine organs, unless the natural relations of the teeth of the upper and lower jaws are changed, still the process is more or less interfered with, as substances taken into the mouth cannot be so readily managed as when the parts are in their natural state. They are constantly escaping from the control of the tongue, and passing up into the cavity of the nose.

In cases of congenital defects of the palate and velum, it is difficult to conceive how, in infancy, the child manages to obtain from the breast of its mother or nurse, the food necessary for its subsistence; yet, even where the anterior part of the alveolar border, and a part of the upper lip is wanting, it does, in accordance with the suggestions of natural instinct, by means of a peculiar mechanical process, contrive to do it. The expedient to which it resorts for effecting this process is curious, The nipple, instead of being seized between the tongue, upper lip and gum of the superior alveolar border, is taken between its lower surface, and the under lip and gum of the inferior alveolar ridge, and in this way it manages to extract the nourishment necessary for its subsistence and growth. The tongue, as is remarked by M. Delabarre, is thus made to close the opening in the palate, and perform the office of an obturator. By contracting the lip and depressing the tongue, the milk is drawn from the breast of the mother or nurse. At this young and tender age, the child not conscious of the imperfection of its palate, and it is not, until the period arrives when it should begin to make its wants known by words, as is remarked by the author just mentioned, that it feels the importance of the func-

tions of speech and begins to realize the misfortune with which it is afflicted.

But as the child arrives at this period, the mechanism of sucking, as M. Delabarre observes, is perfected, and ultimately applied to the mastication of solid aliments. "When chewed, it is conveyed between the tongue and movable floor, which serves for a point d'appui to it, and thence it is brought back between the teeth. Thus it is, that the complicated operation of mastication and deglutition is performed without the alimentary morsel getting into the nose; or, if this does sometimes happen, it is the result of accident." But in cases of accidental lesion of the palate, the individual has not the advantage, as the author just quoted observes, "of early infancy." Those who are afflicted with accidental lesions, no matter what may be their position and extent, "having," as the author says, "acquired the habit of eating, by placing the aliment on the tongue, can take no nourishment, without a part of it getting into the nose." When to this inconvenience is added a change in the natural relations of the teeth of the two jaws, mastication is rendered still more difficult and embarrassing. When this is the case, the tubercles of the teeth of one jaw, instead of being received into the depressions of those of the other, strike upon their protuberances, and cannot be made to triturate the food in as thorough and perfect a manner as is required for healthy and easy digestion. Thus, not only is the process of mastication rendered imperfect, but it is also more tedious.

The process of deglutition itself, so long as the velum and uvula are perfect, is not materially affected by a perforation simply of the vault of the palate, although much difficulty may be experienced in conveying alimentary and fluid substances to the fauces and pharynx. But when this curtain is cleft or partially or wholly wanting, it is rendered very difficult, for, by the contraction of the muscles of the pharynx, part of them are forced up into the nose. The reason of this will appear obvious, when we take into consideration the form and functions of this movable appendage. When its muscles are relaxed, it forms a slightly concave curtain; but in the act of deglutition, the muscles contract, raise the velum and close the opening from the

pharynx into the posterior nares. Thus alimentary substances and fluids are prevented from escaping into the nose.

It matters not, therefore, whether the imperfection of the velum palati be the result of accident or disease, its effects upon deglutition are the same. In proportion as the lesion or deficiency is great, will this operation be rendered difficult and embarrassing. M. Delabarre mentions the case of an individual, who, in consequenee of an imperfection of the palate, could swallow no fluids without a part being returned by the nose. To obviate this inconvenience, he had to throw his head sufficiently far back to precipitate them into the esophagus. This is an expedient to which others, thus affected, have been compelled to resort.

Imperfection of speech always results from an opening in the palate, for this gives to the voice a nasal twang, and renders the formation of some sounds impossible. The loss of the teeth, though never to the same extent, is productive of the same effect. But to fully comprehend the manner in which a lesion of the palate may affect the utterance of speech, it will be necessary to understand the agency which the several parts of the mouth have in the formation of articulate sounds.

Speech consists in the combination of sounds produced by the organs between the glottis and external opening of the mouth. The co-operation of the several parts of the mouth are necessary for the formation of most sounds,* and hence, if any of these be defective or wanting, the power of forming such sounds is either partially or wholly destroyed.

Dr. Arnott, viewing the mouth as a vocal tube, divides it into three principal "*oral positions*,"—the first, is at the external opening of the mouth,—the second, is behind the teeth where the tip of the tongue approaches the palate, and the third, is where the body of the tongue approaches the palate, near the region of the throat, or back part of the mouth. The following table represents the three divisions, or "oral positions" of this tube.

* *Müller's Physiology*, vol. 2, p. 1045.

LABIAL.	PALATAL.	GUTTURAL.	
P	T	K	Mute.
B	D L	G	Semi-mute.
M	N	*ng n*	Semi-vowel or nasal.
F	*th* S *sh*	H *ch*	Aspirate.
V	*th* Z J	*gh*	Vocal aspirate.
Pr	R	*ghr*	Vibratory.

According to the above parallelogram, six sounds or articulations, as indicated by the letters, may be made with the voice or breath, "as it passes through each of the three positions of the mouth." "First, a sudden and complete stoppage of the voice or breath—producing what may be called a *mute* articulation; viz. P, in the labial position; T, in the palatal; and K, in the guttural," &c. "Second, a sudden shutting, as in the last case, but the voice being allowed to continue until the part of the mouth behind the closure be distended with air. This produces the *semi-mutes*, B, D, and G (in its hard sound as in *pig* or *go*,) for the three positions," &c. "If the sides of the tongue be depressed after it has taken the position required, T or D, the sound L is produced," &c. "Third, the positions closed as for the mutes, while sound is allowed to pass by the nose. Thus arise the *semi-vowels* or *nasals*, M, N, NG, for the three positions. NG (as in *king*) is a simple sound, although our imperfect alphabet has no single letter for it." *** "Fourth, breath only, (or whisper,) allowed to pass at the three oral positions nearly closed. Hence come the sounds which we call *aspirates*, viz. F, Th and S, and CH, (heard in the Scottish word *loch*;) the TH and CH are simple sounds," &c. "Fifth, using *voice* in the same manner as *breath* or *whisper* is used for the aspirates. This produces the sounds called *vocal aspirates*, viz. V, TH, Z, J, and GH," &c. "Sixth, shaking the approaching parts in the three positions."* The vibratory sounds are produced in this way.

* *Elements of Physic*, vol. 1, p. 504-5 and 6.

By leaving the mouth or vocal tube open, "so that the sound," as Mr. Stearns remarks, passing outwards, meets with no interruption until it arrives at the lips, which being simply closed so as to obstruct its final exit, we then have the letter P, which is therefore termed a *labial mute.* But if this obstruction is attended by a momentary accumulation of sound in the cavity behind the organ making the closure, so as to cause a slight distention, that would give a half mute, as B, instead of P. There is a similar difference between T and D, and also between K and G, as between P and B. In T and D, the necessary closure is made by bringing the edge of the tongue in contact with the edge of the gums of the upper teeth throughout its whole circumference. In K, the closure is made by carrying the root of the tongue against the soft palate, thus obstructing the passage of the voice almost at its starting point.*

Thus it would seem, that the articulation of sound depends upon its interruption at one or other of the three oral positions mentioned by Dr. Arnott, and this interruption is effected by a mere mechanical process. Hence it is easy to perceive, how a perforation or fissure of the palate may, by preventing this interruption, as Mr. Stearns says, "render the articulation of some of the letters impossible," and at the same time, "vitiate the characters of all the others." This "indistinctness of utterance," says Mr. S., "is usually proportioned to the extent of the lesion."

Thus, where the fissure extends as far as the alveolar processes, the patient loses several of the letters which another, with only a portion of the soft palate involved, is able to produce with considerable distinctness."

The exposition which Mr. Stearns has given of the "vocal phenomena attending a fissure of the palate" is so very clear and satisfactory, that we would be glad to quote what he says upon the subject, but the limits assigned to this part of our work will not permit us to do so.

We would simply state, however, that after describing the manner in which voice and articulation are made, as well as the

* Observations on Congenital Fissure of the Palate, with some remarks on Articulation and Impediments of Speech, by Charles W. Stearns, Esq. Surgeon, London.

effects produced upon the latter by lesion of the palate, he remarks, "In cases of fissure, particularly those of the more extensive kind, the movements of the tongue are comparatively limited, as the patient is instinctively aware that the very effort he should make in order to give letters their appropriate articulation, often serves to render his impediment more painful. So far, indeed, in some cases, is this inactivity of the organs persisted in, that speech becomes little else than the emission of a succession of vowel sounds, which, in lieu of receiving proper consonant adjuncts are only made intelligible by the accompanying inflection, key, gesticulation, and expression of countenance, all of which are, more or less, the vehicles of thought."

With the limited action of the tongue, nearly all the muscles concerned in the formation of articulate sounds, in a greater or less degree, as Mr. Stearns remarks, participate, while the muscles about the nose, as the compressor nasi, and depressor alinasa, are violently contracted, for the purpose of closing the nostrils and preventing the escape of sound. This gives to the features a peculiarly disagreeable aspect.

CHAPTER THIRD.

MANNER OF REMEDYING DEFECTS OF THE PALATINE ORGANS.

DEFECTS of the palatine organs are sometimes remedied by means of a surgical operation, termed *staphyloraphy;* but more frequently, by supplying the deficiency of the natural parts with a mechanical substitute. The operation of staphyloraphy, when it can be successfully performed, is the best and most perfect method that can be adopted for remedying imperfections of the parts in question. The application of a mechanical substitute, though it may not completely restore the functions dependent upon the integrity of the natural parts, will often so improve them, as to render the inconveniences resulting from their imperfection, scarcely perceptible.

In treating upon the above methods, we shall first describe the operation of staphyloraphy, and, afterwards, the various mechanical appliances employed for the purpose, which are designated by the names of *obturators* and *artificial palates.*

STAPHYLORAPHY.

It rarely happens, except in cases of congenital fissure, that the operation of staphyloraphy can be successfully performed, and only then, when the edges of the cleft velum are firm and can be easily brought together. There are many ways by which the success of the operation, even in apparently the most favorable cases, may be defeated. For example, the ligatures may be detached by attempting to swallow, or clear the throat, or by coughing, sneezing, or by inflammation and sloughing of the parts. Unless these are carefully guarded against, the best efforts of the surgeon may be frustrated.

The idea of this operation was first conceived by an ingenious French dentist, by the name of LE MONNIER, who attempted, and with success, to perform it as early as the year 1764. But for more than half a century afterwards, it does not seem to have attracted any attention, or to have been generally known to the medical profession. In 1819, however, M. ROUX, a celebrated French surgeon, and author of an able memoir upon the subject, published in 1825, performed the operation upon Dr. Stephens, a young American physician.* In 1820, it was performed for the first time in the United States, by DR. J. C. WARREN, of Boston, and in 1822 in England, by MR. ALCOCK.† Now, it is classed among the regular operations of surgery.

As the success of the operation depends in a great degree upon the consent of the patient, he should, as a general rule, have attained a sufficient age to enable him to appreciate its importance, before it is performed. Dr. Hullihen, however, a scientific dentist of Wheeling, Va., says, he has performed the operation with success on a child of nine years of age, but the author is of the opinion, that it is generally better to defer it until after the fifteenth or sixteenth year, and the natural excitability of the parts should be, previously, as much lessened as possible, by frequently touching and moving them about with the finger. This should be done several times a day, for at least two weeks before the operation is attempted, and during this time, the patient should be restricted to a spare diet.

The operation of staphyloraphy, or velosynthesis, consists in removing the margins of the divided velum with a pair of curved scissors, as recommended by M. ROUX, or a double-edged knife, and holding the raw edges in contact with each other until a union takes place.

*We are informed by Velpeau, in his *Elements of Operative Surgery*, p. 428, that M. Colombe performed the operation on a dead subject in 1813, and in 1815 endeavored to prevail on a patient to permit him to repeat it, but without success. In 1817, too, M. Graefæ published in Hufeland's Journal, some details concerning it, but the subject elicited no interest until M. Roux performed the operation in 1819.

† Vide *Dr. Reese's Appendix to Cooper's Surgical Dictionary.*

A multiplicity of ingeniously contrived instruments have been invented for the performance of the operation, but all that are really necessary, are, a sharp hook, a double-edged knife, short curved needles, a needle-holder, (*porte-aiguille*,) strong waxed ligatures, a pair of long-handled curved forceps, and scissors; other instruments may, in some cases, be required. In addition to the above, water, towels, and one or more assistants, will be needed.

Fig. 211.



Thus prepared, the patient, after having been previously submitted to the necessary preparatory treatment, should be placed in a chair facing a good light, with his head firmly supported by an assistant, and his mouth open, the operation may be commenced by inserting the hook into the margin of the velum, near its most dependent part, on the left side of the fissure, in the manner as represented in Fig. 211. This instrument, held by an assistant, should be depressed so as to make the margin slightly tense. The point of the double-edged knife may now be placed below the most dependent part of the velum, a little to the left of where the hook is inserted, (see Fig. 211,) and carried from below upwards until it has reached the angle of the fissure, removing about one line of the margin. This operation may be repeated on the opposite side of the fissure, or by changing the knife from the right to the left hand, and directing the assistant holding the hook to pass his hand "across and a little above the face of the patient," in the manner as described by Dr. Mütter, so as to keep up a constant traction upon the strip of mucous membrane removed by the first cut, the right margin of the fissure

may be made tense, and the knife carried from above downwards, completing, by a single incision, the whole of this part of the operation.

Fig. 212.

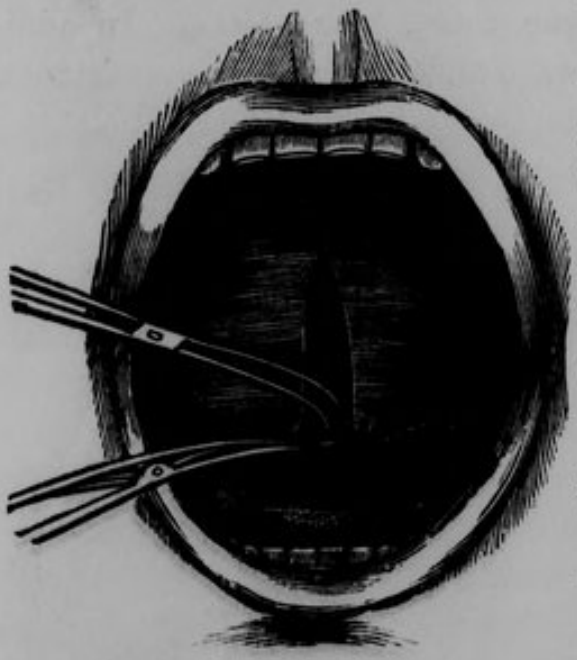


Fig. 213.



Further procedure should be suspended until the hemorrhage, though seldom very great, shall have partially subsided. A needle, armed with a well waxed ligature, and held in a pair of suitable forceps, should be passed from before backwards through the most dependent part of the left margin, about three lines from the edge. As soon as it is seen on the opposite side, it should be grasped by the assistant with a pair of long-handled forceps, and as soon as the hold of the porte-aiguille is relaxed, drawn through, replaced in the latter, and passed through from behind forwards the right margin of the velum opposite to the ligature in the left. See Figs. 212, 213. After the patient has rested a few minutes, a second, third, and, when necessary, a fourth ligature should be introduced.

The passage of the needle through the left margin of the velum is represented in Fig. 212, and in Fig. 213, through the right margin from behind forwards.

Fig. 214.

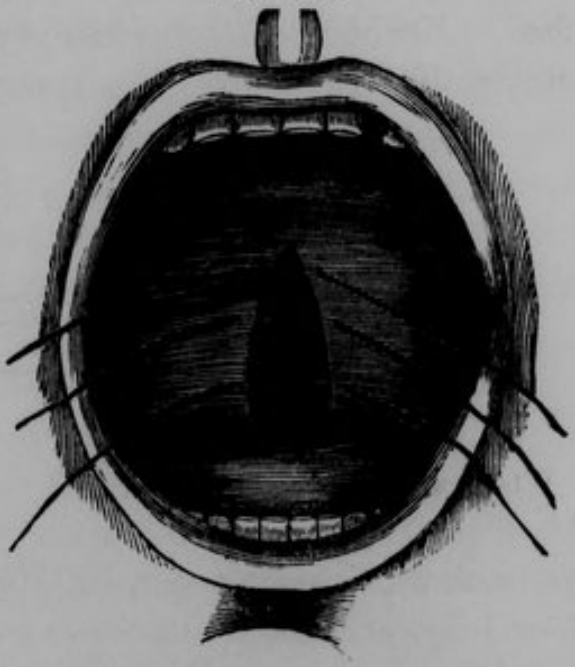


Fig. 215.



The ligature first introduced should now be tied, bringing the edges of the velum close together, and, afterwards, the second and third, cutting off the ends of each. After the first knot of the ligature is tied, some precaution should be used to prevent this from slipping, while the second is tied. The method adopted by M. Roux for knotting the ligature is, to make the first fold of the knot with the fore-finger of each hand placed back to back, and after this has been drawn sufficiently tight, it is seized by an assistant with a pair of forceps, and held until the second and last turn of the knot is made.

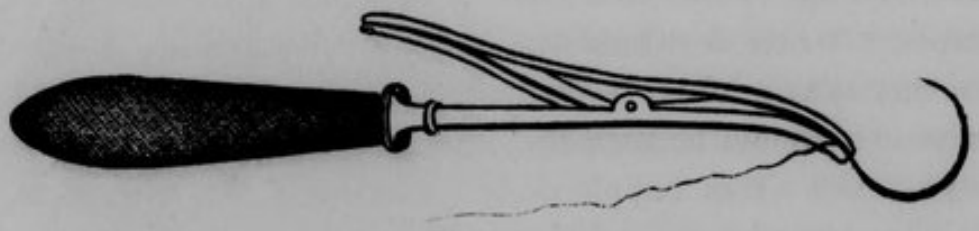
Some surgeons use two needles for each ligature—one at each end, and introduce them from behind forwards—one through each margin of the divided velum, instead of one, as in the method just described.

The cut on next page, Fig. 216, copied from Liston's and Mütter's Surgery, represents the needle-holder, or "porte," of Schwerdt, which is, perhaps, as well adapted to the purpose as any instrument that can be employed. Dr. Physic's forceps have also been used, but Dr. Mütter thinks this a preferable instrument.

After the operation has been performed, the patient should be directed to keep his mouth closed, maintain perfect quiet; avoid

coughing, sneezing, or even spitting, and the use of all solid food. Nor should he take but very little fluid aliment, and this only at long intervals. For appeasing the cravings of the hun-

Fig. 216.



ger with which some suffer, Dr. Mütter recommends "thin calf's-foot jelly, or what is known as cold custard slip," as the best nourishment that can be used, but he thinks neither should be given until after the second or third day after the operation has been performed.

In the performance of the operation of staphyloraphy, however, different surgeons employ different instruments, and adopt different methods of procedure. Professor N. R. Smith, of Baltimore, who has performed the operation five times, and in three cases with perfect success, employs a very simple needle, of a lance shape, mounted on a handle, and having a slit near its point, which opens at its posterior end. The needle is broader in front of this eye than behind it, which renders the passage of the back part more easy. Armed with a ligature, the curved portion of the needle is carried beyond the fissure, and its point introduced "behind the middle of the uvula," and as soon as it has come through far enough to expose the ligature in the slit, it "is taken hold of with a tenaculum, disengaged from the slit or eye in the needle," when "the latter instrument is withdrawn. A second ligature, in like manner, is introduced "half an inch higher up," and a third, if necessary, "at an equal distance from the second. With the ends of the ligature passed through the uvula, this part is drawn forwards," until the fissure in the soft palate shall assume nearly a "horizontal position," its edges are then cut off with a "pair of scissors, either straight or curved

laterally," or with a bistoury and a pair of forceps. This done, the ligatures are tied, and the ends cut off.*

Dr. J. C. Warren, of Boston, who has performed the operation a number of times, uses a needle of his own invention, with a movable point. Dr. J. M. Warren, son of Dr. J. C., has also performed the operation a number of times, and with very great success. When it extends up into the hard palate, he dissects the mucous membrane from the bones on each side of the fissure, carrying his knife sufficiently forward towards the alveolar border, to form a flap broad enough to meet a like one from the opposite side, along the median line.

Dr. Hullihen has invented a very ingenious needle-holder, which, we have no doubt, will ultimately supersede the use of all others.†

When the fissure is so wide as to prevent the margins of the velum from being brought together, Dr. METTAUER, of Virginia, recommends making several lateral incisions through the mucous membrane, with a view to increase the extent of the velum, and thus permit their edges to be brought together. Mr. FERGUSSON proposes, for the more easy and perfect accomplishment of this end, the division of the levator-palati, the palato-pharyngeus, and the palato-glossus muscles. The motory influence of the muscles, in an upward, outward, and downward direction, being thus, for a time, cut off, he believes the motory power of the soft palate will be so much destroyed, that the edges of the fissure may be brought together.‡

For supplying deficiency of structure, DIEFFENBACH recommends a longitudinal incision a short distance from the margin of the fissure, in the manner as seen in Fig. 217, copied from Dr. Pancoast's Operative Surgery. The last named gentleman has performed the operation in two cases, with success. Dr. Mütter, of Philadelphia, who has been very successful in the

* Vide *Appendix to Cooper's Surgical Dictionary*, by Dr. Reese, p. 126.

† A description of this instrument, together with Dr. Hullihen's method of performing the operation, is given in vol. 5th, of the American Journal of Dental Science.

‡ Vide *Medico-Chirurgical Transactions*, vol. 28.

Fig. 217.



operation, has also had recourse to these lateral longitudinal incisions, with the most happy results.*

When the inflammation which follows the operation is very severe, it should be combated by general and local bleeding, and such other antiphlogistic means as the nature of the case may seem to demand. When the inflammation is accompanied by cough, Dr. Mütter recommends the administration of opiates. The same author recommends, in case sloughing of the parts takes place, the application, with a camel's-hair pencil, of a solution of the nitrate of silver, or a mixture of creosote and water, "three or four times a day."

It often happens, that an opening remains in the palate after the velum has been successfully united. This may sometimes be closed by the granulation of the edges of the cleft, which may be induced by making them raw by the application of caustic or the actual cautery. Dieffenbach has employed, with success, a concentrated tincture of cantharides, applied several times a day to the edges of the opening.† By some, the actual cautery is preferred, but if this latter be used, it should only be heated sufficiently to blister the parts.‡ The nitrate of silver and potassa pura have been used, but there is danger of causing a greater loss of substance by the use of these powerful caustics than can be gained by the granulations which they induce.

A surgical operation is seldom performed for the purpose of closing a simple opening in the hard palate. It has been recommended, however, by some surgeons, and when the hole is

* Vide *Liston's and Mütter's Surgery*, p. 204.

† Vide *British and Foreign Medical Review*, for April, 1846.

‡ Vide *Dr. Hullihen on Cleft Palate*, in Am. Jour. Dent. Science, vol. 5, p. 173.

not very large, the operation of *staphyloplasty* may be successfully performed. In Fig. 218, copied from Dr. Pancoast's Operative Surgery, the operation as performed by the author of this valuable work, is represented, and so perfectly is it exhibited in the cut, that we do not deem any further description necessary. In the majority of cases of this kind, however, an artificial obturator or palate, will be found necessary.

Fig. 218.



ARTIFICIAL OBTURATORS AND PALATES.*

Although by the operation of staphyloraphy, the use of mechanical contrivances for remedying imperfections of the palate, are often rendered unnecessary, yet, in the majority of cases, it is only by such means that any relief can be afforded. Artificial palates and obturators have been employed for a long time.

They were, according to Guillemean, applied by the Greek physicians, but it is to that celebrated French surgeon, Ambrose Paré, that we are indebted for the first description of an appliance of this sort. This author has furnished an engraving of an obturator which he had constructed in 1585, consisting of a metallic plate, probably of silver or gold, fitted to an opening in the vault of the palate. It was held up by means of a piece of sponge, fastened to a screw in an upright attached to the upper surface of the plate.

* Although a distinction is made by some writers, between the terms artificial palate and palatine obturator, there does not seem to be much propriety in it, since they both signify one and the same thing, namely, an instrument to *close* or *stop* an opening in the palate. The former term, however, is generally applied to a simple plate fitted to the palatine arch, the latter, to a plate surmounted by a piece of sponge, wings, or a drum or air chamber, passing up, into or through the opening, and designed either to hold up the plate, or to fill the aperture. When a velum is attached, the instrument is termed an artificial palate with a velum.

The employment of sponge, however, was found to be objectionable, as the secretions of the nasal cavities which it absorbed, soon became insufferably offensive, but, notwithstanding, it continued to be used for a long time. Ultimately, however, it was superseded by an obturator invented by Fauchard. This was held up by means of wings which turned on a pivot. Both of these obturators, however, exerted a hurtful influence upon the surrounding parts, as the pressure produced by the sponge and wings caused them to be gradually destroyed, and thus augmented the evil they were designed to remedy, consequently, their use has been wholly abandoned. We do not, therefore, deem it necessary, to give a description of either. We will, however, quote a passage from Bourdet upon the subject. In alluding to the impropriety of having recourse to any appliance which has a tendency to counteract the curative efforts of nature, he says, "Before considering the cicatrised perforations of the palate as being of a nature incapable of diminishing in diameter, practitioners should satisfy themselves properly and beyond doubt, that such is the case. We do not think so, for positive facts attest the contrary, and as holes made in the cranium with the trepan closed almost entirely, in like manner, those of the palate constantly diminish." Numerous examples might be adduced, if it were necessary, to prove the impropriety of sustaining an obturator by any fixtures which act upon the lateral parts, as they necessarily tend to increase the dimensions of the opening in the palate. Cases do, however, sometimes occur in which no other means of support are offered, and then the dentist may, perhaps, be justifiable in using them.

With a view of obviating the objections which have been mentioned as existing to the obturators of Paré and Fauchard, Bourdet proposed to employ simply a metallic plate, fitted to the vault of the palate and large enough to cover the opening, with two lateral prolongations, one on each side, extending to the teeth, to which they were fastened by means of ligatures. This was also found to be objectionable, as the ligatures were productive of constant irritation to the gums, and, besides, they did not hold the plate with sufficient stability in its place. Its use was, therefore, soon abandoned. But these objections were

both obviated, as we have stated in another place, by an improvement made by M. Delabarre, which consists in the employment of clasps, instead of ligatures attached to lateral branches of the plate, and to prevent these from slipping too high up upon the teeth, he attached to each a kind of spur, which was so bent as to come down over the grinding surface of the one to which it was applied. The last named author also made another equally valuable improvement, which consists in the application of a drum to the upper surface of the plate. The object of this was to prevent the accumulation of mucous fluids from the nose, in the *cul-de-sac*, formed by simply closing the opening below, and to prevent fluids, in swallowing, from passing up between the obturator and soft parts, through the opening into the nose.

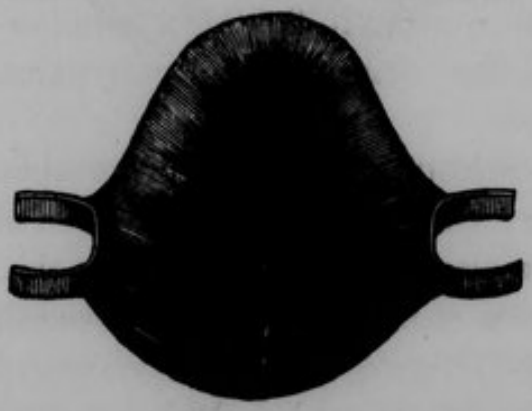
The manner of constructing an obturator, with a drum upon its upper surface, is as follows: First, take an impression of the entire palatine vault and alveolar ridge in wax. From this, a plaster and metallic model and a counter-model are procured, in the manner as before described; a gold plate is then swaged between the two last, a little larger than the opening in the palate, with a broad arm on each side, extending to a bicuspid or molar tooth, to which a broad clasp is fitted. This is soldered to the arm from the plate. Second, an impression of the opening in the vault of the palate with wax, properly softened and placed upon the upper surface of the palate plate is now taken, using the precaution to prevent forcing it up too far through the aperture; this is next trimmed where it comes in contact with the plate, so that it shall not be quite as large as the opening; it is then covered with plaster, after which, a metallic model and counter-model is taken, then a gold plate is swaged between the two, and this last is fitted and soldered to the palatine plate. The piece, after being properly finished, is now ready to be applied.

It is of the greatest importance that an artificial palate or obturator should be executed in the most perfect manner, and be made to fit accurately all the parts with which it is to be in contact, so that it may not produce the slightest irritation or exert undue pressure upon any of the superjacent or surrounding

parts. As in the case of the application of a dental substitute, the piece should not be applied while any of the teeth, especially those of the upper jaw, are in an unhealthy condition. The gums and sockets of the teeth should also be free from disease. The piece, too, should be removed two or three times every day and thoroughly cleansed, as also the teeth to which the clasps are applied.

A SIMPLE PALATE PLATE, OR PALATINE OBTURATOR.

Fig. 219.

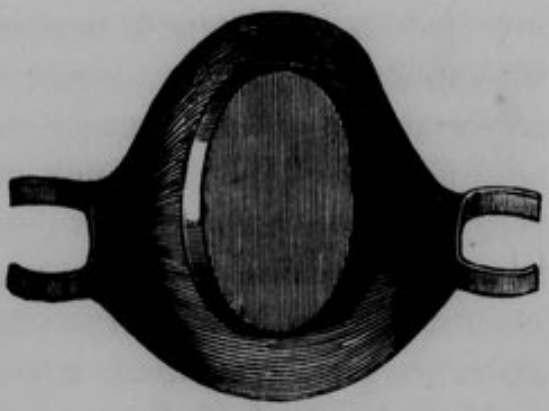


When the opening in the plate is small, and has no connection with the velum, it is seldom necessary to raise the upper surface of the plate by attaching a drum or air-chamber to it. If it be accurately fitted to the vault of the palate, it will effectually prevent fluids, in deglutition, from passing up into the nasal cavities, or the escape of any portion of the voice through the opening, and by frequently removing the plate, it will prevent the stagnation of the secretions which may accumulate in the *cul-de-sac*. A simple plate like the one represented in Fig. 219, will be all that is required to remedy the defect.

Although the stability of the plate will very much depend upon the width of the clasps, the lattter should never be so wide as to press upon the gums around the necks of the teeth to which they are applied, as in that case, they will be productive of irritation, and ultimately cause the destruction of the alveoli and loss of the teeth. Nor should they press upon the teeth so as to force them apart or draw them towards each other, as, in either case, the effect would be, gradually to loosen and displace the organs. In short, the same precautions are necessary in the application of clasps to a palate plate, as to one which is to serve as a support for artificial teeth.

A PALATE PLATE, OR OBTURATOR, WITH A DRUM UPON ITS UPPER OR CONVEX SURFACE.

Fig. 220.



An obturator of this description is seldom required except in those cases where the opening in the plate is connected with the velum, so that by the contraction of its muscles, the parts are raised from the plate in such a manner as to permit fluids, in the act of deglutition, to pass up into the nose. In this case it will not only prevent this difficulty, but it will also prevent the fluids of the nose from accumulating in the opening above the plate.

As the manner of constructing an obturator of this description, (see Fig. 220,) has been already described, it will only be necessary to add, that in fitting and adjusting the drum to the upper surface of the plate, great care is necessary to prevent placing it to one side of the opening. After it has been properly adjusted and one side of it soldered to the palate plate, a hole should be drilled through it for the escape of the heated air, while the remainder of the soldering is effected. This done, the whole may be closed by the introduction of a screw of the same metal, which may afterwards be filed off even with the surface of the plate.

In the construction of an obturator, like either of the foregoing, but little ingenuity or artistical skill is required, as the mechanism is of the simplest description. The adaptation, however, should be perfect, and the execution neat. The gold should also be sufficiently fine to prevent being acted upon by the secretions of the buccal or nasal cavities.

AN ARTIFICIAL PALATE WITH A VELUM AND UVULA.

It sometimes happens, in cases of congenital fissure of the palate, that the margins of the velum are so far apart as to pre-

clude the possibility of uniting them by any surgical operation, and, at other times, these parts are wholly destroyed by ulceration; it is in such cases, that an artificial velum is required, and to supply which, the ingenuity of art has been taxed to its fullest extent. Various descriptions of mechanism have been invented for this purpose, and it is scarcely necessary to say, that until quite recently, none have been constructed which has performed, to any very considerable extent, the functions of the natural parts. Nor has this desirable object, even yet, been very fully accomplished, but one of the most ingenious contrivances of the kind which has ever been invented, was recently constructed by Mr. Stearns, surgeon, of London. The principle, however, upon which it acts, was not altogether original, as M. Delabarre had previously constructed a piece of mechanism somewhat similar to it, and composed of the same, though of a less perfect material.

The contrivance employed by Delabarre, consisted of a metallic plate, bent in the form of a horse-shoe, and occupied the place of the posterior part of the naso-palatine floor; the nasal portion was grooved for the reception of the vomer. The palatine surface was concave, and made to resemble the vault of the palate. From each side of this an arm projected to the first molar, to which it was secured by means of a clasp. To the posterior portion, a piece of caoutchouc, resembling in shape the form of the velum and uvula. Although this instrument is represented as having performed all the functions of the velum, so far as deglutition and speech are concerned. we are disposed to doubt the correctness of the statement to its full extent, as it has failed to do so in other cases in which it has been applied, though much advantage, in some instances, has certainly been derived from it.

The instrument constructed by Mr. Stearns, consists of a plate of gold, fitted to the vault of the palate, in the usual manner, and to the upper and posterior margin of which, is attached a flat spiral spring, admitting of easy vibrations backwards and forwards; to the posterior extremity of this is attached a flexible velum, "constructed of Mr. Goodyeare's preparation of caoutchouc, which," says Mr. Stearns, has "the prop-

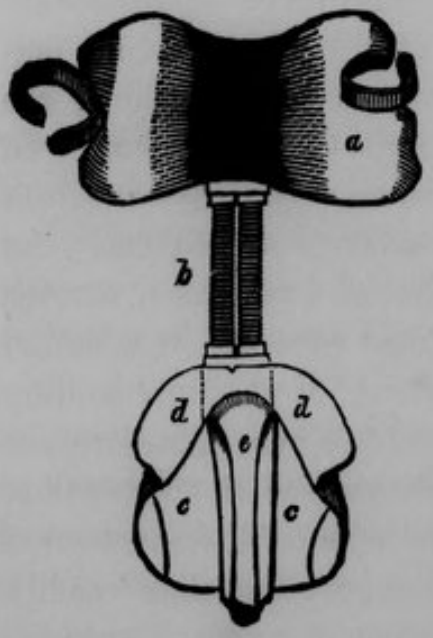
erty to resist the action of both oils and acids, and at the same time sustaining a high degree of heat." Designating the principal parts of the instrument by the name of body and wings, Mr. S. remarks, "The body of the velum consists of the lamina of caoutchouc, of a somewhat triangular form, and of the same size and shape as the vacant space it is intended to occupy, that being the place which would be indicated by imaginary lines, connecting the opposite sides of the columns, and subtending the vertical angle of the fissure, at which point the velum is connected to the posterior extremity of the spiral spring. The lamina, constituting the body of the velum, is divided into three pieces, which overlap each other. The wings project obliquely forwards and outwards from each lateral margin of the body, and being made to conform to the shape of the columns or sides of the fissure, are seen to rest upon their inner and anterior surfaces, thus covering a portion of the soft parts which constitute the boundaries of the posterior fauces. In like manner, along each lateral margin of the body, there is (in mechanical phrase,) a flange, projecting obliquely, backwards and outwards, and extending along down the posterior surface of the column, it terminates at the inferior angle of the velum. In this way the wing and flange, on the same side, together form a groove fitted to receive the fleshy sides of the fissure. As the preparation of caoutchouc made use of, presents a smooth surface, and yields readily to the slightest pressure, it is found to permit the contact and muscular action of the surrounding soft parts, without causing any irritation. When, therefore, the sides of the fissure tend to approximate, as in deglutition, gargling the throat, or the utterance of some of the short vowel sounds, the three parts of the body of the velum slide readily by each other, thus diminishing the extent of exposed surface, and thereby imitating, to some extent, muscular contractile action, the force being derived from without, and not, of course, contained within the instrument. During the effort made in speaking, the surrounding muscular parts embrace and close upon the artificial velum, and press it back against the concave surface of the pharynx. The passage to the nares being therefore temporarily closed, the occlusion of sound is accomplished,

and articulation made attainable, as the voice or sound, as it issues from the glottis, is thereby directed into the cavity of the fauces, and confined there long enough to receive the impressions made upon it by the tongue, lips, &c., in the formation of the consonant letters."

A velum constructed after the foregoing manner, Mr. Stearns thinks, will be found applicable in all cases, though it will be necessary in the construction of the palate plate, to give it such form and dimensions as may be required by the peculiarities of each case. For example, when the fissure extends through the alveolar border, or when some of the front teeth are wanting, it will be necessary to extend it sufficiently forward to close the opening, or serve as a base for such dental substitutes as may be required.

Through the courtesy of Dr. E. G. Tucker, of Boston, we are enabled to add to the foregoing description, an engraving of the instrument, made from a duplicate, which he sent to us since the publication of the fourth edition of this work, of one, which he and his brother, Dr. J. Tucker, constructed.

Fig. 221.



In the annexed cut is seen the lower surface of the palate plate and anterior surface of the velum. *a*, the palatine plate; *b*, the flat spiral springs, extending from the posterior margin of the plate to the upper part of the velum; *c c*, wings of the velum; *d d*, the flange; *e*, the central portion. See Fig. 221.

Fig. 222 shows the upper surface of the plate and the posterior surface of the velum and spiral springs. *a*, palate plate; *b*, spiral springs; *c c*, wings of the velum closed; *d d*, the flange as seen above the wings, and *e*, the central portion below the wings, and intended to represent the uvula.

Fig. 223. The velum with the wings separated, showing the central portion, before being attached to the hook, at the

lower extremity of the flattened spiral springs. In Fig. 224, is represented a side view of the velum, showing the groove

Fig. 222.

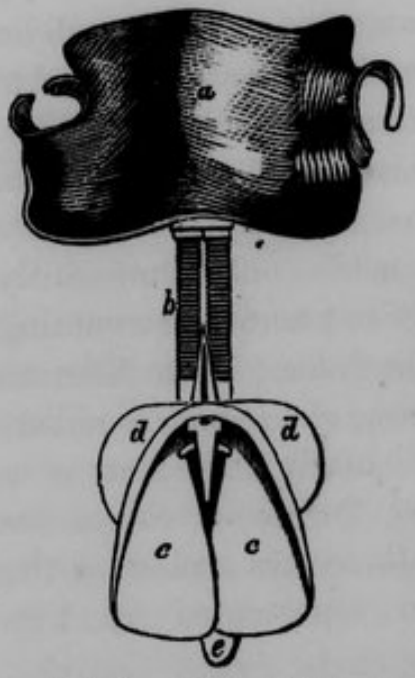


Fig. 223.

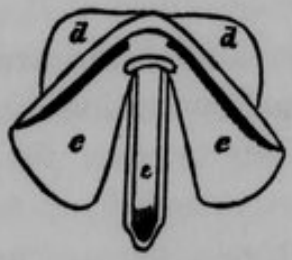
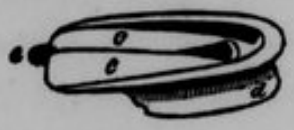


Fig. 224.



between the flange and the wings, for the reception of the fleshy sides of the fissure.

With a view of restoring the air passages to their normal condition in those cases where the velum has been lost by disease, Dr. S. P. Hullihen invented an instrument consisting of a palate plate with a bi-globular valve attached to it in such a manner as to admit of the egress and ingress of the desired volume of air. We will quote from Vol. 1, New Series of the American Journal of Dental Science, the description which Dr. H. has given of the instrument.

"An artificial palate made upon this plan, will be composed of four parts: 1st, A valve, made from gold plate, as thin as it can well be worked; 2d, A spiral spring, about an inch long, and of the size usually made for whole sets of teeth; 3d, A slider, one inch and a half in length, and of the width and thickness of a common watch-spring; 4th, A plate, larger or smaller, as the case may require, struck up in the usual way, to fit the roof of the mouth.

The size and form of the valve is obtained by taking an impression of the posterior opening of the nares: the plate composing it should be struck up in two parts, front and back, which, when soldered together, makes a hollow body of the form in Fig. 225, letter *a*. At the upper end of the valve, a small pin is soldered, the point of which looks downwards, and of sufficient thickness to fit very tightly in one end of the spiral

spring. The spiral spring must be made of such a length as will permit the valve to rest slightly upon the upper surface of the remnants of the lost velum. The slider has a pin in the posterior end, looking upwards to receive the other end of the spiral spring, before described. The anterior end of the slider has a small button looking downwards; the slider is attached to the plate by two small clasps, as represented in Fig. 226 *b b*. The plate may be made to cover the entire roof of the mouth, when necessary; or it may be made only sufficiently large to permit the mounting of the slider. These different plates, when put together, particularly if the plate is to cover the whole roof of the mouth, makes a plate of the form represented by Fig. 225.

Fig. 225.



Fig. 226.

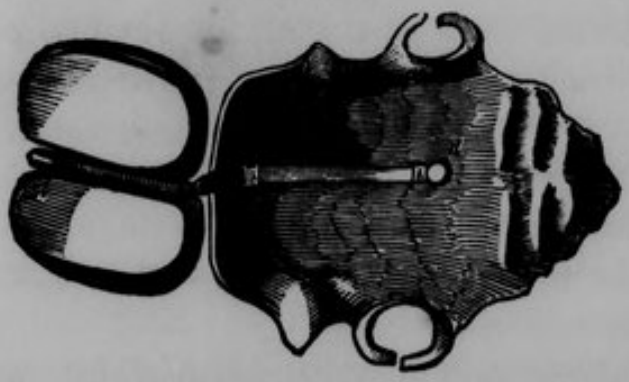


Fig. 226, shows the attachment of the spiral spring to the valve and slider, *c c*. The staples confine the slider to the plate, *b b*—and the button on the end of the slider, *d*, by which the valve may be set back or forward, as desired by the patient, without removing the plate from the mouth.

The palate should be made to fit the several parts for which it is intended, with great exactness. The plate must fit the roof of the mouth, and the teeth to which it may be secured, in a faultless manner. The slider must be arranged so as to permit the valve to be drawn so closely against the posterior opening of the nares, as to close them; or to be pushed back so as to leave them entirely unobstructed. The spiral spring, as I have before remarked, must be made of such a length as will allow the valve to rest slightly upon the upper surface of the remnants of the lost velum. The valve should be sufficiently wide at its base,

to overlap the remnants of the velum so far as the parts on each side will permit, without producing irritation—any other part of the valve than the base, should not be allowed to touch, unless when brought forward against the nares. Unless all the parts are so arranged, the palate will not be properly constructed, and will not of course, answer the desired end.

"Thus it will be perceived, that the peculiarities of this plate, are, first a valve to fit to the posterior opening of the nares. Secondly, the attachment of this valve to a slider, by which the patient is enabled to adjust the valve while in the mouth, in such a way as to admit through the nares, just the quantity of air desired. Thirdly, the mounting of the valve on a spiral spring, which will permit it to vibrate backward and forward, as the breath is inhaled or exhaled; and also to be moved by any muscular action that may remain in the remnants of the lost velum, thereby answering, to a great extent, the purposes of a velum."

All the benefit which it is possible to be derived from an appliance of this sort, may, in the majority of cases, we believe, be secured by this instrument. We met with one case, however, in which the muscular action of the remains of the velum against the valve excited so much irritation and retching that it could not be worn. To obviate which, Dr. A. A. Blandy, who is associated with us in practice, constructed a palate plate of a somewhat different shape, as may be seen from Figs. 227, 228, with a valve composed of two pieces.

To the posterior edge of the palate plate, another plate is soldered. This is about five-eighths of an inch in width where it is united to the palate plate, and half an inch at the posterior extremity, extending upwards and backwards nearly three-fourths of an inch. The two pieces composing the valve are fixed to the lower surface of the plate in such a manner that the contraction of the remains of the velum moves them towards each other. But with their relaxation they are immediately separated by two spiral springs attached to the upper surface of the palate plate at one end, and to two delicate springs passing through the plate united to the posterior edge of the first mentioned plate, and attached on the lower surface, one to each

part of the valve. The two pieces composing the valve are hollow, each about seven-eighths of an inch in length, and of a conical shape. The bases of the cones are placed posteriorly

Fig. 227.

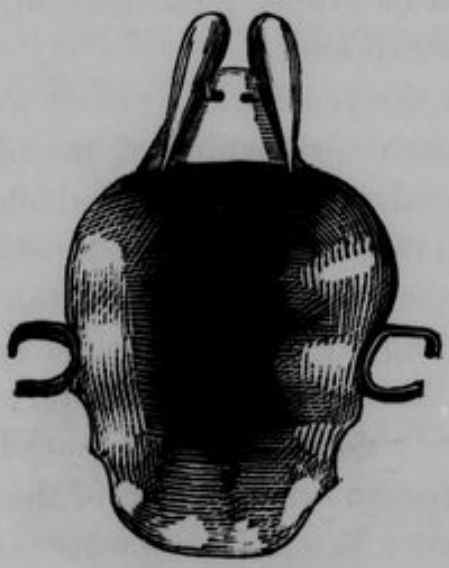


Fig. 228.



and the apices anteriorly. The surfaces moving on the plate projecting from the palate plate are flat, and the outer angle of the base of each is rounded. But the several parts of the whole appliance are so distinctly shown in Figs. 227, 228,* that we do not deem a further description of them necessary. In Fig. 227, is seen a lower, and in Fig. 228, an upper view of the apparatus, which has been worn with the greatest comfort and satisfaction since April of the present year, 1852. The patient's speech, although not perfectly restored, is greatly improved, as are also the functions of mastication and deglutition.

ARTIFICIAL PALATES AND OBTURATORS, COMPLICATED WITH ARTIFICIAL TEETH.

When an imperfection of the palate, whether the result of malformation or accident, is accompanied by the loss of one or more teeth, and especially from the anterior part of the mouth, the plate which is employed for remedying the former, should be so constructed as to serve as a base for a substitute for the

* The two pieces composing the valve are purposely separated to show them more distinctly.

latter. The idea of complicating a palate plate with artificial teeth, as the author has stated in another place, originated with Fauchard. When a palatine obturator and artificial teeth are to be applied at the same time, they may be connected, and the piece made to answer an excellent purpose, provided there be healthy and natural teeth in the upper jaw to sustain it.

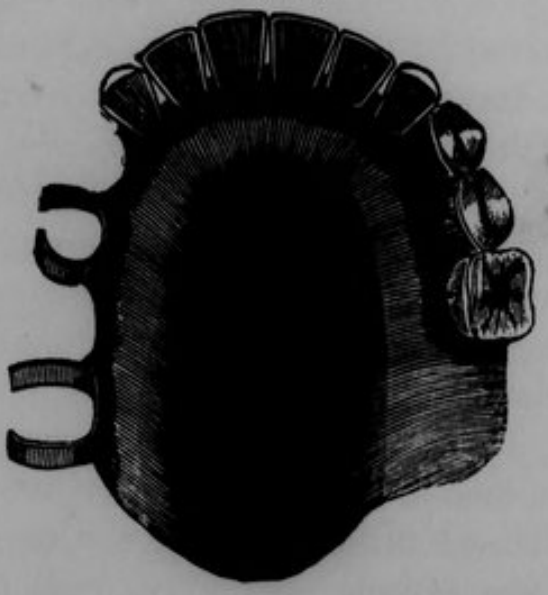
In the construction of an artificial palate or obturator, to which artificial teeth are to be attached, a gold plate of the proper size should be fitted to all that portion of the vault of the palate and alveolar ridge which is to be covered by it, with a lateral branch on each side extending to the first molar or the tooth to which it is to be clasped. To these, clasps should be soldered, and afterwards artificial teeth fitted and secured in the manner as described in part sixth, of the present treatise. If, however, the upper surface of the plate is to be surmounted with a drum or air chamber, this should be done before the teeth are attached to it. In Fig. 229, may be seen an engraving of a simple palate plate or obturator, with the central and lateral incisors attached to it.

Fig. 229.



When the teeth have all been lost on one side of the mouth, or are too much decayed to serve as a support for an obturator, either with or without artificial teeth, the plate may be constructed with two branches upon the other side, if there be two healthy and firmly articulated teeth, to which clasps can be applied. A piece applied in this manner, in connection

Fig. 230.



with nine artificial teeth, namely, the four incisors, two cuspidati, two bicuspids, and one molar, is shown in Fig. 230. The clasps, as may be perceived by the cut, are intended for a second bicuspid and second molar. Although the molars on the opposite side of the jaw were wanting, it was not deemed prudent to increase the weight of the piece, by attaching more than nine artificial teeth to the plate.

Fig. 231.



An artificial palate, complicated with ten artificial teeth, namely, the central and lateral incisors, the cuspidati, the first bicuspid of the left side, the first and second of the right, as well as the first molar, is represented in Fig. 231. The clasps, as may be seen, are for the first molar of the left side, and the second of the right. The opening in the palate to be covered by the plate in this case, extended from the alveolar border backwards a little more than an inch, and was about seven-eighths of an inch in width.

The functions of mastication, deglutition and speech, which were all very greatly impaired by the opening in the palate and loss of so many of the teeth, were all, in a great degree, restored by the piece here represented.

Having presented several varieties of obturators, complicated with artificial teeth, the author will now describe one constructed by Dr. C. O. Cone, for a patient introduced into the Infirmary of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery, during the latter part of the session of 1846–7, by Dr. Morison, from the Infirmary of the medical department of the University of Maryland.

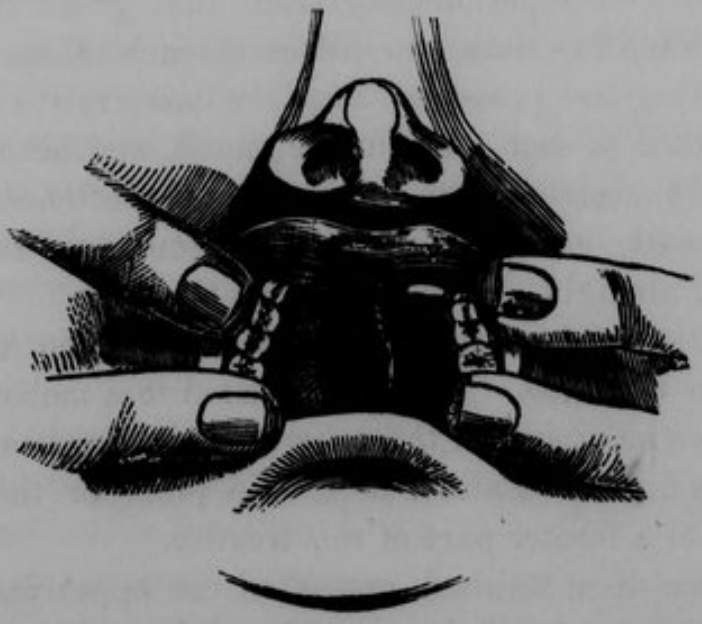
The opening in the palate was of an elliptical shape, about an inch in length, and six-eighths in width at its widest part. The loss involved a portion of the superior maxillary and palate bone, anterior part of the vomer, and implicating in a down-

ward and backward direction, to a considerable extent, that portion of it which is received into the groove formed by the articulation of the palate processes of the superior maxillary and palate bones—uniting the cavities of the nose and mouth, and almost totally destroying enunciation and greatly embarrassing deglutition. The whole mucous lining of the mouth was of a deep red, the gums swollen and irritable, the teeth coated with tartar and a slimy mucus. The central incisors and right lateral of the upper jaw were loose, and an ichorous fluid almost constantly discharged from between them and the gums, indicating a diseased condition of their sockets.

It is scarcely necessary to state, that the destruction of parts and local manifestations of disease, in this case, were the result of a venereal diathesis of the general system, which had developed itself in the usual manner, producing its various pathological changes, and among them were those just noticed.

The patient, previously to being introduced into the Infirmary of the Baltimore College of Dental Surgery having been under the influence of appropriate constitutional remedies, it only remained to institute such local treatment as the nature of the case at this time seemed to demand. The right lateral and

Fig. 232.



superior central incisors were extracted, which opened a free communication through their sockets, between the nose and mouth. The remaining teeth were next freed from all extra-

neous matter, and such other dental and surgical treatment adopted as the nature of the case seemed to require. In about two months, the teeth, gums and palate were restored to health.

Having accomplished this object, a correct impression of the superior alveolar ridge and vault of the palate was taken in wax, which presented the appearance represented in Fig. 232. The plaster and metallic models and a counter-model were procured in the usual manner, except that the first was so filled at the superior part, or portion representing the loss of structures, as to give the same dimensions of space to the nasal cavity after the introduction of the palate plate, which it had previously to the destruction of the parts. This was necessary to prevent a predominant nasal tone, and to restore vocalization.

A gold plate was now fitted to the opening in the palate; its inferior surface, presenting a large concavity, was filled with wax, so that when placed in the aperture of the palate, the cavity of the mouth should be restored to its natural shape. New models and a counter-model were next obtained, and another plate, thicker than the first, and of greater dimensions, extending anteriorly, to serve as a support for artificial teeth, was next adjusted.

It would seem superfluous to state, that great care was observed in adapting these two plates to each other, and to the parts, so that the pressure should be positively equal. They were adjusted to each other in the mouth, and held together by means of a resinous cement, previously softened; they were now removed, enveloped in plaster, and soldered together, leaving an air-tight chamber between the two.

Having proceeded thus far in the construction of the piece, clasps were attached. These were fitted to a molar on one side and the two bicuspids on the other. This done, artificial gum teeth were fitted and attached to the plate in the manner as described in a former part of this treatise.

The piece when finished, presented the appearance shown in Figs. 233, 234. On being introduced into the mouth, it was found almost immediately to restore all the lost functions for which it was designed.

Fig. 233.

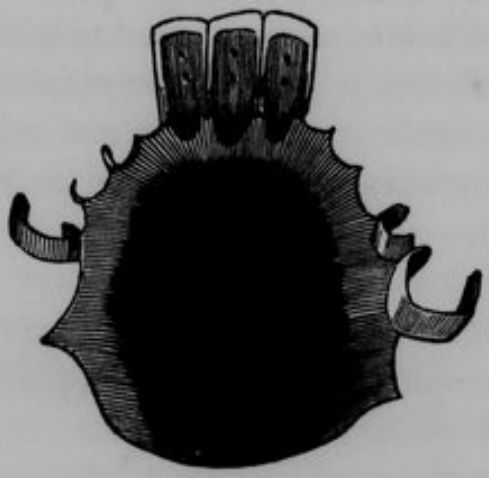


Fig. 234.



The author would here refer to an obturator, complicated with artificial teeth, constructed by Mr. Warren Rowell, of New York, and the great difficulty to be overcome in this case, according to the report made of it by Dr. Griscom,* was the want of teeth in the upper jaw to sustain it, and the great size of the opening in the palate, the vomer and turbinated bones having been destroyed. Upon examination, however, Mr. Rowell found that the posterior portion of the palatine aperture was formed, "to a considerable extent, of a semi-cartilaginous substance, possessing sufficient elasticity to allow a larger body than the opening to be pushed up through it, and that when so forced up, it would be supported above the aperture by the edge retiring to its original position." This, he hoped, would support a light plate, if the obturator could be so shaped as to rest upon the cartilaginous ledge, after it was introduced.

Without quoting the description which is given of his method of procedure, it will be sufficient to state, that the obturator, which he constructed, consisted of a plate larger than the opening in the palate and covering the anterior part of the alveolar ridge, to which artificial teeth were attached, and an irregularly shaped drum or air chamber, larger above than below, where it was connected with the palate plate. The neck of this bulb or drum, is of the exact size of the opening in the palate, and the

* Vide *New York Journal of Medicine*, vol. viii, No. 23, p. 187.

upper part or summit has several depressions, which correspond with the irregular "surfaces of the remaining nasal bones."

Fig. 235.



Fig. 236.



The anterior part of the palate plate, to which the teeth are attached, as may be seen in Fig. 235, is composed of two plates, "to compensate by its thickness for the deficiency of the alveolar ridge." The drum is seen rising from the palate plate, to which it is soldered.

In Fig. 236 is represented a lateral view of the piece. The palate plate and drum are composed of fine gold, and made very light.

At the time Mr. Rowell constructed this obturator, we are assured by Dr. Griscom, he had never heard of nor seen "Delabarre's proposed operation," so that it would seem that the obturator which he constructed was original with himself. We are also informed, that it has been worn since 1841, and as yet, (1847,) has not caused any appreciable increase in the size of the opening. That this, however, will ultimately be the case, we think there can be no question. But, Mr. Rowell, nevertheless, is certainly entitled to great credit for the ingenuity and skill he displayed in contriving and executing a piece of mechanism which has, even for so long a time, restored to his afflicted patient the functions of mastication, deglutition and speech.

Dr. Mütter gives an engraving of an artificial palate, complicated with several artificial teeth and a metallic velum connected with the palate plate by means of a hinge, constructed by Mr. Neil, a dentist of Philadelphia, which is represented as having

answered an excellent purpose.* It is difficult to conceive, however, how a gold plate of an oval shape, could be made to perform the functions of the velum palati. So far as an imperfection in the hard palate is concerned, the evil, we know, may be remedied by covering the opening with a metallic plate, but the loss of the soft palate, cannot be replaced with any hard unyielding material, so as to restore the functions of the natural parts.

The most complicated, and at the same time, ingenious piece of mechanism, of which we have ever heard, for replacing the loss of the entire palate, including the velum and nearly all the teeth of the upper jaw, was invented by M. Delabarre, but in consequence of its weight from the amount of material in it, as well as the complexity of the instrument, it failed to realize the sanguine expectations of the inventor, although he states that it fully answered the purpose for which it was designed. Subsequent experiments, however, have been less successful, and as this method of constructing artificial palates has long since been abandoned, we do not think it necessary to quote the description which he has given of it.

Instead, therefore, of employing this complicated instrument, a simple palate plate, raised upon its upper surface, with a velum like the one constructed by Mr. Stearns, or with Hullihen's or Blandy's valve, with artificial teeth attached to it, will be found to answer a much better purpose, in a case like the one for which M. Delabarre's complicated piece of mechanism was fabricated. As it is not probable that such an appliance will ever be constructed again, we do not deem it necessary even to copy the engraving furnished by the author. If any of our readers, however, should desire to see it, we would refer them to Vol. ii, of Delabarre's Treatise on Mechanical Dentistry, or to the American edition of Fox's Natural History and Diseases of the Teeth.

M. Desirabode proposes a kind of palatine obturator for congenital fissure of the palate, by which he thinks the sides of the alveolar border may be so approximated as to favor the union

* Vide *Liston's and Mütter's Surgery.*

of the divided parts. It consists of a platina plate fitted to the vault of the palate and fastened to the teeth by means of three crotchets, (clasps,) soldered to each side, so as to cap the canine teeth, the bicuspid, and two of the molar teeth, bent upon the alveolar border, in such a manner as to maintain the whole pressure. After the plate, with these appendages, has been well adapted, it is divided from before backwards along the median line, and then a piece is removed from each side, so that the two edges may be separated about half an inch from each other. The two half plates are now united by means of a thick and resisting band of caoutchouc, made fast by riveting. The plates thus united, form a smaller obturator than the plate before it was divided, so that it can only be applied by putting the caoutchouc upon the stretch, which is effected by means of two stocks, so contrived as to force the two plates asunder. After the plate is properly adjusted, these are removed, when, by the contraction of the caoutchouc, the sides of the alveolar border are gradually made to approach each other.*

Other contrivances have been invented for the accomplishment of the end proposed by the instrument invented by Desirabode, but none have been found to answer a very good purpose, except when applied to young subjects.

It sometimes happens that an imperfection of the palate is accompanied by an opening into the maxillary sinus. In this case, the palatine plate should be large enough to close both openings, and the loss of the alveolar border replaced by means of a raised plate, soldered to the lower surface of the palate plate, and to which artificial teeth may be attached.

It often happens that the destruction of the whole, or a part of the palate, is accompanied by the loss of a portion of the upper lip, and when the latter cannot be restored by means of a surgical operation, the dentist is sometimes called upon to replace it with an artificial substitute. This has frequently been very successfully done, but as it constitutes no part of the design of the author to treat of the prosthesis of this organ, he will not attempt a description of the various methods of proce-

* *Complete Elements of the Science and Art of the Dentist*, p. 767.

dure which have been adopted in the construction of such appliances.

In conclusion, it only remains to observe, that the same attention is required to prevent injury to the natural teeth, which serve as a support to an artificial palate or obturator as to those which are used for the retention of dental substitutes, and as full directions have already been given upon this subject, it is not necessary to repeat them here.

INDEX.

PAGE.

A.

Abrasion of the teeth, . . 398
Mechanical, . . . 402
Abyssinia, custom of negroes in, 264
Accretion of the jaws, . . 132
Acid found in the mouth, . . 255
Alveolar abscess, ... 460
Cases of, ... 464
Cause of, . . . 119, 462
Singular cases of, . . 465
Treatment of, ... 462
Alveolar arches, shape of, in infants and adults, . . 124
Alveolo-dental periosteum, . 76
Of the temporary teeth, consequences of inflammation of the, . . 119
Structure of, ... 76
Alveolar processes and gums, effects of mercury on, 246
Exfoliation of, in children, 447
Causes of, ... 449
Symptoms of, . . . 448
Treatment of, ... 450
Necrosis and exfoliation of the, ... 467
Cases of, ... 468
Causes of, ... 470
Treatment of, ... 471
Spontaneous destruction of the, ... 472
Causes of, ... 473
Treatment of, . . . 474
Tumors of the, ... 452
Cases of, ... 454
Causes of, ... 452
Treatment of, . . . 454
Amalgam, ... 274
Injurious effects of, . 274
Anatomy and physiology of the mouth, ... 27
Anæmia, color of gums in, . 218
Antagonizing model, how to obtain an, ... 660

PAGE.

For block teeth, ... 715
Instrument for, by Dr. Thos. W. Evans, . . 663
Antrum Highmorianum, . . . 479
Abscess of 516
Cases of, ... 521
Causes of, ... 520
Symptoms of, ... 518
Treatment of, . . . 520
Boundaries of the, . . . 34
Caries of the walls of, 483, 536
Cases of, ... 541
Causes of, ... 538
Symptoms of, ... 537
Treatment of, . . . 539
Causes of various morbid affections of the, . . . 484
Exostosis of the osseous parietes of the, . . . 563
Cases of, ... 568
Causes of, ... 567
Symptoms of, . . . 566
Treatment of, ... 567
Foreign bodies in the, . 576
Symptoms of, ... 577
Treatment of, . . . 578
Importance of an early attention to the diseases of the, 480
Inflammation of the lining membrane of the, 482, 487
Causes of, ... 489
Symptoms of, . . . 488
Treatment of, ... 490
Insidious occurrence of diseases of the, . . . 481
Morbid affections of the, similar to those of nasal fossa, 481
Mucous engorgement of the, 482
Penetrated by the teeth, . 485
Purulent condition of the secretions and engorgement of the, . . 482, 492
Cases of, ... 504
Causes of, ... 498
Symptoms of, ... 496
Treatment of, . . . 498

PAGE.

Secretion of pituitary membrane of the, in a healthy state, ... 495
Tumors of lining membrane and periosteum of the, 483, 545
Cases of, ... 553
Causes of, ... 549
Effects resulting from, . 545
Sometimes originate from other parts, . . . 546
Symptoms of, ... 548
Treatment of, . . . 550
Ulceration of lining membrane of the, ... 483, 527
Cases of, ... 530
Causes of, ... 529
Symptoms of, . . . 528
Treatment of, ... 530
Variable character of the morbid growths of, . . . 547
When discovered, . . . 479
By whom, ... 479
Why so called, ... 479
Wounds of the osseous parietes of the, ... 572
Case of, ... 573
Treatment of, . . . 573
Argillaceous tooth polisher, . 121
Arranging porcelain teeth on a plate, ... 666
Arsenic in tooth-ache, . . . 122
Manner of applying, . 272
Objections to, ... 272
Artificial teeth, ... 582
Atmospheric pressure, or suction method of applying, ... 596, 691
Appearance of a set, . 691
Attached to plate, with clasps, 594
With spiral springs, 599, 688
Different methods of applying, 592
On a base of tin, . . . 736
On natural roots, . . . 592
Substances employed for, 586
Surgical treatment of mouth, preparatory to the application of, ... 600
With gums, mounted on cavity plates, ... 694
Artificial palate, case of, by Dr. C. O. Cone, . . . 790
Another, by Mr. Rowell, . 793
Arteries, ... 78
Facial, ... 79
Branches of, . . . 80
Lingual, ... 82
Of deglutition, . . . 82
Of insalivation, ... 82
Of mastication, . . . 80
Of pharynx, ... 82
Of prehension, . . . 79

PAGE.

Of soft palate, ... 82
Ranine, ... 83
Artery, external carotid, . . . 79
Branches of, ... 83
Inferior dental, ... 80
Inferior palatine, . . . 82
Infra-orbitar, ... 81
Internal carotid, . . . 79
Tortuous course of, . 79
Internal maxillary, . . . 80
Branches of, ... 83
Spheno-palatine, . . . 81
Superior dental, ... 81
Superior palatine, . . 81
Temporal, ... 81
Astringent lotion for the mouth, 440
Recipe No. 2, ... 440
Koecker's, ... 440
Bell's, ... 441
Author's, ... 441
Atmospheric pressure, method of applying teeth on plate by, 691
Necessity of perfect adaptation in, ... 691
Preferable to any other method of mounting teeth, . 693
Size of plate necessary to mount two teeth only, . 694
With narrow plate and Roper's improvement, . 693
Atrophy of the teeth, . . . 372
First variety, ... 375
Second variety, ... 375
Third variety, . . . 377
Case of, by author, . . 483
Causes of, ... 377
Treatment of, ... 384

B.

Backing teeth, ... 667
How to proceed when the alveolar ridge is very uneven, ... 670
Bell, researches of Mr. T. . 100
Berzelius, analysis of dentine by, 47
Bicuspids, manner of separating the, ... 268
Block teeth, objections to, . 703
Materials used in making porcelain, ... 703
Coloring, ... 705
For body of, ... 709
Recipes for, . . . 709
For enamel of, ... 710
Recipes for, ... 710
Blood, importance of pure, . 195
Of children, superabundantly serous, ... 229
Blow-pipe, ... 659
Bone of tooth, vascularity of, 46

PAGE.
Dental, microscopical appearance of, . . . 47
Chemical constituents of, 47
Borax, how to prepare, for soldering, ... 652
Brahmins of India, custom of, . 264
Brush, polishing, ... 673
Buccal teeth, ... 55

C.

Caries of the teeth, ... 240
Always commences externally, ... 254
Causes of, ... 248
As explained by French writers, ... 248
Bew's theory of, . . . 252
How it may be arrested, . 121
Indirect causes of, . . . 257
Induced by hot food, tea, &c., 253
Inflammation not a cause of, 250
Man almost the only animal afflicted with, . . 253
Of bone and teeth no analogy between, ... 249
Prevention of, . . . 258
Result of the action of external corrosive agents, . 256
Secret development of, . 251
Seldom found amongst Indians, ... 253
Treatment of, . . . 259
Carneous tubercle, ... 128
Office of, ... 129
Singular development of, . 130
Cartilaginous excrescences of the gums, ... 456
Cases of, ... 457
Casserian ganglion, ... 86
Branches of, . . . 86
Cassius, purple powder of, recipes for, ... 707
Catalan, inclined plane of, . 152
Cattle, teeth of, ... 587
Cavities, filling individual in teeth, 290
Of reserve, ... 103
Cavity in a tooth, instrument for forming, ... 276
Manner of forming, . . . 280
Plates, ... 697
Disadvantages of, . . . 702
Size of for a single tooth, 701
Success of with author, . 701
With valves, . . . 698
When invented, . . . 697
Cementum, ... 50, 110
Nasmyth's opinion upon, . 50
Ceylonese furnace, ... 618
Characteristics of the teeth, . 196
Chloride of zinc, ... 340

PAGE.
Clasps, fitting and attaching, . 648
Fogle's method of securing perfect adaptation of, 649
Cushman's remarks on, . 650
Noble's method, ... 651
Ought not to be applied to loose teeth, ... 685
Precautions to be observed in, 648
Teeth ought not to be filed to obtain space for, . 686
Thickness of plate for, . 648
Cleanliness, result of inattention to, 120
Cleaveland's air chamber, . . 699
Coloring materials for porcelain teeth, ... 705
Condensing forceps, . . . 305
Condyloid process, ... 37
Constitution dependent on regimen, 187
Constitutional health, present state of, not indicated by the appearance of the teeth, 204
Convulsions of children often caused by irritation from teething, 94
Copper, process for removing from surface of gold plate, . 672
Corda tympani, ... 88
Coronoid process, ... 37
Crowded teeth, how to correct, 139
Practice of Delabarre in, . 139
Bell on, ... 139
Author's experience on, . 139
Crusta petrosa, . . . 50, 110
Formation of, ... 110

D.

Damp residence, effects of upon the teeth, ... 215
D'Arcet's metal, ... 274
Deafness, frequent causes of, . 70
Decay of the teeth, cause of, . 121
Character of, in soft teeth, . 241
Complicated, ... 242
Difference in the liability of different teeth to, . 243
Duval's classification of, . 242
Hereditary predisposition to, 247
Deformity from excessive development of teeth and alveolar ridge of lower jaw, 157
Author's mode of treating, 157
Deglutition, organs of, . . 66
Arteries of, ... 82
Delabarre, metallic grate of, . 154
Fusible enamel of, for plates, 696
Dental groove, primitive, . . 101
Secondary, ... 103
Dental pulp and periosteum, diseases of, ... 408
Dental substitutes, for special cases, ... 677

PAGE.

With artificial gums, . . 696
Dental ligament, . . . 77
Dental surgery, resources of, . 141
Dentes sapientiæ, irregularity of, 142
How caused, ... 142
Dentine, ... 44
Vascularity of, ... 46
Dentist, work-table and grinding lathe for a, . . 667
Dentistry and medicine inseparably connected, . . 96
Dentition, first, ... 111
Effects sometimes resulting from, ... 115
Irritation of, caused by pressure upon the pulp, . 115
Most critical period with infants, ... 115
Second, ... 124
An important period of life, 124
Generally overlooked by medical men, . . 136
Injury done to, by improper interference, . . 136
Method of directing, . 136
Observations of Mr. Bell on, 137
Wise provision in, . 124
Third, ... 171
Supposed origin of, . 574
Desirabode's fusible enamel for plates, . . . 696
Deviation of teeth, singular cases of, ... 163
Disease, characteristics of, . 192
Diseases of the teeth, . . 239
Diseases and defects of the palatine organs, . . . 760
Accidental and congenital, 760
Of the palate, . . . 745
Diabetes mellitus, . . . 218
Double set of artificial teeth, . 688
Draw-bench, ... 626
Drill-stocks, ... 278
Maynard's, ... 278
McDowell's, ... 279
Lewis', ... 279
Duhamel, researches of, . . 199
Dunning, Dr. E. J., on filling pulp-cavities, ... 324
Dwinelle's cavity plate, . . 698
Dysmenorrhea, appearance of gums in, ... 218
Dyspepsia, effects of protracted, upon the tongue, . 233

E.

Elevator, ... 364
Elliot's forceps for removing pivots, 608
Empiricism in dentistry, . 261
Enamel, ... 48

PAGE.

Chemical constituents of, 49
Denudation of, . . . 207
Formation of, ... 107
Importance of, . . . 262
Membrane, ... 109
Microscopic appearance of, 48
Paste, ... 696
Structure of, . . . 48
English teeth, how attached to plate, 674
Erosion of the teeth, . . . 372
Europeans, three classes of, distinguished by their teeth, 203
Excavators, ... 277
Excising forceps, ... 603
Exostosis, ... 388
Extraction of teeth, . . . 344
Indications for the, of first dentition, ... 346
Of second dentition, . 346
Instruments employed in, 348
Of roots of teeth, . . 364
Instruments employed for, 364
Of the temporary, . . 369
Hemorrhage after, . 369
Eye teeth, ... 52

F.

Face, bones of the, . . . 39
Fauces, where situated, . . . 69
File, used in ornamenting the teeth, ... 264
Carrier, Westcott's, . . 270
Files, author's pattern, . . 269
Filing the teeth, ... 261
Beneficial in certain cases of caries of temporary, . 122
Cleanliness necessary after, 266
Does not necessarily cause their destruction, . . 264
Empiricism in, . . . 262
Extremes to be avoided in, . 266
Great judgment required in, 266
Necessity of, ... 263
Remarks of Dr. John Harris upon, ... 261
Utility of, ... 265
When improper, . . . 263
Filling teeth, ... 270
Importance of a smooth surface in a filling, . . 286
Inferior incisors and cuspidati, 306
Molars and bicuspids, . 308
Lower molars, difficulties of, 311
Materials for, ... 273
Position for standing whilst, 288
Pulp-cavities and roots of teeth, ... 322
Sensitive teeth, . . . 272
Treatment of, preparatory to, ... 272

PAGE.

Special directions for, . 271
Superior incisors and cuspidati, 290
Molars and bicuspids, 300
When the lining membrane is exposed, ... 315
First recommended by Dr. Koecker, . . 315
Fineness and value of the different gold coins, ... 623
Floss silk for cleaning the teeth, 258
Fogle, Dr., method of, for securing perfect adaptation of clasps, ... 649
Foramen of tooth, smaller than the pulp-cavity, . 327
Forceps, ... 350
Dens sapientia, . . . 356
Dentists' punch, . . . 668
Hawk's-bill, . . . 356
Lower molar, ... 354
Incisor, ... 355
Bicuspid, ... 355
Manner of using, . . . 360
Superiority of, ... 351
Snell's, ... 352
Improvement of, by author, 353
Upper molar, ... 354
Incisors and cuspidati, 355
Foster, J. H., success of, in filling pulp-cavities, . . 323
Fractures of the teeth, . . 404
Fræni, ... 74
Frænum linguæ, ... 75
Fungous growth of the pulp of a tooth, ... 411
Furnace and blow-pipe, . . 653

G.

Ganglion of Meckel, . . 75
Gangrene, dental, . . . 241
Genial processes, ... 36
Gilbert's cavity plate, . . 700
Glands, mucous, ... 64
Of Serres, ... 424
Parotid, ... 62
Salivary, ... 62
Sublingual, ... 64
Submaxillary, . . . 63
Tonsil, ... 69
Gold, alloying, ... 621
Copper preferable to silver for, ... 621
Bar of Mr. Box, . . . 154
Coins of different nations, table of fineness and value per dwt. of, ... 623
Evils arising from impure, 622
Fillings, manner of finishing, 286
Instruments for introducing, 284

PAGE.

Manner of introducing and consolidating, . . 285
Manner of refining and alloying, ... 615
Plate, manner of making, . 628
Refining, ... 617
Elliot's method of, . . 620
Solder, to make, . 631
Recipes for, . . 631
Gomphosis, ... 56
Good, Dr., opinion of, on teething, 115
Goodsir, researches of, . . 100
Great Britain, peasantry of noted for good constitutional temperaments, . 194
Grinding apparatus, ... 606
Lathe, ... 667
Guage plate, ... 626
Gums, the, ... 75
Acute inflammation of, . 433
Appearance of in infant state, 76
In perfect constitutions, 211
Artificial raised plates employed as substitutes for, 696
Composition of Dr. Allen for, 735
Formulas of Dr. Wm. M. Hunter, for continuous, 728
Single porcelain teeth, with continuous, . . 726
Atrophy of, ... 212
Indicative of premature old age, ... 212
Color of in chlorosis and anæmia, ... 218
Constitutional health indicated by, . . 76
Diseases of, . . . 431
Predisposing causes of, 431
Effects of mercury upon, . 246
Indications furnished by the, of a mercurial diathesis, 217
Inflammation and tumefaction of, ... 434
Causes of, ... 436
Pernicious effects of, . 435
Treatment of, . . 438
Irritation of, proximate cause of disease, . . 209
Insensibility and hardness of, 76
Internal structure of, . 76
Lancing, ... 117
Fallacies respecting, . 118
Morbid growth of, . 443
Causes of, ... 444
Treatment of, . . 445
Mercurial inflammation of 446
Treatment of, . . 447
Not always diagnostic of the pathognomic state of the system, . . . 210

PAGE.

Physical characteristics of, 209
Subject to the laws of the general economy, . . 209
Thickness of, . . . 76
Tumors of, ... 452
Ulceration of, of children, 447
Causes of, ... 449
Treatment of, . . . 450
Gunnell's, Dr. J. S., treatment of protrusion of lower jaw, 160
Gustatory nerve, branches of, 91

H.

Head, bones of the, . . 39
Hemorrhage after extraction, 369
Cases of, ... 369
Hill's stopping, ... 318
Remarks on, by author, . 319
Hook, ... 365
Hullihen's screw forceps, . 366
Human teeth, ... 586
Hunter, Dr John, researches of, 98
Hunter, Dr. Wm. M., description of continuous artificial gums, 728

I.

Impressions in wax, . . . 633
Plaster, ... 637
Desirabode's method of obtaining, . . . 638
Inclined plane of Catalan, . 152
Improved by author, . . 153
Incorruptible teeth, . . . 589
Inferior maxillary bone, . . 35
Divisions of, . . . 36
Alveolar processes of, . . 37
Anterior mental foramina, 36
Articulations of, . . . 38
Condyloid processes of, . 37
Coronoid processes of, . 37
Development of, . . . 37
Genial processes of, . . 36
Posterior dental foramina, 37
Rami of, ... 37
Structure of, ... 37
Ingot mould, ... 620
Injury resulting from neglect of the teeth, ... 137
Insalivation, organs of, . . 62
Arteries of, ... 81
Intemperance, effects of, . 212
Irregularity of the teeth, . . 142
Aid of dentist required in, 145
Case of, by author, . . 149
Catalan, inclined plane of, in correcting, ... 152
Cause of failure in correcting at an advanced period of life, 145
Caused by want of room, . 146

PAGE.

Contraction of superior maxillary frequent cause of, 143
Defect in natural conformation of the jaws a cause of, 144
Directions of Fox in, . . 145
File never to be used in correcting, ... 140
Frequent cause of, . . . 120
Gum elastic in correcting, 150
Importance of early attention to, ... 145
Ligatures in correcting, . 148
Of bicuspids, ... 142
Of cuspidati, ... 146
Of dens sapientiæ, . . . 142
Of incisors of upper jaw, . 147
Lower jaw, ... 144
Of molars, ... 142
Of teeth, a predisposing cause of disease, ... 141
Spiral springs in correcting, 150
Treatment of, ... 145
Where the under teeth shut outside of the upper, . 151
Fox's plan for correcting, 154
Most suitable age to correct, 155
Why to be dreaded, . . 136
Itinera dentium, ... 105
Ivory for artificial teeth, . 588

J.

Jaws, accretion of the, . . 132
Change of countenance produced by, . . . 134
When commenced, . . 132
Defects of, ... 135
Regarded as hereditary, 135
Jaw, partial luxation of lower, 160
Protrusion of lower, . . 160
Treatment of, . . 160
Length of time required for, ... 161
Superior, excision of, . . 552

K.

Key of Garengeot, . . . 348
Manner of using, . . 358
Koecker, remarks of, on second dentition, . . . 141

L.

Lateral cavity plates, . . 698
Lavater, ... 190
Lead, in covering exposed lining membrane, . . 317
Necessity of removing particles of, from plate, before annealing, . . . 647

PAGE.
Pattern, . . 647
Leeches to the gums, when necessary, . . . 123
Ligamentum dentis, . 77
Lips, characteristics of the, . 228
Sign of a good constitution, 228
Pathognomic indications of, 229
Lithodeon, . . . 274
Lower jaw, dislocation of, . 415
Reduction of, . . 417
Method of Sir Astley Cooper for the, . . 418

M.

Malar process, . . 33
Mastication, active organs of, . 58
Arteries of, . . 80
Inferior dental, . . 80
Infra orbitar, . . 81
Internal maxillary, . 80
Spheno palatine, . 81
Superior palatine, . 81
Superior dental, . 81
Temporal, . . 81
Muscles of, . . 58
Masseter, . . 60
Pterygoideus externus, 60
Pterygoideus internus, . 61
Temporalis, . . 58
Organs of, . . 31, 58
Passive organs of, . 31
Inferior maxilla, . . 35
Palate bones, . . 38
Superior maxilla, . 32
Materials used in making porcelain block teeth, . 703
Matrix for moulding block teeth, 716
Maxillary sinus, . . 479
Maynard's forceps for extracting roots of upper molars, 368
Mechanical abrasion of teeth, 402
Provision of nature to prevent exposure of pulp-cavity in, 403
Mechanical dentistry, . 581
Violence, injuries from, . 404
Case by author, . 405
Medicine and dentistry inseparably connected, . 96
Mental process, . . 36
Metallic pivots, . . 607
Metallic model and counter-model, manner of procuring, 642
Without the aid of sand, 645
Metal, particles of base, ought to be removed from plates before annealing, . 647
Mineral cement, . . 274
Models of the mouth, . 633
Desirabode's method of procuring, . . 638

PAGE.
Molars with five roots, . . 163
Mother, health of, determined by the teeth of the child, 188
Difficulties of such diagnosis, 189
Moulding and carving block teeth, 718
Mouth the, acid in, proven, 255
Anatomy and physiology of, 27
Anatomical relations of, 94
Arteries of, . . 78
External carotid, . 79
Internal carotid, . 79
Blood-vessels of, . 78
Boundaries of, . . 27
Elements of, . . 27
Fluids of the, physical characteristics of the, . 225
Mucous membrane lining the, 74
Muscles of the, . . 28
Origin and insertion of the, 29
Nerves of, . . 85
Physiological relations of, 95
Surgical treatment of, preparatory to the application of artificial teeth, . 600
Veins of, . . 83
Wash, . . . 440
Mucous glands, . . 64
Use of the, . . . 65
Dispositions, characteristics of gums in, . 215
Combined with scrofulous tendency, . . 215
Where met with, . 215
Membrane, when called gums, 75
Muscles of the mouth, . 28
Buccinator, . . 30
Depressor labii inferioris, 29
Depressor labii superioris, 30
Depressor anguli oris, . 29
Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, . . 29
Levator anguli oris, . 29
Levator labii inferioris, 30
Orbicularis oris, 30
Zygomaticus major, . 29
Zygomaticus minor, 29

N.

Nasmyth, microscopic observations of, . . 42, 45
Nasal crest, . . . 33
Nasal spine, . . . 33
Natural teeth, attaching to a plate, 675
Necrosis of the alveolar processes, 467
Causes of, . . . 470
Treatment of, . 471
Case by Dr. Maynard, 470
Nerves of the mouth, . . 85
Fifth pair or trigemini, 86
Nerve, anterior dental, . . 89

	PAGE.
Nerve, anterior auricular,	90
Cervical,	94
Digastric,	93
Facial,	92
Origin of,	92
Branches of,	93
Superior,	93
Inferior,	93
Branches of,	93
Frontal,	86
Gustatory,	90
Infra orbitar,	89
Inferior dental,	91
Inferior maxillary,	90
Branches of,	90
Lachrymal,	87
Lateral nasal,	88
Maxillary,	93
Nasal,	87
Opthalmic,	86
Branches of,	86
Orbital,	89
Palatine,	88
Posterior dental,	89
Posterior auricular,	93
Stylo-hyoid,	93
Submaxillary,	94
Superior maxillary,	87
Branches of,	87, 89
Vidian or pterygoid,	88
Of tooth, different modes of destroying,	326
Maynard's method and instruments for,	331
Author's method,	331
Gutta percha in exposed,	320
Hullihen's method of filling cavity in exposed,	321
Nitrate of silver lotion, formula for,	442
Nurse, great care required in selection of a,	184
Opinion of Delabarre respecting a,	184
Signs essential to be possessed by a good,	185

O.

Obturators, artificial,	777
First description of,	777
Manner of constructing,	779
Oral positions,	765
Oral teeth,	52
Os-hyoides,	71
Osteo-sarcomatous tumors,	458
Osseous union of the teeth,	167
Cases of,	167
Causes of,	168
Rare occurrences of,	168
Oxyd of cobalt,	709
Of gold, mode of preparing,	706
Oxyd of manganese,	708
Of silver, mode of preparing,	709
Of titanium,	708
Of uranium,	708

P.

Palate, diseases of the,	745
Caries and necrosis of the bones of the,	751
Cases of,	753
Causes of,	752
Treatment of,	753
Muscles of the,	69
Tumors of the,	745
Cases of,	749
Causes of,	746
Treatment of,	748
Palates, artificial,	777
Palate bones,	38
Articulations of,	39
Divisions of,	38
Nasal plate of,	39
Orbital process of,	39
Palate plate of,	38
Posterior palatine canal,	39
Posterior palatine foramen,	39
Relations of,	39
Spheno palatine foramen,	39
Structure of,	39
Palate, imperfections of the, accompanied by an opening into the sinus,	796
Plate, simple, or obturator,	780
With a drum upon its convex surface,	781
With a velum and uvula,	781
Dr. Tucker's instrument,	784
Dr. Hullihen's instrument,	785
Dr. Blandy's instrument,	787
Mr. Stearn's instrument,	782
Complicated with artificial teeth,	788
Palatine obturator of M. Desirabode for closing a congenital fissure,	795
Palatine organs, defects of,	760
Accidental,	760
Congenital.	761
Functional disturbances resulting from defects of the,	762
Manner of remedying defects of the,	769
Paste, tero-metallic,	696
Parotid glands,	62
Structure of,	63
Parotidean plexus,	93
Parmly's self acting blow pipe,	53
Periosteum, alveolo-dental, where found,	76
Diseases of,	413

PAGE.

Pes anserinus, . . . 93
Pharynx, the, . . . 66
Arteries of, . . . 82
Muscles of, . . . 67
Physiognomical semiotics of great importance to the medical practitioner, . . 190
Pickling soldered plate, . 671
Pivot teeth, ... 592
Manner of inserting, . 603
Plaster of paris, impression of the mouth in, . . 637
Composition of, . . 637
Model, manner of procuring in three pieces, . 641
Plate, fitting and swaging, . 646
How to clean after soldering, 659
Manner of finishing and applying, . . . 671
Width of, employed for making upper sets with springs, 688
Platina sponge, method of preparing, ... 706
Plethora, signs of, . . 228
Porcelain teeth, . . 589, 688
Single, on metallic base, with continuous artificial gums, 726
Porcelain block teeth, . . 703
Appearance of a set mounted, 724
Crucing or biscuiting, . 719
Double sets of, . . 725
Enameling of, . . 720
Firing and baking, . 721
Fitting and attaching to plate, 722
Materials for, . . 703
Moulding and carving, 718
Platina pins of, . . 720
Superiority of, . . 703
Posterior nasal spine, . . 39
Pratt's lathe, . . 606
Prehension, organs of, . . 28
Prevention of caries better than cure, . . . 258
Protrusion of lower jaw, . 160
Providence, wisdom of, displayed in dentition, . 111
Pulp-dental, . . . 41
Converted into bone, . 315
Fungous growth of, . 411
Inflammation of, . 409
Microscopical appearance of, 42
Ossification of, . 412
Size of vesicles of, . 42
Spontaneous disorganization of, . . . 410
Pulp-cavity, manner of proceeding when the decay has nearly reached the, . 287
Punch, tooth, . . . 364
Forceps, . . 668

PAGE.

R.

Ramus of the lower jaw, . 37
Raschkow, researches of, . 107
Red gum, ... 117
Refining gold, . . . 617
Elliot's method, . . 620
Retzius' microscopical researches of, . . . 44
Rickets, supposed to be produced by dentition, . . 135
Rolling mill, . . . 629
Roots of teeth, effort of nature to expel, . . 243
Manner of extracting, . 364
Rouge, jeweler's, how to prepare, 672

S.

Saliva, acquires new properties by being kept in the mouth, 226
Appears scarce in good health, 227
Appearance of in good constitutions, . . 225
Signs of the, . . 225
Salivation favorable sign in confluent small pox, . 225
Salivary glands, . . 62
Parotid, . . 62
Sublingual, . . 64
Submaxillary, . . 63
Calculus, . . . 421
Characteristics of, . 220
Formation of, . . 423
Effects of upon the teeth, 428
Manner of removing, . 429
Sanguinous temperaments, kind of gums met with in, . 214
Screw, conical, . . 364
Forceps, Hullihen's, . . 366
Schwerdt's needle-holder for the operation of staphylorraphy, . . 773
Scorbutic tendencies, gums in, 216
Scrofulous dispositions, gums in, 217
Scurvy, ... 218
Self-acting blow-pipe, . 653
Improvement of, by W. H. Elliot, . . . 654
Sensibility of teeth, how to destroy, . . 272
Septic acid, formed in the mouth, 255
Separation of the teeth by pressure, . . . 282
Gum elastic for, . 283
Small-pox, appearance of teeth caused by, . . 207
Soft palate, the . . 68
Arteries of, . . . 82
Solder, manner of making gold, 631
Recipes for, . . 631

PAGE.

Solder, how to prevent it from running in a wrong direction, 771
Soldering, . . . 652
Lamp, ... 658
Somerby's furnace, . . 656
Spheno-palatine ganglion, . 87
Spina ventosa, . . 392
Causes of, . . . 393
Treatment of, . . 393
Spiral springs, manner of making, 626
Machine for, . . 627
Spongy growth of the gums, of what indicative, . 216
Spontaneous ulceration of the gums, . . . 447
Springs, spiral, attachments for, 689
Length of, . . 689
Springing of plate, how caused, 692
Staphyloplasty, . . . 777
Staphyloraphy, . . 769
Consent of patient necessary to operation, . . 770
Directions for operations of, 771
Instruments necessary for, 770
Operation of, first conceived by Le Monnier, . 770
Performed upon a child, . 770
M. Roux, method of, for knotting the ligature, 773
Steno, duct of, . . 63
Strumous dispositions, kind of gums met with in, . 214
More common to females than males, . . 214
Stub's files, . . . 269
Submaxillary glands, . . 63
Sublingual glands, . . 64
Substitutes, dental, for special cases, . . 677
For bicuspids and molars for upper jaw, with clasps, 680
Ropers' plan, . . 680
For central incisor with one clasp, . . 677
Two clasps, . . 678
For incisors and cuspidati, 679
For incisors, cuspidati and bicuspids, with clasps, 681
For first right and first and second left molars, with one clasp, . 681
For lateral incisors and left bicuspids, with two clasps on one side, . 682
For two central incisors, with clasps, . . 678
For two bicuspids, with clasps, 680
Suction method of applying artificial teeth, . 631, 691
Superior maxilla, removal of, 552
Mr. Liston's method of, 560

PAGE.

Alveolar processes of, . 32
Anterior dental canal of, 33
Articulations of, . 34
Development of, . . 35
Infra-orbitar canal, . 33
Structure of, . . 34
Symphysis of the lower jaw, 36
Sympatheticus minor, . 94

T.

Tartar, . . . 220, 421
All persons subject to it, 220
Analyses of, no two alike, 220
Color of, not uniform, . 220
Composition of, . . 221
Chemical constituents of, 422
Dark brown, . 222
Effects of, . . 223
Indications of, . 223
Dark green colored, . 224
Children particularly subject to it, . . 224
Density of, variable, . 221
Dry black, where found, 221
Effects upon the gums, 221
Second variety, . . 221
Effects of, . . 222
Dry yellow, . . 220
Effects of in scorbutic subjects, . . 209
Its importance in diagnostics, 220
Not alone to be relied upon, 220
Pale or yellow brown, 223
Where found, . 223
Effects of, . . 223
White, . . . 223
Class of persons found upon, 224
Composition of, . . 224
Effects of, . . 224
Teeth, the, . . . 39
Abrasion of, . . 298
Mechanical, . . 402
Articulation of, . . 56
Atrophy of, . . 372
Bicuspid, . . . 53
Why so called, . 53
Bell's, Mr., observations upon, 56
Buccal, . . . 55
Calcareous ingredients of, whence derived, . 198
Caries of, . . 240
Seldom occurs after forty, 247
Classes of, . . 196
Class first, . . 196
Where found, . 196
Opinion of Lavater with regard to, . 197
Class second, . . 200
Indicative of a weak constitution, 201

PAGE.

Generally found amongst females, . . 201
Most prevalent in the United States, . . 201
Class third, . . 201
Readily decay, . 202
Class fourth, . 202
Class fifth, . . 205
Constitution determined by, 182
Correct knowledge of the, required in extracting, 138
Crowded, how to correct, 139
Cuspidati, . . . 52
Function of, . . 52
Deformity resulting from excessive development of, 157
Treatment of, . 157
Density of, increased by age, 183
Denuding of, . . 394
Causes of, . . 395
Treatment of, . 397
Description of, belonging to each class, . 50
Differences in the liability of different, to decay, 243
Diseases of the, . . 239
Not analogous to diseases of other bones, . . 239
Displacement of, . 475
Causes of, . . 475
Treatment of, . 476
Early development of, but little known to the ancients, 98
First noticed by Eustachius, 98
Early, advisable to extract, 104
Author's opinion, . 114
Exostosis of the roots of, 388
Case by Dr. Swazy, . 388
Case by Mr. Fox, . 389
Case by the author, . 388
Causes of, . . 390
Extraction of, . . 344
Consequences of carelessness in, . . . 344
Little attention paid by medical men to the, 346
Indications for, . 346
Instruments employed in, 348
Eye, ... 52
Formation of enamel of, 107
Filing, . . . 161
Unnecessary prejudice against, . . 261
Remarks of Dr John Harris on, . . . 261
Filling, . . . 271
Pulp cavity and roots of, 322
Amount of success in, . 322
Fractures of, . . 404
Gelatinous ingredients of, whence derived, . 198

PAGE.

Importance of keeping them clean, . . 258
Importance of preserving temporary, . . 119
Incisor, . . . 50
Function of, . . 51
Increase of density in, . 199
Indicative of consumption, 205
Frequently met with among the higher classes, . 206
Influence of animal food upon the, . . 254
Injury done by neglecting the 136
Irregularity of the, . 142
Liability of, to disease, determined by their appearance, . . 190
Membranes of, vascular, . 41
Molar, . . . 54
Number of, . . 54
Roots, . . 55
Function of, . . 55
Mounted on plate with spiral springs, . . 688
Necrosis of, . . 385
Causes of, . . 386
Treatment of, . 387
No part of the, exempt from disease, . . 240
Not governed by the same laws that regulate the operations of the other part of the animal economy, 182
Number of, employed in an artificial set, . 689
Oral, . . . 52
Order of eruption of, . 113
Origin and formation of, . 97
Of child dependent upon the health of the mother, 183
How to obviate the entailment of evil, . 184
Ossification of the, when first commenced. . 98, 105
How performed, . 107
Under disease, . . 198
Osseous union of, . 167
Peculiarities in the formation and growth of, . . 163
Permanent, . . 41
Component parts of, . 41
Number of, . . 41
Pulp of, . . . 41
Eruption of, . . 130
Curious case of, . 132
Order of each class, 131
Process of, gradual, 131
When commenced, 124
Physical characteristics of, 196
Teeth, position of, five years after birth, . . 125

PAGE.

Teeth, predisposition to decay increased by improper dental operations, . 246
Porcelain, . . 589
Protrusion of lower front, apparatus of the author for correcting, . 158
Relations of upper to lower when the mouth is closed, 57
Singular aberration met with by Albinus, . 163
Mr. G. Wait, . . 164
Spontaneous abrasion of the cutting edges of the front, 398
Case by Mr. Bell, . 399
Causes of, . . 400
Treatment of, . 401
Supernumerary, . . 169
Not so susceptible to decay, 170
Ought to be extracted, 170
Susceptibility of, to decay in peculiar constitutions, 181
Temporary, . . 40
Number of, . . 40
And permanent, difference between, . . 56
Laterals, when ought to be extracted, . . 138
Three periods of ossification ascribed to, . . 183
To which clasps should be applied, . . 684
Transposition of germs of, 144
When required to extract healthy, . . 139
When first developed, . 97
How, . . 97
Why destroyed when clasps are applied to, . 686
Wisdom, or dentes sapientiæ, 55
Teething, active stage of, when commenced, . 116
Effects of, . . 116
Eruptions during, . 147
Why they should not be suppressed, . 117
Temperaments according to Lavater, . . . 193
Lymphatico-serous, . 203
Nice shades of, difficulty of distinguishing, . 195
Temporary teeth, extraction of, 369
Effect of premature loss of, 120
Importance of the preservation of, . . 119
Means of preventing decay of, 121
Eruption of, . . 110
Periods of eruption of the, 113
Case of early eruption of, 113
Case of extraordinary tardiness, . . 114

PAGE.

Shedding of, . . 125
Singular notion with regard to, . . 126
How accomplished, . 126
Theory of Mr. Fox, 127
Views of Laforgue, 127
Delabarre, . . 127
Author, . . 130
To be retained if possible, 123
Third dentition, . . 171
Tin, artificial teeth on a base of, 736
When admissible, . 736
Dr. Hawes' mode of preparing, 737
Directions for gilding, 739
Tissue paper for drying cavity of tooth, . . 284
Tonic mouth wash, . . 440
Tongue, the, . . . 71
Arteries of, . . 82
Characteristics of the, . 231
Coldness of, in Asiatic cholera, 234
Coating of, . . 234
Diminution of, . . 232
Enlargement of, . 232
Flaccidity of, . . 233
In chlorosis, . . 233
In scurvy, . . . 234
Indicative of the general health, . . 231
Muscles of, . . 72
Moist diagnosis of, . 233
Necessity of noticing its appearance in health, . 232
Not always to be depended on as a sign in sickness, 192
Papillæ of, . . 71
Pustules on, . . 235
Signs of, . . 232
From the secretions of, 234
Tonsil glands where situated, 70
Tooth-ache, . . . 334
Idiopathic affection, . 339
Causes of, . . . 334
Effects of, . . 210
Neuralgic . . . 338
Treatment of, . . 340
Drops, recipes for, . . 341
Tooth, bone of, . . 44
Chemical constituents of, 47
Microscopic appearances of, 47
Vascularity of, . . 47
Polisher, argillaceous, . 121
When required, . 121
Powder, recipes for, . 258
Caution with regard to, 121
Effects of improper, . 437
Primary, moulting of, . 312
Time required to fill a, . 288
Townsend's files, . . 312
Transposition of the teeth, . 144

PAGE.

U.

Ulceration of the palatine mucous membrane, . . 755
Cure of, . . 755
Of the velum and uvula, . 755
Causes of, . . 757
Treatment of, . . 758
Upper jaw, articulations of, 34
Uvula, the, . . . 69
Cancerous ulcers of, . 759
Elongation of, . . 756
Mercurial ulcers of, . 757
Scissors, . . . 758
Venereal ulcers of, . 756

V.

Varnish for models, . 640
Veins of the mouth, . . 83
Office of, . . 83
Velosynthesis, . . . 770
Velum, ulceration and inflammation of, . . 755
Vidian nerve, . . . 88

W.

Warped plates, how to restore, 692
Wax-holders, . . 633
Elliott's, . . . 634
Cleaveland's . . 635
Modification of, . 635
For the lower jaw, . 636
Wax impressions, . . 635
Manner of taking, . 633
Westcott's experiments on the teeth, . . . 256
Wharton, duct of, . . 64
Wilson's method of backing mineral teeth, . . 669
Wire plate, . . 626
Wood pivots, Koecker on, . 611